

Manual for

FOMA® D902iS '06.5



Quick Search/
Contents/Cautions

Before Using D902iS

Making/Receiving
Calls

Making/Receiving
Videophone Calls

PushTalk

Phonebook

Sounds/Displays/Lights
Settings

Safety Settings

Camera

i-mode/i-motion

Mail

i-appli

i-channel

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

Full Browser

Displaying/Editing/Managing Data/
Playing Music

Other Convenient Functions

Network Services

Data Communication

Character Entry

Appendix/Data Interchange/
Troubleshooting

**INDEX/
Quick Reference Manual**

DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for selecting the FOMA D902iS.

Carefully read this manual, as well as the individual manuals for other devices such as the battery pack, before using your FOMA D902iS, and consult the corresponding manuals while using the phone so that you are able to use it correctly and effectively. If you are unclear as to any point indicated in any of these manuals, contact the DoCoMo Information Center that is listed on the back of this manual.

Your FOMA D902iS is a valuable asset. Handle it with care and it will be your trusted partner for years to come.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA terminal is cordless so you may not be able to use it in certain locations where signals cannot penetrate, such as in tunnels, underground, in some buildings or outdoors if the signal is weak or you are outside the service area. You also may not be able to use your FOMA terminal on the upper floors of some highrise building, even though there is nothing around you that interferes with the signal. Please note that your call may be disconnected even when the signal is strong (when the signal strength indication shows three bars) and you are not moving.
- When using the FOMA terminal in public, busy or quiet places, be careful not to disturb others.
- Since the FOMA terminal relies on radio transmission, it is theoretically possible for third parties to intercept a call; however, because the W-CDMA system automatically employs a secrecy function for all calls, a third party will pick up nothing but signal noise.
- Since the FOMA terminal operates by the wireless transmission of voices converted to digital signals, if you are in a location where the signal is weak, the original voice may not be accurately reproduced from the received digital signal, therefore, the voice you hear may differ from the original sound of the speaker's voice.
- DoCoMo asks that you keep a separate record (e.g. written copy) of all information you store in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss that occurs should the contents of the FOMA terminal's memory be lost or altered.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.
Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan, inc., RSA Security Japan Ltd., SECOM Trust.net Co.,Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal can be used in the FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

Using a FOMA terminal for the first time

When you use a FOMA terminal for the first time, read this manual in the following order. You can understand the preparations for using the FOMA terminal and its basic operations.

1. Install the battery pack and charge it. ●P41, P42
2. Turn the power on, make initial settings, and then confirm your phone number. ●P45, P48
3. Understand the functions of keys on the terminal. ●P26
4. Understand the meaning of icons displayed on the screen. ●P29
5. Understand how to use the menus. ●P32
6. Understand how to make and receive calls. ●P50, P62

The latest information about this manual can be downloaded from the DoCoMo website.

● User's Manual Download

(<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>)

Note: The URL and site contents are subject to change without prior notice.

How to use and refer to this manual

You can look for functions or operation procedures that you want to know using various searching ways.

Search on INDEX

Search for a function name or service name.

P470

Use Quick Search

Search for frequently-used or useful functions using easy-to-understand words.

P4

Use Front Cover Indexes

Search by turning over the pages on this manual using the front cover indexes.

Front Cover

► For details, see the next page.

Use Contents

Refer to the contents classified into chapters on an objective basis.

P6

Refer to Features

Search for the features or new functions of D902iS.

P8

Use Menu List

Search using the menu of D902iS.

P416

Use Quick Reference Manual

This manual describes how to operate frequently-used functions. Use it by separating from this instruction manual.

P476

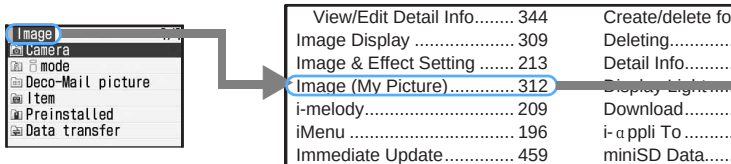
- In the manual for FOMA D902iS, the FOMA D902iS is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal".
- This manual explains functions performed with a miniSD memory card. A miniSD memory card is required separately.
miniSD memory card ◀P331
- In this manual, "Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli supporting the IC card function" is described as "Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli".
- The screen display designs have been initialized according to the color of FOMA terminal from the combinations preset in FOMA terminal (Style Theme). ◀P152
In this manual, the procedure is explained mainly in case that Style Theme is set to *Platinum*.
- Some screens do not support the bilingual function and items or keys may be displayed in Japanese. In this manual, these Japanese words are written by both in Japanese and English only for the first time in a chapter or a section.
- Unauthorized copying of a part or all of the contents of this manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

How to use and refer to this manual

Shown below is an example when you search for the page where “My Picture” is described.

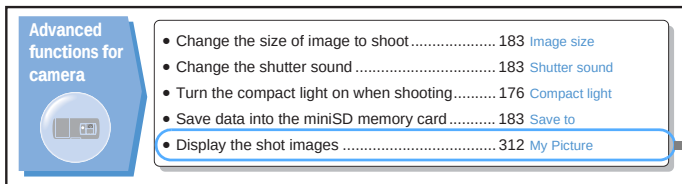
Searching on INDEX

Use INDEX if you have already known a function or service name.



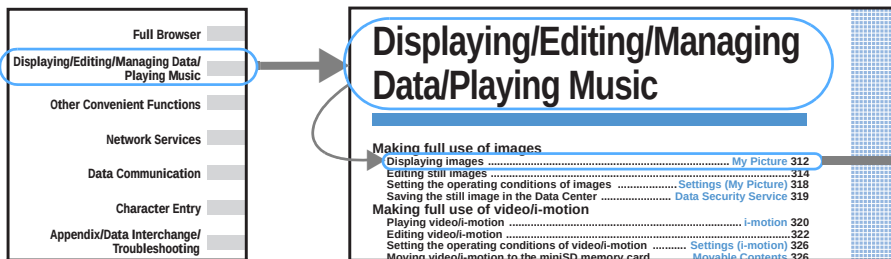
Using Quick Search

You can easily search for frequently-used or useful functions.



Using Front Cover Indexes

You can find a target page by proceeding from the front cover to the cover of a chapter (the first page of the chapter) and the page where a function is described.



- The displays or illustrations provided in this manual are for information purposes only and may be different from the actual products.
- In this manual, the keys are simplified.

Actual key	Description in this manual

- In this manual, the operation procedures are described as follows:

Description	Meaning
Enter the terminal security code	Press on the standby display and then press . Continuously, enter the terminal security code and press .

Index
Shortcut operation
P34

Title & Function name:
Function names are listed on INDEX.

Functional overview
and notes for operation

Default setting

Operation procedure

INFORMATION:
In this manual, information items are categorized as follows:

- Alternative operation procedures
- General notes
- Detailed description of the function

Column:
Useful information

The page shown here is an example. It may differ from the actual page.

Displaying images
Menu 51
My Picture

You can display images saved in **Image** (My Picture) in Data Box in FOMA terminal.

1 **Select a folder**

The following images are stored in each folder:

- Camera :**
Still images shot by Camera or Chara-den and still images captured from video/ i-motion or PDF data
- i-mode :**
Images downloaded from a site, i-mode Mail or i-apple
- Deco-Mail picture :**
Images preinstalled by default for Deco-mail and images downloaded from sites or read by Bar Code Reader
- Item :**
Frame images preinstalled by default and frame images/stamp images downloaded from sites
- Preinstalled :**
Images preinstalled by default
- Data transfer :**
Images read by Bar Code Reader, images moved/copied from miniSD memory cards and images received via data communications
- Album :**
Images moved from other folders
• Not displayed by default. To create P343
• You can enter any album name in creating.
• To switch to the folder list display of the miniSD memory card: press or
• Using the miniSD memory card P338

2 **Highlight an image**

Thumbnail display **Title display**

Display name and icons of the data at cursor

Image list

- Originated
- Preinstalled
- i-mode

312 Note: The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. P331

Sorting data
Sort

You can change the order of data of the list screen.

Default Sort criteria: **Saved date & time**
Order: **Descending**

Example Sorting data in **Image** (My Picture)

1 **Select a folder**

2

3 **Select each item to set** Press

Sort criteria : Sets the sorting method.
Order : Sets the sorting order of data.

INFORMATION

- In the video-motion list, melody list, Chara-den list or PDF data list, press and select Sort.
- If one-byte and two-byte characters are mixed in the display name, the sorted result may not correspond to Japanese syllabary.

Reading the recording screen

1 **Save to**
Indicates the memory to save. P185
 FOMA terminal
 miniSD memory card

2 **Type**
Indicates to record sound.

3 **Indicator**
 <For during standby for recording>
Indicates the usage rate of the storage area in the memory to save.
• The miniSD memory card storage area usage rate may not become 0 even when no recorded sounds have been saved.
 <For during recording/pause>
Indicates the rate of the recorded sound size to the file size set in size restrictions (or the allowable saving size when None is set).

4 **Counter**
 <For during standby for recording>
Indicates the approximate maximum recording time of sounds that can be saved in FOMA terminal or the miniSD memory card in the current

Supplement to the operation

- If there is especially no notice, the operation procedures from the standby display are mentioned.
- The operation procedure is mainly explained in shortcut operations using the normal menu. When there are two or more possible procedures, the simplest one is mentioned.
- In this manual, to place the cursor at an item with (Speed Selector) is referred to as "highlight". In addition, to select an item by placing the cursor with (Speed Selector) and pressing (Enter key) is referred to as "select". The step of pressing which is required after entering characters in the entry field is omitted in description.

Quick Search

Use this Quick Search to look for the frequently-used or convenient functions directly.

Useful functions for phone calls



- Notify/not notify your phone number..... 48 [Caller ID Notification](#)
- Talk facing the phone screen 81 [Speakerphone function](#)
- Adjust the volume of the other party's voice..... 68 [Listen Volume](#)
- Put the current call on hold..... 51 [On-hold](#)
- Switch to videophone call during voice call 53 [Switch to videophone](#)

When unable to answer an incoming call



- Record caller's messages 75 [Answer Machine](#)
- Use Voice Mail Service..... 392 [Voice Mail](#)
- Put the incoming call on hold..... 71 [Response and Hold](#)

How to change melodies or lighting patterns



- Mute the sound heard when pressing keypads..... 130 [Keypad Sound](#)
- Use your favorite ring alerts..... 128 [Sound Setting](#)
- Adjust the volume of ring alerts 68 [Call alert volume](#)
- Turn Silent Mode on 134 [Silent Mode](#)
- Use the vibrator for incoming calls 133 [Vibrator Setting](#)
- Customize the incoming lighting color and pattern 148 [Light Alert Setting](#)
- Use a personal ring alert for each caller..... 109 [Alert by Contact](#)

How to change the screen display



- Customize the standby display (wallpaper) 136 [Standby Display Setting](#)
- Show a calendar on the standby display 139 [Calendar](#)
- Adjust the date and time..... 47 [Date and Time Setting](#)
- Change the size of characters..... 150 [Font Size Setting](#)
- Learn the meaning of icons on the screen 29 [Reading display](#)

Advanced functions for mail



- Send your original Deco-mail 230 [Deco-mail](#)
- Send images with mail..... 234 [Attachment](#)
- Sort and save mail automatically 255 [Sort Criteria](#)

Advanced functions for camera



- Change the size of image to shoot..... 183 [Image size](#)
- Change the shutter sound 183 [Shutter sound](#)
- Turn the compact light on when shooting 176 [Compact light](#)
- Save data into the miniSD memory card 183 [Save to](#)
- Display the shot images 312 [My Picture](#)

Settings for your phone safety



- Keep your phonebook data secret..... 123 [Secret Attribute](#)
- Reject calls without caller ID..... 166 [Anonymous Caller](#)
- Reject callers not registered in the phonebook... 168 [Reject non-Reg. Caller](#)
- Disable the key operation 164 [Key Lock](#)
- Lock your phone remotely when it is lost etc..... 159 [Omakase Lock](#)
- Save the phonebook and other data to prevent data loss 169 [Data Security Service*1](#)

*1 This is a pay service and requires a subscription.

Other useful functions



- Call up function menus quickly 34 [Shortcut operations](#)
- Use your phone as a calculator 383 [Calculator](#)
- Read a QR code or barcode..... 192 [Bar Code Reader](#)
- Send/receive data via infrared communication ... 347 [Infrared communication](#)
- Use your phone as an alarm clock 368 [Alarm Clock](#)
- Use the miniSD memory card..... 331 [miniSD memory card](#)
- Update software 457 [Software Update](#)
- Update the security..... 461 [Virus Scan Function](#)

Contents

Before using your FOMA terminal	Inside front cover
Using a FOMA terminal for the first time.....	Inside front cover
How to use and refer to this manual	1
Quick Search.....	4
Features of FOMA D902iS	8
Making full use of D902iS	10
SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions)	12
Handling instructions	19
About intellectual property rights	21
Basic package and optional accessories	24

Before Using D902iS

25

Names and functions of parts Reading the display Selecting the menu
Using the UIM (FOMA card) Attaching/removing the battery pack Charging Battery Level
Power ON/OFF Select Language Date and Time Setting Caller ID Notification
Own Number etc.

Making/Receiving Calls

49

Making calls Chaku-moji Redial 186/184 Call WORLD CALL Receiving calls
Any Key Answer Open Answer Close Setting Received Calls Listen Volume
Adjust Volume Response and Hold Public mode (Driving mode/power off)
Answer Machine etc.

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

79

Making videophone calls Receiving videophone calls Using Chara-den
Setting images to send Customizing display during videophone call
Videophone Settings etc.

PushTalk

95

PushTalk Making PushTalk calls Receiving PushTalk calls PushTalk Phonebook etc.

Phonebook

105

Phonebook New Entry Group Setting Phonebook Search Edit Phonebook
Delete Phonebook Secret Attribute Quick Dial etc.

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings

127

Sound Setting Vibrator Setting Silent Mode Standby Display Setting
Mail/Call Image Menu Setting Light Alert Setting Indicator Light Clock Display Format
Style Theme etc.

Safety Settings

153

Security code Change Security Code PIN code All Lock Omakase Lock
Self Mode PIM Lock Keypad Dial Lock Privacy Mode Setting Key Lock Secret Mode
Data Security Service etc.

Camera

171

Still Camera Movie Camera Setting for shooting Bar Code Reader etc.

i-mode/i-motion

195

What's i-mode? Site display Change i-mode Password Internet Connection Bookmark
Screen Memo Save Image i-melody Downloading PDF data i-mode Setting
Message R/F Certificate i-motion Downloading i-motion i-motion Setting etc.

Mail**223**

Composing and sending i-mode Mail Deco-mail Attachment Save Mail
 Receiving i-mode Mail Check i-mode Message Display/Save Image i-motion Mail
 Play/Save Melody Displaying and saving ToruCa Mail Setting Composing and sending
 Chat Mail Composing and sending SMS etc.

i-α ppli**269**

i-α ppli Downloading Starting i-α ppli i-α ppli To i-α ppli Standby Display etc.

i-channel**289**

i-channel Channel List Ticker Setting

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa**293**

Osaifu-Keitai Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-α ppli ToruCa Obtaining ToruCa
 Displaying ToruCa ToruCa Setting IC Card Lock

Full Browser**303**

Full Browser Browser Setting

Displaying/Editing/Managing Data/Playing Music**311**

Displaying/editing images Playing/editing video/i-motion Chara-den Playing melodies
 miniSD memory card Managing data Infrared communication Sound Recorder
 Displaying the PDF data Playing music etc.

Other Convenient Functions**363**

Multiaccess Multitask Edit by Slide Auto Power ON/OFF Timer Alarm Clock
 Scheduler Custom Menu Own Number Voice Memo/Movie Memo
 Call Duration/Call Cost Reset Call Cost Call Cost Limit Calculator Notepad
 Electronic dictionaries Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch Quick Start-up Reset
 Delete All Data etc.

Network Services**391**

Voice Mail Call Waiting Call Forwarding Nuisance Call Blocking
 Caller ID Request Dual Network English Guidance Service Dialing Number
 Arrival call act Remote Control Multi Number etc.

Data Communication**399**

Data communication Flow of setup AT command

Character Entry**403**

Entering characters 5-touch Input Method Save Phrase Copy Character
 KUTEN Code Input Save Word Download Dictionary Slot Input Method
 Input Method Setting

Appendix/Data Interchange/Troubleshooting**415**

Menu list Data set by default List of dial keys and character assignments
 Troubleshooting Error Message Warranty and After-Sales Service
 Software Update Virus Scan Function Main specification etc.

INDEX/Quick Reference Manual**469**

INDEX Quick Reference Manual

Features of FOMA D902iS

FOMA is the name of a set of services provided by DoCoMo based on W-CDMA, which is recognized as one of the systems compliant to the global standard for third generation mobile communications (IMT-2000).

It's amazing because it's i-mode!

i-mode is an online service used with i-mode terminals. This service supports connection to i-mode Sites (Programs) or i-mode compatible Internet websites that provide a variety of useful information and allows you to exchange i-mode Mail.

Main functions of FOMA D902iS

PushTalk

☛P96

You can talk with multiple persons (up to 5 persons including yourself) by easy operation of selecting a party from the PushTalk phonebook and pressing the PushTalk button (P).

i-channel

☛P290

Allows you to receive graphical information about news and weather conditions. You can get information on a regular basis and the latest information is run on the standby display as tickers. Also, the information can be displayed in the channel list by pressing the i-channel compatible key (QWERTY). Furthermore, you can get rich, detailed information by selecting your desired channel in the channel list.

• i-channel is a pay service and requires a subscription.

Chaku-moji

☛P54

When you call someone, you can have a message be displayed on the incoming screen of his/her terminal. The called party can see your message and know in advance what the matter is and how you are feeling.

Videophone

☛P80

Allows you to see and talk with the party in the distance and show the surrounding scenery to the other party by switching to the out-camera. This function also supports Chara-den which displays a character instead of your self image.

Osaifu-Keitai i-mode FeliCa

☛P294

Downloading the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli enables you to charge electronic money from sites to the IC card of your FOMA terminal or check the balance and usage history. Also you can use it as an airplane ticket or a reward point card. The Osaifu-Keitai makes your phone more convenient in daily life.

ToruCa

☛P295

ToruCa is an electronic card obtained by Osaifu-Keitai, and you can use conveniently as a flier, a restaurant card, a coupon, etc. ToruCa can be obtained from the reader/writer or sites and can be easily exchanged using mail, infrared rays or the miniSD memory card.

Deco-mail

☛P230

Allows you to compose and send your original messages. Enjoy expressive decorated mail by changing the character color and size or background color, and by pasting images such as Deco-mail pictures or still images shot with the built-in camera in the text.

PDF compatible viewer

☛P209, P354

Allows you to view PDF. You can check easily useful information such as maps, catalogs and schedules on your i-mode terminal. You don't need to bring books.

High-capacity i-appli/i-appli DX

☛P270

Downloading i-appli from sites allows you to enjoy various games and automatically review stock prices and weather information on your phone. In addition, the 3D graphics and 3D sounds allow you to enjoy realistic i-appli games such as car race games in the contents compatible to 3D x 3D. i-appli DX provides better uses in conjunction with i-mode terminal information such as the phonebook and mail.

Safety settings

- Key Lock ☛P164
- Secret Mode ☛P165
- Privacy Mode ☛P162
- Voiceprint authentication: You can deactivate IC Card Lock with your own voice and your terminal security code. ☛P300

Other safety settings ☛P153

Omakase Lock

☛P159

You can lock your FOMA terminal in case it is lost or stolen, and cancel the lock by informing DoCoMo. For contact information, refer to the back of this manual.

Data Security Service

This allows you to back up the phonebook data, still images and mail messages stored in FOMA terminal to the Data Center. When your FOMA terminal is lost, etc., you can restore the backup data to the new FOMA terminal. In addition, you can edit and manage the backup data in the Data Center from your PC, and save the edited data to your FOMA terminal. ☛P169

For important notes on using Data Security Service and detail information about how to use the service, see "i-mode User's Manual". For contact information, refer to the back of this manual.

• This is a pay service and requires a subscription.

Wide array of network services

- Voice Mail Service (charged)*1 ☛P392
- Call Forwarding Service (free of charge)*1 ☛P394
- SMS (Short Message) (free of charge) ☛P264
- Call Waiting Service (charged)*1 ☛P393
- Dual Network Service (charged)*1 ☛P395

*1 Separate application is required.

Useful functions

Speed Selector

◀P28

In addition to up, down, left and right operations, rotating operation is now possible. This allows you to scroll the screen and select items quickly. Also, you can display the menu, the phonebook, etc. by rotating the Speed Selector on the standby display.

Illumination

◀P148

The Enter key in the center of the Speed Selector lights up in various patterns when there is an incoming call, the Speed Selector is rotated, etc.

One-push open

You can quickly slide and open your FOMA terminal with one hand at the touch of the one-push open button on the side of the terminal.

Functions working with slide operation

- To receive an incoming call, open FOMA terminal by slide operation. ▶P65
- To put the call on hold or end the conversation, close it. ▶P65
- The reply screen or the edit screen can be displayed by only opening FOMA terminal while a received mail or schedule is displayed. ▶P366

High-definition large display

The 2.8-inch large TFT LCD (240 x 400 dots) is provided for the display. It clearly displays fine images and characters on the large screen.

High-quality melody playback

FOMA terminal also supports ring alerts such as PCM generated 64-note harmonic, voice and sound effects (ADPCM sounds), etc.

Automatic time correction

◀P47

The time in FOMA terminal is automatically corrected by the information from DoCoMo network. Also you can set the time on your phone ahead or back, if you want.

Built-in camera

- FOMA terminal contains an out-camera and in-camera, which allow you to take images while viewing the large display. You can shoot a still image of up to 4M pixels using auto focus. In addition to a maximum 28x zoom, various modes are available for shooting including close-up, framed shooting and continuous shooting. ▶P172
- Out-camera: Effective pixels: 2M (Max record pixels: 4M)
- In-camera : Effective pixels: 0.1M (Max record pixels: 0.1M)
- Allows you to record or play video with smooth motion and high quality. ▶P181, P320

Bar Code Reader

◀P192

JAN codes or QR codes can be scanned with the built-in camera. Using scan results, you can perform a variety of operations such as registering phonebook entries, connecting to sites and sending mail.

Infrared communication/infrared remote control

◀P347, P351

Exchange data between two FOMA terminals using infrared communication. Also, you can operate devices that support TV infrared remote control from your FOMA terminal.

More usable mail functions

- You can block other people from peeping your mail messages by a simple key operation (Only View). ▶P259
- When you move from outside the service area to inside the service area, unsent mail set to auto-send is sent automatically. ▶P238
- If the text of reply mail is registered beforehand, you can reply mail easily (Quick Reply). ▶P258
- You can search mail from the phonebook or the calendar easily. ▶P113, P375
- The characters can be converted efficiently with ATOK+APOT (AI presumption conversion) provided.

Multiaccess/Multitask

◀P364, P365

Multiaccess which can use voice call and packet communication simultaneously is supported. In addition, Multitask which can execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen is supported.

Simple menu

◀P32

In addition to the normal menu, you can use another menu to display frequently-used functions such as でんわ (phone), メール(mail), カメラ(camera) and i モード (i-mode) in large size of characters.

Animation menu

◀P32

The menu that uses animation by Flash movie (Flash® menu) is provided.

Electronic dictionaries

◀P385

Handy Japanese, English-Japanese, and Japanese-English dictionaries are preloaded on FOMA terminal.

Full Browser

◀P304

Allows you to view web sites for PC on FOMA terminal.

Support for miniSD memory card

- A miniSD memory card enables you to back up data stored in your FOMA terminal such as images, melodies, phonebook entries and mail messages. ▶P331
- By connecting your FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB cable (optional), the miniSD memory card in FOMA terminal can be used as an external memory of a PC. ▶P342

Playing music

◀P359

Music Player allows you to play the music files (i-motion without image) in the miniSD memory card more easily. The functions such as shuffle play and intro play are provided. In addition, you can import music files to the miniSD memory card with ease using the supplied software, BeatJam 2006 for D902iS.

Easy import of video files

◀P445

Video files on a PC can be easily converted to a format playable on FOMA terminal, using the supplied software, Motion Smoothy 2.

Making full use of D902iS

A variety of functions of D902iS visual communications are explained here.

Videophone

You can see and talk with a party in the distance. You can also show to the other party a surrounding scenery image through the out-camera or a character using Chara-den instead of your image.

Your screen **The other party's screen** **The other party's screen** **The other party's screen**

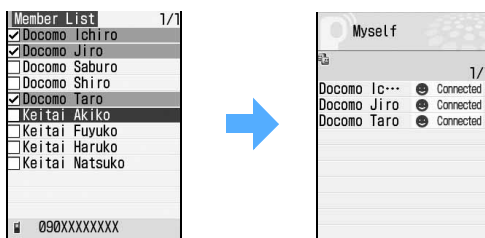
Talk while seeing each other. ●P80, P83

Image of your surroundings is displayed. ●P89

Character is displayed. ●P85

PushTalk

You can talk with multiple persons (up to 5 persons including yourself) by easy operations of only pressing the PushTalk button (P) for over a second to activate PushTalk Phonebook and pressing (P) after selecting a party. ●P96



ToruCa

ToruCa can be obtained from the reader/writer or sites and can be easily exchanged using mail, infrared rays or the miniSD memory card.

The obtained ToruCa is saved in **ToruCa** in the **LifeKit** menu. ●P295

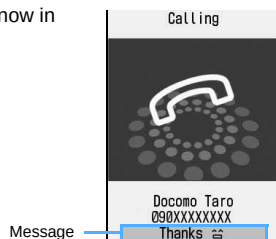
Obtain ToruCa by holding up Osaifu-Keitai to the reader/writer.

Select obtained ToruCa from the ToruCa list. Press the **詳細** (Details) button to view more detailed information.

Chaku-moji

When you make a call, you can set a message to be displayed on the other party's incoming screen. The other party can see the message and know in advance what the matter is and how you are feeling. ◀P54

The other party's screen



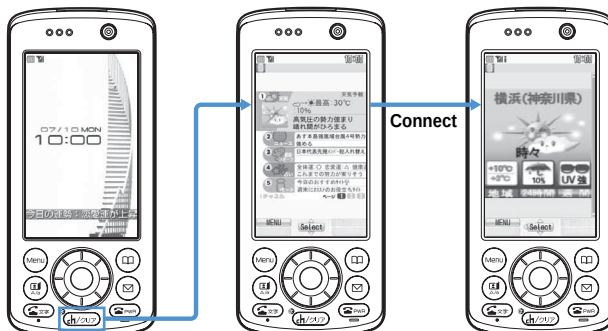
i-channel

You can receive a variety of information on a regular basis without additional operations. In addition, press the i-channel compatible key (**CH/2/7**) to display the channel list so that you can get more richly detailed information. ◀P290

Not subscribed

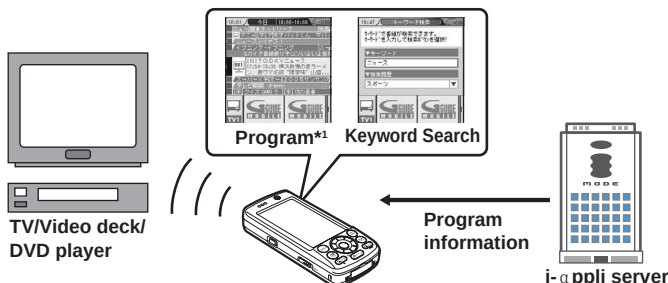


After subscription



G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller

The FOMA terminal is equipped with an i-αppli "G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller" for operating the TV, video deck and DVD player remotely while viewing the TV program information. You can search for TV programs using keywords such as the program category or your favorite entertainer. In addition, it allows you to reserve recording a program in the DVD recorder via the Internet. ◀P279



*1 The screen shown here is for information purpose only and may differ from the actual screen. The actual screen displays the program in your area.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions)

- Read the following SAFETY PRECAUTIONS to ensure that the phone is used correctly. Also, store this manual in a convenient location for future reference.
- It is essential that these precautions be observed to prevent injury to the user and third parties as well as damage to property.
- The following symbols are used to indicate the degree of danger or damage that may result from failing to follow the specified precautions.

 DANGER	Indicates an imminently hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
 WARNING	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
 CAUTION	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, may result in injury or property damage.

- The following symbols are used to highlight instructions that are very important and that must be strictly followed.

 This indicates the action is prohibited.			
	This indicates disassembly is prohibited.		This indicates the part must not be exposed to water.
	This indicates that handling with wet hands is prohibited.		
 This indicates an action that must be performed in accordance with the directions.			
	This indicates you must remove the plug from the power outlet.		

- **SAFETY PRECAUTIONS is separated into six categories.**

Handling the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and the UIM (general information)	P13
Handling the FOMA terminal.....	P14
Handling the battery pack.....	P15
Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/desktop holder/in-car holder)	P17
Handling the UIM (FOMA card)	P18
Handling the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices	P18



DANGER



Use only DoCoMo-certified battery packs, adapters (and chargers) with the FOMA terminal.

Use of non-specified items could cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack or other devices to leak, overheat, rupture, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery pack: D06

Desktop holder: D09

Rear cover: D11

FOMA AC adapter: 01

FOMA DC adapter: 01

FOMA battery adapter: 01

In-car holder: 01

- For additional items related to the compatible products, contact the nearest DoCoMo Shop.



Do not attempt to disassemble or remodel. In addition, do not attempt to solder.

Attempting to do so will lead to an accident, such as a fire, injury, or electrical shock and damage the equipment. Doing so may also cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture, or ignite.



Do not use or leave in a place near fire or heaters. Also avoid a high-temperature place exposed to direct sunlight or a car under the scorching sun.

Otherwise, your equipment will get deformed or troubled. The battery pack may leak, overheat, rupture, or ignite. Other possible problems include a reduction in performance and life. Sometimes, the casing will partly get heated, resulting in an extremely high temperature to get you burnt.



Do not expose to water.

The equipment may overheat, cause electric shock, fire, damage or injury if exposed to water, pet urine or other liquids. Do not use the equipment in locations where it could get wet.



WARNING



Be sure to turn off the FOMA terminal before entering a place such as a gas station that is subject to flammable gases. Do not charge in such a place. Charging could cause fire.

When using Osaifu-Keitai inside a gas station, make sure to turn off the FOMA terminal in advance. (If IC Card Lock is set, cancel the lock and then turn the power off.)



Do not let the recharging terminal and external device terminal touch any conductive material, such as a piece of metal or lead. Also do not put any conductive material into the recharging terminal and external device terminal.

The battery can short-circuit, causing fire and damage.



Do not place the battery pack, FOMA terminal, adapter (and charger) or UIM in the microwave oven, high-pressure cooker or other cooking appliances.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and could damage the circuitry of the FOMA terminal and adapter (and charger), causing overheat, smoke or fire.



If there is anything wrong (such as strange odor, heat generation, color change, deformation, or the like) during use, battery charge or storage, you should take the following steps immediately.

1. Remove the power plug from the outlet.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continuing to use the equipment without taking these steps will cause it to overheat, rupture, or ignite or cause the battery pack to leak.



Do not expose to strong shocks by dropping or throwing.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and damage the equipment, resulting in fire.



CAUTION



When a child uses the FOMA terminal, first be sure an experienced adult teaches proper usage methods and techniques. Observe the child to determine that they are using the FOMA terminal correctly.
Failure to do so could result in injury.



Do not place on an unstable or tilted surface.

Doing so could cause the equipment to slide off, possibly causing personal injury or damaging the equipment.



Do not store in locations subject to high temperature and humidity or excessive dust.

Doing so could damage the equipment.



Keep out of the reach of small children.

The components can be accidentally swallowed, resulting in injury.



The temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapter (and charger) may become high when charging the battery, recording/playing a video, or using videophone, i-mode or i-appli repeatedly or for a long period of time.

If you touch the part with a high temperature directly for a long period of time, redness, itchiness, rash, etc. may arise in your skin depending on your constitution or condition.

Be especially careful when you use the FOMA terminal connected to an adapter (and charger) continuously for a prolonged period.

Handling the FOMA terminal



WARNING



Turn off the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, hospital or other location where use of mobile phones is prohibited.

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of electronic equipment. If the automatic power on function is used, cancel the setting and turn the power off. Observe any regulations posted in medical facilities.

If you have done prohibition acts such as using the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, you may be punished as stipulated by law.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of electronic equipment that relies on high-precision control or faint signals.

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of such electronic equipment.

- Examples: hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled equipment. Users of such medical equipments should check with the electronic equipment or device manufacturer with respect to the effect of electromagnetic interference.



Do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast or inner pocket if you are carrying or using electronic medical equipment.

The FOMA terminal could cause any medical equipment in its vicinity to malfunction.



People with weak hearts should take care with respect to setting the incoming vibrator and ring volume.

The FOMA terminal may interfere hearts.

**Do not aim the infrared port at eyes and attempt to transmit.**

Eyes could be affected. Aiming at other infrared devices and transmitting could cause other devices to malfunction.

**When you talk under handsfree settings (with the speakerphone function), be sure to keep a distance between FOMA terminal and your ear.**

Failure to do so could cause the hearing loss.

**Do not place the FOMA terminal in an area over an air bag or in an air bag deployment area such as on a dashboard in a vehicle.**

If the air bag inflates, the FOMA terminal may hit you and injury and damage to itself could result.

**Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving.**

From November 1, 2004, using mobile phones while driving is set as the object of penal regulations. Even if you use the handsfree device, park the car in a safe place before using the phone. Use Public mode or Voice Mail Service while driving.

**Do not turn on the compact light toward eyes at close range.**

Taking a look at the light directly affects eyes damage. He or she may be blinded by it and injury could result.

**If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn the power off and move to a safe location.**

Use of the phone in such a situation could expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.



CAUTION

**Rarely, some FOMA terminal users may develop itching, skin irritation or eczema. If such a condition occurs, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and seek medical attention.**

Metal is used in the following components:

Part	Material
One-push open button,  , 	Chromium plating
Speed Selector (except the Enter key in the center)	Aluminum*1

*1 Although painted, the skin may be touched if it separates.

**Do not swing the FOMA terminal around by the strap.**

Doing so could cause injury to yourself or a third party or damage the phone.

**Do not allow water or other liquids, pieces of metal or other foreign material to enter into the UIM slot and a miniSD memory card slot of the FOMA terminal.**

Doing so could cause fire, electric shock, or damage to the phone.

**Use in certain makes of cars may affect onboard electronic equipment.**

Continued use under such conditions could cause unsafe driving. Do not use the FOMA terminal in such a case.

**Do not bring magnetic cards near the FOMA terminal.**

Magnetic data stored on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, and floppy disks may be corrupted or lost.

Handling the battery pack

- Check the battery type indicated on the battery pack label.

Indication	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium ion battery



DANGER



If electrolyte from the battery pack gets in your eyes, do not rub; instead, rinse immediately with copious amounts of clean water and seek medical attention.
Doing so could cause the loss of vision.



Do not attach metallic materials such as wire to the port. Do not carry or store the battery pack together with a necklace or other metallic items.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not pierce the battery pack with nails, hammer on it or step on it.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



When you attach the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, never attempt to forcefully insert, because it should slide in easily and fit correctly. Check the direction of the battery pack and try again.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



WARNING



Should any electrolyte from the battery pack come into contact with your skin or clothing, immediately stop using the battery and rinse with clean water.
Failure to do so could cause skin injuries.



Stop charging if it is not possible to fully charge the battery pack within the specified time.
Failure to do so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



If the battery pack leaks or emits strange odors, immediately stop using it, and always keep away from sources of fire.
Failure to do so could cause the battery liquid to catch fire, and the battery pack itself to rupture.



CAUTION



Do not dispose of the battery pack with other regular household waste.
Failure to properly dispose of the battery pack in an environmentally sensitive manner could cause the battery pack to catch fire and damage the environment. Use adhesive tape to cover the terminal of battery pack when it is no longer used and bring it to a DoCoMo Shop after the insulation. Alternatively, you can also dispose of the battery pack in accordance with local regulations.



WARNING



Use care not to short circuit the recharging terminal when the adapter (and charger) is connected to a wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the recharging terminal with your hands or fingers, or some other part of the body.
Doing so could cause fire, equipment failure, electric shock or other injury.



Do not use the AC adapter and desktop holder in bathrooms or other potentially high humidity locations.
Doing so could cause electric shock.



Never use the adapter (and charger) when it has a damaged power cord.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, overheat or fire.



If the adapter (and charger) or holder is exposed to water or other liquid, immediately disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, smoke or fire.



Be sure the power plug is free of dust.
Failure to do so could cause the equipment to catch fire.



During charging, place the adapter (and charger) and desktop holder in a stable location. Do not cover or wrap the adapter (and charger) and desktop holder with a cloth or blanket, etc.
Using the equipment under such conditions could cause the FOMA terminal to be detached from the holder, or cause a heat buildup that leads to fire or equipment failure.



Do not touch the FOMA terminal and AC/DC adapter when hearing thunder.
Contact with the FOMA terminal and adapter could cause you lightning strikes or electric shock.



Do not touch the adapter (and charger) cord or wall outlet with wet hands.
Doing so could cause electric shock.



When the adapter (and charger) is not to be used for a prolonged period, disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, fire, or equipment failure.



When connected to a wall outlet, make sure that the AC adapter does not come into contact with metallic straps or other metal objects and the plug is properly seated.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, short circuit, or fire.



Use the designated power source and correct voltage.
Use of incorrect voltage could cause fire or equipment failure. When using the FOMA terminal overseas, use the FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01.
AC adapter: 100 V AC
FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter: 100 V to 240 V AC
(Always connect to the outlet for internal household use.)
DC adapter: 12 V DC, 24 V DC
(specific for negative ground vehicle)



Use only the specified fuse for the DC adapter.
Use of the incorrect fuse could cause fire or equipment failure. Check the instruction manual for details of the correct fuse to use.



The DC adapter is for use with negative ground cars. Do not use it with positive ground cars.
Doing so could result in fire.



CAUTION



Disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket before beginning any maintenance.

Failure to do so could cause electric shock.



Disconnect the adapter (and charger) from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket by pulling the adapter, not the adapter (and charger) cord or the power cord.

Pulling the cord could damage the cord, resulting in electric shock or fire.



Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord.

Doing so could cause electric shock or fire.

Handling the UIM (FOMA card)



CAUTION



Take care when removing the UIM (the IC).

Failure to do so could cause injury to hand and fingers.

Handling the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices

The information given below conforms to the guidelines set forth by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.



WARNING



Turn off the FOMA terminal on packed trains or in crowded places as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



When inside a medical institution, always remember the following guidelines:

- Never take the FOMA terminal inside an operating room, intensive care unit (ICU) or coronary care unit (CCU).
- Always turn off the FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- Even in the lobby and other areas, always turn off the FOMA terminal when electronic medical equipment is nearby.
- Follow the directives of the medical institution. There may be specific regulations as to items that are prohibited or use of which is restricted.
- If you are using the automatic power on function, cancel the setting and turn off the power.



If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, keep your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from it.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



If you are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators at your home or outside the confines of a medical institution, be sure to check with the manufacturer about possible adverse effects caused by electromagnetic interference.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of electronic medical equipment.

Handling instructions

General

- Do not get the components wet.

The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and UIM are not waterproof. Avoid using the components in a bathroom or other high humidity areas or locations exposed to rain. If you carry the components, sweat could cause internal corrosion that leads to equipment failure. As a result of investigation, if component failure is found to be water-related, repair is not covered by the warranty and may not be able to be performed.

In such a case, should it be found to be possible to repair the unit, you will be billed for all repairs.

- Clean the components with a soft dry cloth (such as a lens cloth).

- The FOMA terminal display may have a special coating on it so that the color LCD provides a clear view. Rubbing the display strongly with a dry cloth for cleaning could damage the display. Handle with care and clean the display with a soft dry cloth (such as a lens cloth). Also note that leaving the display with dirt or moisture attached could cause spots or remove the coating on it.

- Using alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergents could cause the printed text to fade or disappear, or the equipment to become discolored.

- Occasionally clean the terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Dirty terminals could cause intermittent contact that could interrupt the flow of power to the unit. Such a situation also causes insufficient charging. Use a dry cloth or cotton swab to clean the terminal.

- Do not place the components near an air conditioner vent.

Sudden changes in temperature could cause condensation, leading to corrosion inside the components and equipment failure.

- Do not place the FOMA terminal in locations where it could be exposed to excessive pressure.

Do not place it in a bag together with many other things or in your pocket when you sit down as this could exert pressure on the LCD or damage the internal boards, resulting in equipment failure. Damage arising from such causes is not covered by the warranty.

- Carefully read the instruction manuals supplied with the battery pack and adapter (and charger) before use.

FOMA terminal

- Avoid extremely high or low temperatures.

Use in an environment with a temperature of 5 to 35 °C and relative humidity of 45 to 85 %.

- If the FOMA terminal is used near a radio, television or general subscriber phone, it could affect such equipment. Use the phone as far away from such equipment as possible.

- With regard to data stored in the FOMA terminal, keep it separately in a memo, etc. so as not to permanently lose important data.

NTT DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of stored data.

- Do not put the FOMA terminal in your back pocket and sit on it. Avoid putting the phone in the bottom of a bag, etc. where it is subject to excessive pressure.

Damage may result.

- Do not close the FOMA terminal with the strap held inside.

Malfunction or damage may result.

- It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm during using or recharging. You can continue to use it while warm.

- Do not aim the camera directly at the sun and leave it.

Elements may be discolored or baked.

- The FOMA terminal is compatible with Omakase Lock (P159).

Omakase Lock is a service that locks FOMA terminal at the request from the subscriber.

Note that the FOMA terminal is locked when a request is made by the subscriber even if the subscriber is not the user of FOMA terminal.

Battery pack

- The battery pack will gradually wear out.
Battery life also depends on how you use the battery pack; you know it is time to replace it when the usage time is very short even though you fully charge it. The specified battery pack can be purchased separately.
- Recharge the battery pack in locations where the ambient temperature is between 5 °C and 35 °C.
- When using for the first time or after a long period of non-use, be sure to fully charge the battery pack before use.
- The time of use provided by the battery pack depends on the ambient conditions and the condition of the battery pack itself.
- Depending on usage, the battery pack may swell slightly as it nears the end of its life, but this will not cause a problem.
- Do not expose to the direct sunlight and high temperature. Please keep your battery in an airy and cool place.
When you do not use your phone for a long period of time, remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal with the battery used up, put into the packing plastic bag or other container, and keep it.

Adapter (and charger)

- Recharge the battery pack in a location where the ambient temperature is between 5 °C and 35 °C.
- Do not recharge in the following locations:
 - Locations that are subject to high humidity, dust or excessive vibration
 - Near general subscriber phones, TVs or radios
- It is normal for the adapter (and charger) to become warm during recharging. You can continue charging with a warm adapter.
- When the battery pack is recharged using the DC adapter, always keep the car engine running. Failure to do so could cause the car battery to run down more quickly than normal.
- When an outlet with falling prevention mechanism is used, check the instruction manual for the outlet before use.
- Do not expose to the strong shock and deform the recharging terminal.
Giving the strong shock on an adapter can cause damage.

UIM (FOMA card)

- Do not use excessive force to remove the UIM.
- Do not place an excessive load on the UIM when inserting it into the terminal.
- The UIM becomes warm during use. This is normal and not a cause for concern.
- Note that any card failures resulting from inserting the UIM in an IC card reader/writer not designated by NTT DoCoMo are the responsibility of the customer.
- Make sure that the ICs are kept clean.
- Clean the UIM with a soft dry cloth (such as a lens cloth).
- It is recommended that users maintain data stored on the UIM in some other form.
If the data should be erased, NTT DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- The UIMs that are no longer used should be returned to a DoCoMo Shop for environmental protection.
- Avoid extremely high or low temperature.
- Take care not to damage, touch, or short-circuit the ICs to prevent them from losing their data or from malfunctioning.
- Take care not to drop the UIM or give shock to the UIM to prevent it from malfunctioning.
- Do not bend the UIM and place heavy stuff on it to avoid a failure.

Camera

If you should use the FOMA terminal to make a public nuisance, you might be punished under the laws and bylaws such as Japan's nuisance prevention ordinance.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

About intellectual property rights

Copyrights and portrait rights

Except in cases where reproduction and quoting for private use is sanctioned under copyright laws, the reproduction, alteration and public transmission of such content as text, images, music or software for which another party owns the copyrights, whether accomplished by using this product to photograph or record that content or by downloading it from Internet websites, is prohibited without the permission of the owner.

Taking photographs or recordings of such events as performances and exhibitions may be prohibited even for purposes of private use.

In addition, if you use this product to take another person's photograph without their permission, or display such a photograph without their permission on an Internet website and make that content public to an indeterminate number of people, you may be in violation of portrait rights.

Trademarks

Company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

- "FOMA", "mov'a", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i-α ppli", "i-α ppli search", "i-motion mail", "i-shot", "i-melody", "i-anime", "DoPa", "mopera", "mopera U", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Short Mail", "QUICKCAST", "Chaku-motion", "Deco-mail", "V-Live", "i-area", "pake-hodai", "Chara-den", "i-α ppli DX", "Dual Network", "ToruCa", "visualnet", "i-channel", "Push Talk", "PushTalkPlus", "iD", "DCMX", "FirstPass", "sigmarion", "Security Scan", "musea", "Public mode", "トクだねニュース便" and "My DoCoMo", and FOMA, i-mode, i-α ppli and DCMX logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo.
- "キヤッチホン (Call Waiting)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- The toll-free service name and the toll-free service logo mark are trademarks of NTT Communications Corporation.
- Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Media® and DirectX® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the US and other countries.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- F e l i C a is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks Inc.
- This product contains NetFront of ACCESS CO., LTD. to provide Internet function. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries. Copyright© 1996-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.



- Contains Macromedia® Flash® Player technology by Macromedia, Inc.
Copyright© 1995-2006 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.
Macromedia, Flash, and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.
©2006 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- QR code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- Contains Adobe Reader of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
Copyright© 2006 Adobe Systems Incorporated.
All rights reserved. Patents pending.
Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
Adobe and Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the US and other countries.
- miniSD™ and  are trademarks of the SD Card Association.
- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™
Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI CORPORATION.
- “BeatJam” is copy-protected material of Justsystem Corporation. Copyrights and other rights related to “BeatJam” belong to Justsystem Corporation and other respective owners of those rights.
- “BeatJam”, “ATOK” and “APOT” (Advanced Prediction Optimization Technology) are registered trademarks of Justsystem Corporation.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and the logos associated with G-GUIDE are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates in Japan.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- “Privacy Mode” is a registered trademark of FUJITSU.
- **symbian**
This product includes software licensed from Symbian Software Ltd.
‘Symbian’, ‘Symbian OS’ and other associated Symbian marks are all trademarks of Symbian Software Ltd. ©1998-2006 Symbian Software Ltd. All rights reserved.
- Intel and Pentium are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.
- In addition to the above, company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.



Other rights and responsibilities

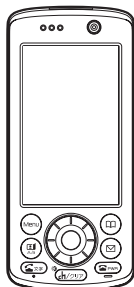
- F e l i C a is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- “Edy” is a brand of the prepaid type electronic money service provided by bitWallet, Inc.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the following cases:
 - Recording videos that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos obtained from the provider licensed from MPEG LA
 For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in the US.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/ or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307	5,600,754	5,267,261	5,506,865	5,710,784
5,504,773	5,416,797	5,568,483	5,228,054	5,778,338
5,109,390	5,490,165	5,414,796	5,544,196	
5,535,239	5,101,501	5,659,569	5,337,338	
5,267,262	5,511,073	5,056,109	5,657,420	
- This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- “Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary”, “G-Mobile English-Japanese Dictionary” and “G-Mobile Japanese-English Dictionary” are copyrighted works of TAISHUKAN Publishing Co., Ltd.
- In this manual, each OS (Japanese version) is written for short as follows:
 - Windows XP is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
 - Windows 2000 is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
 - Windows Me is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
 - Windows 98 is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
 - Windows 98SE is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system SECOND EDITION.
 - Windows NT Server is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows NT® Server Network operating system Version 4.0.
 - It may describe like Windows XP, 2000, Me, 98 in parallel.
 - Windows 98 and Windows 98SE are described as Windows 98 in all.

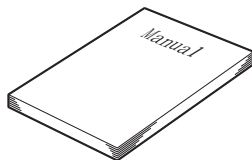
Basic package and optional accessories

Basic package

FOMA D902iS
(including the written
warranty and the rear
cover D11)



Instruction manual
(this book)

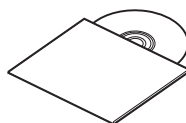


Quick Reference Manual ●P476

BeatJamサポートガイド
(BeatJam Support Guide)
BeatJam音楽転送クイックガイド
(BeatJam Quick Manual for music
data transfer)(separately bound)

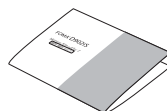


CD-ROM for FOMA
D902iS



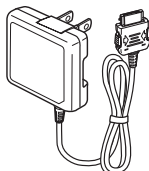
The PDF version of "Manual for
Data Communication" is contained.

Motion Smoothy 2
簡易操作ガイド
(Simple User's Manual for
Motion Smoothy 2)
(attached)

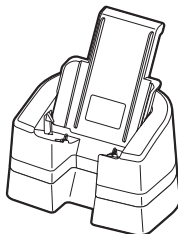


Optional accessories

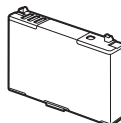
FOMA AC adapter 01
(including the written
warranty and the instruction
manual)



Desktop holder D09
(including the instruction
manual)



Battery pack D06
(including the
instruction manual)

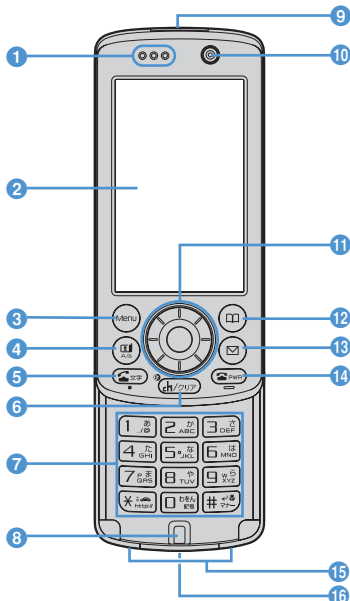


• Other optional accessories ●P444

Before Using D902iS

Names and functions of parts	26
Reading the display	29
Selecting the menu	32
Number of saved, registered and protected items in D902iS	38
Using the UIM (FOMA card)	38
Attaching/removing the battery pack	41
Charging the battery of FOMA terminal	42
Checking the remaining battery level	Battery Level 45
Turning the power on/off	Power ON/OFF 45
Switching to English display	Select Language 46
Setting the date and time	Date and Time Setting 47
Notifying your phone number to the other party	Caller ID Notification 48
Checking your own phone number	Own Number 48

Names and functions of parts



1 Earpiece

The other party's voice comes out of here.

2 Display ◀P29

3 [Menu] Menu/upper left soft/Silent Mode key

Use this key to display menus, perform the operation shown in the upper left part of the guide row, set/cancel Silent Mode, etc.

4 [Start] Start videophone/scroll/lower left soft key

Use this key to make/answer videophone calls, scroll mail or site display by a page, switch between upper/lower cases when entering characters, perform the operation shown in the lower left part of the guide row, etc.

5 [Start] Start voice call/speakerphone/character key

Use this key to make/answer voice calls, turn on/off the speakerphone function, use the focus lock function of Camera, switch input modes when entering characters, etc.

6 [ch/zip] i-channel/Clear key

Use this key to display the channel list, delete characters, return to the previous screen, set/cancel Self Mode, etc. On the i-α ppli standby display, press this key to start i-α ppli.

7 Dial keys ([0] to [9]), [*], [#]

Dial keys

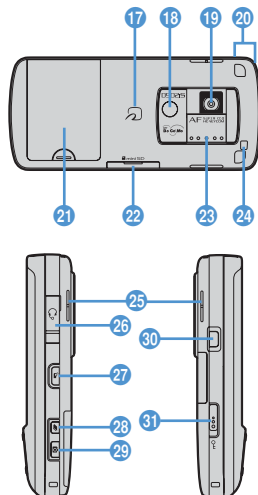
Used to enter phone numbers and text and to select menu items.

[*] * /Public mode (Driving mode) key

Use this key to enter "x", set/cancel Public mode (Driving mode), etc.

[#] # /Silent Mode/line-feed key

Use this key to enter "#", set/cancel Silent Mode, start a new line when entering characters, etc.



Size (mm) : 110 (H) x 49 (W) x 19.9 (D)
(when closed)

Weight (g) : Approx. 124 (with battery pack)

Switches between the standard mode and the macro mode while shooting with the out-camera.

8 Microphone

Picks up your voice.

9 Infrared data port ◀P347

Exchange data via infrared communication.

10 In-camera ◀P89, P172

Used to shoot yourself with Camera or Movie Camera and send your image during a videophone call.

11 [Speed Selector]

• You can rotate the Speed Selector to operate it. ◀P28

[Enter] Enter key*1

Use this key to perform the selected operation, activate Focus Mode, start i-α ppli set for One-key Shortcut, etc.

[Data Box] ↑ key

Use this key to display the Data Box menu, activate Camera with the in-camera on, move the cursor upward, adjust volume, etc.

[i-mode/i-α ppli] ↓ key

Use this key to display the i-mode menu or i-α ppli folder list, move the cursor downward, adjust volume, etc.

[Received Calls] ← (previous) key

Use this key to display the received call history, switch between pages, move the cursor leftward, set/cancel Privacy Mode, etc.

[Redial] → (next) key

Use this key to display the redial data, switch between pages, move the cursor rightward, set/cancel IC Card Lock etc.

- 12 **☎Phonebook/schedule/upper right soft key**
Use this key to display the phonebook or schedules, perform the operation shown in the upper right part of the guide row, etc.
- 13 **✉Mail/scroll/lower right soft key**
Use this key to display the Mail menu, compose new mail, scroll mail or site display by a page, perform the operation shown in the lower right part of the guide row, etc.
- 14 **⏻Power/End/Hold key**
Use this key to turn the power on/off, end calls or functions in operation, place incoming calls on hold, cancel Secret Mode, switch displaying/not displaying the custom standby display, etc.
- 15 **Charging terminals**
Used when charging FOMA terminal in the desktop holder (optional).
- 16 **External connection terminals** ◀P43, P342
Used to connect various optional accessories.
- 17 **FeliCa mark**
The mark means that a piece of IC card is mounted. Use IC card functions by placing the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer. The IC card cannot be detached.
- 18 **Compact light** ◀P89, P177, P182
Used during the out-camera use. It lights or flashes in red when shooting still images or videos (however, when the compact light is turned on for shooting, the red light may be difficult to see).
- 19 **Out-camera** ◀P89, P172
Used to shoot people or landscape with Camera or Movie Camera and send these images during a videophone call.
- 20 **Antenna (built-in)**
Take care not to cover the built-in antenna with your hand so that you can use FOMA terminal on better conditions.
- 21 **Rear cover**
- 22 **miniSD memory card slot** ◀P335
Insert the miniSD memory card in this slot to use it.
- 23 **Lens cover** ◀P173
- 24 **Strap opening**
- 25 **Speaker**
Ring alert and other sounds come out of here. When the speakerphone function is used, the other party's voice comes out.
- 26 **Earphone/microphone jack**
Used to connect a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional).
- 27 **PushTalk button** ◀P97
Use this button to display the PushTalk phonebook or make/answer PushTalk calls and speak during PushTalk. Also, use this key to turn on/off the auto focus function of Camera.
- 28 **☑TASK key**
Use this key during Multiaccess or Multitask.
- 29 **☎Answer Machine/shutter key**
Use this key to display the Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu, start Quick Record Message,

activate Camera and shoot images, stop ring alert/alarm, switch between the normal display and anti-peeping display (Only View) of the mail view screen, etc.

-  has 2 positions: half press and full press for shooting images with auto focus, so the feel of pressing this key is different from other keys.

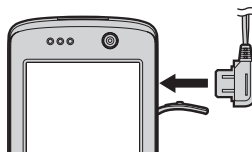
30 One-push open button

Use this button to open FOMA terminal.

31 Keylock switch ◀P164

Use this key to set/cancel Key Lock.

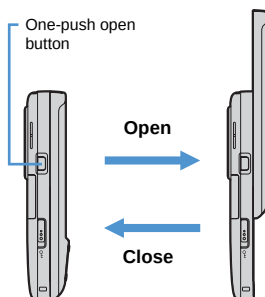
Connecting to earphone/microphone set with switch



- You can plug in a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) and use it. Using the earphone jack converter adapter P001 (optional) allows you to use an existing earphone/microphone set.

Opening/closing FOMA terminal

To open FOMA terminal, press the one-push open button. To close it, slide the front face (with the display) downward.



- Operations such as accessing the screen to reply to mail or to edit schedules or notes are made easily by opening FOMA terminal.
◀P242, P371, P384
- FOMA terminal allows you to make calls without opening it. You can also answer an incoming call by opening FOMA terminal and end or put on hold the call by closing it. ◀P65
- Please note that if you open the terminal by force without pressing the one-push open button or open and close it violently, it will cause the damage of the terminal.

*1 Lights or flashes when a call or mail is received, FOMA terminal is opened/closed, the Speed Selector is rotated, during shooting with the camera, etc. The lighting pattern and color can be set (◀P148). Also, it flashes when there is new information (◀P149), and lights in red during charging.

Using the Speed Selector

You can rotate the Speed Selector as well as press  and  to operate it. The operation performed by rotating the Speed Selector varies by the screen.

Operating on the standby display

One of the following operations is available by rotating the Speed Selector:

Operation	Description	Page
Executing a function	Displays the menu, the phonebook list or the calendar screen of Scheduler, according to Speed Selector Setting. You can also set to execute no function.	P28
Switching images on the standby display	Switches images on the standby display when <i>Change image</i> is set to <i>Speed selector</i> in Random Display Image.	P138

Operating on a screen other than the standby display

Depending on the screen, the same operation as pressing  or  is available. Rotating the Speed Selector moves the highlighted item or scrolls the screen according to how much the Speed Selector is rotated. This allows you to operate quickly. As the rotating direction, *Clockwise* or *Anticlockwise* can be set in Speed Selector Setting.

Direction setting



Clockwise



Anticlockwise

Moving / scrolling operation

List screen



Highlights an item

List screen



Highlights a pictogram

View screen



Scrolls

Character entry screen



Moves the cursor

- You can adjust the ring volume by rotating the Seed Selector while receiving a voice/video/phone/PushTalk call. Also, rotating during a voice/PushTalk call adjusts the volume of other party's voice.
- You can zoom in and out by rotating the Speed Selector on the shooting screen of Camera/Movie Camera or videophone talking screen.
- In entry fields for date/time and number, rotating the Speed Selector increases and decreases values. However, this operation is unavailable in some entry fields.

INFORMATION

- In the following cases, no operation is performed by rotating the Speed Selector but pressing  or  is enabled:
 - Displaying sites by shortcuts on the dial input screen
 - Using Calculator
 - Moving the cursor, frame or stamp while editing still image
 - The display is off
- If *Speed selector* is set to *ON* in Light Alert Setting, the Enter key lights/flashes when the Speed Selector is rotated.

Setting the Speed Selector

Speed Selector Setting

Set the rotating operation of the Speed Selector.

Default Speed selector: ON Direction: Clockwise Use at stand-by disp: Menu

1



2 Select each item to set

Speed selector: Set whether to enable the rotating operation of the Speed Selector. When **OFF** is set, the rotating operation is disabled, and **Direction** and **Use at stand-by disp** cannot be set.

Direction: Set the rotating direction of the Speed Selector. Select **Clockwise** or **Anticlockwise**.

Use at stand-by disp:

Select the function to be executed when the Speed Selector is rotated on the standby display.

- When **Menu** is set, the menu is displayed.
- When **Phonebook** is set, the phonebook list is displayed.
- When **Scheduler** is set, the calendar screen of Scheduler is displayed.
- When **OFF** is set, no function will be executed.

3 Press

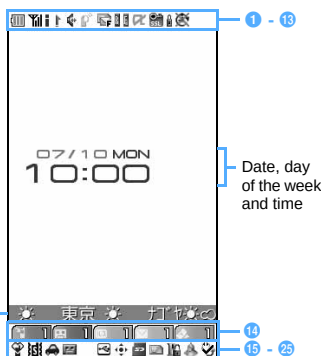
- When **Change image** is set to **Speed selector** in Random Display Image, if you set **Use at stand-by disp** to other than **OFF**, a confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** to change the setting.

INFORMATION

- Even if **Speed selector** is set to **OFF**, some i-a ppli may be operated by rotating the Speed Selector.
- Even if **Speed selector** is set to **ON** and **Speed selector** in Settings (for i-a ppli) is set to other than **OFF**, some i-a ppli cannot be operated by rotating the Speed Selector.
- When adjusting the volume, zooming in and out or increasing and decreasing values, the setting for **Direction** is disabled. In this case, rotating the Speed Selector to the right increases the volume/display magnification/value and rotating to the left decreases it. In addition, the setting for **Direction** is disabled for some i-a ppli.

Reading the display

The description of icons displayed at the top or the bottom of the display are shown below:



Received i-channel information

When you use i-channel, if **Show ticker** is set to **Yes** in Ticker Setting, the received i-channel information is displayed as ticker on the standby display. ●P292

- 1  : Battery level ●P45
- 2  : Received signal level ●P46
-  : Out of service area ●P46
-  : Self Mode is set ●P160

-  : During data transfer ●P332, P347
-  : In the miniSD mode ●P342
-  : Data link software in progress ●P444
- 3  : In i-mode communication (during i-mode connection) ●P200
-  : In i-mode communication (during packet communication) ●P214, P239
- 4  : During infrared communication ●P347
- *1  : Infrared remote control function in operation ●P351
-  : Key Lock is set (in gray when Key Lock is temporarily released) ●P164
- 5  : Speakerphone function in operation ●P51
- *1  : Connecting to USB handsfree compatible equipment ●P62
-  : Total call cost exceeds the maximum limit ●P383
- 6  : Accessing the phonebook on the network (PushTalkPlus) ●P96
- *1  : During PushTalk calls ●P96
-  : i-mode Mail and Message R/F storage space is full in the Center *2 ●P240, P214

- : i-mode Mail or Message R/F storage space is full in the Center ●P240, P214
 : Both i-mode Mail and Message R/F exist unreceived in the Center ●P240, P214
 : i-mode Mail or Message R/F exists unreceived in the Center ●P240, P214
7 : Unread i-mode Mail or SMS storage space is full and also SMS storage space is full on UIM ●P266
***1**
 : Unread i-mode Mail or SMS storage space is full ●P240, P266
 : SMS full on UIM ●P266
 : Unread i-mode Mail and SMS exist ●P239, P265
 : Unread i-mode Mail exists ●P239
 : Unread SMS exists ●P265
8 (blue/red) : Unread Message R exists/unread Message R storage space is full ●P214
9 (green/red) : Unread Message F exists/unread Message F storage space is full ●P214
10 : i-α ppli running ●P273
 : i-α ppli standby display on ●P139
 : Starting i-α ppli from the i-α ppli standby display ●P284
 : i-α ppli DX running ●P273
 : i-α ppli DX standby display on ●P139
 : Starting i-α ppli from the i-α ppli DX standby display ●P284
11 : Displaying SSL page, using i-α ppli downloaded from SSL pages and in SSL communication with i-α ppli ●P201
***1** : Displaying TLS/SSL page ●P305
 : Auto-send mail failed exists ●P238
 : Auto-send mail exists ●P238

- 12** : Secret Mode is set ●P165
13 : i-α ppli Auto Start failed ●P283
14 : Focus Mode icon ●P37
15 : General silent mode is set ●P134
 : Personalized silent mode is set ●P135
16 : Call alert volume is set to **silent** ●P68
 : Vibrator for incoming voice call is set ●P133
 : Call alert volume is set to **silent** and vibrator for incoming voice call is set ●P68, P133
17 : Public mode (Driving mode) is set ●P73
18 : Answer Machine is set ●P75
 : Recorded messages full ●P75
19 : Connecting to external device via the FOMA USB cable (optional) ●P94
20 : Effective Speed Selector keys in Focus Mode ●P37
21 : miniSD memory card inserted ●P335
22 : Reading the UIM ●P45
***1** : IC Card Lock is set ●P300
23 : PIM Lock is set ●P160
***1** : Keypad Dial Lock is set ●P161
24 : Alarm Clock is set ●P368
 : Schedule alarm is set ●P371
 : Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set simultaneously ●P368, P371
25 : Software Update reserved ●P460
***1** : Result of auto-update of the latest pattern definition ●P462

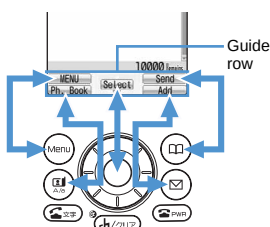
*1 The current highest priority item is displayed. These icons are listed in the order of priority from the top.

*2 Displayed when the storage space for either i-mode Mail or Message R/F is full and also unreceived mail/messages exist.

Reading the guide row

Operations that can be executed by pressing , , , and are displayed in the guide row.

Example Guide row for the mail composition screen



The display positions and the keys correspond as shown in the figure. In this manual, the operations displayed in the guide row are explained using the corresponding keys (.

The operations displayed in the guide row differ depending on the screen.

- on the guide row corresponds to of the Speed Selector (it may be different depending on the function, site or Internet web page in use).

Reading the task bar

The icon for the function (task) in progress is displayed on the task bar (up to 9 icons). You can confirm functions being used and run. In addition, when receiving mails/messages, the reception result is scrolled.

- While entering characters, the input mode is displayed on the task bar. P405

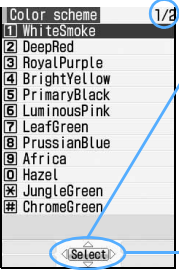


Task bar (when schedule calendar is displayed during a voice call)

: Voice call : Videophone (64K/32K) : Switching voice/videophone call : Ending call : Videophone call through external device : Adjusting volume using Multitask : PushTalk : 64K data communication : Originating/communicating/sending/receiving packet via USB : Mail : Receiving i-mode Mail/Message R/F : Receiving SMS : Chat Mail : Message R/F : Check i-mode Message/SMS : i-mode/i-channel	: i-mode Bookmark/Internet Connection/Screen Memo/i-mode Shortcut : i-appli : ToruCa : Full Browser : My Picture (<i>Image</i>) : i-motion : Melody : Chara-den : My Document : Camera : Movie Camera : Sound Recorder : Bar Code Reader : Music Player : Phonebook : Received Calls : Redial : Answer Machine/Voice Memo : Own Number : Timer : Alarm Clock set/alarm sounding : Scheduler : Schedule alarm sounding	: Notepad : Calculator : Dictionaries : Data exchanging with external device : Setting reception method for infrared communication/saving to INBOX : (dark blue/gray) : Accessing/waiting for access to the miniSD memory card : (dark blue/gray) : In the miniSD mode (communication possible)/(USB cable unconnected/no miniSD memory card inserted) : (dark blue/gray) : Setting/holding each function : Software Update activated : Software Update notified : Update Definition activated/version display : Setting each network service : Accessing Data Center : Displaying communication log with Data Center

Reading the list screen

Example The setting screen for Color Scheme



The number of the currently displayed page and the total number of pages (when a list extends over multiple pages)

indicates that other selectable items exist above and below the highlighted item.

- Press to move the cursor.
- If you press on the last item of the page, the next page appears, and if you press on the first item of the page, the previous page appears.

indicates that selectable items exist over multiple pages.

- Press to switch between pages.
- You cannot switch between pages on the icon selection screen, etc.
- Color names are for information purpose only.

INFORMATION

- Note that the following cases may occur due to the characteristics of liquid crystal display (LCD) and they are not defects in FOMA terminal.
 - FOMA terminal display is manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit.
 - When the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal with the power turned on, residual images may remain for some time. Remove the battery pack with the power turned off.

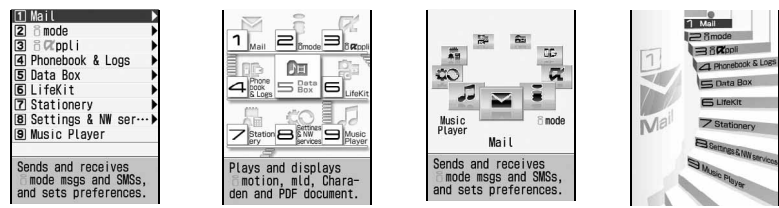
- When a screen has been displayed for a certain time, if you change it to another screen by performing some operations, residual images of the previous screen may remain.

Selecting the menu

In addition to the normal menu, the simple menu which offers popular features is provided. In the simple menu, the menu items are displayed in large letters. Also, you can create your original menu (Custom Menu ●P376).

Display format for the normal menu and the custom menu

Animation in the normal menu is set by default. Select from the following types (Menu Setting ●P146). The following screens are examples of the normal menu displayed when Style Theme is set to **Platinum**.



List view Tile display 3D display Animation*1

*1 Available only for the normal menu

- When the menu display format is set to **Animation**, a subsequent operation may not be performed until the animation stops.

Switching to the simple menu

Switch to Japanese display before performing these operations.

1



The normal menu is displayed.
 • When the custom menu is displayed:

2 Press



The simple menu is displayed.

■ Switching to the normal menu: on the standby display

- To switch to the custom menu:   on the standby display

Functions available on the simple menu

Some menus cannot be accessed from the simple menu.

Menu item	Shortcut	Menu item	Shortcut
でんわ		i モード	画面メモ   4 1
電話帳検索	 1 1	i チャネル一覧	  4 5
電話帳登録	 1 2	テロップ表示設定	  4 6
リダイヤル	 1 3	i アプリ	ソフト一覧   5 1
着信履歴	 1 4	待受画面設定	  5 2
伝言メモ一覧	 1 5	i アプリ設定	  5 3
自局番号	 1 6 /  0	データ	マイビクチャ   6 1
メール		BOX	i モーション   6 2
受信メール	 2 1	メロディ	  6 3
送信メール	 2 2	キャラ電	  6 4
未送信メール	 2 3	マイドキュメント	  6 5
新規メール	 2 4	設定／	音／バイブ   7 1
i モード問合せ	 2 5	ステー	ディスプレイ   7 2
カメラ		ショナ	目覚まし   7 3
カメラ	 3 1	リー	電卓   7 4
マイビクチャ	 3 2	i モード	伝言メモ設定   7 5
待受画面設定	 3 3	情報表示／リセット	  7 6
i モード		留守番電話	  7 7
i Menu	 4 1		
Bookmark	 4 2		
ラスト URL	 4 3		

When the simple menu is set

- During calling or talking, you can see how to adjust the volume of other party's voice.
- Enter a phone number to see the operation to be performed subsequently.
- In standby display, enter the phonebook No. (1 to 9) to see the registered names and phone numbers. Key operations for making voice calls/video phone calls are also shown. During voice calls, you can also press , select **ダイヤル入力** (Dial) and enter a phonebook number to see the same information.
- The characters in the redials, received calls, phonebook list/group list, member list/group list of the PushTalk phonebook, mail view screen, site, screen memo, message text entry screen and character entry screen (full-screen entry) are displayed in large font. When the simple menu is set, the font size cannot be changed.

INFORMATION

- You cannot switch FOMA terminal to the simple menu when English display is set in Select Language. Also, when you choose the simple menu, the setting for Select Language is not available.
- Even if you selected the simple menu, when you insert the UIM for which English display is specified as language, the menu will change to the normal one.

Selecting functions from the menu

Select menu items by the dial keys (Shortcut operations). Also, use the Speed Selector to select menu items.

- In this manual, the operation procedure is explained mainly in shortcut operations of the normal menu.
- When any lock function is set or the UIM is not inserted, some functions are disabled. The disabled functions are indicated by  or dimmed. However, if the menu display format is set to **Animation**, a message appears when menu items for the disable functions are selected.

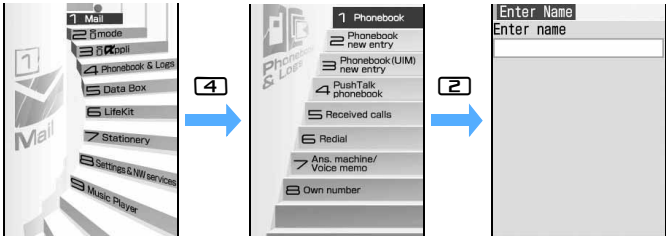
Selecting menu items with the dial keys (Shortcut operations)

Each menu item has a number (item number) and can be selected by pressing the corresponding key.

Example Executing *Phonebook new entry* from the normal menu

1 Press **4** **2**

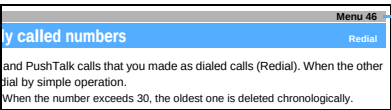
The phonebook registration screen is displayed.



When several shortcuts are available

When there are multiple shortcut operations using the normal menu, the shortcut operations other than described in the operating procedure are shown at the far right of the title in the body text.

Example For redialing



Press to show the menu, then press **4** and **6** to show the redial list.
• means pressing , and means pressing .

Selecting menu items with the Speed Selector

Example Executing *Phonebook new entry* from the normal menu (*Type1* of animation display)

1



- Highlighting the desired menu item in other than the animation display shows the description of the item's function.
- In case of the animation display, in the guide row is not displayed.

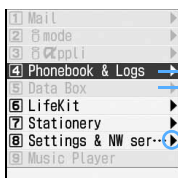
2 to highlight *Phonebook & Logs*

- In case of the animation display, the operations of differ depending on the animation design.

3 to highlight *Phonebook new entry* Press

The phonebook registration screen is displayed.

Selecting menu items (List view)



- Menu item that has been highlighted
- Menu item that cannot be selected (dimmed)
- Lower-level menu exists.

Press to highlight a menu item and press or .

- You can also select an item by the dial key for the item number.
- To return to the previous menu: or

Selecting menu items (Tile display)



When Type1 is set

Press to highlight a menu item and press .

- You can also select an item by the dial key for the item number.
- To return to the previous menu:

Selecting menu items (3D display)



Press to bring the desired item to the front of the icon ring and press .

- Press to move the icon at the rear to the front.
- You can also select an item by the dial key for the item number. Check the item numbers in the tile display or list view menu.

Selecting menu items (Simple menu)



Press to highlight a menu item and press or .

- You can also select an item by the dial key for the item number.
- To return to the previous menu: or

Returning to the standby display or previous screen

: Returns to the standby display.

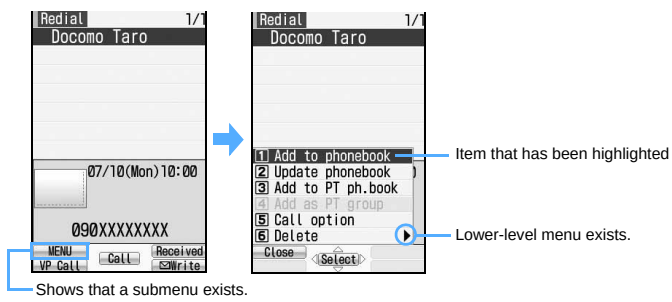
: Returns to the previous screen.

Selecting functions from the submenu

When **MENU** is displayed at the upper left of the guide row, you can use the submenu to perform various operations.

Example Displaying the Redial submenu

1 in the redial list



2 to highlight a submenu item ▶ Press or

- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number. Even for the same function, the item numbers may differ depending on the screen.
- To return to the previous menu:  or 
- To close the submenu: 

Setting each item on the screen

Selecting Yes or No on the confirmation screen

1 to highlight Yes or No ▶ Press

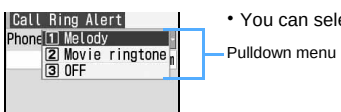


- For some functions, items other than **Yes** or **No** may appear.

Selecting an item from the pulldown menu

1 to highlight an item

2 to display the pulldown menu ▶ to highlight an item

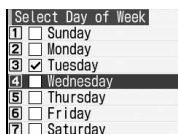


- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number.

3 Press

Selecting an item from the check box

1 to highlight a check box ▶ Press



The check box changes from ☐ to ☒, and is selected.

- Select the selected item (☒) to cancel the selection (☐)
- Depending on the function, you can select/cancel all items by pressing .
- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number.

Displaying information quickly

Focus Mode

When the icons such as  1 or  1 are displayed on the standby display, you can quickly display the information.

1 ▶ to highlight an icon such as 1 or 1



- The number of stored items is displayed at the right of each icon.
- To cancel Focus Mode:  or 
- When , , or  is displayed:  ▶  to highlight the icon

2 Press

The screen corresponding to the selected icon is displayed.

-  1 : The received call list is displayed, letting you check the date and time, the caller information, etc.
-  1 : The recorded message list is displayed, letting you play the recorded messages.
-  1 : The confirmation screen for playing voice mail messages is displayed, letting you play the messages.
-  1 : The received mail folder list is displayed, letting you check unread mail.
-  1 : The folder list of ToruCa is displayed and unread ToruCa can be checked.
-  /  (succeeded/failed):
The data of the latest pattern definition updated automatically can be checked. ●P462
-  : The setting for USB Mode Setting while the FOMA USB cable (optional) is connected can be checked. ●P342

INFORMATION

- When you highlight an icon and hold down  for over a second, the icon temporarily disappears from the screen. It reappears when new information is stored or the number of stored items changes by viewing information, etc. For the icon indicating voice mail messages, however, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to clear the icon. Select **Yes** to clear it temporarily.

Number of saved, registered and protected items in D902iS

Type		Maximum number of saved/registered items	Maximum number of protected items	Type	Maximum number of saved/registered items	Maximum number of protected items
Mail	Received mail*1,*2	1,000	500	i-appli*4	100	100
	Sent mail*1,*2	200	100	Image*1	1,000	—
	Unsent mail*1,*2	200	100	Melody*1	500	—
	Template*1	100	—	PDF data*1	100	—
SMS in the UIM*3		20	—	Video/i-motion/sound recorded with Sound Recorder*1	100	—
Message R*1		100	50			
Message F*1		50	25	Chara-den*1	50	—
Bookmark	i-mode	100	—	ToruCa*1	100	50
	Full Browser	100	—			
Screen memo*1		100	50			

*1 Depending on the size of data, the actual number of items that can be saved and registered may be fewer.
*2 The total number of i-mode Mail and SMS.
*3 The total number of sent and received SMS. The number of delivery report is not included.
*4 Up to 5 items of Message i-appli (as part of the 100 items, maximum number of i-appli that can be saved) can be saved. Depending on the i-appli size, the actual number of items that can be saved may be fewer.

INFORMATION

- Because the data saved in FOMA terminal may be lost due to failure, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal, it is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the important data in FOMA terminal. Please note that we are not responsible for any lost data.
- Depending on the function, the displayed size of data in FOMA terminal may differ slightly.
- It is recommended that you save the data stored in FOMA terminal such as mail, bookmarks, images, melodies or video/i-motion to the miniSD memory card. Exchangeable data ➡P336
- If you have a PC, you can use the FOMA D series data link software contained in the attached CD-ROM and the FOMA USB cable (optional) to transfer and save the data such as mail, bookmarks, images, melodies, video/i-motion to your PC.

Using the UIM (FOMA card)

Use the UIM (FOMA card) to store your phone number and other information.
Insert the UIM into FOMA terminal to use it.

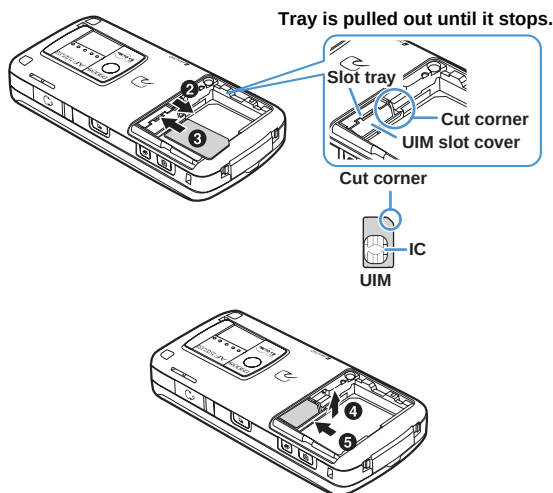
- For details on handling the UIM, refer to the UIM manual.

Inserting/removing the UIM

Use your FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted. If the UIM is not inserted in your FOMA terminal, first insert it.

- Before inserting or removing the UIM, turn the power off and remove the rear cover and battery pack.
Attaching/removing the rear cover and battery pack ➡P41
- Insert or remove the UIM with FOMA terminal closed using both hands.

Inserting the card



① Remove the rear cover and then the battery pack. ➡P41

② Pull out the UIM slot tray.

Place your finger on the slot cover and slide it out until the slot tray stops.

③ Insert the UIM into the slot with the IC side of the card facing down.

④ Lift the slot cover until its bottom is even with the slot tray.

Align the cut corner of the slot tray to the cut corner of the UIM.

⑤ Push the slot tray in until it stops.

⑥ Reattach the battery pack and then the rear cover. ➡P41

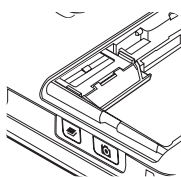
Removing the card

① Pull out the UIM slot tray.

- The operations are the same as ① to ② in "Inserting the card".

② Remove the UIM by sliding it out.

When the UIM slot tray is removed



Insert the UIM slot tray and push the tray straight in.

- Remove the UIM before replacing the slot tray.

INFORMATION

- Insert or remove the UIM carefully as forcing it may damage the card.
- Carefully handle the removed UIM so that it does not become lost.
- When attaching the battery pack, make sure that the UIM slot is in place. If not, you cannot attach the battery pack. Forcibly attaching the battery pack may damage the UIM or the UIM slot.
- When pushing the UIM slot in, make sure that the UIM is properly placed in the slot and the lid is flat. Forcibly pushing the slot into FOMA terminal may cause an operation error.

UIM security codes

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes are used for the UIM.

Both codes are set to "0000" at the time of subscription to the FOMA service. You can change this to any code (4 to 8 digits). ➡P156

UIM operation restriction function

FOMA terminal is provided with the UIM operation restriction function for protecting your data and files.

- When the data or files downloaded from sites or the data attached to mail are saved in FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted, the UIM operation restriction function is automatically set to these data or files.

- If the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal, the data or files with the UIM operation restriction function set cannot be displayed or played.
- The data or files with the UIM operation restriction function set cannot be copied/moved to the miniSD memory card or cannot be exchanged by infrared communication. However, i-motion compatible with Movable Contents can be moved to the miniSD memory card.
- The data which is subject to the restriction is as follows:
 - Screen memo
 - Image inserted in Deco-mail or signature
 - i-α ppli (including the i-α ppli standby display)
 - Image (including animation and Flash movie)
 - Melody
 - Recorded message for videophone call
 - Image of ToruCa (details)
 - Message R/F
 - File attached to i-mode Mail
 - i-motion
 - Chara-den
 - PDF data
 - Movie memo
 - Data compatible with Movable Contents
- For i-α ppli with the UIM operation restriction set, the following operations are disabled when the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal:
 - Start
 - Operation settings for i-α ppli
 - Changing the auto start function
 - Upgrade
 - Displaying the detail information of i-α ppli
 - Auto start
 - Setting the i-α ppli standby display

INFORMATION

- When the data with the UIM operation restriction function enabled is set for the standby display, call image or ring tone, the image and sound settings return to the default if the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal. In this case, the image and sound that are actually displayed/generated may differ from the settings. Inserting the UIM that was used when the data was downloaded cancels the operation restriction of the data and restores the original settings. (Note that the setting may be canceled if the data was used for Random Display Image.)
- The UIM operation restriction function is not set to the data obtained via infrared communication, the miniSD memory card or data link software or to the still images or videos taken with the built-in camera. The UIM operation restriction may not be set to some mail templates such as the one containing only text.
- When the UIM is inserted in other i-channel compatible terminals, the i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display. After that, if the information is updated automatically or if you press **CH/END** on the standby display to display the channel list, the latest information is received and then displayed as ticker on the standby display.
- When the UIM is not inserted, the i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display.

The settings saved into the UIM

The following settings are saved into the UIM. If the UIM is replaced, the settings saved in the new UIM become available.

- Font type, storage period in the SMS Center, SMSC, address, type of number set in SMS Setting
- DoCoMo certificate and user certificate set in Certificate Setting
- My phone number of Own Number
- Select Language
- The PIN1/PIN2 code of the UIM and PIN1 Code ON/OFF

Functional differences between the UIM types

There are 2 types of the UIM: green and blue. The functions differ depending on the type as shown below:

Item	UIM (green)	UIM (blue)	Page
Number of digits of a phone number that can be registered in the UIM phonebook	Up to 26 digits	Up to 20 digits	P110
Certificate Download for using FirstPass	Available	Unavailable	P217
WORLD WING service	Available	Unavailable	P41
Service Dialing Number	Calling DoCoMo for Repairs and DoCoMo for General Inquiries (DoCoMo Information Center) available	Unavailable	P396

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service. By taking out the UIM (green) from the FOMA terminal you normally use and inserting it into a FOMA terminal supporting the service or an overseas mobile phone (W-CDMA or GSM handset), you can make/receive calls in foreign countries with your own mobile phone number.

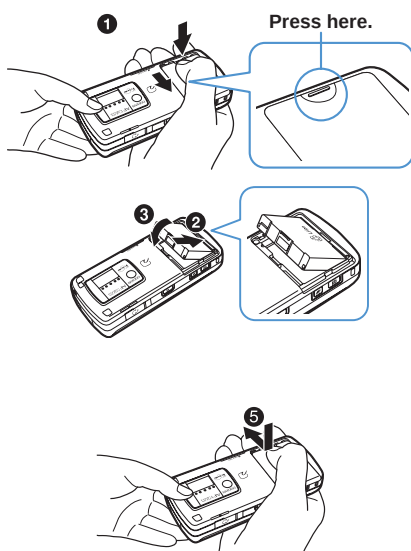
You can use WORLD WING without subscription.

- If you have not contracted WORLD WING for the FOMA service in the contract before August 31, 2005, a separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING.
- This service cannot be used with some billing plans.

Attaching/removing the battery pack

- Turn the power off before attaching or removing the battery pack. Also, attach or remove it with FOMA terminal closed using both hands.
- Be careful not to touch the camera lens.
- Use the specified battery pack D06.

Attaching the battery pack



① Remove the rear cover.

While pressing the top of the rear cover with your thumb, slide it in the direction of the arrow until it is removed.

② With the surface with the DoCoMo logo and the recycle mark of battery pack facing up, insert the battery pack into FOMA terminal at the angle as shown in the figure.

Do not force the battery pack terminals into FOMA terminal. Doing so could damage these terminals or the body connector.

③ Push the battery pack in.

④ Place the rear cover plate so that it can slide about 2 mm on FOMA terminal.

⑤ Slide the rear cover in the direction of the arrow pushing its center by fingers so that FOMA terminal and the rear cover do not gap.

Failure to follow the correct procedure could damage the rear cover.

Removing the battery pack



① Remove the rear cover.

② Lift the projection part of the battery pack and remove it.

INFORMATION

- The FOMA terminal display uses an active LCD. Due to the characteristics of active LCD, residual images or crossbar may remain for a while when the battery pack is attached or removed. This is not a fault of FOMA terminal.

Charging the battery of FOMA terminal

- When the battery level is low, charge the battery.
- The battery level icon shows how much charge remains in the battery. ●P45

Charging time and operation time on full charge (estimates)

Charging time	Continuous call time	Continuous standby time
Approx. 120 minutes	During a voice call: Approx. 170 minutes During a videophone call: Approx. 90 minutes	While standing still: Approx. 550 hours While moving: Approx. 380 hours

- Continuous call time is an estimate of call time for FOMA terminal when it can send or receive signals normally.
- Continuous standby time is an estimate of operation time of FOMA terminal when it is closed and able to receive signals normally. The call/standby time may be reduced to about half, depending on the amount of charge in the battery, the function settings, the ambient temperature and signal conditions (radio waves do not or hardly reach). Using i-mode communication reduces the call (communication)/standby time. Even if you do not make a call or use i-mode, the call (communication)/standby time will be reduced by composing i-mode Mail, or starting downloaded i-α ppli software or the i-α ppli standby display.
- Continuous standby time (while standing still) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal when it is standing still, closed and able to receive signals normally.
- Continuous standby time (while moving) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal that is standing still, moving and outside the service area when it is closed and able to receive signals normally.
- Alternatively, if you perform data communication or Multiaccess, use Camera or play video/i-motion (including music data), the call (communication)/standby time will be reduced.

Starting/ending charging and other items to note

The battery pack can be charged regardless of whether FOMA terminal is turned on or off. However, charging takes longer with the power turned on.

- When charging starts, the Enter key lights in red.
- When FOMA terminal is turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon blinks.

Icon	Enter key	Meaning
 (Charging: Blinks) (Charged: Lights)	Charging: Lights in red Charged: Goes off	Charging normally.

- The battery level icon differs depending on the color of FOMA terminal. You can also change it. ●P147
 - If the Enter key does not light in red at the start of charging or it flashes in red, charging is unsuccessful. The battery may not be charged when the temperature of FOMA terminal is high. Stop any function in progress and confirm that the temperature is low before charging again. If the battery pack still cannot be charged even after charging again, contact "Repairs" on the back of this manual.
 - When charging is completed, the Enter key goes off.
- When FOMA terminal is turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon lights.
- If the battery level icon blinks, charging is not completed.
 - You can set the charge alert not to sound. ●P134

- Do not charge the battery for an extended period (longer than a full day) with FOMA terminal turned on. FOMA terminal uses power so the adapter continues charging until FOMA terminal is unplugged from the adapter. In such a case, the AC or DC adapter charges again but when FOMA terminal is removed in the middle of charging, the following could occur:
 - Low battery level
 - Message appears indicating that the battery runs down.
 - FOMA terminal is operational for a short time.
- If the battery is fully charged, connecting FOMA terminal to the AC or DC adapter may not start charging.
- If you use FOMA terminal while charging the battery for an extended period with the AC or DC adapter connected, the battery may not be charged temporarily by temperature rise.
- Insert or remove the connector to/from FOMA terminal slowly and firmly without forcing it. When removing it, be sure to press the release buttons on both sides of the connector and pull it out. Forcibly pulling it could cause equipment failure.
- Insert or remove the AC adapter connector straight to/from FOMA terminal.

Battery pack life

The battery pack is a consumable part and will gradually wear out. Each time it is charged, it will accept slightly less charge than the previous time. When the battery charge lasts only half as long as when it was new, replace it with a new one. The battery pack life is about 1 year. This life may be shorter depending on the frequency of use.

- FOMA terminal uses a lithium ion battery containing valuable materials that should be recycled. To protect the environment, return used batteries to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, NTT DoCoMo agent or recycling center.
- Please take the following precautions when recycling batteries:
 - Attach a piece of adhesive tape on the terminals of used battery packs
 - Do not disassemble or modify battery packs



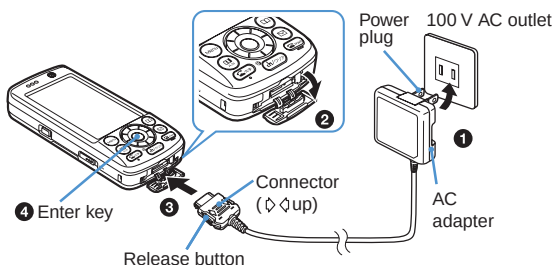
Charging from a wall outlet

Use the FOMA AC adapter 01 (optional) to charge the battery. Also it can be used with the desktop holder D09 (optional).

You can charge the battery with FOMA terminal either closed or open.

- The battery pack can only be charged when it is attached to FOMA terminal.
- For details, refer to the manuals for the AC adapter and the desktop holder.

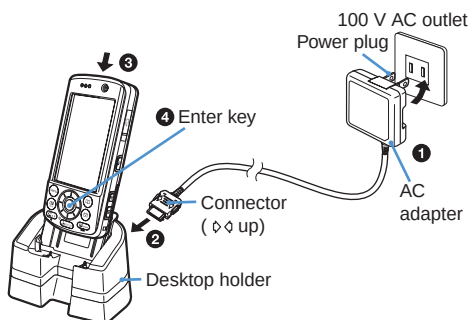
■ Charging the battery with the AC adapter alone



- 1 **Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100 V AC outlet.**
- 2 **Open the external connection terminal cap of FOMA terminal.**
- 3 **Insert the AC adapter connector in firmly until it clicks.**
- 4 **Check that charging starts.**

Check that the Enter key lights in red. When charging is completed, remove the AC adapter connector from FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and unplug the AC adapter from the outlet. Then, close the terminal cap.

■ Charging the battery in the desktop holder



① Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100 V AC outlet.

② Insert the AC adapter connector in the desktop holder until it clicks.

③ Along with the desktop holder, insert FOMA terminal at the angle as shown in the figure.

④ Check that charging starts.

Check that the Enter key lights in red. When charging is completed, remove FOMA terminal from the desktop holder by tilting it to the front while holding the desktop holder by hand.

- When inserting FOMA terminal into the desktop holder, be careful not to put a strap in the holder.
- When FOMA terminal is not inserted firmly or it leans, the battery is not charged normally. Insert FOMA terminal until it is locked certainly.

Charging in a car

Use the FOMA DC adapter 01 (optional) to charge the battery in a car. It can be used with negative ground cars (both 12 V and 24 V).

- For details, refer to the DC adapter manual.

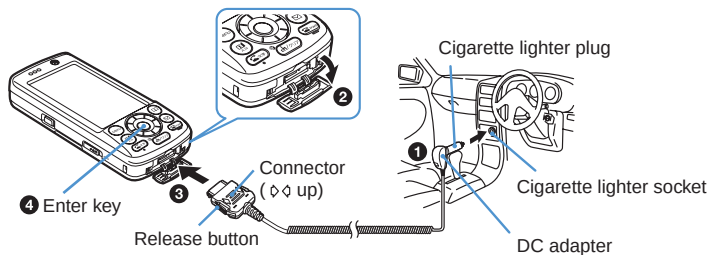
① Insert the cigarette lighter plug of the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket of the car.

② Turn off the power of FOMA terminal and open the external connection terminal cap.

③ Insert the DC adapter connector firmly until it clicks.

④ Check that charging starts.

When charging is completed, remove the DC adapter connector from FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and remove the cigarette lighter plug from the cigarette lighter socket. Then, close the terminal cap.



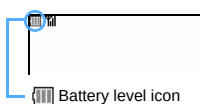
INFORMATION

- If you charge FOMA terminal with the car engine off, the car battery may be discharged. Charge the battery when the car engine is running.
- When not charging, remove the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket.
- The DC adapter fuses (2A) are consumable items. New fuses are available at automotive supply stores.

Checking the remaining battery level

Battery Level

The display indicates an estimate of the remaining battery level in 3 levels.



Battery level icon

(Level 3): Amply charged

(Level 2): Charging decreased

(Level 1): Recharging recommended

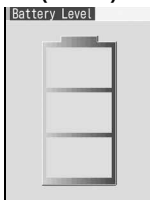
- The battery level icon differs depending on the color of FOMA terminal. You can also change it. [P147](#)

Checking the remaining battery level by sound and display

1

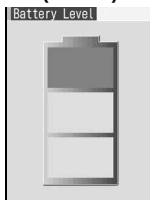


(Level 3)



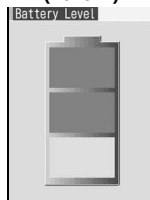
Sounds 3 times.

(Level 2)



Sounds twice.

(Level 1)



Sounds once.

The remaining battery level is displayed. The confirmation sound rings by the sound set in Keypad Sound.

When the battery almost runs down

A message appears or a low battery alert sounds to indicate that the battery level is low. Charging the battery stops the low battery alert. To stop it immediately, press .

- In standby, a message indicating low battery appears. The message disappears by pressing , , or , but after a period of time, it reappears and the low battery alert sounds. At this time, all the icons on the top of the screen blink and after approximately 1 minute, the power turns off automatically.
- During a call, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece and a message indicating low battery appears. The message disappears by pressing , , or . When approximately 20 seconds elapse after the low battery alert is heard, the call is cut off and the standby display reappears. Then, after approximately 1 minute, the power turns off automatically.

Setting the low battery alert not to sound

Low Battery Alert

Default ON

1



2

Press

- To set the alert:

INFORMATION

- When the battery almost runs down during a call, even if **OFF** is set, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece.

Turning the power on/off

Power ON/OFF

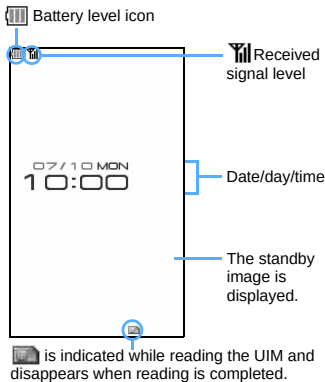
- When FOMA terminal is turned on for the first time, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to perform Software Update. Note that the battery needs to be charged enough when performing. Please be sure to refer to "Updating software" before performing. [P457](#)

Next

Turning the power on

1 Hold down for over 2 seconds

The wake-up screen appears and then the standby display is displayed. Displaying the wake-up screen may take some time.



Icon					
Received signal level	Strong  Weak				Outside the service area and where radio waves are hard to reach

- If the date and time have not been set, a message indicating that is displayed. When FOMA terminal receives the time information and the time is automatically corrected, the message disappears. Press  to set the date and time manually.
- If no UIM is inserted, a message indicating that insertion of the UIM is required is displayed. Turn the power off, insert the UIM and then turn the power back on.
- The following items can be changed:
 - Standby image P136
 - Battery level icon P147
 - Time display format P151

Turning the power off

1 Hold down for over 2 seconds

INFORMATION

- When you turn on the power of FOMA terminal after replacing the UIM (except when Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is set), entry of the 4 to 8-digit terminal security code is required. After entering the correct PIN1 code, the standby display appears. If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is turned off (can be turned on again).
 - Calls may be cut off even when  is indicated and you are not moving.
 - When PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set to **ON**, entry of the PIN1 code is required.
 - When Reset Call Cost is set to **ON**, entry of the PIN2 code is required.
 - When **Normal use of Display light time** in Display Light Setting is set to other than **Always**, if you do not press any keys for about 90 seconds, the display disappears. This also applies during a voice call. If there is any key operation*1 (except rotating the Speed Selector) or an incoming call, the display appears again.
 - The display does not disappear in following cases: during a videophone call, when the shooting screen of Camera/Movie Camera is displayed, while shooting, while charging with **AC adapter connected** of **Display light time** set to **Always on**, or while executing the function for which **Display light time** is set to **Always on**.
- *1 Pressing dial keys does not enter numbers, except during a call.

Switching to English display Select Language

Default Japanese

1     

2 Press 

- To switch to Japanese display: 

INFORMATION

- The setting is saved in the UIM.

Setting the date and time

Date and Time Setting

The time setting can be performed in 2 ways: obtaining the time information from DoCoMo network to adjust the time setting of FOMA terminal, or manually entering the current time to the terminal.

Default **Auto time adjust: ON** **Offset: +, 00h00m**

1    

2 Select each item to set



- When you set **Auto time adjust** to **ON**, **Offset** can be set. **Date** and **Time** cannot be set.

Auto time adjust : Set whether to perform the automatic time correction.

- To enter the date and time manually, set **Auto time adjust** to **OFF**.

Offset : Specify the amount of time advance (+) or delay (-) so that your terminal's clock advances from/delays to the time obtained for a given length of time.

- Enter the time between 00h00m and 23h59m.
- Prefix 0 if the hour and/or minute is a single digit (0 to 9).

Date, Time : Set the date and time.

- Enter the year by the last 2 digits of the year. From January 1, 2000 to December 31, 2050 can be set.
- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock (00h00m to 23h59m).
- Prefix 0 if the month, date, hour and/or minute is a single digit (0 to 9).
- The entered numbers can also be increased or decreased with . Also, highlight the number with  to change to enter it.

3 Press

When the automatic time correction is set

The automatic time correction takes place when the UIM is inserted and you turn the power on in a location where radio waves reach.

- The automatic time correction sometimes causes a time error of several seconds. In addition, it may fail to correct the time depending on the radio wave condition.
- If the time information is received while i-α ppli is running, the time may not be corrected depending on the i-α ppli.
- When **Auto time adjust** is set to **ON**, the time may not be corrected for a while. To enable the automatic time correction, turn the power off and then on.
- When no UIM is inserted or FOMA terminal is out of the service area, the automatic time correction is not performed even if you turn the power off and then on.

INFORMATION

- You cannot use the following functions when the date and time are not set:

- Auto Power ON/OFF
- i-α ppli auto start 
- Scheduler (including data transfer and display of data on the miniSD memory card)
- Downloading and playing i-motion with replay restrictions set 
- Software Update
- Random Display Image (when **Chang image** is set to other than **Open slide** or **Speed selector**)
- Alarm Clock
- i-α ppli DX 
- Update Definition
- Certificate Download 
- Flash movie which uses the date and time setting
- SSL communication (authentication)

- If the date and time are not set, the date and time are not recorded for the following functions and "----/--/--" or "-----" is displayed. A number to segmentalize (segmental number) may be appended.

- Redial/Received Calls
 - Answer Machine/Voice Memo
 - Notepad
 - Date and time of still image/video shot with the camera ➡P174
 - Date and time of sent mail/unsent mail ➡P248
 - Date and time of sound recorded with Sound Recorder ➡P352
 - Date and time of the last reset of call duration/call cost
 - Date and time in the file name of data scanned by Bar Code Reader ➡P193
 - Date and time of downloaded i-appli (detail information) ➡P274
 - Date and time of receiving ToruCa ➡P297
 - Date and time of saved/registered still image, melody, Chara-den, i-motion or mail template ➡P344, P237
- The set time is retained even when the battery pack is replaced, but may be reset if the battery pack is removed for an extended period. In that case, set the date and time again.
 - When Reset Call Cost is set to **ON**, entry of the terminal security code is required.

Notifying your phone number to the other party

Caller ID Notification

Set FOMA terminal to send your phone number (caller ID) to be displayed on the other party's phone every time you make a call.

- The caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone can display the caller ID.
- Caller ID Notification cannot be set outside the service area. Set in a location with good radio reception.
- For details, see "Network Services User's Guide".

1

Menu 8 9 5 1

- To check the current setting: Menu 8 9 5 2 ▶ Select **Yes**

2

Enter the network security code ▶ Press 1

- The network security code entered is masked with “* ”.
- To hide the caller ID: 2

- INFORMATION
- You can also use the following ways to show/hide the caller ID.
 - Setting to show/hide the caller ID for each phonebook entry ➡P121
 - Setting to show/hide the caller ID when making a call ➡P57, P58
 - If you hear a guidance requesting your caller ID when you make a call, call back after setting to send caller ID.
 - When setting/operating multiple caller ID notification methods at the same time, the caller ID is notified in the following priority. However, the setting of showing/hiding the caller ID shown on the display may be different from the actual setting.
 - ① When you set the caller ID notification method in Call Option when making a call ➡P58
 - ② When “186”/“184” is appended before the other party's phone number
 - ③ When Caller ID Setting is set to a phonebook entry
 - ④ When Caller ID Notification is set
 - Set Caller ID Notification for PushTalk calls in PT Caller ID Notification.

Menu 48

Checking your own phone number

Own Number

Check your phone number (**My phone number**), name, mail address, etc.

Default My phone number: subscribed phone number Other than that: not recorded

1

Press Menu 0

- The phone number of the UIM inserted in FOMA terminal is displayed for **My phone number**.
- To check your i-mode Mail address: 1 to display iMenu → Select **ENGLISH** → 4Options → 1Mail Settings → Confirm Mail Address

- INFORMATION
- To check your phone number during a call: 0 0

Making/Receiving Calls

Making calls

Making calls	50
Switching from a voice call to a videophone call	53
Setting Chaku-moji	Chaku-moji 54
Calling back previously called numbers	Redial 56
Setting whether to send your phone number for each call	186/184 Call 57
Making calls by setting the conditions	Call Option 58
Using international calls	WORLD CALL 58
Making a call by specifying a sub-address	Sub Address 60
Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of interrupted call	Reconnect Alarm 61
Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality	Noise Reduction 61
Talking without using hands in a car	In-car Handsfree 62

Receiving calls

Receiving calls	62
Receiving a call by switching from a voice call to a videophone call	64
Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call	Any Key Answer 65
Setting to start talking by opening FOMA terminal	Open Answer 65
Disconnecting/continuing/holding a call by closing FOMA terminal	Close Setting 65
Using Received Calls	Received Calls 66
Adjusting the volume of the other party's voice during a call	Listen Volume 68
Adjusting the volume of ring alerts and other sounds emitted from FOMA terminal	Adjust Volume 68
Setting for incoming voice/videophone/PushTalk calls	Call Alert/Videophone Alert/PushTalk Alert 70
Setting the priority screen for incoming calls during a call or packet communication	Priority Comm Mode 70

When you can/could not answer a call

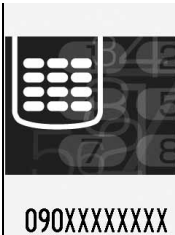
Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away	Response and Hold 71
Setting the response hold guidance	Status Message 72
Setting the on-hold tone	On-hold Tone 72
Using Public mode (Driving mode)	Public mode (Driving mode) 73
Using Public mode (power off)	74
Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call	Answer Machine 75

Making calls

The operations common to voice calls and videophone calls are explained here.

- Do not cover the built-in antenna with your hands during a call.

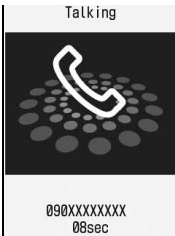
1 Enter the phone number



Calling general subscriber phones	Always include the area code even when calling from the same city.
Calling mobile phones	090 - XXXX - XXXX, 080 - XXXX - XXXX
Calling PHS phones	070 - XXXX - XXXX

- Up to 80 digits can be entered. However, only 24 digits are displayed.
- To correct the phone number:
- To return to the standby display: (for over a second)

2



You will hear a dial tone. You can start talking when the call is answered.

- If the phone of the other party is busy, you will hear a busy signal. Press to end the call and call again later. You can call back quickly using Redial.
- If the power of the other party's mobile phone or PHS is turned off or the other party is in an area where radio waves are hard to reach, a guidance informs that the connection is unavailable.

3 Press when you finish the call

- To end the call by closing FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting.

INFORMATION

- You can also make a call in order of Step 2, Step 1. A voice call will be made automatically about 5 seconds after you have pressed and entered the phone number.
- If a guidance requesting your caller ID is heard when a call is made, call again after setting FOMA terminal to send caller ID.
- When you subscribe to the Multi Number service, you can call after selecting a registered multi-number. ●P397

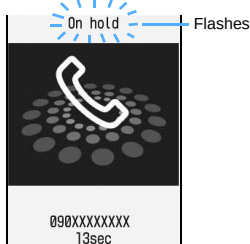
Putting calls on hold while talking

On-hold

Putting the call on hold while talking allows you to talk without the other party hearing your voice.

- Callers are charged for the time spent on hold.

1 Press during a call



Voice call on hold



Videophone call on hold

The call is put on hold and a guidance (on-hold tone) is played. For videophone calls, the on-hold image is displayed on your and the other party's terminals.

- Press  or  while a voice call is on hold to cancel the hold.
- Press  while a videophone call is on hold to cancel the hold and send the image that has been sent before the hold. Press  to cancel the hold and send your image to the other party and press  to cancel the hold and send a substitute image.
- To put the call on hold by closing FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting.

Using the speakerphone function

You can make a call allowing the other party's voice to be heard through the speaker.

1 Enter the phone number ► Hold down for over a second

- To make a videophone call: Enter the phone number ► . If **Speakerphone** is set to **OFF** in Videophone Settings, press  for over a second.
- When you make a videophone call, the speakerphone function is automatically turned on. To make a videophone call without turning on the speakerphone function, change the setting in Videophone Settings.
- You can turn on/off the speakerphone function by pressing  while dialing or calling, and by pressing  or  during a call.
-  is displayed at the top of the display while the speakerphone function is on.
- The operation is the same as when operating from the list of the phonebook, redials, received calls, recorded messages and voice memos.
- To make a PushTalk call: Enter the phone number ►  (for over a second)
- When you make a PushTalk call with FOMA terminal closed, the speakerphone function is automatically turned on.

■ Adjusting the speakerphone volume: during a voice call ► to adjust the volume

- During a videophone call:  ►  to adjust the volume
- The setting is retained even after the call is ended, and is also reflected to the volume of playback sound for recorded videophone call messages.

INFORMATION

- When the speakerphone function is turned on, the volume may suddenly increase and damage your ears, so use it with FOMA terminal away from your ears.
- If a call is hard to hear with a large amount of noise around you or the other party, turn off the speakerphone function.
- Talk to FOMA terminal within about 30 cm.
- When a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) is connected to FOMA terminal, use the connected device to communicate.
- The speakerphone function can be used even when Silent Mode is on.

Operations available from the submenu during a voice call

Submenu item	Description	Page
1 Switch to V-phone	Switches from a voice call to a videophone call.	P53
2 Received calls	Displays received calls.	P66
3 Redial	Displays redials.	P56
4 Set time	Sets the date and time.	P47
5 Reconnect alarm*1	Allows setting an alarm indicating reconnection of a call under improved signal quality which has been cut off due to poor signal quality.	P61
6 Quality alarm*1	Sets whether to sound an alarm when your call is about to be cut off due to poor signal quality.	P134
7 Terminal close	Sets the operations (whether the call is disconnected, continued or held) when FOMA terminal is closed during a call.	P65
8 Dial up	Allows making a call to another party during a call using Call Waiting Service.	P393
9 Listen volume	Adjusts the earpiece volume.	P68

*1 The setting can be changed while an alarm is sounding. It becomes effective when the alarm is stopped.

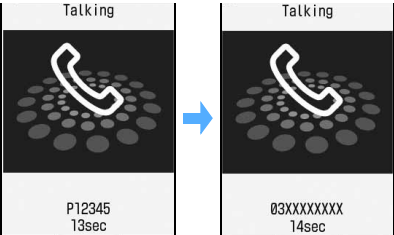
- The following key operations are available during a call:
 - ⏮ : Adjust the volume
 - ⏪ : Display received calls
 - ⏭ : Display redials
 - 📷 : Activate Camera
 - 📖 : Start the phonebook
 - 🗣 (for over a second): Record the other party's voice (Talking Voice Memo)

Entering pauses or timed pauses

Pauses and timed pauses are available only for voice calls.

Example Calling to "03XXXXXXXXXP12345" (P=Entered pause)

When you press 📞 after the call is connected, the numbers after the pause are dialed.



Entering a pause "P"

A pause (P) is used for sending messages to beepers*, operating the answering system at home, reserving tickets, etc. At the point the pause (P) is entered, the dial digits are separated and tone signals (DTMF) are sent.

1 Hold down * for over a second

- You cannot make a call if a pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

Entering a timed pause "T"

A timed pause (T) is used to dial outside line numbers with extensions. Enter "T" between the outside line and extension numbers to dial the extension number after a set number of seconds following the outside line number.

1 Hold down **[#]** for over a second

- Timed pauses can be entered in succession.
- Each timed pause is followed by a second interval.
- You cannot make a call if a timed pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

INFORMATION

- Tone signals (DTMF) may not be received depending on the receiving device.
- You cannot make a call to another party by putting the current call on hold and entering a pause (P) or timed pause (T).
- When it is necessary to send tone signals (DTMF) following voice prompts as in making ticket reservations, the speakerphone function is useful. In this case, input tone signals (DTMF) after turning on the speakerphone function.

Switching from a voice call to a videophone call

You can switch to a videophone call by operating from the submenu during a voice call when the other party's terminal can switch calls. Switching can be performed only from the terminal which made the voice call.

- This operation can be performed between the terminals that support switching between voice call/ videophone call.
- To switch to a videophone call, the other party needs to set **Indication ON** of Notify Switchable Mode in advance. ➡P93

1 **[Menu]** **[1]** during a voice call ➡ Select **Yes**



- A guidance informing that the call is being switched is played during switching.
- Select **No** to return to the voice call talking screen.
- When **Speakerphone** is set to **ON** in Videophone Settings, the speakerphone function is automatically turned on when the call is switched to a videophone call.

INFORMATION

- During packet communication, disconnect the packet communication and switch to a videophone call.
- When the other party is during packet communication, the call cannot be switched to a videophone call.
- While talking on the phone using Call Waiting Service, you cannot switch the call to a videophone call.
- It takes about 5 seconds to switch. In addition, it may take longer to switch depending on radio wave conditions.
- Depending on radio wave conditions, a voice call and videophone call may not be switched and the call may be disconnected.
- A second call received while switching calls is rejected.
- The speakerphone function is turned on/off every time a voice call and videophone call are switched.
- The settings (such as switching the cameras or selecting the frame) during a videophone call are canceled every time a voice call and videophone call are switched.
- According to the call duration of a voice call and videophone call, the call charges are added up, respectively.
- The call is not charged while **Switching...** is displayed.
- Switching from a videophone call to a voice call ➡P82

Setting Chaku-moji

Chaku-moji

You can have a message (Chaku-moji) displayed on the incoming screen of the other party's terminal for outgoing voice/video phone calls, letting him/her know what the matter is in advance. Also, whether to display Chaku-moji for incoming calls with Chaku-moji can be set.



- Supporting models: 902iS series
- Senders are charged, but receivers are not charged.
- Received Chaku-moji is registered in the received call history.

Chaku-moji is displayed on the incoming screen of the other party's terminal. When the call is answered, the Chaku-moji is cleared.

Editing and setting for Chaku-moji messages

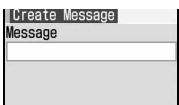
Creating a Chaku-moji message

- Up to 10 messages can be registered.

1



2 Select <New message>



- Using the sent message history:
 - ①
 - ② Select a Chaku-moji message
- Deleting:
 - ① Highlight a Chaku-moji message
 - To delete all:
 - ② Select Yes

3 Enter a Chaku-moji message (up to 10 one-byte or two-byte characters)

- Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols, and pictograms can be entered.

4 Press

- When you have edited a registered Chaku-moji message, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to register it. Select Yes to overwrite.

Making the Chaku-moji reception setting Message Display Setting

Default Only with Caller ID

1     

2 Press any of  to 

Display all : Displays all Chaku-moji.

Hide all : Hides Chaku-moji.

Only from stored No. : Displays Chaku-moji only from a party registered in the phonebook.

Only with Caller ID : Displays Chaku-moji only from a party with the caller ID.

Making a call by attaching a Chaku-moji message

- Up to 10 messages can be recorded in the sent message history. When the number of recorded messages exceeds 10, they are deleted, oldest first.

1 Enter the phone number  

2 Select *Chaku-moji* field  Select a Chaku-moji message



■ **Canceling Chaku-moji:** 

■ **Creating/editing a message:**   **Create a Chaku-moji message**

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Creating a Chaku-moji message".
- ➡ P54

■ **Selecting a registered message:**   **Select a Chaku-moji message**

■ **Selecting from the sent message history:**   **Select a Chaku-moji message**

3   **Select Yes**

- When the Chaku-moji is received by the other party's terminal, **Transmission completed** is displayed and transmission fee is charged.
- When the Chaku-moji is sent to an incompatible terminal or is not received due to Message Display Setting of the other party's terminal, **Transmission failed** is displayed and transmission fee is not charged.

INFORMATION

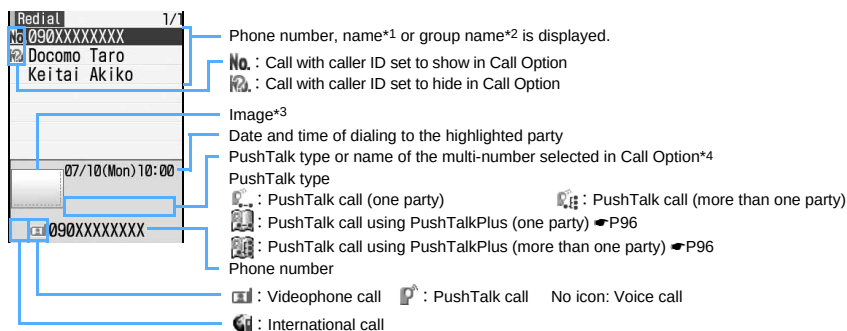
- PushTalk does not support Chaku-moji.
- If the receiver is in one of the following cases, the sent Chaku-moji is not received and the call is not recorded in the received call history of the receiver's terminal. In addition, the transmission result is not displayed on the sender's screen. In this case, transmission fee is not charged.
 - Outside the service area or the terminal is turned off
 - In Public mode (Driving mode)
 - When the response time of Answer Machine is set to 0 second, etc.
- Even when Chaku-moji is received, the transmission result may not be displayed on the sender's screen depending on radio wave conditions. In this case, the sender is charged for the transmission.
- When a call with Chaku-moji is received within the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting, the Chaku-moji is displayed and the call is registered in the received call history. In this case, the sender is charged for the transmission.
- You cannot send or receive Chaku-moji when using FOMA terminal overseas.

Calling back previously called numbers

This function records the calls and PushTalk calls that you made as dialed calls (Redial). When the other party is busy, etc., you can redial by simple operation.

- Up to 30 calls are recorded. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted chronologically.

1 Highlight a party in the redial list



*1 When the phone number is registered in the phonebook (while not in Secret Mode, the phone number is displayed if it is registered in a phonebook entry with Secret Attribute)

*2 When a PushTalk call was made to a group (the first member's name for a PushTalk call to multiple parties)

*3 When the image is registered in the phonebook (the first member's image for a PushTalk call to multiple parties)

*4 When you subscribe to the Multi Number service (the name of the basic number or additional number used when you dialed)

- To switch between the redial/received call lists:
- To display the list of PushTalk call parties: Highlight a PushTalk redial
- You can also perform the following operations such as phonebook registration from the list of PushTalk call parties.

■ Registering an entry in the phonebook:

① Highlight a redial 1

- To add to an existing phonebook entry: 2
- For a PushTalk call to multiple parties, select the party.

② or 2 ▶ Register the name or address P107, P110

- To add to an existing phonebook entry: 1 or 2 ▶ Select the party ▶ Edit the data P118

■ Registering an entry in the PushTalk phonebook: Highlight a redial 3 ▶ Select Yes

- The party cannot be registered if not registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- For a PushTalk call to multiple parties, press 3, select the party, press and then select Yes.

■ Registering entries in a group in the PushTalk phonebook:

When you made a PushTalk call to multiple parties who are registered in the PushTalk phonebook, you can register these parties as a PushTalk group from the redial data.

① Highlight a redial 4

② Enter a group name

■ Composing SMS: Highlight a redial (for over a second)

The SMS composition screen with the redial phone number specified as the address is displayed.

- If the redial phone number is saved in the phonebook together with mail addresses, pressing displays the i-mode Mail composition screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, the i-mode Mail composition screen is displayed with the redial phone number specified as the address.
- For PushTalk redial, the above applies when there is only one party.

2 Press (for voice call) or (for videophone call)

- To make a PushTalk call: 
- To make a call with the same call type as the highlighted redial: 
 - For a 32K videophone call, the call is made at 64K when redialing.

INFORMATION

- You can make calls by setting conditions. P58
- When you switch between a voice call and videophone call during a call, the call type (voice call/videophone call) that was specified when you dialed will be recorded in the redial data.
- When the date and time have not been set, the date and time are not recorded in the redial data.
- When voice/videophone calls are made to the same number, only the most recent call is recorded for each caller ID preference: show, hide or no setting. When a PushTalk call is made to the same number, the call is recorded as a separate record.
- Selecting a multi-number registered for Multi Number P397

Deleting redials

Delete Redial

1

2 Highlight a redial

- To delete all:   
- You can also perform the same operation from the list of PushTalk call parties.

3 Select Yes

Setting whether to send your phone number for each call

186/184 Call

Set whether to make your phone number (caller ID) to be displayed on the other party's phone when you make a call.

- The caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone can display caller ID.

Making calls by adding "186"/"184" to the phone numbers

Prefix a specific number to the beginning of the phone number when you make a call.

■ **Showing your caller ID:**     Enter the phone number   (for voice call) or  (for videophone call)

■ **Hiding your caller ID:**     Enter the phone number   (for voice call) or  (for videophone call)

INFORMATION

- If a guidance requesting your caller ID is heard when you make a call, call again by adding "186".
- For international calls, the caller ID may not be notified depending on the phone company that handles a call even if "186" is added.
- When making a call by adding "186"/"184" to the other party's phone number, the phone number with "186"/"184" added is recorded in the redial data.
- Caller ID notification priority P48

Making calls by setting the conditions

Call Option

This function allows you to create or select Chaku-moji, select a multi-number, select the call type, show/hide your caller ID, and append a prefix or international code for each voice/videophone call.

- When calling to a PushTalk group, you can set only the call type and whether to show/hide your caller ID.

1 Enter the phone number

■ **Making an international call:** Enter the country code ▶ phone number  

- For international calls, dial without 0 when the area code begins with 0 (when calling to a general subscriber phone and other phones in Italy, you need to dial 0).

2 Select each item to set the dialing conditions

Chaku-moji : Create or select the Chaku-moji message to be sent to the other party. 

Multi-No : Select the number to be notified to the other party from the basic number or additional numbers. 

Call type : Select from *Voice call*, *64K V.phone*, *32K V.phone* or *PushTalk*.

- When *PushTalk* is selected, only *Caller ID* can be set.

Caller ID : Set to show/hide caller ID.

- Caller ID notification priority , Caller ID notification priority for PushTalk 

Prefix : Select the number (prefix) to be appended before the phone number.

- Prefix 

International Call :

Select the name of international code.

- Int'l Dial Setting 

3 ▶ Select Yes

A call is made by the settings.

- When you select *64K V.phone* or *32K V.phone* in *Call type*, press  and select *Yes* to select Chara-den to be displayed during a videophone call.

INFORMATION

- In the redial list, received call list, recorded message list, voice memo list, details screen of Own Number, member list/group list of the PushTalk phonebook, or member list for schedule, press  and select *Call option*.
- In the FOMA terminal phonebook list/details screen or the UIM phonebook list/details screen, highlight a phone number, press  and select *Mail/Call option* → *Call option*.
- For international calls, the caller ID may not be notified depending on the phone company that handles a call even when *Notify* is selected for *Caller ID*.

Using international calls

WORLD CALL

DoCoMo international call service “WORLD CALL”

- The international call service “WORLD CALL” is available for DoCoMo mobile phones.
- How to call

      ▶    ▶ Enter the country code ▶ area code ▶ phone number ▶ 

- The above phone number can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- When the area code begins with “0”, dial without “0” (when calling to a general subscriber phone and other phones in Italy, you need to dial “0”).

- You can call to approximately 220 countries and regions around the world.
- WORLD CALL charges are added to the FOMA service charges every month.
- No subscription charges or monthly fee is required.
 - You were subscribed to "WORLD CALL" as one of standard services at the time of subscription to the FOMA service (unless you request not to subscribe to it).
- Changes in international call dialing procedure
MY LINE service is not applicable to mobile phone communications, including WORLD CALL service. However, along with the introduction of MY LINE service, the dialing procedure for international calls using a mobile phone was changed. Consequently, the previous dialing procedure (without prefix "010") no longer be used.
- Contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for details.
 - To use international call services other than the DoCoMo service, contact each carrier for details.
- This service cannot be used with some billing plans.

"International videophone" calls to parties using specific overseas 3G mobile phone terminals can be made by dialing as described above and placing a call in the videophone mode.

- For the countries and overseas carriers you can connect to, visit the DoCoMo website.
- The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the terminal at the other end of the international videophone line.

Using "WORLD CALL" by simplified dialing

Int'l Dial Setting

When the auto assist setting is set to **Auto assist ON** in this setting, entering "+" when you make an international call automatically adds the preset international code to the phone number. This allows you to make international calls easily.

- If you dial by prefixing "+" to the country code of Japan "81", the international code is not added.

Setting the auto assist setting

Default Auto assist ON

1 (Menu) 8 6 7 3 1

2 Press 1

- To cancel the setting: 2

Registering an international code

- Up to 3 international codes can be registered.

Default Name: World Call Prefix: 009130010

1 (Menu) 8 6 7 3 2

2 Highlight <Not recorded> ► (Menu) 2

3 Enter a name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ► Enter a code (up to 10 digits) ► (□)

4 Press (□)

Setting the international code

Select the international code that will be added automatically when “+” is entered.

1      

■ **Confirming the registered information: Highlight an item** ▶  

■ **Editing: Highlight an item** ▶   ▶ **Edit the data**

- You can also edit by pressing  on the confirmation screen of registered information. Follow the procedure from Step 3 in “Registering an international code”. ◀ P59

■ **Deleting: Highlight an item** ▶   ▶ **Select Yes**

- You cannot delete the international code that is automatically added.

2 **Select an item**

3 **Press** 

Making a call easily by using Int'l Dial Setting

1  (for over a second) ▶ **Enter the country code** ▶ **phone number** ▶  ▶ **Select**
Yes

Setting numbers other than “WORLD CALL”

Prefix

By registering the number (prefix) to add to the beginning of the phone number in advance, you can add a prefix after entering the phone number to make an international call easily.

- The default setting is “009130010” for DoCoMo’s international calls.

 **Default** | 009130010

1     

2 **Select *Prefix* 1 to 3 field** ▶ **Enter a number**

- Up to 3 numbers in total and up to 10 digits for each number can be entered.
- Do not include a pause or timed pause in the number (prefix). If you set a prefix containing a pause or timed pause, you cannot add the prefix when making a call.
- “009130010” can be changed.

3 **Press** 

Making a call by specifying a sub-address

Sub Address

Specify a sub-address to call a specific phone or communication device.

- This setting is also used to select the contents in a video delivery service, “V-Live”.

Enabling use of a sub address

Default ON

1     

2 Press 

- To cancel the setting: 

Making a call by specifying a sub-address

1 Enter the phone number ►  ► Enter the sub-address

2 Press  (for voice call) or  (for videophone call)

- The sub-address needs to be set on the other party's phone or communication device.

INFORMATION

- Even when Sub Address is ON, if "✱" is entered after entering a pause, timed pause or "#", it is not recognized as a sub-address delimiter and sent as tone signals (DTMF) containing "✱".

Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of interrupted call

Reconnect Alarm

Set an alarm that is heard at the time of reconnecting a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call interrupted due to poor signal conditions in a tunnel or behind a building when signal conditions improve.

- The other party hears no sound while signals are disrupted.
- The time until the call is reconnected depends on line use or signal conditions. (The approximate time is a maximum of 10 seconds.)
- Note that the call is charged for the time until the call is reconnected (up to 10 seconds).
- The call may be cut off before the alarm sounds depending on line use or signal conditions.

Default High alarm

1       ► Press any of  to 

Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality

Noise Reduction

By suppressing ambient noises during a call, the other party can hear your voice clearly and you can also hear the other party's voice clearly.

- It is recommended that this function usually be set to ON.

Default ON

1     

2 Press 

- To cancel the setting: 

Talking without using hands in a car

In-car Handsfree

You can make and receive voice calls from a handsfree compatible device by connecting FOMA terminal via USB to such device as the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) or car navigation system.

- For operations of handsfree devices, refer to the instruction manual for each handsfree device. Note that the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) is required to use the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

INFORMATION

- The display and ring tone for incoming calls follow the FOMA terminal settings.
- If the setting is made to play sounds from a handsfree device, the ring tone sounds from a handsfree device regardless of whether Silent Mode is on or of the ring tone settings on FOMA terminal.
- The operation during incoming calls in Public mode (Driving mode) follows the Public mode (Driving mode) settings.
- If a videophone call is made with a handsfree device using the phonebook or redial data, the communication speed set by the handsfree device is used. If it is not set, the videophone call is made at fixed 64K.
- When a videophone call is made/received with a handsfree device, a substitute image is sent to the other party.
- The operation during incoming calls when Answer Machine is set follows the Answer Machine settings.
- If the setting is made to play sounds from FOMA terminal, the operation when FOMA terminal is closed during a call follows Close Setting. If the setting is made to play sounds from a handsfree device, the call continues even if FOMA terminal is closed, regardless of Close Setting.

Receiving calls

The operations common to voice calls and videophone calls are explained here.

- For voice calls, calls can also be answered by pressing to , , or other than (Any Key Answer). ➡P65

1 A call is received

The ring tone sounds, the display light turns on and the Enter key lights/flashes.

- To put the call on hold (Response and Hold):

2



You can talk. The call duration is displayed.

- To put the call on hold (On-hold):
- To turn on the speakerphone function: or
- You can also answer the call by opening FOMA terminal. ➡P65

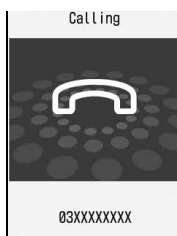
3 Press when you finish the call

- To end the call by closing FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting.

Display information

The caller's phone number, name, image and/or video/i-motion will be displayed on the screen according to the dialing condition of the caller and the FOMA terminal settings. You can set FOMA terminal not to display the name or phone number. ◀P144

■ When the caller has notified caller ID



If the caller's phone number is not registered in your phonebook, the phone number is displayed. Also, the image set in Call Alert or Videophone Alert is displayed.



If the caller's phone number is already registered in your phonebook, the name and phone number are displayed. When Contact Image is set to **ON**, the image or video/i-motion set in the phonebook is also displayed. ◀P143

■ When the caller has not notified caller ID

The reason why no caller ID is sent is displayed.



Reason for no caller ID	Description
User unset	The caller selected not to send the caller ID.
Payphone	The call was made from a payphone, etc.
Not supported	The call was made from a party who cannot send caller ID, such as a call from overseas or from a general subscriber phone via forwarding service (however, caller ID may be displayed depending on the phone company that handles a call).

When a voice call arrives, the incoming operation or image set in Anonymous Caller is prioritized. When a videophone call comes in, the incoming image set in Videophone Alert is prioritized.

■ When a call with Chaku-moji is received



Chaku-moji is displayed, according to Message Display Setting. When you answer the call, the Chaku-moji is cleared.

- Received Chaku-moji is registered in the received call history.

Operations available from the submenu while receiving a voice call

When you set *Arrival call act* to *Answer*, the same operations are available from the submenu when there is another incoming voice call during a call.

Submenu item	Description
1 <i>Call Rejection</i>	Disconnects the call (the caller does not pay for the call).
2 <i>Voice Mail</i> *1	Connects the incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
3 <i>Call Forwarding</i> *2	Forwards the incoming call to the forwarding phone number.

- *1 Valid when you use Voice Mail Service.
- *2 Valid when you use Call Forwarding Service and have set a forwarding phone number.
-  (for over a second): Answer by Answer Machine (Quick Record Message)
-  : Stop the ring alert/vibrator
-  : Adjust the ring volume

When you hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) during a voice call

If you subscribe to Voice Mail, Call Waiting or Call Forwarding Service, you will hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) when you receive another incoming call while talking and the following operations can be performed:

Service	Operation	Page
Voice Mail Service*1	Connects the second call to the Voice Mail Service Center.	P392
Call Waiting Service	Puts the current call on hold and answers the second call.	P393
Call Forwarding Service*1	Forwards the second call to the forwarding phone number.	P394

- *1 This service can be operated from the submenu when you set *Arrival call act* to *Answer* and activate it in *Set arrival act*.
- If you do not subscribe to Call Waiting Service, you cannot answer the call even if you hear beeps.

INFORMATION

- When a call forwarded from FOMA terminal arrives, the phone number from which it was forwarded is displayed if it is not registered in the phonebook. If it is registered, the name is displayed. However, the phone number or name may not be displayed depending on the forwarding source.
- Even if video/i-motion is set as the incoming image in the phonebook or in Call Alert, it is not played and the first frame of the video/i-motion is displayed when there is an incoming voice call during a voice call.
- When you receive an international call, a plus sign (+) appears at the beginning of the caller ID.
- For calls received from callers not registered in the phonebook, you can reject calls, or set the ring tone or vibrator ringer action not to start immediately. ●P168, P167
- Call rejection can be set for some parties registered in the phonebook. ●P165

Receiving a call by switching from a voice call to a videophone call

- The switching operation can be performed only from the terminal which made the voice call. It cannot be performed from the terminal which received the voice call.
- To receive the request of switching to a videophone call, set *Indication ON* of Notify Switchable Mode. ●P93

1 Receive the request of switching to a videophone call during a voice call



- A guidance informing that the call is being switched is played during switching.

2 Select Yes

The call is switched to a videophone call and your self image is sent to the other party.

- To send the substitute image: Select **No**
- When you select **Yes**, your self image is sent for the first time.

Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call

Any Key Answer

Allows you to answer a call by pressing **[0]** to **[9]**, **[*]**, or **[#]** other than **[☎]**.

- This function is available for voice calls and PushTalk calls. However, it is unavailable when receiving a call while talking.

Default ON

1 **[Menu]** **[8]** **[6]** **[4]**

2 Press **[1]**

- To cancel the setting: **[2]**

Setting to start talking by opening FOMA terminal

Open Answer

- This function is available only for voice calls (available even while Key Lock is on).

Default OFF

1 **[Menu]** **[8]** **[6]** **[7]** **[5]**

2 Press **[1]**

- To cancel the setting: **[2]**

Disconnecting/continuing/holding a call by closing FOMA terminal

Close Setting

- This function does not operate during 64K data communication or packet communication.
- You can end a PushTalk call by closing FOMA terminal. Use PushTalk Close Setting to set it.

Default Continue

1 **[Menu]** **[8]** **[6]** **[8]** **[2]**

Next

2 Press any of **1** to **3**

End the call : Ends the call.

Continue : Continues the call.

On hold : Puts the call on hold. The other party hears a guidance (on-hold tone).

INFORMATION

- When **On hold** is set, the operations are as follows:
 - If you close FOMA terminal during a videophone call while sending a still image or your image with frame on it, the still image or frame will be canceled after the hold is released.
 - If you close FOMA terminal while sending tone signals (DTMF), the call is continued.
 - If you close FOMA terminal while switching between a voice call and videophone call, the call is continued.
- When you close FOMA terminal during a call using a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or other handsfree devices (available in market), the call continues regardless of this function's setting if the settings is made to play sounds from the connected device. Even if you remove the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or handsfree device in this state, the call will continue.
- When you close FOMA terminal while recording a message, the recording is continued regardless of this setting.
- This setting applies when you close FOMA terminal while recording a talking voice memo/movie memo. When **On hold** is set, the contents which were being recorded by just before putting on hold are saved.

Menu 45

Using Received Calls

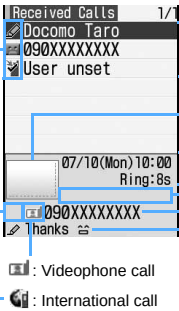
Received Calls

The calls and PushTalk calls that you received, and unanswered calls (missed calls) are recorded in memory. Recorded messages are also included in the list.

- Up to 30 calls are recorded. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted chronologically.

Example Making a call from the received call history

1 Highlight a received call in the list



Received Calls 1/1

- Docomo Iaro
- 090XXXXXXX
- User unset
- 07/10(Mon) 10:00
- Ring: 8s
- 090XXXXXXX
- 1hanks

Annotations:

- Phone number, name*1 or reason for no caller ID (P63) is displayed.
- Image*2
- Date and time of receiving from the highlighted party (and the ringing time for missed calls)
- PushTalk type or name of the multi-number used*3
- PushTalk call (one party)
- PushTalk call using PushTalkPlus (one party) P96
- PushTalk call using PushTalkPlus (more than one party) P96
- Phone number or reason for no caller ID
- Chaku-moji
- Videophone call
- PushTalk call
- 64K data communication
- No icon: Voice call
- International call

Received call status (with Chaku-moji/without Chaku-moji)

- No icon: Answered
- Missed call (checked)
- Missed call (unchecked)
- Recorded message
- Recorded message (deleted)

*1 When the phone number is registered in the phonebook

*2 When the image is registered in the phonebook (the first member's image for a PushTalk call to multiple parties)

*3 When you subscribe to the Multi Number service (the name of the basic number or additional number used by the received call)

- To switch between the received call/redial lists: 
- To display the list of PushTalk call parties: Highlight a received PushTalk call 
- You can also perform the following operations such as phonebook registration from the list of PushTalk call parties.

■ Registering an entry in the phonebook:

① Highlight a received call ► ①

- To add to an existing phonebook entry:  ②
- For a PushTalk call to multiple parties, select the party.

② ① or ② ► Register the name or address ◀P107, P110

- To add to an existing phonebook entry: ① or ② ► Select the party ► Edit the data ◀P118

■ Registering an entry in the PushTalk phonebook: Highlight a received call ► ③ ► Select Yes

- The party cannot be registered if not registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- For a PushTalk call to multiple parties, press  ③, select the party, press  and then select Yes.

■ Registering entries in a group in the PushTalk phonebook:

When you received a PushTalk call made to multiple parties who are registered in the PushTalk phonebook, you can register these parties as a PushTalk group from the received call history.

① Highlight a received call ► ④

② Enter a group name ►

■ Composing SMS: Highlight a received call ► (for over a second)

The SMS composition screen with the phone number of the received call specified as the address appears.

- If the phone number of the received call is registered in the phonebook together with mail addresses, pressing  displays the i-mode Mail composition screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, i-mode Mail mail composition screen is displayed with the phone number of the received call specified as the address.
- For received PushTalk call, the above applies when there is only one party.

2 Press (for voice call) or (for videophone call)

- To make a call with the same call type as the highlighted received call: 
- To make a PushTalk call: 
- When you make a call from the received call with Chaku-moji, the Chaku-moji is not attached.

Unanswered calls including PushTalk calls (missed calls)

 ① (with the number of missed calls) is indicated and the call is recorded in the received call history. ◀P37

- When there is a missed call from an unknown phone number, the ringing time enables you to check whether the call is a malicious call (One-Ring Call, etc.) made for the sole purpose of leaving the phone number in the received call history.

INFORMATION

- Press  ⑦ ① in the received call list to display all the calls including the missed calls of which ringing times are shorter than the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting. To hide such short ringing calls, press  ⑦ ②.
- You can make calls by setting conditions. ◀P58
- If only missed calls of which ringing times are shorter than the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting are recorded as received calls, pressing  on the standby display displays a confirmation screen asking whether to display missed calls. When Yes is selected, such short ringing calls are displayed.
- When the date and time have not been set, the date and time are not recorded in the received call history.
- Calls received from callers using dial-in services in such as office may display different numbers from the caller's dial-in number.
- When you switch between voice call and videophone call during a call, the call type (voice call/videophone call) that was specified when you received it will be recorded in the received call history.
- When Keypad Dial Lock or PIM Lock is set, the numbers stored in the received call history up to that point are deleted. However, the calls received after that are recorded in the received call history, and a call can be made using the received call history during PIM Lock.
- Selecting a multi-number registered for Multi Number ◀P397

Deleting received calls

Delete Received Calls

1

2 **Highlight a received call** ▶

- To delete all:
- You can also perform the same operation from the list of PushTalk call parties.

3 **Select Yes**

Adjusting the volume of the other party's voice during a call

Listen Volume

The volume of the other party's voice can be adjusted from level 1 (lowest volume) to level 6 (highest volume).

- The volume changed while talking is retained even after the call is ended.
- The set volume is retained even if the power is turned off.

1 **during a call** ▶ **to adjust the volume**

- The volume is set automatically by pressing or waiting for a while after you stop key operations.
- To turn up the volume: or
 - To turn down the volume: or
 - To adjust the volume during a videophone call: ▶ to adjust the volume

INFORMATION

- How to adjust the earpiece volume in standby, and the sounds to which the earpiece volume applies ◀P69

Adjusting the volume of ring alerts and other sounds emitted from FOMA terminal

Adjust Volume

Adjust the volume of call, mail and Message R/F ring alerts; alarm clock; schedule alarm; i-appli sound; and the sound that plays when receiving ToruCa.

- The volume can be adjusted in 7 levels, from *silent* to level 1 to level 6 (the volume of Movie ringtone can also be adjusted in 7 levels). You can also set *STEPTONE* (the volume changes into *silent* → level 1 → ... → level 6 about every 3 seconds) in standby.

Adjusting the volume of call ring alerts while receiving a call

- The ring volume changed while receiving a call is reset to the original volume when the call is ended.

1 **while receiving a call** ▶ **to adjust the volume**

- The volume is set automatically by pressing or waiting for a while after you stop key operations.
- To turn up the volume: or
 - To turn down the volume: or

INFORMATION

- To stop the ring alert and vibrator:  while receiving a call
- If **STEPTONE** is set for the call alert volume, the volume will be changed from level 6 when you adjust it while receiving a call.

Adjusting the volume of ring alerts and other sounds in standby

- **Listen volume** cannot be set to **silent**.
- **Listen volume**, **i-appli effect sound**, and **ToruCa receive alert** cannot be set to **STEPTONE**.
- The ring volume changed while in standby is retained even if the power is turned off.

Default Level 4 (all)

1    

2  to ,  or 

■ Adjusting the volume of alarm clock:  

■ Adjusting the volume of schedule alarm:  

Call alert volume : Adjusts the ring volume for voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls.

The set volume also applies to the following sounds:

Timer alarm, alarm for Call Cost Limit, sound indicating the battery level, and playback sound of melodies attached to mail

Mail/Msg alert vol. : Adjusts the ring volume for mails, chat mails and Message R/Fs.

Listen volume : Adjusts the earpiece volume during a voice call, videophone call and PushTalk call.

The set volume also applies to the following sounds:

Keypad sound, sound of rotating the Speed Selector, and playback sound of voice call messages and voice memos

Alarm clock sound : Adjusts the volume of the alarm clock that will be used when the volume is set to **Terminal setting** on the **Set sound** screen of Alarm Clock.

Schedule reminder : Adjusts the volume of the schedule alarm (including alarm and alarm in advance).

i-appli effect sound : Adjusts the volume of the effect sound for i-appli.

ToruCa receive alert : Adjusts the volume of the sound that plays when receiving ToruCa. This setting is reflected to the setting of ToruCa Setting.

3  to adjust the volume ▶ Press 

- To set to **STEPTONE**:  or  when the volume is level 6
- To set to **silent**:  or  when the volume is level 1

INFORMATION

-  is indicated on the standby display when **Call alert volume** is set to **silent**. If the vibrator for incoming voice calls is set at the same time,  is indicated.

Setting for incoming voice/videophone/PushTalk calls

Call Alert/Videophone Alert/PushTalk Alert

- The settings of this function are reflected to the settings of Sound Setting, Vibrator Setting and Light Alert Setting. The setting of **Show image** is reflected to the settings of Incoming Call and Videophone Receiving of Mail/Call Image.
- For PushTalk Alert, **Show image** cannot be set.

Default Ring alert: Melody/Vivaldism (Call Alert), Melody/電話・メロディ A(Phone, melody A) (Videophone Alert), Melody/電話・メロディ B(Phone, melody B) (PushTalk Alert)
Show image: Standard image Vibrate alert: OFF Light alert: Flash/Sky (Call Alert), Flash/Lime (Videophone Alert), Flash/Peach (PushTalk Alert)

Example Setting operations when receiving a voice call

- 1    
- Setting operations when receiving a videophone call:     
- Setting operations when receiving a PushTalk call:     

2 Select each item to set

- Ring alert** : Sets a ring alert for incoming calls.
- When **OFF** is selected, no ring alert emits.
 - When **Melody** or **Movie ringtone** is selected, select a melody or video/i-motion file.
- Show image** : Sets an image displayed for incoming calls.
- When **Select image** is selected, select **Select image** (from **List images**) to set an image.
 - When **i-motion** is selected, select a video/i-motion file from the folder list. If the folder list is not displayed, select **Select image** (from **List images**).
- Vibrate alert** : Sets the vibration for incoming calls.
- Light alert** : Sets the lighting pattern and color of the Enter key for incoming calls.
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file when selecting 

3 Press

INFORMATION

- Setting Created animation for the image displays the first frame.
- When the video/i-motion with sound only (i-motion without image such as singer's vocals) is set for **Ring alert**, if **Show image** is reset to the video/i-motion with image only or Flash movie, the ring alert sounds by **Vivaldism** for voice call or by **電話・メロディ A** for videophone call.
- Some video/i-motion may be unable to be set for the image. Also, the video/i-motion with sound cannot be set.
- Even when you set **Sync melody** for **Vibrate alert** or **Light alert**, the vibrator or lighting may not be activated depending on the melody.
- For PushTalk Alert, only the video/i-motion with sound only can be set for the ring alert.

Setting the priority screen for incoming calls during a call or packet communication

Priority Comm Mode

This function allows you to select the voice call or packet communication screen to be given priority when a packet communication (or voice) call is received during a voice (or packet communication) call.

- The screen change caused by this function does not interrupt the call or packet communication.

Default No Set Up

- 1     

2 Press any of **[1]** to **[3]**

No Set Up : Displays the screen for the latest incoming call/communication without setting the priority.

Voice call : Displays the voice call talking screen by priority.

Packet : Displays the incoming packet communication screen by priority.

- When a voice call is received during i-mode packet communication, you can press **[2]** and display the **Switch Task** menu to answer the call.
- When there is incoming packet communication in i-mode, the voice call talking screen is displayed by priority regardless of this setting.

Screen display

The following screen is displayed depending on the setting for Priority Comm Mode:

Setting	Incoming packet communication (other than i-mode) during voice call*1, *2	Incoming voice call during packet communication*3
No Set Up	Voice call talking screen	Incoming voice call screen
Voice call		
Packet	Incoming packet communication screen	Screen displayed during i-mode communication

*1 The screen displayed for incoming calls depends on the setting for **Arrival call act.** P396

*2 Packet communication in modes other than i-mode does not include receiving of i-mode Mail, SMS and Message R/F.

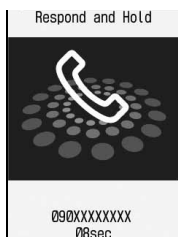
*3 Packet communication in modes other than i-mode cannot be received during i-mode communication. P439

Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away

Response and Hold

- Callers are charged for the time spent on hold.

1 **[Hold]** while receiving a call



Incoming voice call on hold



Incoming videophone call on hold

The incoming call is put on hold (Response and Hold). The other party hears the response hold guidance.

For videophone calls, the response hold image is displayed on your and the other party's terminals.

2 Press **[End Call]** when you are ready to answer the call

- For a voice call, you can answer the call also by opening FOMA terminal. P65
- Press **[End Call]** or **[Hold]** for a videophone call. Press **[End Call]** to send the substitute image (P92) to the other party.
- If **[End Call]** is pressed or the other party hangs up during Response and Hold, the call is ended.

INFORMATION

- When you use Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, you can switch to Voice Mail or Call Forwarding by pressing **[Menu]** and selecting **Voice Mail (V-phone answerphone)** for videophone call) or **Call Forwarding** while receiving a call.

Setting the response hold guidance

Status Message

You can record your own voice as response hold guidance.

- One guidance of up to about 10 seconds long can be recorded.
- While a voice or videophone call is during Response and Hold, the guidance set by this function is played.

Default **Standard**

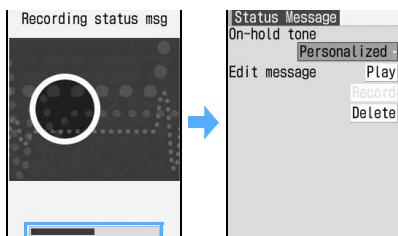
Example Setting a recorded guidance

1

2 **Select On-hold tone field**

- To reset to the default guidance: Go to Step 4

3 **Select Record in Edit message field** **Speak a response hold guidance after a tone (beep)**



Indication of the allowable recording time

Recording will start after a message is displayed.

- An end tone (beep) sounds in about 10 seconds from the start of recording.
- To stop the recording:
- To check the recorded guidance: Select **Play**
- **Record** cannot be selected when a recorded guidance has already been registered. Select **Delete**, select **Yes** and record after deleting the recorded guidance.

4 **Press**

INFORMATION

- If you delete the recorded guidance, the default guidance is restored.
- If **Standard** is set, the guidance "I cannot answer the phone right now. Please wait or call back later (in Japanese)" is played for the other party during Response and Hold.

Setting the on-hold tone

On-hold Tone

- While a voice or videophone call is during On-hold, the melody set by this function is played.

Default 保留音・ボイス(On-hold tone, voice)

1

2 **Press** or

- To reset to the default melody:
- To play a melody: Highlight a melody

INFORMATION

- The volume of the on-hold tone cannot be changed.
- The 3D sound compatible melody set as on-hold tone may be heard deteriorated to the other party.

Using Public mode (Driving mode)

Public mode (Driving mode)

Public mode is an automatic answering service considering etiquette in highly public places. When Public mode is activated and a call is received, a guidance is played and informs the caller that the called party is driving or in an area (train, bus, movie theater, etc.) where use of the phone should be refrained and cannot answer the call. Then the call is disconnected.

- Public mode can be activated/canceled only in standby (including when 圖外 (outside service area) is displayed on the screen).
- Even in Public mode you can make calls as normal.
- This function cannot be used during data communication.

Activating Public mode (Driving mode)

1 Hold down for over a second

Public mode is activated and  appears.

When a call is received, a guidance is played saying “The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cellphone should not be used. Please try again later”.

- When Silent Mode is activated at the same time, Public mode takes precedence.

■ **Canceling:**  (for over a second)

■ When Public mode (Driving mode) is activated

No ring tone plays when your FOMA terminal receives a call.  1 appears on the screen and the call is recorded in the received call history.

The caller hears a guidance informing that you are driving or in an area where use of the mobile phone should be refrained and the call is then ended.

- An incoming PushTalk call is not answered, and **Connection failed.** is displayed on the caller's screen. In case of the PushTalk call with 3 or more parties, the connected members are notified that you are driving.

■ Operation when receiving calls in Public mode (Driving mode) with network service activated

Service	Receiving voice calls	Receiving videophone calls
Voice Mail Service	The caller hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.	The call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center without the Public mode video guidance.*1
Call Forwarding Service	The caller hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then forwarded to the specified destination. Whether the caller hears the guidance or not depends on the setting for Call Forwarding Service. When the guidance is on, the Public mode guidance is played. When the guidance is off, no guidance is played.	The call is forwarded to the specified destination without the Public mode video guidance. If the destination party uses the phone not compatible with videophone, the call is disconnected.
Call Waiting Service	The caller hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then disconnected.	The caller sees the Public mode video guidance and the call is then disconnected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller hears a guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller sees a video guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.
Caller ID Request Service	• The caller who has not notified the caller ID hears a guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • The caller who has notified the caller ID hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then disconnected.	• The caller who has not notified the caller ID sees a video guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • The caller who has notified the caller ID sees the Public mode video guidance and the call is then disconnected.

*1 As of May 2006, the call is disconnected without being connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.

INFORMATION

- In Public mode, the following sounds are disabled. In addition, the vibrator does not operate or the Enter key does not light/flash for incoming calls/emails, etc.
 - Ring tone
 - Alarm clock
 - Schedule alarm
 - Timer alarm
 - i-apple sound
 - Charge alert
 - Alarm for Call Cost Limit*1
 - Low battery alert
- The sound that plays when data is obtained by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer*2
- *1 Even if **Alert** for Call Cost Limit is set to **ON** and an alarm is set, a message is not displayed.
- *2 When **IC card light** in Light Alert Setting is set to **ON** or **Light alert** in ToruCa Setting is set to **ON**, the Enter key flashes.
- Even in Public mode, the following sounds are played:
 - Keypad sound
 - Speed Selector sound
 - Shutter sound
 - Lens cover sound
 - Slide sound
- In Public mode, the i-channel information does not scroll on the standby display.
- In Public mode, Chaku-moji is not displayed.
- Even if a mail or Message R/F is received, the receiving screen and reception result screen are not displayed. But, when Check i-mode Message is performed, these screens are displayed. If a mail or Message R/F is received at this time, the receiving screen is displayed and the reception result is updated when receiving is completed.
- When FOMA terminal is turned off or you are outside the service area, the caller hears a guidance informing out-of-service area instead of the Public mode guidance.
- Making emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) in Public mode cancels Public mode. However, it is not canceled when emergency calls are made using videophone.

Using Public mode (power off)

Public mode (power off) is an automatic answering service considering etiquettes in highly public places. When Public mode (power off) is set and then a call is received with FOMA terminal switched off, a guidance is played and informs the caller that the called party is in an area (hospital, airplane, priority seat area on a train, etc) where the phone should be turned off and cannot answer the call. Then the call is disconnected.

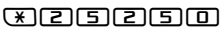
Activating Public mode (power off)

1  ▶ Press 

Public mode (power off) is set. (There will be no change on the standby display.)

When you subsequently turn the power off, Public mode (power off) is activated.

In Public mode (power off) if a call is received with FOMA terminal off, a guidance is played saying "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later".

■ **Canceling:**  ▶ 

■ **Checking the setting:**  ▶ 

■ When Public mode (power off) is activated

The setting is retained until Public mode (power off) is canceled by dialing "✱ 25250". The setting is not canceled by turning the power on.

The Public mode (power off) guidance is played even in locations outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach.

The caller hears a guidance informing that you are in an area where the phone should be turned off and the call is then ended.

- An incoming PushTalk call is not answered, and **Connection failed.** is displayed on the caller's screen. In case of the PushTalk call with 3 or more parties, the connected members are notified that you are not connected.

■ Operation when receiving calls in Public mode (power off) with network service activated

Service	Receiving voice calls	Receiving videophone calls
Voice Mail Service	The caller hears the Public mode (power off) guidance and the call is then connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.	The call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center without the Public mode (power off) video guidance.*1
Call Forwarding Service	The caller hears the Public mode (power off) guidance and the call is then forwarded to the specified destination. Whether the caller hears the guidance or not depends on the setting for Call Forwarding Service. When the guidance is on, the Public mode guidance is played. When the guidance is off, no guidance is played.	The call is forwarded to the specified destination without the Public mode (power off) video guidance. If the destination party uses the phone not compatible with videophone, the call is disconnected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller hears a guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller sees a video guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.
Caller ID Request Service	• The caller who has not notified the caller ID hears a guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • The caller who has notified the caller ID hears the Public mode (power off) guidance and the call is then disconnected.	• The caller who has not notified the caller ID sees a video guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • The caller who has notified the caller ID sees the Public mode (power off) video guidance and the call is then disconnected.

*1 As of May 2006, the call is disconnected without being connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.

Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call

Answer Machine

By setting Answer Machine, you can play the greeting message and record the caller's message when you cannot answer the call.

- Up to 4 messages can be recorded for voice/videophone calls in total, a maximum of about 30 seconds for each.
- For voice calls, the caller's voice is recorded. For videophone calls, the caller's voice and image are recorded.
- The recording date and time and the phone number are also recorded. However, when the date and time have not been set or the phone number is not notified, they are not recorded.
- You can set the time interval between the reception of the call and the start of the greeting.
- The greeting in your own voice can be recorded.
- Incoming PushTalk calls cannot be answered by Answer Machine.
- It is advisable that the contents of recorded messages be separately written down in a notebook, etc. Recorded data may be lost due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

Menu 4711

Setting Answer Machine

Default Deactivate

- Press**

appears on the standby display.

Canceling:

Replying with Quick Record Message

When Answer Machine has not been set to start, you can activate this function only once by holding down  for over a second while receiving a call. This operation does not set Answer Machine to start.

- For incoming PushTalk calls, you cannot activate Quick Record Message.

INFORMATION

- When the number of recorded messages reaches 4,  is indicated on the standby display. The icon does not disappear even if Answer Machine is canceled.
- If there are already 4 recorded messages, Answer Machine cannot be set. If you attempt to activate Quick Record Message by holding down  for over a second while receiving a call, the warning tone (rapid beeps) sounds and the ring tone keeps sounding. Delete unnecessary recorded messages and set again.

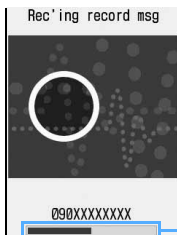
Receiving a call while Answer Machine is set

1 A call is received

After the ring tone sounds according to Greeting Response Time, the greeting message screen is displayed.

- When the greeting message is set to **Preinstalled**, the caller hears the guidance "I cannot answer the phone right now, please leave your name and message after the beep (in Japanese)". Set **Personalized** to play a recorded guidance.

2 Recording the caller's message starts



Recording a voice call message



Recording a videophone call message

- A beep announces the caller the start and end of the recording. And when about 25 seconds have elapsed since the start of recording, rapid beeps sound to indicate that the end of recording is approaching.

3 When the recording is completed, the call is disconnected

 1 (with the number of recorded messages) is indicated.

INFORMATION

- When FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the service area, Answer Machine does not operate. Use Voice Mail Service (pay service).
- Answer Machine does not operate and the ring tone keeps sounding when 4 messages have already been recorded. If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated, each service starts its operation.
- Public mode (Driving mode) takes precedence over Answer Machine. In Public mode (Driving mode), Answer Machine does not operate.
- The recording may be disrupted or the screen may be distorted if the signal conditions are poor.
- Another call received while playing the greeting or recording a message is rejected and playing or recording continues. If you are subscribing to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service or Call Waiting Service, the rejected incoming call is recorded in the received call history.
- You can answer a call even while playing the greeting or recording a message. Press  to answer a voice call. For a videophone call, press  or  to answer by sending your image or  to answer by sending the substitute image. For a voice call, you can also answer the call by opening FOMA terminal. ◀P65
If the message is being recorded at this time, the contents before answering the call will not be recorded.

Setting the response time until the greeting starts

Greeting Response Time

Default 008 Sec.

1   

2 Enter the response time (0 to 120 seconds)

- To increase or decrease the entered values: 

INFORMATION

- When Auto Answer (with a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) connected), Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service and this function are set simultaneously, the priority depends on the ringing times set for each service and function. To give priority to Answer Machine, the response time for this function should be set shorter than the ringing times set for Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service. Note that Answer Machine may not be given priority depending on the signal conditions. In this case, answer a call with Quick Record Message.
- The delayed time of Auto Answer and the response time of Answer Machine cannot be set to the same time period.

Setting the greeting message

Greeting Message Setting

You can record your own voice as greeting message.

- One greeting of up to about 10 seconds long can be recorded.

Default Preinstalled

Example Setting a recorded greeting

1   2 Select *Greeting message field* ► 

- To reset to the default greeting:  ► Go to Step 4

3 Select *Record in Edit message field* ► Speak a greeting message after a tone (beep)

- The operation procedure is the same as when recording the response hold guidance. ■P72

4 Press 

INFORMATION

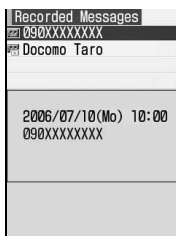
- If you delete the recorded greeting, the default greeting is restored.

Playing recorded messages

You can play or delete recorded messages from the list.

- Unplayed recorded messages, if any, can be played quickly from the standby display. ◀P37

1



On the recorded message list screen, the recording date and time and the caller's phone number appear.

- : Voice call message (unplayed)
- : Voice call message (played)
- : Videophone call message (unplayed)
- : Videophone call message (played)

- If the caller's phone number is notified, it is displayed. If not, the reason for no caller ID is displayed. If the notified caller's phone number is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.
- When you subscribe to the Multi Number service, the name of basic number or additional number used by a received call is also displayed.

2 Select a recorded message to play



Indication of the playing time

Playing a voice call message

- During playback, the following operations are available:

- : Adjust volume
- : Stop
- : Speakerphone on/off (for voice call messages only)

■ Deleting:

- Highlight a recorded message ▶
 - To delete all:
- Select **Yes**

■ Registering an entry in the phonebook:

- Highlight a recorded message ▶
 - To add to an existing phonebook entry:
- or ▶ Register the name or address ◀P107, P110
 - To add to an existing phonebook entry: or ▶ Select the party ▶ Edit the data ◀P118

■ Making a call: Highlight a recorded message ▶ (for voice call) or (for videophone call)

- You can make calls by setting conditions. ◀P58

3 Select whether to delete the played recorded message

- To delete the recorded message: Select **Yes**

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

Videophone	80
Making videophone calls	80
Receiving videophone calls	83
Using Chara-den	85
Setting images to be sent to the other party	86
Customizing the display settings during a videophone call	90
Changing the videophone settings	Videophone Settings 90
Setting of switching between a voice call and videophone call	Notify Switchable Mode 93
Setting how incoming videophone calls are handled during i-mode	Data Session Arrival Act 93
Using the videophone by connecting with an external device	External Device 94

Videophone

The videophone function is available between terminals that support DoCoMo's videophone. By using the videophone, you can talk on the phone while looking each other images. It is also possible to display a still image, substitute image, Chara-den, etc. instead of your self image.

DoCoMo videophone specifications are compliant with "3G-324M*1 that has been standardized by the international standard 3GPP*2". Note that the connection with videophones of different specifications cannot be established.

- *1 3G-324M...An international standard for the 3rd generation mobile videophone
- *2 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)...Area standardization organization established to develop the standard technology specification for the 3rd generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).
- The following 2 communication speeds are provided for the videophone:
 - 64K: Connects at communication speed of 64 kbps.
 - 32K: Connects at communication speed of 32 kbps.

Screen display during a videophone call



1	Main screen	Image of the other party is displayed by default.
2	Communication speed	64K : 64K 32K : 32K
3	Speakerphone function	Speaker icon: On No icon: Off
4	Sub screen	Your image is displayed by default.
5	Zoom	x1 to x2: Normal to 2x (in-camera) x1 to x16: Normal to 16x (out-camera)
6	Status	[Self Image Icon]: Sending your self image [Camera-off Icon]: Sending the camera-off image [Chara-den Icon]: Sending Chara-den [Frame Icon]: Sending a frame [Still Image Icon]: Sending a still image [On-hold Icon]: On-hold [Response and Hold Icon]: On Response and Hold [Recording message Icon]: Recording a message [Movie memo Icon]: Recording a movie memo
	Action mode	[Action Icon]: Action [Parts Icon]: Action of parts
7	Scene mode/ effect	[Auto Icon]: Full auto, etc. The icons for other modes/effects ●P87
8	Compact light	No icon: Turn light off [Light Icon]: Turn light on
9	Quality of outgoing image	No icon: Normal [HQ Icon]: Prefer image quality [Motion Icon]: Prefer motion speed
10	Sound/image sending and receiving status	[Sound Icon]: Sending and receiving sound [Image Icon]: Sending and receiving image [Sound/Image Icon]: Sending and receiving sound/image
11	Macro mode	No icon: Off [Macro Icon]: On (out-camera)
12	Videophone/voice call switching	No icon: Switching is not available. [Switching Icon]: Switching is available.
13	Call duration	Displayed in the HH:MM:SS format

Making videophone calls

- International videophone calls are available by using the DoCoMo's international call service "WORLD CALL". ●P58

1 Enter the phone number

- Entering method is the same as for voice calls.

2 

Your image is displayed while being connected.

- If the phone of the other party is busy, you will hear a busy signal. The message, **Busy**, or **Connection failed**, is displayed on the screen. Press  to end the call and call again later. You can call back quickly by using Redial.
- Pressing  while being connected sends the substitute image set in Image Setting. When the substitute image is set to Chara-den, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the default image for the substitute image setting is sent to the other party. 
- Charging begins when **Connected to videophone** is displayed.

3 Talk with the other party



The other party's voice comes out of the speaker (Speakerphone function).

- To put the call on hold: 
- To turn on/off the speakerphone function:  or 
- Depending on the other party's settings, the substitute image may be displayed.
- To disable turning on the speakerphone function automatically, change the setting in Videophone Settings.

4 Press when you finish the call

- To end the videophone call by closing FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting.

INFORMATION

- You can also make a videophone call by performing in order of Steps 2, Step 1. When  is pressed and the phone number is entered, a videophone call is made automatically after about 5 seconds.
- You can make videophone calls by attaching Chaku-moji. 
- You can make videophone calls by setting conditions. 
- When **Speakerphone** is set to **ON** in Videophone Settings and Silent Mode is active, if you make a videophone call, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to switch to the speakerphone call. Select **Yes** or **No**.
- If a videophone call cannot be made, one of the following message is displayed on the screen and then the standby display returns. Note that the displayed message may not reflect the status of the other party's terminal correctly, depending on the type of the terminal and/or the network service used by the other party.

Message	Description
Check number, then redial.	You dialed the phone number not used.
Busy.	The other party is busy.*1
Out of service area/power off.	The other party is outside the service area or the other party's terminal is turned off.
Set Caller ID to ON.	This message is displayed in case connecting without notifying the caller ID (when accessing to V-Live or visualnet).
Redial using voice call.	This message is displayed when the other party sets Call Forwarding Service and the forwarding destination is the terminal which is not compatible with videophone.*2
Busy with packet transmission.	The other party is in packet communication.
Connection failed.	Set Caller ID Notification to Notify and dial again. • The message may appear in cases other than the above.

*1 The message may also appear when the other party is in packet communication, depending on his/her terminal.

*2 As of May 2006, the message may also appear when the other party has activated Voice Mail Service.

- If a videophone call made is not connected, redialing is automatically performed as described below:

Call type	Auto redial as voice setting	Redialing operation
64K	ON	64K → 32K → Voice call
	OFF	64K → 32K → Disconnection
32K	ON	32K → Voice call
	OFF	32K → Disconnection

When a videophone call is made by specifying a multi-number, redialing will be made with the specified number.
When a videophone call with Chaku-moji is made, redialing will be made with the same Chaku-moji attached.
If redialing as voice call occurs, voice call charges apply.

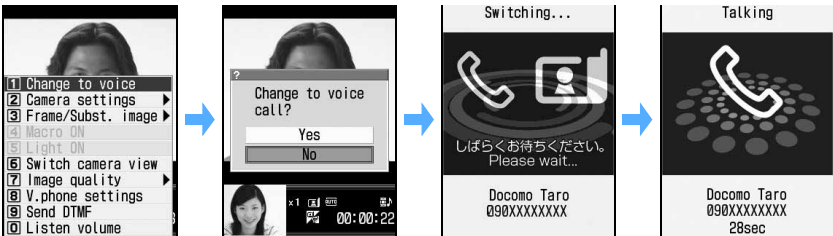
- When there is an incoming call while dialing a videophone call or redialing, the dialing may be interrupted and the ring tone may sound.
- Even if sending/receiving the voice or image is aborted and  (voice only) or  (image only) is displayed during a videophone call, the call may be continued as it is.
- When you talk on a videophone call while a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) is connected, the voice sounds from the connected earphone/microphone regardless of the setting of **Speakerphone** in Videophone Settings.
- Please note that digital communication charges apply for videophone calls instead of voice call charges even if the substitute image or Chara-den is used.
- Videophone at 32K is intended for connection with devices such as PHS with which videophone calls at 64K may not be available depending on the network condition. When a videophone call is made at 64K, the call type is automatically switched to 32K when redialing if the communication environment of the other party is found to be 32K area. When ON is set for **Auto redial as voice** in Videophone Settings, redialing at 32K is also given priority. ◀P90
 - Even if a call is made at 32K, the charge is the same as digital communication charges at 64K.
- If a videophone call is made to emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) from FOMA terminal while **Auto redial as voice** is set to ON in Videophone Settings, the call automatically switches to a voice call.

Switching from a videophone call to a voice call

You can switch to a voice call by operating from the submenu during a videophone call when the other party's terminal can switch calls. Switching can be performed only from the terminal which made the videophone call.

- This operation can be performed between the terminals that support switching between voice call/videophone call.
- To switch to a voice call, the other party needs to set **Indication ON** of Notify Switchable Mode in advance.
◀P93

1 during a videophone call ▶ Select Yes



- A guidance informing that the call is being switched is played during switching.
- Select **No** to return to the videophone talking screen.

INFORMATION

- For precautions when switching between a voice call and videophone call, see INFORMATION in "Switching from a voice call to a videophone call". ◀P53
- Switching from a voice call to a videophone call ◀P53

Transmitting tone signals (DTMF)

Send DTMF

You can input tone signals (DTMF) while sending your self image (📷), the camera-off image (📵) or Chara-den (👤).

- Tone signals may not be received depending on the receiver's device.

1 during a call ▶ Enter with dial keys

The entered number is displayed and the tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted.

- To cancel transmitting tone signals (DTMF): 
- The tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted by pressing dial keys without pressing   while your self image or the camera-off image is being sent.
- When the tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted, the set frame and still image are canceled.
- Because tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted using dial keys, you cannot use dial keys to make actions while sending Chara-den.

Receiving videophone calls

- You cannot receive a videophone call by pressing the keys other than ,  or  (Any Key Answer is unavailable).

1 A call is received



The ring tone sounds, the display light turns on and the Enter key lights/flashes.

- The caller's phone number, name, image or video/i-motion will be displayed on the screen according to the caller's dialing condition or your FOMA terminal settings. When a call with Chaku-moji is received, Chaku-moji is displayed.

▶P63

- To put the incoming call on hold: 

2 or



Your image is displayed while being connected.

■ Receiving a videophone call with the substitute image:

The substitute image is sent to the other party when the videophone call is connected.

- Even when Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the default image for the substitute image setting is sent to the other party.

3 Talk with the other party



- The other party's voice comes out of the speaker (Speakerphone function).
- To put the call on hold:
 - To turn on/off the speakerphone function: or
 - Depending on the other party's settings, the substitute image may be displayed.
 - To disable turning on the speakerphone function automatically, change the setting in Videophone Settings.

4 Press when you finish the call

- To end the videophone call by closing FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting.

Operations available from the submenu while receiving a videophone call

Submenu item	Description
1 <i>Call Rejection</i>	Disconnects the call (the caller does not pay for the call).
2 <i>V-phone answerphone</i> *1	Connects the incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
3 <i>Call Forwarding</i> *2	Forwards the incoming call to the forwarding phone number.

- *1 Valid when you use Voice Mail Service (The service is not available as of May 2006).
- *2 Valid when you use Call Forwarding Service and the forwarding phone number has been set.
- You can operate FOMA terminal with the following keys while receiving a call:
 - (for over a second): Record a message (Quick Record Message)
 - : Stop the ring alert/vibrator
 - : Adjust the ring volume

INFORMATION

- When *Speakerphone* is set to *ON* in Videophone Settings and Silent Mode is active, if you receive a videophone call, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to switch to the speakerphone call. Select *Yes* or *No*.
- When a videophone call arrives while a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) is connected, the voice sounds from the connected earphone/microphone regardless of the setting for *Speakerphone* in Videophone Settings.
- When a videophone call arrives, it is not connected if the forwarding destination is not set to a videophone terminal compliant with the 3G-324M even if Call Forwarding Service is activated. Check the specifications of the forwarding destination when setting it.
- Changing the operation for incoming videophone calls ◀P70

Receiving a call by switching from a videophone call to a voice call

- The switching operation can be performed only from the terminal which made the videophone call. It cannot be performed from the terminal which received the videophone call.
- To receive the request of switching to a voice call, set **Indication ON** of Notify Switchable Mode in advance. ●P93

1 Receive the request of switching to a voice call during a videophone call



The videophone call is switched to a voice call automatically.

- A guidance informing that the call is being switched is played during switching.

Using Chara-den

A character can be sent instead of your image when making a videophone call. The character can be moved by pressing dial keys during a videophone call. Some characters move their mouth in time with the sounds picked up by the microphone.

1 (Menu) [3] [2] [1] during a call

2 Select a folder ▶ Select Chara-den



- If you press dial keys while sending Chara-den as the substitute image, the character performs the action corresponding to the number of the keys. The following operations can also be performed:

[0]: Cancel action

[*]: Display the action list

- Selecting an action moves the character.

[*] (for over a second):

Switch action modes (Action/Action of parts)

- The action list of Chara-den set by default ●P425

INFORMATION

- Some Chara-den has no actions.

Setting images to be sent to the other party

You can change images and apply special effects to the image sent to the other party during a videophone call. Also, you can switch between the in-camera and the out-camera.

Switching the outgoing image between your self image and the substitute image

1 Press during a call



- Each press switches the image between your self image () and the substitute image ( or ). ➡P92
- Even when Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the default image for the substitute image in Image Setting is sent to the other party. ➡P92

Setting the quality of outgoing and incoming images

- Setting *Prefer motion spd* makes motions smoother in a little lower-definition image.
- Setting *Prefer img qual* makes motions a little slower in a higher-definition image.

Default Normal

Example Setting the quality of outgoing image

1 during a call

- Pressing  during a call also switches the quality of outgoing image.
- **Setting the quality of incoming image:**    during a call

2 Press any of to

Setting a frame on the outgoing image Frame

The frame can be set while sending your self image.

- Only the frame with the display size of 176 x 144 or smaller can be selected. As for downloaded frames, only the frame with the display size of 176 x 144 can be selected.

1 during a call

2 Select a frame



- While the in-camera is used, the mirror image (left-right reversed image) is displayed on the screen and the normal image (right directed image) is sent to the other party. While the out-camera is used, the same image as displayed on the screen is sent to the other party.
- To cancel sending the frame: while sending a frame
- Frames set by default

Applying special effects to outgoing image

Scene Mode/Effect

You can apply the following effects to outgoing images. These settings can be changed only while sending your self image.

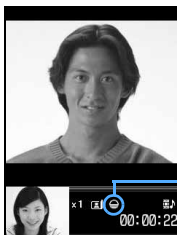
Item	Icon	Item	Icon	Item	Icon	Item	Icon
Full auto		Night		Letter		Soft touch	
Sensitivity up		Twilight		Color reversal		Mono tone (red)	
Super sensitivity up		Surf&Snow		Painting		Mono tone (green)	
Adjust backlight		Sport		Woodcut		Mono tone (blue)	
Spot photometry		Pet		Whiten		Monochrome	
Scenery		Gourmet		Suntan		Sepia	

- For details

Default Full auto

1 during a call

2 Press any of to , , or



- Press to switch the pages.

The effect currently applied

Adjusting the brightness/color density/flicker of outgoing image

Camera Setting

You can adjust the brightness and color density in 5 levels. Also, you may be able to control the flicker of images, if it occurs, by making settings according to the power supply frequency in your area.

- This setting can be changed only while your self image is being sent.
- The brightness and color density may not be changed depending on the setting for Screen Mode/Effect.
- This setting is retained even after the call is finished.
- The flicker adjustment settings for Camera and Bar Code Reader will reflect changes in this setting.

Default Brightness: level 3 Density: level 3 Flicker adjustment: Auto

1 during a call ▶ Select an item

■ Adjusting brightness and color density:



- ①  ▶ Highlight *Brightness slider* ▶ 
- ②  to highlight *Density slider* ▶  ▶ 

- Your self image is displayed on the main screen while adjusting. You can check the change of brightness or color density as you shift the slider's position.
- If you do nothing on the terminal for some time after changing the slider's position, the settings are not changed and the talking screen reappears.

■ Adjusting flicker:  ▶  to 

Sending the still image/camera-off image

Select a still image or the image displayed as *Camera off* (camera-off image).

- This setting is not available while a frame is being sent. ●P86
- Only the still image that is 176 x 144 or smaller and is permitted to be output from FOMA terminal can be set.

1 during a call ▶ Select an item

■ Sending the camera-off image: 

- When the camera-off image is set, the substitute image set in Image Setting is sent.
However, if Chara-den is set as the substitute image, the default image (camera-off image) is sent.

■ Sending a still image:



- ①  ▶ Select a folder
- ② Select a still image
 - To view a still image: Highlight a still image ▶ 
 - To send the previous image:  while sending a still image

Switching display magnifications

Zoom

- Available only while your self image is being sent.

Default normal (x1)

1 Press during a call

- Each press of  switches the magnification of image as follows. Press  to switch in the reverse order.

In-camera : normal () → 2x ()
 Out-camera: normal () → 2x () → 4x () → 6x () → 8x ()
 → 10x () → 12x () → 16x ()

INFORMATION

- Zooming will be canceled if you switch between the in-camera and out-camera.

Switching the in-camera and out-camera

- Available only while your self image is being sent.

Default **in-camera**

1 Press **6** during a call

The image through the selected camera is sent.



In-camera selected



Out-camera selected

- Each press switches between the in-camera and out-camera.
- Even if you switch the cameras, the frame and the brightness/color density/flicker settings of outgoing image are kept.
- Open the lens cover when switching to the out-camera. If you close the lens cover while using the out-camera, the substitute image is sent to the other party. If you open the lens cover while **Open lens cover.** is being displayed, your image is sent.

Switching the camera to the macro mode

You can switch to the macro mode and adjust the focus of the image when sending the image of an object about 7 to 11 cm away.

- You can switch the camera to the macro mode only while the out-camera is used.

Default **Macro OFF**

1 Press **4** during a call

- To turn off the macro mode:  **4**

INFORMATION

- If you switch to the in-camera in the macro mode, the camera returns to the normal mode.

Turning the compact light on

- You can switch the compact light on only while the out-camera is used.
- The compact light may go out temporarily when you perform some setting operations while talking.

1 Press **5** during a call

The compact light is turned on. If the light has been turned on, it goes out.

- Each press turns the compact light on () and off (no icon).

Customizing the display settings during a videophone call

- The settings are retained even after the call is finished.

Switching between the main screen and sub screen

Default Main screen image: other party's image Sub screen image: your self image

1 Press during a call

- Each press switches the images on the main screen and sub screen by turns.

Main screen: other party's image ↔ Main screen: your self image
Sub screen: your self image ↔ Sub screen: other party's image

Changing the main screen size

Default large

1 Hold down for over a second during a call

- Each press switches the screen size in the following order: large → standard → small → large →

Setting the screen displayed during a call Videophone Settings during a call

Default Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size: Large Display light: Always on(normal)

1 during a call

2 Select each item to set

- For setting each item (*Display setting*, *Sub screen*, *Screen size* and *Display light*), follow Step 2 in “Changing the videophone settings”. ➡P91

3 Press

Changing the videophone settings Videophone Settings

Set the operation to be performed when a videophone call is not connected, the screen displayed during a videophone call, etc.

- The auto redial as voice function is provided to ensure access to the other party. By setting this function to **ON**, a dialed videophone call will be automatically redialed as voice call if the other party's terminal does not support the videophone function or cannot receive the videophone call while using the mova service through Dual Network Service. Redialing does not occur, however, if you call an ISDN-sync 64 kbps or PIAFS access point, or an ISDN videophone incompatible with 3G-324M (as of May 2006), or if you dial the wrong number. Note that some calls may require the call charge.

Default Auto redial as voice: OFF Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size : Large
Visual preference: Normal Display light: Always on(normal) Speakerphone: ON

1

2 Select each item to set

- Auto redial as voice** : Sets whether to redial as voice call automatically when a videophone call is not connected.
- Display setting** : Specifies whether to display either your self image or the other party's image or both images during a videophone call.
 • If you set other than **Both sides**, **Sub screen** cannot be set.
- Sub screen** : Specifies whether to display your self image or the other party's image on the sub screen during a videophone call.
- Screen size** : Sets the main screen view size.
- Visual preference** : Sets the quality of outgoing image.
- Display light** : Sets the display light during a videophone call.
 • When **Terminal settings** is set, the setting of **Display light time (Normal use)** in Display Light Setting (P144) applies.
- Speakerphone** : Specifies whether to turn on the speakerphone function automatically once a videophone call is connected.

3 Press

INFORMATION

- Even when **Auto redial as voice** is set to **ON**, redialing may not be performed depending on the situation of the other party or the network.
- When **Auto redial as voice** is set to **ON**, if you make a videophone call during a packet communication with a PC connected, the call is redialed as voice call without connecting to a videophone call. During a voice call or 64K data communication, the call is not connected to a videophone call and redialing is not performed, either.
- If redialing as voice call occurs with **Auto redial as voice** set to **ON**, voice call charges apply instead of digital communication charges.
- When **Speakerphone** is set to **ON** and Silent Mode is active, if you make a videophone call, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to switch to the speakerphone call. Select **Yes** or **No**.

Menu 8234

Setting the images to be displayed during a videophone call

Image Setting

Change the images to be sent to the other party during a videophone call such as the substitute image, answer machine image, response hold image, on-hold image and movie memo image.

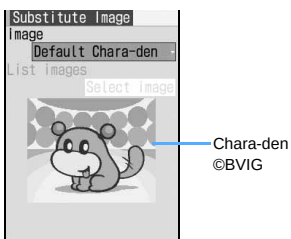
- You cannot set the following images:
 - Still image with a size larger than 176 x 144
 - Animation and Created animation
 - Still image in the format other than JPEG and GIF formats
 - Image that is prohibited from being output from FOMA terminal

Setting the substitute image

Default Default Chara-den

1 (Menu) 8 7 1 5

2 1 ▶ Select Image field



■ Setting the default Chara-den: 1
Default Chara-den (ブンブン(Dimo)) is set.

■ Setting the default still image: 2
Default image (camera-off image) is set.

■ Setting other Chara-den:
① 3 ▶ Select Select image (from List images) ▶ Select a folder
② Select Chara-den
• To display Chara-den: Highlight Chara-den ▶ (Enter)

■ Setting other still images:
① 4 ▶ Select Select image (from List images) ▶ Select a folder
② Select a still image
• To display a still image: Highlight a still image ▶ (Enter)
• The selected image with the text message on it is displayed on the other party's terminal.

3 Press (Enter)

INFORMATION

- If the Chara-den set as the substitute image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to **Default Chara-den**. If the still image or the default Chara-den is deleted, the substitute image is reset to **Default image**.

Changing the answer machine/response hold/on-hold/movie memo images

Default Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default

1 (Menu) 8 7 1 5

2 2 to 5

3 Select each item to set



In case of the answer machine image

- When **Default** is selected, the default image is set.
- When **Select image (from Image)** is selected, select **Select image (from List images)** to select an image.
- The selected image with the text message on it is displayed on the other party's terminal.

4 Press (Enter)

Setting of switching between a voice call and videophone call

Notify Switchable Mode

Set whether to notify the other party's terminal that your terminal can switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

- You cannot change the setting during a voice call or videophone call.
- This setting cannot be made outside the service area. Operate the terminal in locations with good radio wave condition.

Default Indication ON: active

1



■ Deactivating:

■ Checking the current setting:

2

Select Yes

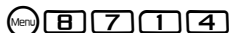
Setting how incoming videophone calls are handled during i-mode

Data Session Arrival Act

Videophone calls can be received during i-mode packet communication.

Default V.phone priority

1



2

Press any of **1** to **4**

V.phone priority : Receives a videophone call. When the call is answered, the current packet communication is disconnected.

Packet DL priority : Rejects an incoming videophone call and continues the packet communication.

V.phone answerphone : Connects an incoming videophone call to the Voice Mail Service Center.*1

Call forwarding : Forwards an incoming videophone call to the forwarding phone number.

*1 The service is not available as of May 2006.

INFORMATION

- Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service are optional subscriber services. Without subscription, even if you set **V.phone answerphone** or **Call forwarding**, the action of **Packet DL priority** takes place.
- If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the ringing time for each service is set to 0 second, either service starts its operation, regardless of this setting. Incoming calls are not registered in the received call history.

Using the videophone by connecting with an external device

External Device

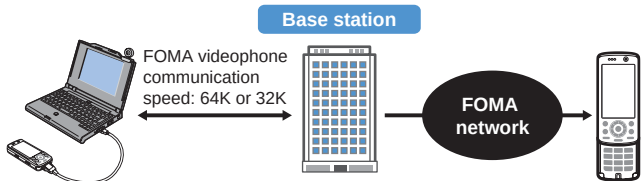
By connecting FOMA terminal to an external device such as PC by the FOMA USB cable (optional), you can make and receive videophone calls from the external device.

To use this function, install a videophone application in a dedicated external device or a PC, and prepare devices such as an earphone/microphone or USB-compatible Web camera (available in market).

- This function is not available when FOMA terminal is not connected to an external device.
- Refer to the instruction manual of external devices for hardware requirements or setting/operating instructions of videophone applications.
- The application called “ドコモテレビ電話ソフト 2005 (DoCoMo videophone software 2005)” that is compatible with this function is available on the DoCoMo videophone software website. Visit the site below and download it (visit the support website for details of the environment for usage on PC):

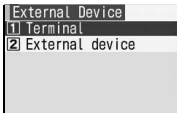
<http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/>

Default Terminal



1

2 Press or



INFORMATION

- A videophone call cannot be made from an external device during a voice call.
- When you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, if a videophone call is received through an external device during a voice call, it is recorded as a missed call in the received call history. The same applies when a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication is received during a videophone call using an external device.

PushTalk

What's PushTalk?	96
Making PushTalk calls	96
Receiving PushTalk calls	98
Registering entries into the PushTalk phonebook	PushTalk Phonebook New Entry 99
Making a PushTalk call by using the PushTalk phonebook	100
Deleting members from the PushTalk phonebook	Delete PushTalk Phonebook 102
Setting for incoming/outgoing PushTalk calls	102

What's PushTalk?

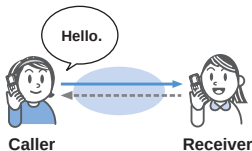
The PushTalk button () allows you to communicate with multiple people (up to 5 including yourself) by simple operation. Press the PushTalk button for over a second to make access to the PushTalk phonebook, select the parties to talk to and press . PushTalk communication fee is charged every time you press  and speak.

Hold down  while you are speaking and the other parties only listen to you.

On the screen, you can see who is speaking and the states of the other members. This function is very useful when communicating within a group or delivering a brief message.

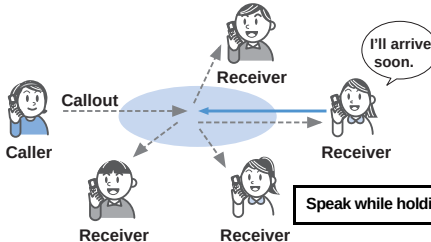
- Supporting models: 902i series, 902iS series and P702i

Talk between two persons



Speak while holding down .

Talk among multiple persons



PushTalkPlus

PushTalkPlus is a service in which you can communicate with up to 20 persons including you by using a phonebook on the network registered in advance. This service also provides some useful functions such as allowing you to check the member's state. Note that the optional subscription is needed if you use PushTalkPlus.

- For details about how to operate PushTalkPlus, see the separately-provided booklet.

Making PushTalk calls

PushTalk communication screen



Member

Name*¹, phone number, or *User unset**² is displayed.

Member that is speaking now

Name*¹, phone number, *User unset**², *Myself*, a blank*³, or ? *⁴ is displayed.

Group name (indicated only on the screen of the party who started group calling)

The other party's status

 **Calling** *⁵: Calling the other party

 **Connected** : Participating in PushTalk

 **Disconnected** *⁵: No response, PushTalk ended, or the other party's terminal is outside service area or turned off

 **Driving** *⁵: Public mode (Driving mode) set on the other party's terminal

*¹ Displayed when the phone number is registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook (Name displays P107).

*² When a caller makes a PushTalk call not notifying the caller ID, the members are indicated as *User unset* on receiver's screens.

*³ Displayed when no party is speaking.

*⁴ Displayed when the speaking party cannot be identified.

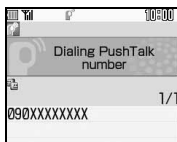
*⁵ Displayed when 3 or more parties are communicating.

Communicating on PushTalk

1 Enter the phone number

- Do the same as you enter a number for a voice call.

2



When the other party answers, the answering tone sounds and PushTalk starts.

- When you make a PushTalk call with FOMA terminal closed, the speakerphone function is turned on.



PushTalk button

- **Making a call with the speakerphone function while FOMA terminal is open:**  (for over a second)

3 Communicate on PushTalk

- When a member answers while 3 or more parties are communicating, the connection tone sounds.
- When a member exits from PushTalk while 3 or more parties are communicating, the disconnection tone sounds.

- **Switching to the speakerphone function:**  or 

■ Speaking:

① Hold down and speak

- When you press , you hear the floor acquisition sound.
- While another party is speaking, pressing  makes the floor acquisition failure sound and you cannot speak.

② Release when you finish speaking

- When you release , a tone sounds to indicate the end of floor acquisition.
- When the limit of time for the floor acquisition approaches, a tone sounds to indicate the floor acquisition is ending.

4 Press when you end PushTalk

- To end a PushTalk call by closing the FOMA terminal, change the setting of PushTalk Close Setting.

INFORMATION

- You can make a PushTalk call from the FOMA terminal phonebook, UIM phonebook, redial data, received call history, i-appli, or scan result of Bar Code Reader. You can also make a PushTalk call from Phone To (AV Phone To) in mail, sites, or ToruCa.
- You can make a PushTalk call by setting conditions. ➡P58
- You cannot make a PushTalk call during a voice call, videophone call or data communication. During PushTalk, you cannot make a voice call or videophone call to a different party.
- When you make a PushTalk call during i-mode, i-mode is disconnected.
- When you make a PushTalk call when i-appli is running, i-appli is suspended.
- Speaking time with a single floor acquisition is limited. When the time limit arrives, the floor acquisition is canceled.
- If no party acquires the floor for a certain period of time, PushTalk ends.
- If you set *Answer* in PushTalk Arrival Act, a voice call coming in while you are speaking cancels the floor acquisition.
- You cannot call an emergency number (110, 119, or 118) during PushTalk.

Operation during PushTalk

The following operations can be performed from the submenu. You can change the earpiece volume during PushTalk with .

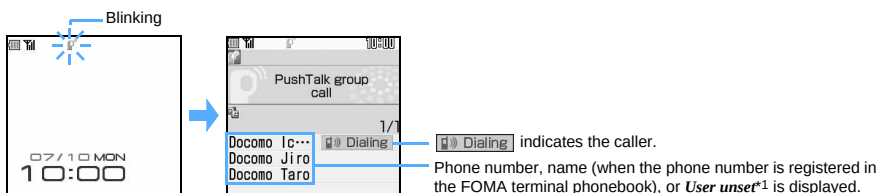
Submenu item	Description	Page
1 Reconnect alarm *1	Set an alarm indicating reconnection of a PushTalk call under improved signal quality which has been cut off due to poor signal quality.	P61
2 Setting when folded	Set whether to end PushTalk by closing FOMA terminal.	P104
3 PushTalk arv. act	Set the action against an incoming voice call during PushTalk.	P103

*1 You can change this setting even while the alarm is sounding. The new setting takes effect after the alarm stops.

Receiving PushTalk calls

1 An incoming PushTalk call is received

The PushTalk ring alert sounds, the display lights, and the Enter key lights or flashes.



*1 When a caller makes a PushTalk call not notifying the caller ID, the members are indicated as **User unset** on receiver's screens.

2 or

You can answer the PushTalk call and **Connected** is notified to the other party.

- Answering the PushTalk call while FOMA terminal is closed switches on the speakerphone function.
- You can also answer a PushTalk call by pressing  to , , or  (Any Key Answer). 
- Pressing  disconnects the call without answering it. For a group call, **Disconnected** is notified to the connected members before disconnecting the call.
- When PushTalk Auto Answer is set to **ON**, incoming PushTalk calls are automatically answered. Your FOMA terminal is switched to the communication that uses the speakerphone function. In Silent Mode, however, the auto answering function does not work. Answer by pressing  or  (you can also answer by Any Key Answer).

3 Communicate on PushTalk

- For details, follow Step 3 of "Communicating on PushTalk". 

4 Press when you end PushTalk

- To end a PushTalk call by closing the FOMA terminal, change the setting of PushTalk Close Setting.

INFORMATION

- To stop the ring alert and vibrator:  while receiving a PushTalk call
- You cannot answer incoming PushTalk calls during a voice call. They are registered in the received call history.
- PushTalk calls cannot be received during a videophone call, videophone call through an external device, data communication, software update, or pattern definition update. The missed calls are not registered in the received call history.
- If you receive a PushTalk call during i-mode, the action will be subject to the setting of i-mode Arrival Act: PT.
- i-mode cannot be used during PushTalk.
- Response and Hold is not possible for PushTalk. Pressing  disconnects the incoming call.
- Even if there is an incoming videophone call, PushTalk call or data communication during PushTalk, you cannot answer. They are registered in the received call history.
- When no answer is received within the duration (in seconds) set in PushTalk Ring Time, the incoming PushTalk call is terminated. In case of the PushTalk call with 3 or more parties, **Disconnected** is notified to the connected members.

- When there is an incoming PushTalk call during Public mode (Driving mode), the ring alert does not sound and incoming screen does not appear either.  is displayed on the screen and you cannot answer the call. In case of the PushTalk call with 3 or more parties, **Driving** is notified to the connected members.
- Even if you do not answer an incoming PushTalk call or you exit from the PushTalk communication, you can rejoin the communication from the received call history while the caller is communicating on PushTalk.
- When PushTalk Arrival Act is set to **Answer** and an incoming voice call is received during PushTalk, the operation is the same as that for an incoming call during a voice call. P64
- Changing the operation when a PushTalk call arrives P70

Menu 44

Registering entries into the PushTalk phonebook

PushTalk Phonebook New Entry

Register members to call on PushTalk. You can register them in different groups.

- Up to 700 entries can be registered (or fewer depending on the type of data registered).
- The phone numbers must be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook in advance to be registered in the PushTalk phonebook.
- If you delete or change a phone number in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the same phone number in the PushTalk phonebook is automatically changed in the same way. The setting for Secret Attribute will also be reflected.

Example Registering by searching the FOMA terminal phonebook

1 (for over a second)



- If the members are already registered, all the members are displayed in order of Japanese syllabary.
- Pressing  to  or  highlights the first member of the column corresponding to the Japanese character (a to ra, wa) assigned to each dial key. Pressing  or  highlights a member whose name (reading) does not start with a character of Japanese syllabary.
- If there is more than one page, use  to change the page.

2

3 Select **View phonebook**

- When registering a phone number that is not registered in FOMA phonebook, select **Direct input**. The FOMA phonebook registration screen is displayed (P107). Set the required items and save them. The phone number will be registered in both the PushTalk phonebook and the FOMA phonebook. If you register more than one phone number, select the phone number you want to register in the PushTalk phonebook. Then registration to the PushTalk phonebook is completed.

4 Search the phonebook ▶ Select the party

- When multiple phone numbers are registered, select the phone number.

5 Select **Yes**

- To register additional members: Repeat Step 2 to 5

INFORMATION

- To register a member from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook, highlight a party from the phonebook list, press  , and select **Yes**. When multiple phone numbers are registered, select the desired phone number and select **Yes**. You can also make the same registration by highlighting a phone number on the phonebook details screen, pressing  , and selecting **Yes**.
- When multiple phone numbers are registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook, only one of them can be registered.

Registering members into groups

You can register members registered in the PushTalk phonebook into different groups.

- Up to 30 groups can be registered.
- Up to 19 members can be registered in one group. However, a PushTalk communication can include up to 5 members. When you make a PushTalk call, select up to 4 members other than yourself.

1 (for over a second)



- To register members in a registered group, go to Step 3.

■ Changing the group name: Highlight the group Enter the group name

- If you correct the group name, the name in the redial data will not automatically reflect changes made to the group name.

2 Enter the group name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)

3 Select the group

- When the already registered group is selected, its members are displayed.

4

The members registered in the PushTalk phonebook are displayed in a list.

- Pressing  to  or  highlights the first member of the column corresponding to the Japanese character (a to ra, wa) assigned to each dial key. Pressing  or  highlights a member whose name (reading) does not start with a character of Japanese syllabary.
- If there is more than one page, use  to change the page.

5 Select the member

- To switch selecting/canceling: 

6 Press

INFORMATION

- The same member can be registered in different groups.

Making a PushTalk call by using the PushTalk phonebook

- To make a PushTalk call to multiple parties, their phone numbers must be registered in the PushTalk phonebook.

1 (for over a second)



Members are displayed in the following order of readings:

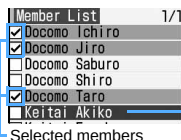
- ① Japanese syllabary order
- ② Alphabetical order
- ③ Numbers
- ④ Entries starting with a blank
- ⑤ Symbols
- ⑥ No reading

- Pressing  to  or  highlights the first member of the column corresponding to the Japanese character (a to ra, wa) assigned to each dial key. Pressing  or  highlights a member whose name (reading) does not start with a character of Japanese syllabary.
- If there is more than one page, use  to change the page.
- When you press   on the member list, you will connect to the network and can use PushTalkPlus. ➡P96

Highlighted member's phone number

Name registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook

2 Select members



- Up to 5 members can communicate on PushTalk including yourself.
- To switch selecting/canceling:
- To check the selected members:

3 or

When the first member answers, the answering tone sounds and PushTalk starts.

- If you do not select any member, a PushTalk call is made to the highlighted member.
- When you make a PushTalk call with FOMA terminal closed, the speakerphone function is turned on.

■ **Making a call with the speakerphone function while FOMA terminal is open:** (for over a second) or (for over a second)

4 Communicate on PushTalk

- For details, follow Step 3 of “Communicating on PushTalk”. ●P97

5 Press when you end PushTalk

- When the caller presses , PushTalk communication of all present members comes to an end.
- To end a PushTalk call by closing the FOMA terminal, change the setting of PushTalk Close Setting.

INFORMATION

- You can make a PushTalk call to multiple parties from the redial data or received call history.
- You can make a PushTalk call from the member list or group list by setting conditions. ●P58
- The phonebook data to which Secret Attribute is set is not displayed unless Secret Mode is on.
- If you add “184” or “186” to a member's phone number, it is ignored.
- When you make a PushTalk call to multiple members and if some phone number is registered more than once with different names, the first name in the Japanese syllabary appears on the PushTalk communication screen.

Making a PushTalk call from the PushTalk group

1 (for over a second) ► ► Select the group

- To make a PushTalk call to all the members of a group: (for over a second) ► ► Highlight the group ► Go to Step 3

2 Select the member to make a PushTalk call



- All the members of the group are selected.
- Up to 5 members can communicate on PushTalk including yourself.
- To switch selecting/canceling:
- To check the selected members:

3 Press or

The PushTalk call is made.

- If you make a call from the group list, the PushTalk call is made to all the members of the highlighted group. When 5 or more members are registered, a message appears warning that the number of allowable parties is exceeded. Select up to 4 members and make a PushTalk call.
- When you make a PushTalk call with FOMA terminal closed, the speakerphone function is turned on.
- Repeat the procedure from Step 4 in “Making a PushTalk call by using the PushTalk phonebook”.

■ **Making a call with the speakerphone function while FOMA terminal is open:** (for over a second) or (for over a second)

INFORMATION

- When Secret Mode is not set, the call is only made to members whose Secret Attribute is not set.

Deleting members from the PushTalk phonebook

Delete PushTalk Phonebook

1 (for over a second) ► Highlight the member ►

Member List		1/1
☒	Docomo Ichiro	Selected member Highlighted member
☐	Docomo Jiro	
☐	Docomo Saburo	
☐	Docomo Shiro	

- Not the member you selected but the highlighted member is deleted.

2 Select Yes ► Select No

- To also delete from the FOMA terminal phonebook: Select Yes ► Select Yes
- If you delete a member registered in a group, the member is also deleted from the group.

Deleting a Group

1 (for over a second) ► ► Highlight the group ►

2 Select Yes

- Deleting a group does not delete its members from the PushTalk phonebook or the FOMA terminal phonebook.

Deleting a member registered in the group

1 (for over a second) ► ► Select the group ► Highlight the member ►

2 Select Yes

- Deleting a group member does not delete the member from the PushTalk phonebook or the FOMA terminal phonebook.

Setting for incoming/outgoing PushTalk calls

Set the operations for incoming/outgoing PushTalk calls. These settings are effective only for PushTalk calls.

Notifying your and member's phone number

PT Caller ID Notification

Your phone number and member's phone number (caller ID) are notified when you make a PushTalk call.

- When a caller makes a PushTalk call notifying the caller ID, his or her phone number and the member's numbers are notified to all the members. Phone numbers are important information for customers. Take extreme care when you notify a caller ID.

 Default  Hide caller ID

1

- The same operation is possible by pressing    in the member list.

2 Press

- Not to notify: 

INFORMATION

- Regardless of the setting of Caller ID Notification, the caller ID of each PushTalk member is notified according to the setting of PT Caller ID notification.
- When setting/operating multiple caller ID notification methods simultaneously if you make a PushTalk call, the caller ID is notified in the following preference order:
 - ① Caller ID notification method set in Call Option when making a call
 - ② Caller ID Setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook (when you make only one call)
 - ③ PT Caller ID Notification setting

Setting ringing time for ring alert

PushTalk Ring Time

Set the period of ringing time to keep the ring alert sounding. If you do not answer within this period, disconnection results.

- When **Delayed ring alert** in Mute Ring Time Setting is set to **ON**, this function operates after the mute ring time elapses.
- This function cannot be set when PushTalk Auto Answer is set to **ON**.

Default 30 sec

- 1
- Menu

8

7

2

2
- The same operation is possible by pressing

Menu

5

1

 in the member list.

2

Enter the ringing time (1 to 60 seconds)

3

Press

⏏

Answering PushTalk calls automatically

PushTalk Auto Answer

You can automatically answer the received PushTalk call and your FOMA terminal automatically switches to communication via the speaker.

- This setting is invalid in Silent Mode. To answer an incoming PushTalk call, press

⏏

 or

⏏

 (you can also answer by Any Key Answer).
- This setting is invalid in Public mode (Driving mode). The incoming screen is not displayed either.
- To communicate via a connected flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional), use

⏏

.

Default OFF

- 1
- Menu

8

7

2

4
- The same operation is possible by pressing

Menu

5

3

 in the member list.

2

Press

1

- Not to answer automatically:

2

Selecting how incoming voice calls are handled during PushTalk

PushTalk Arrival Act

Incoming voice calls during PushTalk are responded by Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service (incoming videophone calls cannot be handled).

Default Call Rejection

- 1
- Menu

8

7

2

5
- The same operation is possible by pressing

Menu

5

4

 in the member list.

2 Press any of **[1]** to **[4]**

- Answer** : You can disconnect PushTalk and answer an incoming voice call. Pressing **[6]** while receiving the incoming call disconnects PushTalk and answers the voice call. When you press **[6]**, PushTalk is disconnected and incoming call alert still continues.
- Call Rejection** : Incoming voice calls are rejected.
- Voice Mail** : Incoming voice calls are connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.
- Call Forwarding** : Incoming voice calls are forwarded to the forwarding destination.

INFORMATION

- Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service are optional subscriber services. Without subscription, if you set **Voice Mail** or **Call Forwarding**, action of **Answer** takes place.
- If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the ringing time for each service is set to 0 second, either service starts its operation, regardless of this setting. Incoming calls are not registered in the received call history.
- Regardless of the setting for PushTalk Arrival Act, calls will be registered in the received call history.

Menu 284 / Menu 8727

Setting operations for an incoming PushTalk call during i-mode

i-mode Arrival Act: PT

Default PushTalk preferred

1 **[8]** **[4]**

- The same operation is possible by pressing **[Menu]** **[5]** **[6]** in the member list.

2 Press **[1]** or **[2]**

PushTalk preferred :

i-mode is terminated at the time when an incoming PushTalk call is received, and the incoming PushTalk call screen is displayed. When you end PushTalk, the i-mode screen returns.

i-mode preferred : Incoming PushTalk calls are not displayed on the screen and i-mode is continued. The missed incoming PushTalk calls are not recorded in the received call history.

Setting operations when FOMA terminal is closed during PushTalk

PushTalk Close Setting

Default Continue

1 **[Menu]** **[8]** **[7]** **[2]** **[6]**

- The same operation is possible by pressing **[Menu]** **[5]** **[5]** in the member list.

2 Press **[1]** or **[2]**

End call : Ends PushTalk**Continue** : Continues PushTalk.

INFORMATION

- If a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) is connected to FOMA terminal, closing FOMA terminal during PushTalk does not end the call regardless of this setting.

Phonebook

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal	106
Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook	
..... Phonebook New Entry	107
Registering entries into the UIM phonebook	
..... UIM Phonebook New Entry	110
Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions	Group Setting 111
Making calls from the phonebook	Phonebook Search 112
Editing phonebook entries	Edit Phonebook 118
Copying phonebook entries	120
Deleting phonebook entries	Delete Phonebook 121
Saving the phonebook data to the Data Center	Data Security Service 121
Setting functions for phonebook entries	121
Protecting the secret phonebook entries	Secret Attribute 123
Checking the number of registered phonebook entries	
..... Check No. of Items	124
Using simple dialing to make calls	Quick Dial 124
Using Data Security Service	125

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal

FOMA D902iS supports the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook. Besides, the PushTalk phonebook can be used for exclusive use of PushTalk. ●P99

- The items that can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook are as follows:

○: Available ×: Not available

Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
The number of entries	Up to 700*1	Up to 50
Entry items		
Phonebook No.	○	×
Name/reading	Up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters for name and up to 32 one-byte characters for reading can be set.	Up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for name and up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters for reading can be set.
Image/video	1 entry per person	×
Group	Entries can be classified into 30 groups and グループなし (No group).	Entries can be classified into 10 groups and グループなし.
Phone number/icon	Up to 5 phone numbers per person, 2,105 in total*1 can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one phone number can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Mail address/icon	Up to 5 mail addresses per person, 2,105 in total*1 can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one mail address can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Other settings*2	○	×
Phonebook Search		
Show All Names	○	○
Group Search	○	○
Name Search	○	○
Ranking Search	○	×
Ph Book No. Search	○	×
Number Search	○	○
Secrecy Search	○	×
Various settings		
Alert by Contact*3	○	×
Secret Attribute	○	×
Caller ID Setting	○	×
Reject/Accept Call	○	×
Secret Code	○	×
Videophone Rate	○	×
Others		
Changing order of phone numbers, mail addresses and phonebook Nos.	○	×
Quick Dial	○	×
Quick Mail	○	×
Mail Search	○	○
Site display	○	×
Send Ir Data	○	○
Data Security Service	○	×

*1 The number of items that can be registered may be decreased depending on the type of data registered.

*2 The following settings are available:

Birthday, note, postal code/address, company name, job title and URL

*3 Ring alert, vibrator, lighting pattern and lighting color for incoming calls or mails can be set. In settings for incoming calls, the substitute image for videophone can also be set. In addition, the settings for incoming/outgoing calls by groups are available.

Name displays

If a call is made/received to/from a party registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook, the name and the phone number registered in the phonebook appears on the screen displayed while making a call/calling/receiving a call or talking.

In addition, the name registered in the phonebook is also displayed in the redial data, received call history, recorded messages, senders of received mail, addresses of sent/unsent mail, custom menu's person, etc. It is also displayed when you enter the phone number or mail address without searching the phonebook.

- When phonebook entries of different names with the same phone number/mail address are registered in both phonebooks, the name registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed.
- In case some different names are registered for the same phone number or mail address in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the name registered first is displayed.
- When a mail is received, if the mail address including the @ and the following domain name exactly matches a mail address registered in the phonebook, the settings of the phonebook take precedence and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. Note that in case i-mode terminal is used by sender, even when the mail address is registered in the phonebook without the domain name "@docomo.ne.jp", the settings of the phonebook take precedence and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. When the mail address is "mobile phone number @docomo.ne.jp", register in the phonebook without "@docomo.ne.jp".
- When SMS is received and the phone number exactly matches a phone number registered in the phonebook, the settings of phonebook take precedence.
- If there is an incoming mail from the other party saved in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed as ticker on the task bar. Note that if mail is received from the other party with Secret Attribute set while not in Secret Mode, the mail address is displayed on the task bar.

Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook

Phonebook New Entry

- Maximum number of items that can be registered ●P106
- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of all the information you register in the phonebook.

If you have a PC, you can use the data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) to send data to the PC. Also, if you have subscribed to Data Security Service (charges apply), you can save the data to the Data Center.

- The phonebook data that is saved in FOMA terminal can be backed up to a miniSD memory card. ●P336
- Registered data may be lost due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- Please be informed that if you copy the data registered in FOMA terminal to a new terminal at a DoCoMo Shop when switching to a new model, etc., the specifications of some new models may not allow copying of the data.

1   

2 Enter the name (Up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters) ▶ 

Enter Name
Enter name
Docomo Taro

- Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols and pictograms can be entered. However, symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc.
- If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered.

3 Select each item to set

Phonebook No., name and reading

- Press to switch the pages.

Phonebook No. : The lowest available phonebook No. is assigned automatically.

- **Changing the phonebook No.: Enter a number (0 to 699)**
 - Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.

Name : Check the name.

- **Correcting the name: Select the name field ▶ Correct the name ▶**

Reading : Check the reading.

- **Correcting the reading: Select the reading field ▶ Correct the reading (up to 32 one-byte characters)**
 - If you correct the name, the changes will not be automatically reflected to the reading of the name.

Select/Shoot image : Set an image or a video/i-motion file that is displayed when a call is made/received or the phonebook data is checked.

- To restore the default setting:
- **Setting an image: ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image**
 - If an image with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the reduced image. If you select **Yes** and set the image, the image of which size is reduced to 96 x 72 (phonebook) or smaller is saved.
 - When a call is made/received or the phonebook data is checked, for animation, the playing image is displayed and for Created animation, the first image is displayed.
- **Shooting a still image with Camera to set: ▶ Shoot the still image ▶**
 - The size of a still image is set to 96 x 72 (phonebook) automatically.
- **Setting video/i-motion: ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select video/i-motion**
 - You can set video/i-motion with only images when the size is set to 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF).
 - Playing and checking a video/i-motion file when selecting
 - When a call is made, the first frame of the video/i-motion is displayed.
- **Recording video with Movie Camera to set: ▶ Shoot video ▶**
 - The size of a video is set to 176 x 144 (QCIF) automatically. Sounds are not recorded.



Group : Select a group. (No group) is set by default.
Group Setting

- **Adding the groups: Select the group field ▶ ▶ Enter the name of the group (Up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶**
- Other than , up to 30 groups can be registered.

-  **Phone number** : Enter the phone number including the area code (up to 26 digits) and select an icon.
- Up to 5 phone numbers per person can be registered. Saving the first phone number displays items to be added.
 - Pause (P), timed pause (T), " + ", " # " and sub-address delimiter (✕) can be registered.
-  **Mail address** : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered. Select an icon.
- Up to 5 addresses per person can be registered. Saving the first mail address displays items to be added.
 - When the other party has registered a secret code  P122
-  **Birthday** : Set **Set birthday** to **ON** and enter the birthday in the **Birthday** field.
-  **Note** : Up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered.
-  **PostalCode/Address** :
- Up to 7 digits can be entered for postal code. And up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered for address.
-  **Company name** : Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Job title** : Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.
-  **URL** : Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.

4 Press

- When a phonebook No. that has already been used to save information is specified, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite. Select **New entry** not to overwrite and specify another phonebook No.

INFORMATION

- A phone number saved in the phonebook with preceding "184" or "186" does not allow sending of SMS even if it is selected as the address. In addition, if a party whose mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp" is saved in the phonebook with preceding "184" or "186", no i-mode Mail can be sent to the address.
- For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals, the domain name "@docomo.ne.jp" of the addresses can be omitted, however, it is recommended to save the whole addresses including "@docomo.ne.jp".
 - For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals as chat members, save the whole addresses including "@docomo.ne.jp".
- When receiving mail, if a mail address of incoming mail including the@ and the following domain name does not match a mail address registered in the phonebook completely, the settings specified for the phonebook data or group is not used. However, in case of a mail address of i-mode terminal, the settings specified is available without "@docomo.ne.jp".

Setting the incoming actions for each phonebook entry

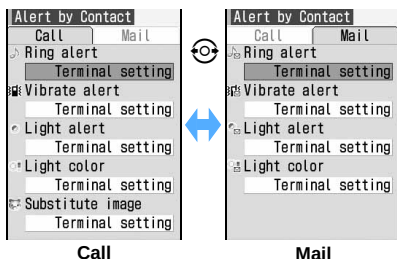
Alert by Contact

Ring alert or lighting, etc. can be set for each entry which is registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook ► Highlight a party ►

- Searching methods of the phonebook  P122

2 to display the setting screen ► Select each item to set



- In case the group is set to **グループなし**, each items are set to **Terminal setting**. If you select a group, the videophone substitute image is set to **Terminal setting** and the other items are set to **Group setting**.
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file when selecting  P122

- 🎵 / 🎵 **Ring alert** : Select **Movie ringtone** or **Melody** to select a video/i-motion file or a melody.
- Only video/i-motion with the ring alert setting of the detail information specified to **Available** can be set as ring alert.
 - To operate as set in the setting for Sound Setting, select **Terminal setting**.
- 🔊 / 🔊 **Vibrate alert** : Select **Select** to set the vibrator for incoming calls/emails.
- To operate as set in the setting for Vibrator Setting, select **Terminal setting**.
- 💡 / 💡 **Light alert** : Select **Select** to set the lighting pattern of the Enter key for incoming calls/emails.
- If **Sync melody** or **OFF** is set, the lighting color cannot be set.
 - To operate as set in Light Alert Setting, select **Terminal setting**.
- 💡 / 💡 **Light color** : Select **Select** to set the lighting color of the Enter key for incoming calls/emails.
- To operate as set in Light Alert Setting, select **Terminal setting**.
- 🖼️ **Substitute image (Only the screen for calls can be set)** :
- Select **Select** to set Chara-den (👤P327) displayed during a call.
- To operate as set in Image Setting, select **Terminal setting**.

3 Press

INFORMATION

- When you set **Sync melody** for Incoming vibrator or lighting pattern, operation may not occur depending on the melody.

Registering entries into the UIM phonebook

UIM Phonebook New Entry

- Maximum number of items that can be registered 👤P106

1

2 Enter the name (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶

Enter Name
Enter name
Docomo Taro

- Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols and pictograms can be entered. However, symbols and pictograms may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc.
- When both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, up to 10 characters can be registered.
- If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered.

3 Select each item to set

Save To UIM
Docomo Taro
DocomoTaro
グループなし
[Phone number]
[Mail address]

Name and reading

Name : Check the name

■ **Correcting the name: Select the name field ▶ Correct the name ▶ **

Reading : Check the reading

■ **Correcting the reading: Select the reading field ▶ Correct the reading (up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)**

- Two-byte katakana and one-byte alphanumeric characters can be used to enter the reading.
- When both one- and two-byte characters are used, up to 12 characters can be registered.
- If you correct the name, the changes will not be automatically reflected to the reading of the name.

 **Group** : Select a group from Group 1 to 10 and グループなし. グループなし is set by default.

 **Phone number** : Enter the phone number including the area code. You can enter up to 26 digits (up to 20 digits depending on the UIM type).

- Only one phone number can be registered. No icon can be set.
- Pause (P), "+", "# and sub-address delimiter (*) can be registered. Timed pause (T) can be entered but cannot be registered.

 **Mail address** : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- Only one mail address can be registered. No icon can be set.

4 Press

INFORMATION

- For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals, the domain name "@docomo.ne.jp" of the addresses can be omitted, however, it is recommended to save the whole addresses including "@docomo.ne.jp". For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals as chat members, save the whole addresses including "@docomo.ne.jp".

Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions

Group Setting

You can change the group name of the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook and set the ring alert by group in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- In Group Setting of the UIM phonebook, only the group name can be changed.
- As for グループなし, the group name cannot be changed or the incoming/outgoing action cannot be set.

Creating groups or edit the name of the groups

- Other than グループなし, up to 30 groups can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

1

- To change the UIM phonebook group names:     

2 ▶ Enter the group name

- You can enter up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- You can enter up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the UIM phonebook. Note that when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, up to 10 characters can be registered.

■ **Changing the name of the group : Highlight the group** ▶ **Edit the name of the group**

- For UIM phonebook: Highlight the group   ▶ Edit the name of group

■ **Changing the order of groups of the FOMA terminal phonebook:** ▶ or

3 Press

Setting incoming/outgoing actions

Alert/Image by Group

1     ► Highlight a group ►  

2  to display the setting screen ► Select each items to set

- For setting call images, follow Step 3 of "Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook".  P108
- For setting ring alert, incoming vibrator, lighting pattern and lighting color for incoming calls/emails, procedures are the same as Step 2 of "Setting the incoming actions for each phonebook entry".  P109
- When video/i-motion with image is set for the ring alert on the setting screen for calls, the call image is set to **Sync ring alert**. Note that when changing call images while the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set to ring alert, **Select image** or **Shoot still image** can be selected.

3 Press

INFORMATION

- The priority of incoming/outgoing actions

• Ring alert  P129	• Vibrator  P133	• Outgoing image  P142
• Incoming image  P143	• Lighting  P149	

Deleting the group of FOMA terminal phonebook

If you delete a group, all the phonebook entries registered in the group are also deleted.

- The phonebook entries with Secret Attribute are also deleted.
- If you delete an entry that is saved in the PushTalk phonebook, it is also deleted from the PushTalk phonebook.
- When you select **グループなし**, only the phonebook entries are deleted, but not the group.

1     ► Highlight a group ►  

2 Enter the terminal security code ► Select **Yes**

Menu 41

Making calls from the phonebook

Phonebook Search

You can make a call easily by calling the other party's phonebook data from the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook.

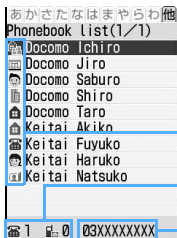
- The phonebook data can be called by specifying the following search methods.

• Show All Names  P114	• Group Search  P114	• Name Search  P114
• Ranking Search*1  P115	• Ph Book No. Search*1  P115	• Number Search  P116
• Column Search  P116	• Secrecy Search*1  P123	

*1 Cannot be used in the UIM phonebook.

- You can specify the searching method displayed by pressing  on the standby display.  P116
- Also you can change the searching method by pressing  and selecting **Search criteria** from the phonebook list.
- In the searching method also available in the UIM phonebook, each press of  switches the FOMA terminal phonebook list and the UIM phonebook list.
- The UIM phonebook list indicates  in front of each entry name.

1



The first time you use the search method, the phonebook list by showing all names (Japanese syllabary order) is displayed. In case of specifying the searching method, the phonebook list is displayed by the specified method.

Icon set for the first phone number

Number of phone numbers and mail addresses registered in the highlighted entry

The first phone number registered in the highlighted entry (The part that cannot be displayed will be omitted.)

Show All Names

2 Highlight a party ▶ Press

- To make a videophone call: Highlight a party ▶
- To make a PushTalk call: Highlight a party ▶
- When several phone numbers are registered, select a phone number.
- When you operate on the details screen, highlight an entry and press or .

■ Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight a party ▶

- When multiple mail addresses have been registered, select a mail address.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail ▶ P228
- In the details screen, highlight a mail address and press or .
- You can also operate in the same way on the user information screen. The mail address registered first is set as the address.
- Operation is available in case the mail address is registered.

■ Composing SMS: Highlight a party ▶ (for over a second)

- When multiple phone numbers have been registered, select a phone number.
- Composing and sending SMS ▶ P264
- In the details screen, highlight a phone number and press .
- You can also operate in the same way on the user information screen. The phone number registered first is set as the address.
- Operation is available in case the phone number is registered.
- You can also operate in the same way by pressing in case the mail address is not registered.

■ Displaying sites: Select a party ▶ to highlight a URL ▶

Searching mail

Example Searching received mail from the FOMA terminal phonebook

1



2 Highlight a party ▶ Press 1 5 1



Received mails from the party highlighted are listed.

- For reading received/sent mail ▶ P246
- To return to the phonebook list: 1 5 1 or 0
- Operation is also available after the mail address or the phone number is highlighted from the details screen.
- In case of the UIM phonebook, highlight a party and press 1 4 1 for received mail and for sent mail, press 1 4 2.

■ To search sent mail: Highlight a party ▶ 1 5 2

INFORMATION

● You can make a call with conditions set. ➡P58

Displaying the phonebook data in order of Japanese syllabary

Show All Names

The phonebook data is displayed in the order of Japanese syllabary as shown below:

Line あ (a) → line か (ka) → line さ (sa) → … → 他 (others) including alphabets, numbers, readings which start with blank, symbols and no reading.

1    

2  to select the line

- Pressing  to ,  or  instead of  displays the line to which the dial key is assigned. For example, pressing  displays line あ. To display other than Japanese syllabary, press  or .

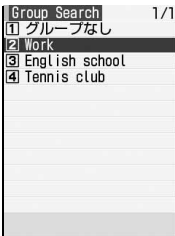
Searching by group

Group Search

- Phonebook entries registered without specifying group are saved under グループなし.

1    

2 Select a group



- The entries in the group are displayed in the following order:

1. Japanese syllabary order
2. Alphabetical order
3. Numbers
4. Entries starting with blank
5. Symbols
6. No reading

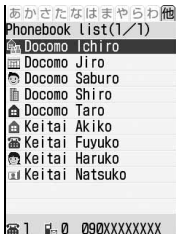
Searching by name

Name Search

Enter a name to search for the entries that start with the first character of the entered name.

1    

2 Enter a name ▶ Press 



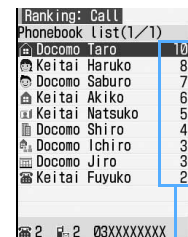
- You can search for the entry by entering the first part of the name. Also, even if you enter nothing, entries are searched.

The phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook can be sorted by the number of calls that took place (Call frequency rank) or by the number of i-mode Mail sent or received (Mail frequency rank).

- The total number of calls and mails are displayed up to 9999.
- Counting is also available in case a phone number or mail address registered in the phonebook is entered directly.

Example Displaying call frequency rank

1 Press **4** **1** **4** **1**



- The total number of calls is the number of calls made or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the call made or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

■ Displaying mail frequency rank: **4** **1** **4** **2**

- The total number of mails is the number of mails sent or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the i-mode Mail sent or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

INFORMATION

- When the total number of multiple entries is the same, the entries are displayed in the following order:
 1. Japanese syllabary order
 2. Alphabetical order
 3. Numbers
 4. Entries starting with blank
 5. Symbols
 6. No reading

Resetting the number of calls/mails

1 Search the phonebook ► Highlight a party ► **9** **3**

2 Select Yes

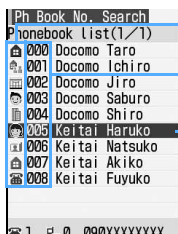
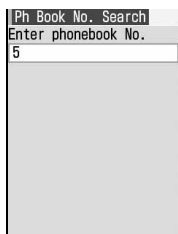
- The total number of calls, date and time of the last call, total number of mails, and date and time of the last mail for each phonebook entry are reset.

Searching by phonebook No.

Enter a phonebook No. from the FOMA terminal phonebook to search for the entry with the specified phonebook No. You can search the entries even if you enter nothing.

1 **4** **1** **5**

2 Enter a phonebook No. ► Press



Icon set for the first phone number

Phonebook No.

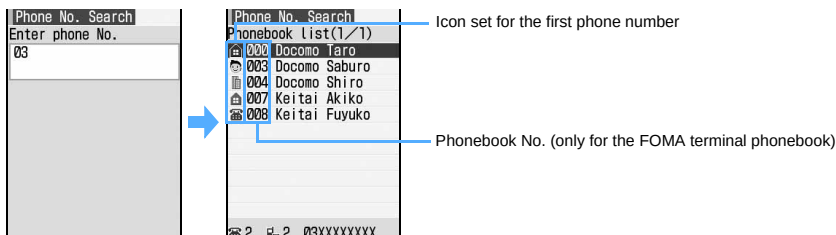
The party with the specified phonebook No.

- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.

Enter only a part of phone number to search for the phone numbers that contain it. You can search the entries even if you enter nothing.

1    

2 Enter a part of phone number ▶ Press 



INFORMATION

● When multiple phonebook entries are available with Number Search, the entries in the FOMA terminal phonebook are displayed in the order of the phonebook No. The entries in the UIM phonebook are displayed in the following order:

1. Japanese syllabary order
2. Alphabetical order
3. Numbers
4. Entries starting with blank
5. Symbols
6. No reading

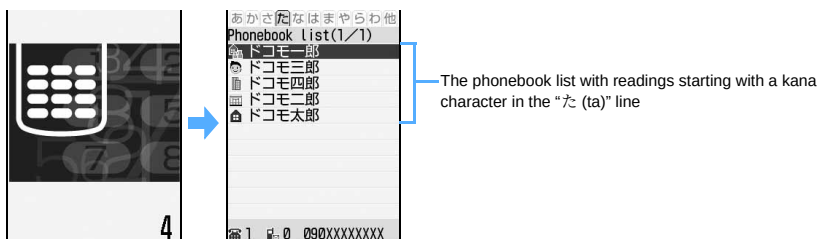
Searching by Column Search quickly

Search for the phonebook data by the characters assigned to the dial key  to  and  (あ to ら and わ).

- The previously used phonebook (the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook) is searched.

Example Searching for “ドコモ太郎 (Docomo Taro)”

1 Press  



- In the search result screen, pressing  to , ,  or  switches lines.

Specifying the searching method

The searching method displayed by pressing  on the standby display can be specified.

- Secrecy Search cannot be specified.

Default Show all names

1

- ✓ is attached on the specified item of searching method.

2 Highlight the searching method ▶ Press

- The searching method for the UIM phonebook cannot be selected.

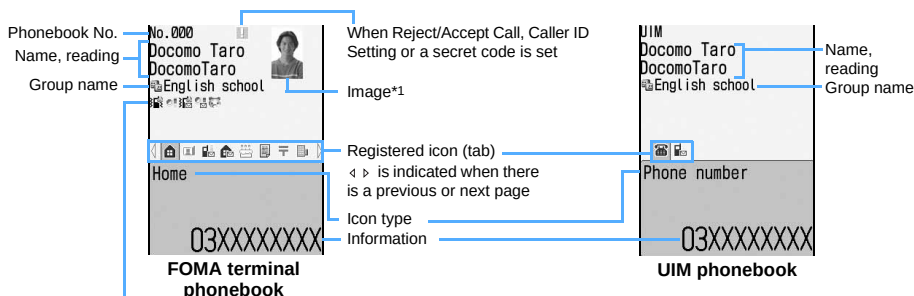
INFORMATION

- In case of searching the UIM phonebook last time, the UIM phonebook is searched by the specified searching method. However, when specifying the method unavailable for the UIM phonebook, the phonebook list of the UIM phonebook (Japanese syllabary order) appears.

Checking phonebook details

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Select a party

The details screen is displayed.



Current settings for ring alert, etc. (phone/mail)*2

-  /  : Ring alert
-  /  : Incoming vibrator
-  /  : Incoming ring alert/vibrator
-  /  : Incoming lighting pattern
-  /  : Incoming lighting color
-  /  : Incoming lighting pattern/color
-  : Videophone substitute image (Only calls)

*1 Displayed when you register an image and set View Preference to **Show with image** or **Show saved image**. If video/i-motion is set for **Image**, the i-motion is played.

*2 When the setting is made, such as ring alert, a colored icon is displayed in Alert by Contact.

2 Display the registered details by

- At each press of , the display switches in following order: Phone number 1 to 5: → Mail address 1 to 5: → Birthday → Note → Postal code/Address → Company name → Job title → URL. However, only the registered items are displayed. Press  to switch the display in the reverse order.
- To display the details screen for the previous/next phonebook entry: 

■ Check the number of calls/mails: Highlight the phone number or mail address by ▶

The accumulated data screen appears.

- The total numbers of calls/mails and the date and time of the last call/mail are unavailable in case the other party does not response due to the radio wave conditions, etc. or i-mode Mail could not be sent.
- When you reset the accumulated data, press  on the accumulated data screen and select **Yes**.

Checking the user information

The image/phonebook No.(only for the FOMA terminal phonebook), name, reading, group name, first phone number (icon type, phone number), first mail address (icon type, mail address) registered in the phonebook are displayed.

1 Search the phonebook ► Highlight a party ► Press

The user information screen is displayed.

- You can also display the user information screen by pressing    on the details screen.

Setting whether to display an image on the details screen View Preference

Set whether to display an image on the phonebook details screen. The settings are also reflected to all phonebook data.

Default [Show saved image](#)

1 Search the phonebook ► Select a party ►

2 Press any of to

Show with image : Displaying the images by priority.

Show only name : Displaying the names. Images are not displayed.

Show saved image: Images are displayed only when the images are registered. If image is not registered, the name is displayed.

INFORMATION

- On the details screen of the UIM phonebook, press  and select **Info/View pref.** → **View preference**.
- The setting of this function is also reflected to the Own Number details screen. Also, when this function is set from Own Number, the settings are also reflected to the phonebook details screen.
- When the name is too long, all the names may not be displayed.

Editing phonebook entries

[Edit Phonebook](#)

You can edit or copy the phonebook data and change the order of the phone numbers and mail addresses in the data. In addition, the phonebook Nos. for the phonebook data can be switched.

Editing saved phonebook entries

- Edited contents in the FOMA terminal phonebook entries registered in the PushTalk phonebook are also reflected to the PushTalk phonebook.

Example Editing the data of FOMA terminal phonebook

1 Search the phonebook ► Highlight a party ►

- For the UIM phonebook: Search the phonebook ► Highlight a party ►  

2 Edit the phonebook data

- For details:

Follow the procedure from Step 3 of "Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook". ➡P108

Follow the procedure from Step 3 of "Registering entries into the UIM phonebook". ➡P110

3 Press

4 Select **Overwrite** or **New entry**

- When **Overwrite** is selected, the previous phonebook data are discarded.
- When **New entry** is selected, the previous data remains, and a new data is recorded to the phonebook.
For the FOMA terminal phonebook, when **New entry** is selected without changing phonebook No., the entry screen for phonebook No. appears. Change the number if needed and operate from Step 3 again.

- In case of deleting the phone number registered in the PushTalk phonebook from the FOMA terminal phonebook, when selecting **Overwrite**, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete from the PushTalk phonebook. When selecting **Yes**, the phone number is deleted from the PushTalk phonebook as well.

INFORMATION

- The data may not be overwritten when registering if "X" is included in the phonebook data in the UIM phonebook. In that case, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to make a new entry. Select **Yes** to register as a new entry.
- When multiple phone numbers and mail addresses are registered, if the phone number or mail address other than the last one is deleted, the followings are moved up and registered.

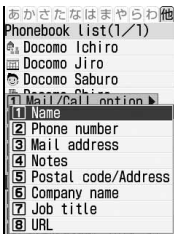
Copying registered information

Copied items can be pasted into the entry field on the screen such as the mail composition and phonebook registration screens.

- Copied items remain recorded until the power is turned off. They can be pasted any number of times while the power is on.
- Only one item can be recorded. Copying a new item overwrites the retained item.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶

2 1 to 8



FOMA terminal phonebook

The data of selected item is recorded temporarily.

3 Display the character entry screen to be pasted ▶ Paste the characters

INFORMATION

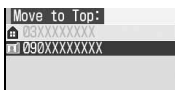
- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, the UIM phonebook list/details screen, press  and select **Copy**.
- Selecting **Phone number/Mail address** copies the item registered first. To copy the second or after phone number or mail address, highlight the phone number or mail address to copy on the details screen.

Changing the order of phone numbers, mail addresses and phonebook Nos.

When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are registered in the phonebook data, the order of the phone numbers and mail addresses can be changed on the search result screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook. In addition, the phonebook Nos. for 2 phonebook entries can be switched.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Change the order

- ### ■ Changing the order of phone numbers:



- ① Highlight a party ▶    
- ② Select a phone number to register as the first phone number

The positions of the selected phone number and the first phone number are changed.

■ Changing the order of mail addresses:

- ① Highlight a party ▶    
- ② Select a mail address to register as the first mail address.

The positions of the selected mail address and the first mail address are changed.

■ Changing the phonebook Nos:

- ① Highlight a party ▶    
- ② Select the entry to replace the phonebook No. with

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press  and select *Edit/Settings* → *Switch order* → *Phone numbers*, *Mail addresses* or *Phonebook Nos*.

Copying phonebook entries

Copy phonebook entries from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook or from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal.

- If the group in the phonebook data to copy has the same name as the group in the target phonebook, the data is copied to that group.

■ Items copied from the FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook

Name	Copies the name (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters, however, up to 10 characters can be copied when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used).
Reading	Copies the reading (up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters, however in case of one- and two-byte are mixed or containing one-byte katakana, up to 12 characters). One-byte katakana changes to two-byte katakana.
Phone number	Copies the first registered phone number (up to 26 digits, however, 20 digits depending on the UIM types  P40). If a timed pause (T) is registered, only the timed pause (T) is deleted. For all icons,  is set.
Mail address	Copies the first registered mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters). In the UIM phonebook, for all icons,  is set.

- Note that if the number of characters exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be saved in the UIM phonebook, the exceeding part is deleted.

■ Items copied from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook

Name	Copies the name.
Reading	Copies the reading. Two-byte katakana are changed to one-byte katakana.
Phone number	Copies the phone number. For the icon,  is set.
Mail address	Copies the mail address. For the icon,  is set.

Example Copying from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook

1 Search the phonebook ▶

2 Select a party



3 Press

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press and select **Data backup** → **Copy to UIM**. On the UIM phonebook list/details screen, press and select **Copy to phone**.

Deleting phonebook entries

Delete Phonebook

- Delete a phonebook entry from the phonebook.
- When you delete all, the created groups are all deleted.
 - When you delete all, all the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set will be deleted, even if you are not in Secret Mode.
 - UIM phonebook cannot be all deleted.

- 1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party** ▶ **4 1**
- Deleting an entry of the UIM phonebook:** Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ **4**
 - Deleting all:** Search the phonebook ▶ **4 2** ▶ Enter the terminal security code

- 2 Select Yes**
- In case of deleting the entry registered in the PushTalk phonebook from the FOMA terminal phonebook, the entry is deleted from the PushTalk phonebook as well.

Saving the phonebook data to the Data Center

Data Security Service

- You can save the FOMA terminal phonebook data at the Data Center using Data Security Service.
- The details for saving the phonebook data ▶P125

- 1 Search the phonebook** ▶ **7 4** ▶ **Select Yes** ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**
- FOMA terminal is connected to the Data Center and start updating. When updating is completed, the result screen is displayed.
- The result screen disappears in about 5 seconds, and returns to the phonebook list. Press to return to the menu screen immediately.

Setting functions for phonebook entries

- You can set the showing/hiding of caller ID or the videophone communication speed for each phone number in the phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook. In addition, a secret code can be set for each mail address.
- The function described here cannot be set in the UIM phonebook.

Setting to show/hide caller ID for each phone number

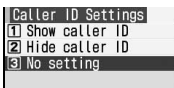
Caller ID Setting

Default No setting

- 1 Search the phonebook** ▶ **Highlight a party** ▶ **3 5 2**

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select a phone number

3 Press **[1]** or **[2]**



- To cancel the setting: **[3]**

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press **[Menu]** and select **Edit/Settings** → **Advanced settings** → **Caller ID settings**.
- When **No setting** is set, the terminal operates according to the setting for Caller ID Notification.
- For the entry set to show the caller ID, **[H]** is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on the details screen.
- The priority of the way of notifying your phone number ◀P48

Setting the communication speed when making videophone calls for each phone number Videophone Rate Setting

Default 64K

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ **[Menu]** **[3]** **[5]** **[5]**

2 Select a phone number ▶ Press **[1]** or **[2]**

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press **[Menu]** and select **Edit/Settings** → **Advanced settings** → **V.phone settings**.
- When you specify the communication speed of the videophone for each call you make, that setting takes precedence over this setting. ◀P58

Setting a secret code for the mail address

Secret Code Setting

When the other party has registered a secret code for its mail address (mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp), if you set the secret code in the phonebook data, the secret code is automatically added to i-mode Mail composed by searching the phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ **[Menu]** **[3]** **[5]** **[4]**

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select a mail address

3 Enter the secret code of 4 digits

- To cancel Secret Code Setting: **[ch/222]** for over a second to clear ▶ **[End]**

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press **[Menu]** and select **Edit/Settings** → **Advanced settings** → **Secret code**.
- If a mail address is saved in the phonebook as "mobile phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp", you cannot reply to mail from the party. Delete "secret code" or "secret code@docomo.ne.jp" in the phonebook data before setting the secret code in the way mentioned above.
- For the entry with a secret code set, **[H]** is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on the details screen.
- The set secret code is not displayed on the phonebook data details screen or the address set when composing i-mode Mail. You can check a secret code by following Steps 1 to 2 mentioned above.

The phonebook entry is set as the data having a secret attribute that is called only when you enter the terminal security code.

Setting Secret Attribute for the phonebook entry

- You cannot set Secret Attribute for the entries in the UIM phonebook.
- To set Secret Attribute, perform the setting operation in Secret Mode.

1 Set Secret Mode

2 Search the phonebook on the standby screen ► Highlight a party ► Press



-  flashes when Secret Attribute is set.

- **Canceling: Highlight the phonebook entry for which Secret Attribute is set ► Press    **

INFORMATION

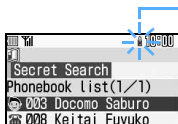
- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press  and select **Edit/Settings** → **Advanced settings** → **Secrecy ON**.
- The phonebook data with Secret Attribute set cannot be edited unless Secret Mode is set.
- When Secret Mode is not set, the registered names and images or video/i-motion of the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set are not displayed in the incoming screen, redial data, received call history, recorded messages, talking voice memos, received mail list and other screens. In addition, the ring alert or vibrator set for the phonebook data is not operated.
- If the phonebook entry is registered and edited while Secret Mode is on, Secret Attribute is set for the phonebook entry.
- The setting of Secret Attribute is also reflected to the PushTalk phonebook.

Searching the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set

- You can search only the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set.
- You cannot search the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set unless Secret Mode is set.

1 Set Secret Mode

2 Press on the standby screen



- The subsequent steps are the same as for the normal searching method.
-  P112

Flashes when Secret Attribute is set for the highlighted entry.

INFORMATION

- The phonebook data with Secret Attribute set cannot be searched unless Secret Mode is set. In addition, Quick Dial or Quick Mail is also disabled.
- When the search other than Secrecy Search is performed in Secret Mode, the phonebook data with and without Secret Attribute set are both searched.

Checking the number of registered phonebook entries

Check No. of Items

You can display the number of registered phonebook entries or phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set in the phonebook.

- The number of data which Secret Attribute is set can be displayed only when Secret Mode is on.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Press

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook details screen, press  and select *Info/View pref.* → *No. of items*.
For the UIM phonebook list, press  and select *View/clear info* → *No. of items*.
- The number of registered items includes the one for which Secret Attribute is set.

Using simple dialing to make calls

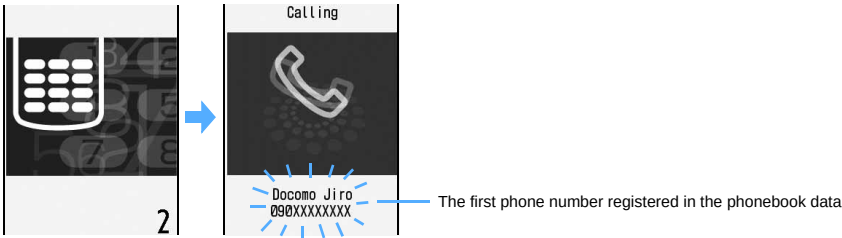
Quick Dial

Calls can be made by simple operation to the parties with the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- The first phone number in the phonebook data is the number to be dialed.

Example Calling the phone number with phonebook No.2

1 Enter the phonebook No. (in this case) ▶ Press



- Enter the phonebook No. without prefixing it with 0, etc. If you enter an initial zero, etc., the call is not made.
- To make a videophone call: Enter the phonebook No. ▶ 
- To make a PushTalk call: Enter the phonebook No. ▶ 

When the phone number of the entry with the entered phonebook No. is registered in the PushTalk Phonebook, a PushTalk call is made to the phone number.

In case the phone number is not registered in the PushTalk phonebook, a PushTalk call is made by the first phone number of the entry.

Using Data Security Service

Using Data Security Service to save the FOMA terminal phonebook data at the Data Center, the phonebook data can be restored to the new FOMA terminal by the saved data, in case your FOMA terminal is lost, water leak, etc. Also, the data saved at the Data Center can be edited by PC, etc., and reflected to the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- Data Security Service is a pay service and requires a subscription. For details, see "i-mode User's Manual".
- The UIM phonebook cannot be saved.

Saving/updating/restoring the phonebook data

1 ► Select Yes ► Enter the terminal security code

FOMA terminal is connected to the Data Center and starts updating the data. When updating is completed, the result screen is displayed.

- The result screen disappears in about 5 seconds, and returns to the menu screen. Press  to return to the menu screen immediately.

INFORMATION

- The operation for incoming calls/Push Talk call while connecting to the Data Center are as follows:
 - Even in the case of the incoming call from the other party which is registered in the phonebook, a name or image of the other party is not displayed, and only a phone number is displayed. In addition, ring alert or vibrator set in the phonebook data do not operate and follows setting of FOMA terminal.
 - Reject Call, Reject non-Reg. Caller, and Mute Ring Time Setting do not operate.
 - Chaku-moji cannot be received.
 - For a PushTalk call, a call arrives only in the case where *PushTalk preferred* is set in i-mode Arrival Act: PT.
- By setting of Data Security Service, you are able to update the FOMA terminal phonebook from the Data Center. However, when you are executing other functions, automatic update does not operate.
- Restoring the data may not restore the order of the phonebook group you registered previously.
- If you have not yet subtracted to Data Security Service, a screen appears to inform you of that effect.

Checking the communication log

You can check the log of communicating with the Data Center

- Up to 30 accesses are recorded. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted chronologically.

1 ► Select the log

Specifying whether to send images saved in the phonebook

Specify whether to send images saved in the phonebook to the Data Center

Default OFF

1     ► **Select *Contact image sending* field in the phonebook** ►  or
 ► **Press** 

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings

Sound Setting

Changing the FOMA terminal sound	Sound Setting	128
Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms	Vibrator Setting	133
Setting the alert sound for charging	Charge Alert	134
Setting the alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off	Quality Alarm	134
Making FOMA terminal silent	Silent Mode	134
Customizing Silent Mode	Customize Silent Mode	135

Displays/Lights Settings

Changing the standby display	Standby Display Setting	136
Changing images to be displayed for incoming/outgoing calls/emails	Mail/Call Image	142
Setting the light for the display and keys	Display Light Setting	144
Changing the display color	Color Scheme	146
Setting the menu display format or menu design	Menu Setting	146
Changing the battery level icon	Battery Icon	147
Setting the lighting pattern and color for incoming calls/emails, etc.	Light Alert Setting	148
Flashing the Enter key when receiving new information	Indicator Light	149
Changing the font size	Font Size Setting	150
Setting the clock display	Clock Display Format	151
Coordinating according to the color of FOMA terminal	Style Theme	152

Changing the FOMA terminal sound

Sound Setting

Set the sound to announce the reception of call, PushTalk call, mail, Message R/F, etc. In addition, the sound generated for the alarm clock, schedule alarm and the various operation sound can be set.

- To set other sounds, see the following:
 - Charge alert ●P134
 - Response hold guidance ●P72
 - On-hold tone ●P72
 - Quality alarm ●P134
 - Reconnect alarm ●P61
 - Low battery alert ●P45

Setting ring alerts for calls, mails, messages, etc.

Call Ring Alert/Mail/Msg Ring Alert

- If video/i-motion is set as a ring alert, an image and/or sound is played for incoming calls or mails (Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)).
- To set the ring alert for incoming voice calls with no caller ID ●P166
- The settings of this function are reflected to the settings of Call Alert, Videophone Alert, PushTalk Alert, Mail Alert, Chat Mail Alert and Message Alert.

Default Call ring alert: Melody/Vivaldism V.phone ring alert: Melody/電話・メロディ A(Phone, melody A)
P-Talk ring alert: Melody /電話・メロディ B(Phone, melody B) Mail ring alert: Melody/メール・メロディ A
(Mail, melody A) Chat M ring alert: Melody/メール・メロディ B(Mail, melody B) Msg R ring alert, Msg F ring
alert: Melody/メール・メロディ C(Mail, melody C)

Example Setting ring alerts for calls

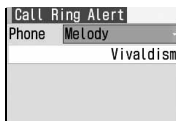
1

■ Setting ring alerts for mails/messages:

2 to

• To set ring alerts for mails/messages: to

3 Select each item to set



- When **Melody** is selected, select the melody field and select a melody.
Viewing the melody list ●P330
- When **Movie ringtone** is selected, select the melody field and select a video/
i-motion file.
Viewing the video/i-motion list ●P320
- When **OFF** is set, the ring alert does not sound.
- If the chat mail ring alert is set to **Sync msg alert**, the setting for the mail ring alert is used.

4 Press

■ Types of video/i-motion set as *Movie ringtone* and the incoming image

Video/i-motion set	Displayed incoming image
Only sound*1	- When the ring alert is changed from the video/i-motion with image to the video/i-motion with only sound or a melody, the standard image is displayed. - When the video/i-motion with only image or Flash movie is set for the incoming image, if the video/i-motion with only sound is set for the ring alert, the standard image is displayed. However, incoming image (except for Flash movie) for a voice/videophone call can be changed in Call Alert or Mail/Call Image (Incoming Call) and Videophone Alert or Mail/Call Image (Videophone Receiving).*2
Sound and image	The image of the set video/i-motion is displayed as the incoming image.

*1 i-motion without image such as singer's vocals

*2 Even if the animation (other than the standard image) is set, it does not move and the first frame is displayed on the incoming screen.

■ Priority of ring alerts

Ring alerts set in multiple functions sound by priorities given below:

- ① Incoming setting of Multi Number
 - ② Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ④ Sound Setting
- The ring alert for PushTalk calls sounds as set in Sound Setting.
 - When the other party did not notify the caller ID, the ring alert for voice calls sounds as set in Anonymous Caller. The ring alert for videophone calls sounds as set in Sound Setting. The ring alert for PushTalk calls sounds as set in Sound Setting.
 - If the sound or image set in Anonymous Caller is deleted, the contents of the settings are changed. In this case, the generated sound or displayed image may be different from those displayed in the setting screen.
 - Even when the image or video/i-motion is set in the phonebook, if the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for *Movie ringtone* for the ring alert, the setting for *Movie ringtone* is given priority for the ring alert and incoming image. When the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as singer's vocals) is set for *Movie ringtone*, *Movie ringtone* is used for the ring alert and for the incoming image, the image set in the phonebook, Alert/Image by Group, Call Alert or Videophone Alert is used.

Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file

- Highlight a melody in the melody list and press  to play it. The following operations can be performed during playing.
 - Adjust the volume*1: 
 - Return to the melody list: 
 - Play the previous/next melody: 
 - Select a melody: 
- Select a video/i-motion file in the video/i-motion list and press  to play it. The following operations can be performed during playing.
 - Adjust the volume*1: 
 - Stop (return to the video/i-motion list):  / 
 - Rewind and play: 
 - Pause/play: 
 - Wind forward and play: 

*1 The volume during playing depends on Settings of Data Box. Adjusting the volume is reflected in Settings of Data Box. It is not linked to the ring volume.

INFORMATION

- The video/i-motion with only image cannot be set for the ring alert. For PushTalk calls, only the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as singer's vocals) can be set for the ring alert.
- The video/i-motion for which the ring alert setting of detail information (P344) is set to *Unavailable* cannot be set to *Movie ringtone*.

Set the sound when **Alarm sound**, **Alarm on time** or **Alarm in advance** is set to **Terminal setting** in Alarm Clock or Scheduler.

Default

● Alarm clock sound

Melody/ アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)

● Schedule reminder

Alarm on time: Melody/ アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm, female voice)

Alarm in advance: Melody/ パターン4 (Pattern 4)

Example Setting the alarm clock sound

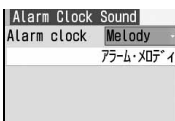
1



■ Setting the schedule alarm sound: Menu 8 1 1 3 2

2

Select each item to set



- When **Melody** is selected, select the melody field and select a melody.

Viewing the melody list ➡ P330

- When **i-motion** is selected, select the melody field and select a video/i-motion file. If the video/i-motion with sound and image is set, the video/i-motion image will be displayed while an alarm is sounding.

Viewing the video/i-motion list ➡ P320

3

Press [OK]

Setting the sound generated when pressing keys or rotating the Speed Selector

Keypad Sound/Speed Selector Sound

- When the keypad sound is changed, the confirmation sound for displaying the battery level is also changed.
- The keypad sound is not generated when pressing the following keys or sliding the keylock switch.
 - [Power] • [F] • One-push open button

Default

Keypad sound: Keypad sound1 Speed selector sound: Selector sound1

Example

Setting the keypad sound

1



■ Setting the Speed Selector sound: Menu 8 1 1 4 2

2

Press any of [1] to [3]

- To set not to sound: [4]
- Highlighted sound is generated. However, in case of **OFF**, nothing is heard.

INFORMATION

- When the keypad sound is set to **OFF**, the following sounds are not generated.
 - The confirmation sound when the battery level is indicated
 - The alert tone indicating the end of infrared communication or data transmission
- In the following cases, the keypad sound or Speed Selector sound is not generated even if these functions are set to other than **OFF**.
 - In Silent Mode (Note that in the personalized silent mode and when the keypad sound or Speed Selector sound of Customize Silent Mode is set to other than **OFF**, these sounds are heard.)
 - During Key Lock (In case [Lock] is pressed when nothing is displayed on the screen, the sound is heard.)
 - When i-appli is running (The sound is heard in case switching the screen or displaying another screen during Multitask.)
 - During video recording
 - During recording with Sound Recorder
 - During voiceprint authentication/recording the voice for authentication

Setting the shutter sound

Shutter Sound

- When **Movie camera sound** is changed, the shutter sound of Sound Recorder is also changed.
- The settings of this function are reflected to the settings of Still Image Setting and Recording Setting.

Default Shutter sound, Movie camera sound: Shutter sound1

Example Setting the shutter sound of Camera

1      

■ Setting the shutter sound of Movie Camera:      

2 Press any of  to 

- Highlighted sound is generated.

Setting the sound generated when opening/closing the lens cover

Lens Cover Sound

- The settings of this function are reflected to the settings of Still Image Setting.

Default Open cover sound: Open cover sound1 Close cover sound: Close cover sound1

1      

2 Select each item to set

Open cover sound : Sets the sound generated when activating Camera by opening the lens cover.

Close cover sound : Sets the sound generated when terminating Camera/Movie Camera by closing the lens cover.

- When **OFF** is set, the open cover sound/close cover sound is not generated.
- Highlighted sound is generated. However, in case of **OFF**, nothing is heard.

3 Press 

Setting the sound generated when opening/closing FOMA terminal

Slide Sound

Default Open slide: Melody/スライド・オープン音1(Slide opening sound 1)
Close slide: Melody/スライド・クローズ音1(Slide closing sound 1)

1      

2 Select each item to set

Open slide : Sets the sound generated when opening FOMA terminal.

Close slide : Sets the sound generated when closing FOMA terminal.

- When **Melody** is selected, select the melody field and select a melody.
Viewing the melody list ▶ P330
- When **OFF** is set, the open slide sound/close slide sound is not generated.

3 Press 

INFORMATION

- If you open/close FOMA terminal rapidly, the slide sound may not be heard. During the following operations, there will be no slide sound even when opening/closing FOMA terminal.
 - While dialing
 - During Response and Hold
 - During PushTalk calls
 - While the alarm clock/alarm is sounding
 - While the video/i-motion is playing
 - While recording Chara-den
 - While playing recorded messages/voice memos/movie memos
 - While the greeting message is playing
 - While recording with Sound Recorder
 - While recording messages
 - While recording movie memos
 - While receiving
 - While talking
 - During Silent Mode
 - While the melody is playing
 - While shooting video
 - While i-appli is activated
 - While the alarm for Call Cost Limit is sounding
 - While recording talking voice memos
- The volume of the slide sound cannot be changed. The 3D sound compatible melody can be set for the slide sound, but 3D effect is invalid.

3D Sound

The 3D sound function allows to create sounds, that is 3-dimensional and special sounds, using the stereo speakers or the flat type stereo earphone set (optional), etc. Very realistic i-appli games, ring alerts and i-motion can be enjoyed.

This function will become the most realistic when you have FOMA terminal with the front approximately 20 to 30 cm away (the distance may be different between individuals).

Note that 3D sound will become less realistic when FOMA terminal is positioned off the center rightward or leftward or at a distance more or less than 20 to 30 cm from you.

- By setting **Stereo/3D sound** on in Settings for melody, 3D sound can be replayed with the stereophonic effect from the stereo speakers. It is set to **ON** by default. ●P331
- The stereophonic effect may be felt differently between individuals. If you feel it uncomfortable, set **Stereo/3D sound** to **OFF**.



The list of melodies which can be set as the ring alert, etc.

The following melodies are provided in the **Preinstalled** folder of **Melody** by default.

- ☐ indicates that the melody is compatible with 3D sound.
- Melody names that are too long to be shown on the display are partially omitted.

Title (composer in [])	Title (composer in [])	Title (composer in [])
パターン1～5 (Pattern 1 to 5)	アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)	森のくまさん (The Bear) [American folk song]
電話・メロディ A (Phone, melody A)	アラーム・アナログ時計 (Alarm, analog clock)	凱旋行進曲 (Triumphal March) [VERDI GIUSEPPE]
電話・メロディ B (Phone, melody B)	アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm, female voice)	Rhapsody in Blue [GERSHWIN GEORGE]
電話・メロディ C (Phone, melody C)	スライド・オープン音1～3 (Slide opening sounds 1 to 3)	ツァラトゥストラはかく語りき (Also Sprach Zarathustra) [STRAUSS RICHARD]
電話・黒電話 (Phone, phone retro)	スライド・クローズ音1～3 (Slide closing sounds 1 to 3)	SUMMERTIME [GERSHWIN GEORGE]
電話・女性ボイス (Phone, female voice)	保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)	ジムノペディ第1番 (1 ere Gymnopedie) [SATIE ERIK ALFREDI LE]
メール・メロディ A (Mail, melody A)	Vivaldim	traveling [宇多田ヒカル] (Hikaru Utada)
メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)	交響曲第25番ト短調K.183より 第1楽章 (The first from Symphony No.25 in G minor)	Long Train Runnin' [JOHNSTON CHARLES THOMAS]
メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C)	[MOZART WOLFGANG AMADEUS]	
メール・女性ボイス (Mail, female voice)	火星 (The Planets, Mars) [HOLST GUSTAV]	
メール・英語ボイス (Mail, English voice)	おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ (Parade of the wooden soldiers) [JESSEL LEON]	



License number: T-0620015
 • The composers are described in accordance with the JASRAC website.

■ Other sound settings

- Setting the mail ring alert or lighting, etc. ●P260
- Setting to sound the ring alert only from the earphone when connecting a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) ●P388

Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms

Vibrator Setting

The reception of call, PushTalk call, mail, Message R/F, etc. or the date and time set in Alarm Clock or Scheduler is indicated by vibrator. In addition, the vibrator operation by i-α ppli can be allowed/rejected.

- When the vibrator is set to **Terminal setting** in Alarm Clock, this setting of **Alarm clock** will be valid.
- The settings of this function are reflected to the settings of Call Alert, Videophone Alert, PushTalk Alert, Mail Alert, Chat Mail Alert, Message Alert, and Vibrate Effect for i-α ppli.
- Note that if FOMA terminal is placed on a desk, etc. with Vibrator Setting on, the vibrations of the vibrator operation may cause it to fall off.

Default Call vibrate alert, V,phone vibrate alert, P-Talk vibrate alert, Mail vibrate alert, Chat M vibrate alert, Msg R vibrate alert, Msg F vibrate alert, Alarm clock, Schedule reminder: OFF i-α ppli effect: ON

Example Setting the operation of vibrator for incoming calls

1     

■ Setting the operation for incoming mails/messages:     

■ Setting the operation while an alarm is sounding:     

■ Setting the operation while using i-α ppli:      ▶ Go to Step 3

2  to 

- To set the operation for incoming mails/messages:  to 
However, if **Alert setting** is set to **Same: Mail setting** in Chat Mail Alert, **Chat M vibrate alert** cannot be set.
- To set the operation while an alarm is sounding:  or 

3 Press any of  to 

- To set the operation while using i-α ppli:  or 
- If you set to **Pattern A**, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 0.7 second vibration → about 0.7 second pause → about 0.7 second vibration → about 1.5 second pause (repeated)
- If you set to **Pattern B**, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 1 second vibration → about 2 second pause (repeated)
- If you set to **Pattern C**, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 0.7 second vibration → about 0.7 second pause (repeated)
- If you set to **Sync melody**, the terminal vibrates along with the melody set as ring alert, alarm clock sound or schedule alarm sound. Note that it may not vibrate depending on melodies. In addition, vibration may not synchronize with the theme.
- If you set to **OFF**, the terminal does not vibrate.
- The vibrator operates by the highlighted pattern except when **Sync melody** or **OFF** is highlighted.
- When **Call vibrate alert** is set,  (when the call alert volume is set to **silent**, ) is indicated on the standby display.

■ Priority of vibrator

When the vibrator is set in multiple functions, the vibrator operates by priorities given below:

- ① Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Vibrator Setting

- The vibration when receiving a PushTalk call conforms to the setting of Vibrator Setting.

INFORMATION

- The vibrator does not operate when a call is received during another call.
- Even when **OFF** is set, the vibrator may be activated while some Flash movies are being played.

Setting the alert sound for charging

Charge Alert

Set whether to sound the alert sound for the start and completion of charging.

Default ON

1      ▶ Press  or 

INFORMATION

- Even when **ON** is set, the charge alert sound is not played in the following cases:
 - In Silent Mode
 - In Public mode (Driving mode)
 - During a voice call
 - During a videophone call
 - During a PushTalk call
 - During 64K data communication
 - During i-mode communication
 - During packet communication

Setting the alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off

Quality Alarm

When signal conditions deteriorate, an alarm sounds just before the voice call is cut off on the way.

- If signal conditions deteriorate suddenly, the call may be cut off before the alarm sounds.
- This function applies only to voice calls.

Default High alarm

1      

2 Press  or 

- To set not to sound: 

Making FOMA terminal silent

Silent Mode

Disable the sounds from FOMA terminal in order to prevent disturbance to the people around you by enabling the vibrator for incoming calls or muting the keypad sound.

Default not set

1 Hold down  or  for over a second

The silent mode that is specified in Customize Silent Mode is set and  (in the general silent mode) or  (in the personalized silent mode) is indicated on the standby display.

- Canceling:  (for over a second) or  (for over a second)

When the general silent mode is set

Incoming call or mail is notified with vibrator by muting sounds heard from FOMA terminal such as ring alert, keypad sound and alarm. Microphone is sensitized so that a call can be made in a small voice.

- When receiving calls, PushTalk calls or mails, the vibrator operates in **Pattern A** regardless of the setting in Vibrator Setting.
- When the time specified in Timer has passed, the vibrator operates in **Pattern A**.
- When the time set in Alarm Clock arrives, the vibrator operates as set in Alarm Clock.
- When the date and time set in Scheduler arrives, the vibrator operates in **Pattern A**.
- Melodies are not played automatically even if received mail or Message R/F is displayed with **Auto play** set for Attachment Auto-play.
- When playing a melody, a confirmation screen asking whether to play the melody is displayed. When **Yes** is selected, the melody is played.
- When playing the video/i-motion with sound, a confirmation screen asking whether to play the sound is displayed. When **Yes** is selected, the sound is played. When playing the video/i-motion with image, if **No** is selected, only the image is played.

INFORMATION

- Even in Silent Mode, the shutter sound is generated (except when recording Chara-den).
- In the general silent mode, even if Call Cost Limit is set to **ON** and the setting notified by alarm is made, only a message is displayed. In the personalized silent mode, the alarm sounds according to the call alert volume set in Customize Silent Mode.

Customizing Silent Mode

Customize Silent Mode

The setting for Silent Mode can be changed (Customize Silent Mode). Which mode is set can be selected from the general silent mode and the personalized silent mode.

Default General

1    

2 

- Pressing  sets the general silent mode and the previous screen reappears.

3 Select each item to set

Vibrate alert : Sets whether to operate the vibrator for incoming calls, PushTalk calls or mails, etc.
 • When **ON** is set, an incoming call or mail is informed by vibration according to Vibrator Setting (●P133). Note that when **OFF** is set in Vibrator Setting, the vibrator operates by **Pattern A**.

Keypad sound : Sets the keypad sound.

Speed selector sound : Sets the sound generated when rotating the Speed Selector.

Call alert volume : Sets the ring volume for incoming calls.

Mail alert volume : Sets the ring volume for incoming mails.

ToruCa alert volume : Sets the volume of the sound that is generated when obtaining ToruCa from the reader/writer.

Low Battery Alert : Sets whether to sound an alarm when the battery becomes low.

- Alarm sound** : Sets whether to sound the alarm clock and Timer alarm.
- When **ON** is set, the alarm clock sounds according to the setting of Alarm Clock and the Timer alarm sounds by アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody) at the call alert volume set in this function.
- Schedule sound** : Sets whether to sound a schedule alarm.
- When **ON** is set, it sounds according to the setting of schedule and the schedule alarm volume.
- i-αppli sound** : Sets whether to generate the i-αppli sound.
- When **ON** is set, it sounds according to the i-αppli sound volume.
- Sensitize microphone** : Sets whether to sensitize the microphone.

4 Press

The personalized silent mode is set.

Changing the standby display

Standby Display Setting

You can change the standby display to your favorite image.

- Depending on the image, video/i-motion, Chara-den or i-αppli, the settings for the standby display will be disabled if you do not insert the same UIM as used when downloading the data (the UIM operation restriction function).
- Setting the clock display P151
- Setting the battery level icon P147
- Setting to display the i-channel ticker P292

Setting images, video/i-motion or Chara-den as the standby display

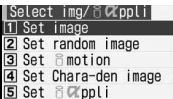
The image, video/i-motion or Chara-den saved from an i-mode site or mail and the still image or video shot with FOMA terminal can be set as the standby display. Animation and Created animation can also be set.

- Preinstalled images/i-motion/Chara-den P422, P425
- If you set a video/i-motion or Chara-den for the standby display when **Show ticker** in Ticker Setting is set to **Yes**, **Show ticker** is canceled. After that, if you set other than the video/i-motion, Chara-den and i-αppli standby display, **Show ticker** in Ticker Setting returns to **Yes**.

Default use Style Theme setting

1     

2  ,  or 



3 Select a folder Select the image, video/i-motion or Chara-den

- To check the image, highlight the image in the image list and press . The following operations can be performed on the image display screen:
 - Display the previous/next image:  • Return to the image list: 
 - Select a image: 
- To check Chara-den, highlight Chara-den in the Chara-den list and press . The following operations can be performed on the Chara-den display screen:
 - Switch between **Action** and **Action of Parts**: 

- Display the action list:
- Return to the Chara-den list: /
- Switch between the large size and the same size:
- Playing and checking a video/i-motion file when selecting P129
- The image or video/i-motion saved in the miniSD memory card cannot be selected. Select it after moving or copying it to FOMA terminal.

■ Setting the action of Chara-den:

- ① Highlight Chara-den in the Chara-den list
- ② Select **Stand-by field** to
- Set the action for missed call or unread mail in the same way.
- When **Action** or **Action of Parts** is selected, select an action from the action list.
- When **Input** is selected, enter the number corresponding to the action. P425
- When **OFF** is set, the preset action is played and another action cannot be set.
- ③ Select **Interval (sec) field** to
- When **OFF** is set, the selected action of Chara-den is played only once.
- ④

4 Select Yes

- The following items can be selected on the confirmation screen depending on the size of the selected image. The displayed items are different depending on the image size.

Item	Description
Yes(Same size)	Displays the image at the same size.
Yes(Large size)	Enlarges the image to the screen size.
Yes(Fit length)*1	Enlarges/reduces the length of the image to the screen size.
Yes(Fit width)*2	Enlarges/reduces the width of the image to the screen size.

*1 The right and left of the image may be cut depending on the image size.

*2 The top and bottom of the image may be cut depending on the image size.

- If the selected video/i-motion or Chara-den can be zoomed, displaying at the same size or large size can be selected on the confirmation screen. Select **Yes(Same size)** to maintain the image size or select **Yes(Large size)** to enlarge the image to the screen size.
- If the i-α ppli standby display is set, a confirmation screen subsequently appears asking whether to cancel it.

Playing the video/i-motion, animation or Chara-den set as the standby display

- The following operations are available for video/i-motion:
 - Play: / Open FOMA terminal
 - Stop: / Close FOMA terminal/
 - Adjust volume:
- The following operations are available for animation, Created animation or Flash movie:
 - Play: Open FOMA terminal/Return to the standby display/Turn the power on
 - Pause/replay:
 - Stop: Close FOMA terminal
- The following operations are available for Chara-den:
 - Play (when the interval for the action is set, the action is played repeatedly at the set interval): / Open FOMA terminal
 - Stop: / Close FOMA terminal/
- Even while Key Lock is set, you can play by opening FOMA terminal. Close FOMA terminal or press keys for Any Key Answer during play, and the screen display disappears.

INFORMATION

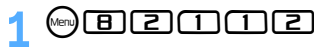
- While All Lock, PIM Lock (when the data which is subject to PIM Lock is set for the standby display) or Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is on, the set standby image is canceled and the image of the default setting is displayed temporarily. The set standby image reappears when lock is canceled. However, if the data in the **Preinstalled** folder is set, the set data is displayed even when PIM Lock is on.
- The setting may not be available depending on the image.

- The display of *Fit length* or *Fit width* can be set for, in case of JPEG format, only the image with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) size of 8 × 8 to 640 × 480, 960 × 1280, 1200 × 1600 or 1728 × 2304. However, the image with the size of 1200 × 1600 or 1728 × 2304 cannot be set when setting to the i-α ppli standby display. In case of GIF format, such display can be set for only the image with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) size of 8 × 8 to 640 × 480.
- The video/i-motion with restriction of the number of replay or replay period set or the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as singer's vocals) cannot be set for the standby display. In addition, some video/i-motion may not be able to be set for the standby display.
- When the standby display appears, the set Flash movie or animation starts playing and stops after a certain period of time. However, the melody of Flash movie is not played.
- When *Show ticker* in Ticker Setting is set to **Yes**, the playback of animation, Created animation or Flash movie set for the standby display stops after about 5 seconds and i-channel ticker is displayed. However, in case of playing by , i-channel ticker is displayed after completing the playback.
- If an animation is set in zoom display, the display may be distorted.
- Even if Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions are set as links in tickers of the video/i-motion, these links cannot be available from the standby display.
- When the action is set for multiple items for Chara-den, the action is played by priorities given below:
 - ① Action set for *Missed call* or *Unread message*
 - ② Action set for *Stand-by*
 - When both action for missed calls and action for unread mail are set and there are both missed calls and unread mail, the action set for each item is played repeatedly by turns.

Displaying images in a random order

Random Display Image

Images can be displayed in a random order on the standby display every fixed time, each time you open FOMA terminal or rotate the Speed Selector.



2 Select each item to set

Folder: Selects a folder in which the images are saved from the folders in **Image** (My Picture).

- The folder with no image which can be displayed cannot be selected.

Change image:

Sets the timing that the image is switched.

- When **Every 15 seconds** is set, images are switched every 15 seconds after returning to the standby display.
- When any of **Every minute**, **Every 15 minutes** or **Every hour** is set, the image is switched according to the clock time. (For example, when **Every minute** is set, the image is switched per minute at 0 second.)
- When **Every day** is set, the images are switched at 0:00 a.m. every day.
- When **Open slide** is set, the images are switched each time you open FOMA terminal.
- When **Speed selector** is set, the images are switched each time you rotate the Speed Selector.

3 Select Yes

- When **Speed selector** is set to **ON** and **Use at stand-by disp** is set to other than **OFF** in Speed Selector Setting, if you **Change image** is set to **Speed selector** and press , a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel **Use at stand-by disp** in Speed Selector Setting.
- If the i-α ppli standby display is set, a confirmation screen subsequently appears asking whether to cancel it.

INFORMATION

- The following images cannot be displayed:
 - Created animation
 - Animation
 - Flash movie
- When **Speed selector** is set to **OFF** in Speed Selector Setting, **Change image** cannot be set to **Speed selector**.
- In case the power is turned off at the time of switching images, the image is not switched.
- If the date and time have not been set and **Change image** is set to other than **Open slide** or **Speed selector**, the image is not switched.

- Even if the still image currently displayed on the standby display is moved to another folder or Created animation is composed using the image, that image is displayed until it switches to the next image. After that, it is not displayed.
- When there is no still image that can be displayed as the result of deleting the selected folder, moving or deleting still images in the folder or composing Created animation, the default image is displayed on the standby display and Random Display Image is canceled (if the still image is moved or Created animation is composed, the image is displayed until it switches to the next image).
- Even when **Change image** is set to **Open slide**, if you repeat opening/closing FOMA terminal quickly, the image may not be switched. In addition, even when **Change image** is set to **Speed selector**, the image may not be switched in case of rotating the Speed Selector quickly.

Setting the i-appli standby display

- The i-appli standby display can be set simultaneously with other standby display settings including the custom standby display. When they are set simultaneously, the i-appli standby display is displayed by priority.
- Multiple i-appli applications cannot be set on the i-appli standby display.
- The following i-appli preinstalled by default can be set as the i-appli standby display:
 - 珍さん計画DXおこづかい帖プラス (Chin-san's Scheduled Cashbook)
 - i アニメっちゃメール superDX500 (i-anime Mailer superDX500)
- If you set i-appli for the standby display when **Show ticker** in Ticker Setting is set to **Yes**, **Show ticker** is canceled. After that, if you set other than the video/i-motion, Chara-den and i-appli standby display, **Show ticker** in Ticker Setting returns to **Yes**.

1

A list of i-appli available for the i-appli standby display appears.

2 **Select i-appli ▶ Select Yes**

The i-appli standby display is set and  or  is indicated on the standby display.

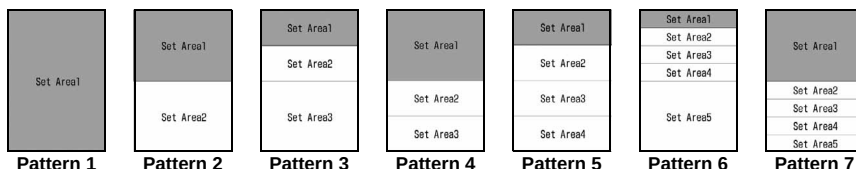
INFORMATION

- While PIM Lock or Privacy Mode (**Authorized access** set for **i-appli**) is on, the i-appli standby display is not displayed but a standby image set previously is displayed. Note that while PIM Lock is on, the default standby display is displayed when the data which is subject to PIM Lock has been set. While All Lock or Omakase Lock is on, the default standby display appears.
- Operating the i-appli standby display 

Customizing the standby display

Info/Calendar Layout

The standby display can be divided into several areas to display new information such as unread mail or missed calls, notes, schedules, calendar or key guidance for each area (Custom standby display). The pattern of dividing areas can be selected from the following 7 types:



Default Pattern 4 (Set Area1, Set Area2: not registered Set Area3: Key guidance)

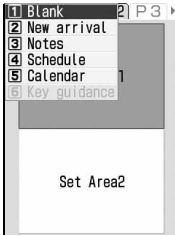
1

2

- Pressing  cancels the setting and the display returns to the previous screen.

3 to Switch patterns

4 Select an area ① to ⑥



- If the pattern including multiple areas is selected, repeat Step 4.
- The calendar cannot be set in an area smaller than half of the screen. (e.g. *Set Area1 of Pattern 3*)
- *Key guidance* cannot be set in an area larger than a quarter of the screen. (e.g. *Set Area1 of Pattern 2*)

■ Setting to display new information: Select an area  ②  Select information type  ④



■ Setting to display notes:

① Select an area  ③

② Select a note

- Highlight a note and press  to display the content of the note. Press  to return to the note list. Also, press  on the notepad view screen to set.

■ Resetting the displayed item in all the areas:   Select Yes

5 Select Yes

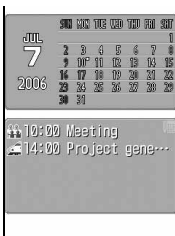
- If the standby display is set, a confirmation screen subsequently appears asking whether to cancel it.

INFORMATION

- If you change the setting for Style Theme, the custom standby display is not displayed, but the setting is saved. If you operate in order of Step 1, Step 2 and Step 5, the custom standby display set before is displayed.

Checking information on the custom standby display

1



The top area is displayed with a red frame.

- Press  to move the cursor frame.
- In case the information of the custom standby display is not shown, display by pressing  repeatedly on the standby display and press .

2 Select an area

INFORMATION

- An image and a custom standby display can be set at the same time, but if an animation, Created animation or Flash movie is set, press  after the playback is stopped or paused to display the information of the custom standby display.

Displayed information

The custom standby display and various information appear as follows:

- The numbers of information and lines displayed differ depending on the area size.
- For the date and time of each information entry, the time is displayed for the current day and the date is displayed for the other days.

■ New arrival



The items set in **New arrival** are listed starting with the most recent item.

✉ Unread messages :

The reception date and time and the first part of subject are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the received mail folder list.

R MessageR/ F MessageF :

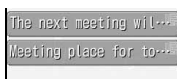
The reception date and time and the first part of title are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the Message R/F list.

📞 Missed calls : The date and time of incoming call and the phone number of the other party (or the name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the received call list.

📞 Recorded messages :

The date and time of recording and the phone number of the other party (or the name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the recorded message list.

■ Notes



The first part of the contents recorded in Notepad is displayed. Select this area to display the details of notes.

■ Schedule



The scheduled entries with the start time not passed are displayed in the order of the date and time. Select this area to display the details of the first schedule.

- The icon, the date and time and the beginning of the contents are displayed.

- In case of the date-straddled long-term schedule, 📅 is indicated instead of the registered icon. The start date or start time (when it is before the start time on the current day) is displayed behind the icon. The date-straddled long-term schedule is displayed until the end date/time has elapsed.
- If any schedule for all day is set on the current day, **AllDay** is displayed instead of the start time.

■ Calendar



The current day is displayed in yellow.

Dot

The current calendar is displayed. Select this area to display the schedule calendar screen of Scheduler.

- The days-off and holidays are displayed in red, and Saturdays are displayed in blue. The settings for the days-off and holidays follow Day Off Setting or Holiday Setting for Scheduler. Note that when Privacy Mode is on (**Authorized access** set for **Schedule**) or PIM Lock is on, the day set as day-off in Day Off Setting is not displayed in red and reset to the default display.
- When a schedule is set, a dot is displayed on the upper right of the date. Note that when all schedules set on a day have Secret Attribute, it is displayed only when Secret Mode is on. In addition, it is not displayed when Privacy Mode (**Authorized access** set for **Schedule**) or PIM Lock is on.

■ Key guidance



The marks of functions assigned to 📅, 📞, 📞, and 📞 are displayed on the standby display. When you select the area, a message appears indicating that the key guidance can be hidden by 📞.

Changing images to be displayed for incoming/outgoing calls/mails

Mail/Call Image

Set images to be displayed for outgoing calls, incoming/outgoing mails or for message retrieval.

Menu 861 / Menu 8711

Changing images for outgoing calls

Outgoing Call/Videophone Dialing

Set images to be displayed for outgoing voice/videophone calls.

Default Default

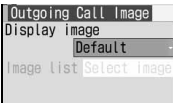
Example Setting the image for outgoing voice calls

1



■ Setting the image for outgoing videophone calls: Menu 8 2 3 2 3

2 Select each item to set



- When selecting **Default**, the default image is set.
- When selecting **Select image**, select **Select image** (from **Image list**) and select an image.

3 Press

■ Priority of outgoing images

When the outgoing images are set in multiple functions, the images are displayed by priorities given below:

- ① The setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook*1
- ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Mail/Call Image (Outgoing Call/Videophone Dialing)

*1 Available when Contact Image is set to **ON**.

INFORMATION

- Setting Created animation displays the first frame.

Changing images to be displayed for incoming calls

Incoming Call/Videophone Receiving

Sets images to be displayed for incoming voice/videophone calls.

- The settings of this function are reflected to the settings of Call Alert and Videophone Alert.
- To set the image for incoming voice calls with no caller ID P166

Default Standard image

Example Setting the image to be displayed for incoming voice calls

1



■ Setting the image for incoming videophone calls: Menu 8 2 3 2 4

2 Select each item to set



- When selecting **Standard image**, the default image is set.
- When selecting **Select image**, select **Select image** (from **List images**) and select an image.
- When selecting **i-motion**, select a video/i-motion file from the folder list. In case the folder list is not displayed, select **Select image** (from **List images**).
- If the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for the ring alert, **Sync ring alert** is set.
- Playing and checking a video/i-motion file when selecting **P129**

3 Press

■ Priority of incoming images

When the incoming images are set in multiple functions, the image is displayed by priorities given below:

- ① Incoming setting of Multi Number
- ② The setting of FOMA terminal phonebook*1/Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook*2
- ③ Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ④ Mail/Call Image (Incoming Call/Videophone Receiving) or Sound Setting*2

*1 Available when Contact Image is set to **ON**.

*2 Available when the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for ring alert.

- When the other party did not notify the caller ID, the incoming image for voice calls conforms to the setting of Anonymous Caller. The incoming image for videophone calls conforms to the setting of Mail/Call Image (Videophone Receiving) or Sound Setting.
- If the sound or image set in Anonymous Caller is deleted, the contents of the settings are changed. In this case, the generated sound or displayed image may be different from those displayed in the setting screen.

INFORMATION

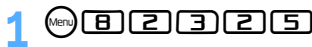
- In case Created animation is set, the first frame is displayed.
- When the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion without image such as singer's vocals) is set for the ring alert, if **Show image** is reset to the video/i-motion with only image or Flash movie, the ring alert sounds by **Vivaldism** for voice call or by **電話・メロディ A** (Phone, melody A) for videophone call. The melody can be changed.
- Some video/i-motion cannot be set to the image. And the video/i-motion with sound cannot be set.

Displaying images saved in the phonebook for incoming/outgoing calls

Contact Image

When a voice/videophone call from/to the other party registered in the phonebook is received/made, the portrait image saved in the phonebook can be displayed.

Default **ON**



2 Press

- Not to display a portrait image: **2**

Changing images for incoming/outgoing mails or for message retrieval

Outgoing Message/Incoming Message/Message Retrieval

- You cannot set Flash movie as the image for message retrieval.

Default Default

Example Setting the image for sending i-mode Mail or SMS

1



- Setting the image to be displayed when receiving i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F:



- Setting the image to be displayed when performing Check i-mode Message or Check SMS:



2 Select an image to register

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Changing images for outgoing calls". ➡P142

Displaying the other party's phone number and name when receiving a call

Receive Display

Set whether to display the phone number and name when a voice/videophone call is received as well as setting the character size for the name.

In addition, set whether to scroll the reception result on the task bar when i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F is received.

- Name displays ➡P107

Default Caller's phone number: Display Caller's name: Standard Receive mail/message: Display

1



2 Select each item to set

Caller's phone number :

Sets whether to display the phone number when a call is received.

Caller's name : Sets whether to display the name in the normal size, in the small size or not to display the name when a call is received.

Receive mail/message :

Sets whether to display the reception result on the task bar when i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F is received.

- When **Display** is set, the reception result is scrolled on the task bar.

3

Press

Setting the light for the display and keys

Display Light Setting

Setting the lighting time

Lighting makes the display brighter.

- The settings of this function are reflected to the settings of Display Light (for i-mode), Still Image Setting, Recording Setting, Settings (for i-motion) and Display Light (for i-appli).

Default Normal use: 10 sec AC adapter connected, i-mode session: Terminal setting
Camera session, Movie camera session, i-motion playing: Always on
i-appli active: Terminal setting

Example Setting *Display light time* for normal use

1 (Menu) [8] [2] [4] [1]

2 [1]

- Setting the time when connecting to the optional AC adapter (Desktop holder) or DC adapter: [2]
- Setting the time during i-mode: [3]
- Setting the time during shooting with Camera: [4]
- Setting the time during shooting with Movie Camera: [5]
- Setting the time during displaying or playing the video/i-motion list: [6]
- Setting the time during operating i-*appli*: [7]

3 Press any of [1] to [7]

- For setting items other than *Normal use*, press [1] or [2]. When *Terminal setting* is set, the lighting time set for *Normal use* and the setting of lighting range and brightness are used.
- When *Always/Always on* is set, the display is always lighted with the brightness set in *Brightness*. However, it is lighted by *High* when AC adapter is connected.
- When *i-*appli* active* is set to *Software*, the display is lighted in accordance with the i-*appli* software.

Setting the range

Set whether to light the display and keys or display only

- The Speed Selector is not lighted.

Default Display + Key

1 (Menu) [8] [2] [4] [2] ▶ Press [1] or [2]

Adjusting the brightness

Set the brightness for lighting the display.

Default Normal

1 (Menu) [8] [2] [4] [3] ▶ Press any of [1] to [3]

INFORMATION

- When *Normal use* of *Display light time* is set to other than *Always*, if you do not press any keys for about 90 seconds, the display disappears and FOMA terminal goes into a power saving mode. If there is any key operation*1 (except rotating the Speed Selector) or an incoming call, the display appears again.
 - The display does not disappear in following cases: during a videophone call, when the shooting screen of Camera/ Movie Camera is displayed, while shooting, while charging with *AC adapter connected* of *Display light time* set to *Always on*, or while executing the function for which *Display light time* is set to *Always on*.

*1 In the case of other than during call, a number, etc. is not entered even when pressing dial keys.

- When *Normal use* of *Display light time* is set to other than *Always*, if you set Key Lock, the display disappears. The display or keys do not light by pressing the keys. However, if you press [⏏], open FOMA terminal or have an incoming call, the display lights.
 - The display does not disappear in following cases: during a videophone call, when the shooting screen of Camera/ Movie Camera is displayed, while shooting, while charging with *AC adapter connected* of *Display light time* set to *Always on*, or while executing the function for which *Display light time* is set to *Always on*.

Changing the display color

Color Scheme

The color of each part of the screen such as the background or characters is changed.

[Default](#) [use Style Theme setting](#)

1     

2 Press any of  to , ,  or 

- You can select a color from 24 colors.
- Press  to switch pages.
- The screen is displayed in the highlighted color.
- The color names are for information purpose only.

Menu 8221

Setting the menu display format or menu design

Menu Setting

The menu display format or the icon design can be changed.

- The design of tile icons and animation set by default for the normal menu 

[Default](#) [Normal: use Style Theme setting](#) [Custom: Tile display](#)

[Type of animation: use Style Theme setting](#) [Icon display effect: OFF](#) [Default MENU: Normal](#)

[Active shortcut: Custom](#)

1  

- In case **Default MENU** is set to **Custom**, press  on the standby display and press  .

2 Select each item to set

Normal : Sets the display format for the normal menu.

Custom : Sets the display format for the custom menu.

Type of tile icons : Sets the design of tile icons for the normal menu.

- It can be set only when **Normal** is set to **Tile display**.
- The design of the first level menu can be set.
- **Customized 1** or **Customized 2** is set when changing the menu icons or background images and creating the original menu design.

Type of animation : Sets the design of animation for the normal menu.

- It can be set only when **Normal** is set to **Animation**.

Icon display effect : Sets whether to magnify the tile icons or 3D icons when selecting them.

Default MENU : Sets whether to display the normal menu or the custom menu when pressing  on the standby display.

Active shortcut : Sets the shortcut operations to be used for the custom menu.

- **Normal**: The same item numbers as the normal menu can be used for shortcut operations.
- **Custom**: The item numbers for the positions of the respective functions on the custom menu can be used for shortcut operations.

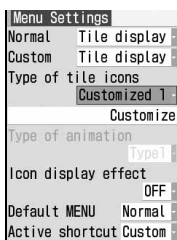
3 Press 

Creating the original menu design

Two kinds of the design of the menu screen can be created by changing the icons or background images of the normal menu.

- When the image size exceeds 96 x 96 for icons and 240 x 240 for background images, they are reduced to be displayed.

-  
 - In case **Default MENU** is set to **Custom**, press  on the standby display and press  .
- Select **Normal field** ▶ 
- Select **Type of tile icons field** ▶  or  ▶ Select **Customize**



- Select a function ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image
 - Canceling a menu icon: Highlight an icon ▶   ▶ Select Yes
 - To cancel all:   ▶ Select Yes
-  ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image
 - Canceling a background image:   ▶ Select Yes
- Press  

INFORMATION

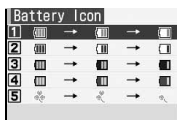
- Created animation, Flash movie or images in the **Item** folder cannot be set. If an animation is set, the first frame is displayed.
- The settings for **Customized 1** and **Customized 2** of **Type of tile icons** cannot be changed while PIM Lock is on.

Changing the battery level icon

Battery Icon

 use Style Theme setting

-     
- Press any of  to 



Set the lighting pattern and color of the Enter key during a call or when receiving a call/mail, opening/closing FOMA terminal or rotating the Speed Selector.

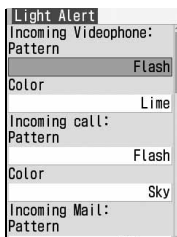
- When the lighting pattern or lighting color is set to **Terminal setting** in Alarm Clock, this setting of **Alarm clock** will valid.
- The settings of this function are reflected to the settings of Call Alert, Videophone Alert, Mail Alert, Chat Mail Alert, Message Alert, Settings (for melody), PushTalk Alert and ToruCa Setting.

Default Incoming Videophone: Flash/Lime, Incoming call: Flash/Sky
 Incoming Mail: Glimmer/Aqua, Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F: Glimmer/Lemon
 Incoming Chat Mail: Glimmer/Lavender Incoming PushTalk: Flash/Peach ToruCa receive: ON/Sky
 During call: OFF IC card: ON/Sky
 Speed selector: ON/Green-Blue-Red:Mix
 Alarm clock, Schedule: Flash/Coral Play melody: Sync melody Open slide, Close slide: Glimmer/Turquoise

1    

2  to 

3 Set the lighting



■ Setting for incoming videophone call, incoming call, incoming mail, incoming Message R, incoming Message F, incoming chat mail, incoming PushTalk call, during a call, sounding alarm clock, sounding schedule alarm, playing melody, opening slide or closing slide:

① Select **Pattern** field ▶  to 

- **Sync melody** cannot be set for **During call**.
- The Enter key lights/flashes by the highlighted pattern. It flashes when **Sync melody** is highlighted. When **OFF** is highlighted, however, it does not light/flash.
- When **Sync melody** or **OFF** is set, the lighting color cannot be set.
- When **Sync melody** is set, the Enter key lights/flashes in **Rainbow**. However, when **OFF** is set in Sound Setting or a video/i-motion is set to play, the Enter key lights/flashes in the color displayed in the **Color** field.
- When **Alert setting** is set to **Same:Mail setting** in Chat Mail Alert, **Incoming Chat Mail** cannot be set.

② Select **Color** field ▶  to , ,  or 

- The Enter key lights/flashes in the highlighted color.
- When **Alert setting** is set to **Same:Mail setting** in Chat Mail Alert, **Incoming Chat Mail** cannot be set.

■ Setting for ToruCa reception or IC card access:

① Select **Lighting/Light** field ▶  or 

- When **OFF** is set, the lighting color cannot be set.

② Select **Color** field ▶  to , ,  or 

- The Enter key flashes in the highlighted color.

■ Setting for the Speed Selector:

- ① Select **Lighting** field ▶  or 
 - When **OFF** is set, **Turning light pattern** cannot be set.
- ② Select **Turning light pattern** field ▶  to , ,  or 
 - Press  to switch the pages.
 - The Enter key lights/flashes in the highlighted color.

4 Press

■ Priority of lighting

In case the lighting is set in multiple functions, the Enter key lights/flashes by priorities given below:

- ① Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Light Alert Setting
- The lighting for incoming PushTalk calls conforms to the setting of Light Alert Setting.

INFORMATION

- The color names are for information purpose only.
- When **Sync melody** is set for the lighting pattern, the Enter key may not light/flash depending on the melodies.
- Even when **IC card** is set to **ON**, the Enter key may not light while Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-a ppli is activated.
- Even when **IC card** is set to **ON**, if the power is turned off, the Enter key does not light.
- When **IC card** is set to **ON**, the Enter key flashes when holding up the FeliCa mark to the reader/writer. The Enter key also flashes when the FeliCa mark is held over the reader/writer in which Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-a ppli is not registered.
- Even when **Speed selector** is set to **ON**, lighting/flashing by rotating the Speed Selector is unavailable while the Enter key is lighting/flashing (except during a call).

Flashing the Enter key when receiving new information

Indicator Light

The Enter key flashes when there is new information such as missed calls, unread mails, etc.

Default OFF

1    

2 Press 

- To cancel the setting: 

INFORMATION

- Even when **ON** is set, the Enter key does not flash in the following cases:
 - While receiving a call
 - While talking
 - In Public mode (Driving mode)
 - During All Lock
 - While activating Camera/Movie Camera/Sound Recorder
- While the Enter key is lighting (excluding the following cases where the Enter key is lighting when opening/closing FOMA terminal, rotating the Speed Selector or charging)
- Even when **ON** is set, if there is no new information for about 6 hours since the first arrival of new information or if  or  (with the number of information items) on the standby display is cleared, the Enter key stops flashing even if the information has not been confirmed.
- When **ON** is set, the Enter key flashes at about 6 second intervals in the lighting color set in each of the following settings. It does not conform to the setting of Alert by Contact or Alert/Image by Group. If the newly arrived information is confirmed, it stops flashing.
 - Missed calls (voice call/video phone call/PushTalk call/recorded message): **Incoming call** in Light Alert Setting
 - Unread information (mail/chat mail/SMS): **Incoming Mail** in Light Alert Setting
 - Unread information (Message R/Message F): **Incoming Message R/Incoming Message F** in Light Alert Setting

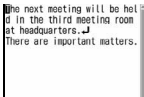
- When **ON** is set and there are multiple newly arrived information, the Enter key flashes in the following priority. However, even if unread ToruCa exists, the Enter key does not flash.
 - ① Missed calls (voice call/videophone call/PushTalk call/recorded message)
 - ② Unread messages (mail/chat mail/SMS)
 - ③ Unread messages (Message R)
 - ④ Unread messages (Message F)

Changing the font size Font Size Setting

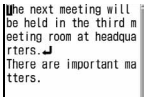
The character size on the character entry screen (for notes, etc.), the mail view screen or the site display screen can be changed (from 5 types or 3 types).



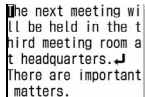
Minimum: 12 dots



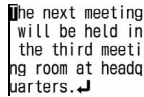
Small: 16 dots



Standard: 20 dots



Large: 24 dots



Maximum: 28 dots

Default **Standard (all)**

Example When setting at once

1



- Changing the setting of **All listed** alters the setting of **i-mode view**, **Mail view** and **Text input**.

■ **Setting the character size on the display screen of sites or screen memos:**



■ **Setting the character size on the mail view screen:**



■ **Setting the character size on the message text entry screen or the character entry screen by full-screen entry (notes, etc.):**



2

Press any of [1] to [5]

- The example is displayed in the highlighted character size.
- Press [1] to [3] when setting the character size for **i-mode view** or **Mail view**.

INFORMATION

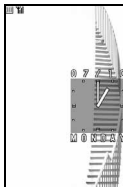
- The character size during in-line entry cannot be changed.
- When changing the setting of **All listed** to **Maximum** or **Minimum**, the setting of **i-mode view** or **Mail view** becomes **Large** or **Small** for each.
- The font size can be changed from the mail view screen as well. The setting is reflected to **Mail view** of this setting.
- When changing the setting of **Text input**, the character size of predict conversion options displayed when entering characters and the character size on the mail composition screen are also changed. However, if **Text input** is set to **Maximum** or **Minimum**, the character size on the mail composition screen becomes **Large** or **Small** for each.

Setting the clock display

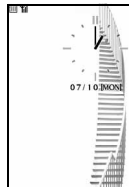
Clock Display Format

Set whether to display the clock on the stand by display. The clock design, the time display format (24 hour format/12 hour format), the clock display position and the language used to display the day of the week can also be set.

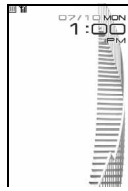
Default use Style Theme setting



Displaying Analog 1 at the center



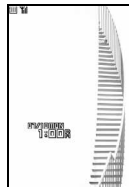
Displaying Analog 2 at the top



Displaying Digital 1 by 12 hour format at the top



Displaying Digital 2 by 24 hour format



Displaying Digital 3 by 12 hour format at the bottom



Displaying Digital 4 by 24 hour format at the center

1

2 Select each item to set

- Style** : Sets whether to display the clock. Also, sets the displayed clock design.
 - When **ON** is set, select the design.
 - When **OFF** is set, **Clock layout** and **Day** cannot be set.
- Time format** : Specifies 24 hour format or 12 hour format to display the clock.
 - The display of the analog clock is not changed.
- Clock layout** : Sets the position to display the clock.
 - The clock layout of **Digital 2** cannot be changed.
- Day** : Specifies whether to display a day of the week in Japanese or English.
 - When **Terminal settings** is set, the display conforms to the setting of Select Language.

3 Press

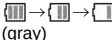
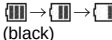
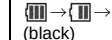
INFORMATION

- In the following cases, the digital clock (the fixed design) is displayed on the upper part of the display regardless of the setting for **Style** or **Clock layout**.
 - When video/i-motion or Chara-den is displayed on the standby display
 - When the i-appli standby display is displayed
- While All Lock or Omakase Lock is on, the clock is displayed on the upper part of the display regardless of this function's setting. However, the clock layout of **Digital 2** is not changed.
- On the screen other than the standby display, the clock is displayed on the upper right of the display. The time display format (24 hour format/12 hour format) follows this function's setting.

Coordinating according to the color of FOMA terminal

Style Theme

The standby display, the battery icon, the clock display, the color scheme and the menu design are coordinated in total by the color of FOMA terminal. They can also be changed to the style corresponding to the other colors.

Functions and items to be coordinated		Style Theme				
		Platinum	Stone	Sapphire	Magenta	Basic
Standby image		White steps	Black stage	Blue block	Yellow wall	Crystal
Battery Icon		 (gray)	 (black)	 (light blue)	 (yellow)	 (black)
Clock Display Format	Style	ON/Digital 1	ON/Digital 2	ON/Digital 3	ON/Digital 4	ON/Analog 1
	Time format	24 hour	12 hour	24 hour	24 hour	24 hour
	Clock layout	Center	—	Bottom	Top	Bottom
	Day	English	English	English	English	English
Color Scheme		WhiteSmoke	DeepRed	RoyalPurple	BrightYellow	PrimaryBlack
Menu Setting	Normal	Animation	Animation	Animation	Animation	Animation
	Type of animation	Type1	Type2	Type3	Type4	Type5

Default use the color of FOMA terminal

1    

2 Press any of  to 



Safety Settings

Security code

Security codes	154
Changing the terminal security code	Change Security Code 155
Setting the PIN code	156
Unblocking the PIN lock	157

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

Various lock functions	158
Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal	All Lock 158
Using Omakase Lock	Omakase Lock 159
Preventing making/receiving calls	Self Mode 160
Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule	PIM Lock 160
Prohibiting keypad dial	Keypad Dial Lock 161
Preventing unauthorized use of the functions such as phonebook or mail	Privacy Mode Setting 162
Preventing key errors	Key Lock 164
Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set	Secret Mode 165

Restricting outgoing/incoming or sending/receiving actions

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers	Reject/Accept Call 165
Setting the operations for incoming calls with no caller ID	Anonymous Caller 166
Setting not to answer a call from the party not registered in the phonebook	Mute Ring Time Setting 167
Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook	Reject non-Reg. Caller 168

Other “Safety settings”

Using Data Security Service	Data Security Service 169
Other “Safety settings”	170

Security codes

Some FOMA terminal functions for convenient use require the entry of security codes. There are security codes such as the network security code for use in network services and the password for i-mode in addition to the terminal security code for various terminal functions. Fully use your FOMA terminal by choosing the security code to suit your needs.

Precautions for security codes

- As for the security code to set, please avoid the number intelligible for others, such as a "birth date", "a part of phone number", "an address number or a room number", "1111", and "1234". In addition, please be careful not to forget the set security code by taking a memorandum, etc.
- Please be careful never to reveal your security code to others. If your security code is known and misused by others, DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for the damages.
- DoCoMo will never ask your security code.
- Please note that, if you forget the security codes, you need to bring the identification (driver's license, etc.), your FOMA terminal and the UIM to a DoCoMo Shop. For the detail information, contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

Terminal security code

The default terminal security code is "0000", which can be changed to a code of your own choice. ●P155

Network security code

Network security code is the arbitrary 4-digit code that is set when you subscribed to FOMA terminal for various procedures for the DoCoMo e-site and usage of network services. You can change the code.

If you have a My DoCoMo ID/password of My DoCoMo which is the total support site for PC, you can do change procedure for a new network security code from a PC.

From i-mode, you can change the code from 各種手続き (Application procedure) of the DoCoMo e-site.

- Please refer to the back of this manual for "My DoCoMo" and "DoCoMo e-site".

i-mode password

A 4-digit i-mode password is required to store/delete sites in My Menu and apply to/cancel Message Service or i-mode pay services (in addition, there may be passwords required by individual information providers).

The default i-mode password is "0000", which can be changed to a code of your own choice.

When changing from i-mode, select **iMenu** → **English** → **4 Options** → **2 Change i-mode Password**.

PIN1 code/PIN2 code

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes can be set for the UIM. The default PIN1 and PIN2 codes are "0000", which can be changed to a code of your own choice. ●P156

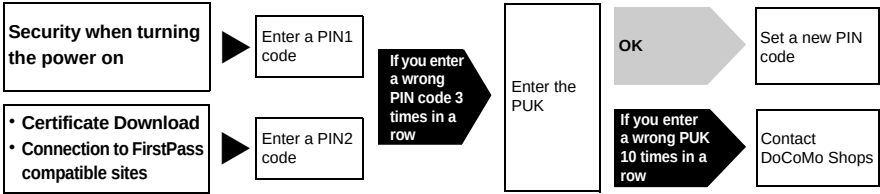
The PIN1 code is the 4 to 8 digits security code entered to confirm the user every time the UIM is inserted to FOMA terminal or the power of FOMA terminal is turned on to protect your FOMA terminal from unauthorized use by the third party. Entering the PIN1 code enables making or receiving calls and FOMA terminal operations. The PIN2 code is the 4 to 8 digits security code required when resetting the total calls cost, or using a user certificate or requesting the issue of it.

- The settings of the PIN1/PIN2 codes and PIN1 Code ON/OFF are recorded in the UIM. When using the current UIM to a FOMA terminal you newly purchased, the PIN1/PIN2 codes that you set previously can be used likewise.

PUK (PIN Unlocking Key)

The PUK is an 8-digit number for canceling the state where the PIN1 code or PIN2 code is locked. You cannot change it.

- If a wrong PUK is entered 10 times consecutively, the UIM is locked.



INFORMATION

- To prevent tampering, change the terminal security code, PIN1 code, PIN2 code or i-mode password to a code of your own choice after the subscription.
- If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is automatically turned off.

Changing the terminal security code

Change Security Code

- Enter the 4 to 8 digits number for the terminal security code.
- The entered terminal security code is masked with “ * ”.

Default 0000

1

2 Enter the current terminal security code

- If the entered terminal security code is not correct, the message indicating that is displayed. Press and enter the correct terminal security code.

3 Select *New security code* field ▶ Enter a new terminal security code

Change security code
New security code
New security code-check

4 Select *New security code-check* field ▶ Enter the same terminal security code as entered in Step 3

5 Press

Setting the PIN code

- Enter the 4 to 8 digits number for the PIN1/PIN2 code.
- The entered PIN1/PIN2 code is masked with " * ".

Setting to require the entry of the PIN1 code when turning the power on

PIN1 Code ON/OFF

Time of subscription OFF

1     

2 

- To set not to require the PIN1 code entry: 

3 Enter the PIN1 code

PIN code
Enter PIN code
Remaining entries: 3

- The PIN1 code is set to "0000" at the time of subscription.
- When the entered PIN1 code is not corrected, the message indicating that is displayed. Press  and enter the correct PIN1 code. If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Press  and cancel the PIN lock.
- The PIN1 code entry screen appears only when you change the current setting.

When PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set to ON

When the power of FOMA terminal is turned on, the PIN1 code entry screen appears. After entering the correct PIN1 code, the standby display appears.

- Making/receiving calls or PushTalk calls or operating the communication functions is unavailable if a wrong PIN1 code is entered.
- If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Press  and cancel the PIN lock.

Changing the PIN1/PIN2 code

Change PIN1/PIN2 Code

- To change the PIN1 code, set PIN1 Code ON/OFF to *ON*.

Time of subscription PIN1 code, PIN2 code: 0000

Example Changing the PIN1 code

1     

■ Changing the PIN2 code:     

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Enter the current PIN1 code

Change PIN code
Enter PIN code
Remaining entries: 3
New PIN code
New PIN code - check

3 Select *New PIN code* field ▶ Enter a new PIN1 code

4 Select *New PIN code - check* field ▶ Enter the same PIN1 code as entered in Step 3

5 Press

- If the current PIN1/PIN2 code is not correctly entered, the message indicating that is displayed. Press  and enter the correct PIN1/PIN2 code. If a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1/PIN2 code is locked. Press  and cancel the PIN lock.

INFORMATION

- Even if a wrong PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively and FOMA terminal is locked, making/receiving calls or PushTalk calls or sending/receiving mail is available, but if a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively and FOMA terminal is locked, those operations become unavailable.

Unlocking the PIN lock

If a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively on the PIN code entry screen, the PIN code is locked. In that case, cancel the lock and set a new PIN code.

- Please be notified that, if you forget the PUK or the PIN lock is blocked completely, you need to bring FOMA terminal, the UIM in use, and the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.
- The PUK and PIN1/PIN2 code entered are masked with " * ".

Example Unlocking the PIN1 code's lock

1 on the confirmation screen of the PIN code's lock

2 Enter the 8-digit PUK

PUK
Enter PUK
Remaining entries: 10
New PIN code
New PIN code - check

3 Select *New PIN code* field ▶ Enter a new PIN1 code

4 Select *New PIN code - check* field ▶ Enter the same PIN1 code as entered in Step 3

5 Press

The PIN lock is canceled and a new PIN1 code is set.

Various lock functions

A variety of lock functions are available to prevent unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others or to keep your private information and the phonebook entries confidential. You can select the function to suit your needs.

- You can set multiple lock functions at the same time.
- The settings of lock functions other than Key Lock and Secret Mode are retained even if the power is turned off.
- You can make emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) even when the lock functions other than Omakase Lock and Key Lock are set.

Lock function	Description	Page
All Lock	Disables operating the menu functions to prevent unauthorized use by others.	P158
Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)	Prevents unauthorized use by others in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen.	P159
Self Mode	Disables using the communication functions such as making/receiving of calls or PushTalk calls, communication in i-mode, sending/receiving of mail and the infrared communication.	P160
PIM Lock	Disables using the private information functions such as Phonebook, PushTalk Phonebook, Own Number and Scheduler and prevents the display of and tampering with private information.	P160
Keypad Dial Lock	Disables pressing dial keys to make calls or PushTalk calls.	P161
Privacy Mode Setting	Disables displaying the phonebook, log, mail, My Picture, i-motion, schedule or i-appli data and prevents unauthorized viewing by others.	P162
Key Lock	Disables the key operations to prevent key errors.	P164
Secret Mode	When you set Secret Attributes for the phonebook or schedule data, the data is displayed only when the terminal security code is entered and Secret Mode is set.	P165
IC Card Lock	Prevents from using the IC card function.	P300

Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal

All Lock

Disables operating the menu functions to prevent unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others. Calls cannot be made or received when All Lock is on.

To make emergency calls (110,119 or 118) when All Lock is on, enter the emergency call number on the standby display and press . At this time, the emergency call number is displayed as “*” in the entry field of the terminal security code.

- When All Lock is on, the set standby display is canceled and the default image appears. When All Lock is canceled, the set standby display reappears.
- Even when All Lock is set, IC Card Lock is not set. To set both IC Card Lock and All Lock, set All Lock after setting IC Card Lock.
Setting IC Card Lock ➡P300

Default not set



2 Enter the terminal security code

All *locked*. is displayed.

■ **Canceling: Enter the terminal security code on the standby display**

INFORMATION

- When All Lock is on, the alarm or schedule alarm does not operate even when the specified date and time arrives.
- When All Lock is on, the i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display.
- When All Lock is on, using Data Security Service does not allow you to save/update/restore the data from FOMA terminal.
- If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively when canceling All Lock, the power is automatically turned off.
- The calls or PushTalk calls received during All Lock are rejected, but they are recorded as missed calls in the received call history. (The other party hears busy signals for the call, or is notified of **Disconnected** for the PushTalk call.) When All Lock is canceled,   (with the number of missed calls) appears on the standby display.
- i-mode Mail, SMS and Message R/F can be received even when All Lock is on, but the receiving screen, icon for the received mail and reception result screen are not displayed and the ring alert does not sound. When All Lock is canceled, the icon for the received mail is displayed.
- When All Lock is on, the Enter key does not light even if Indicator Light is set to **ON** and there is a newly-arrived information.
- ToruCa can be obtained by holding up the FeliCa mark to the reader/writer even when All Lock is on, but it cannot be displayed. When All Lock is canceled,   (with the number of the ToruCa data) appears on the standby display.
- You can turn the power on/off. In addition, when Auto Power ON/OFF is set, it is executed.

Using Omakase Lock

Omakase Lock

This is a service that you can lock your FOMA terminal using remote control by informing DoCoMo or by operating from My DoCoMo in case it is lost or stolen. The contents of your important private information and Osaifu-Keitai are protected. The lock can be canceled by phone call from you.

Setting/canceling Omakase Lock

 **0120-524-360 Office hours: for 24 hours**

- Omakase Lock can be set/canceled on the My DoCoMo website from a PC.

- For details of usage of Omakase Lock, see "Subscriber's Guide" or contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.



Omakase Lock active. is displayed and Omakase Lock is set.

- Omakase Lock is a service to lock your FOMA terminal in which the UIM you have subscribed to is inserted.
- While Omakase Lock is on, all the key operations are disabled except for receiving voice/videophone calls and turning the power on/off. Using functions including the IC card function are also disabled.
- A voice/videophone call can be received, but the name or image registered in the phonebook is not displayed and only the phone number is displayed.
- The PushTalk call received during Omakase Lock is rejected, and the other party is notified of **Disconnected**. The call is recorded as missed call in the received call history.
- The mail received during Omakase Lock is stored in the Mail Center.
- Note that the UIM and miniSD memory card are not locked.

INFORMATION

- Even if other functions are activated, those functions are ended and Omakase Lock is set. When there is data during editing, the data is saved and the function is ended

- Even if other lock functions are set, Omakase Lock can be set.
- When your FOMA terminal is outside the service area, turned off or during Self Mode, the lock is not set.
- Omakase Lock is not set when you are subscribing to Dual Network Service and using the mova service.
- Omakase Lock is a service which locks FOMA terminal by the offer of the FOMA card subscriber. The lock is set when an offer is made by the subscriber even if the subscriber is not the user of FOMA terminal.
- Canceling the lock is available only when the same UIM as the time of setting the lock is inserted. When the lock cannot be canceled, contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

Menu 869

Preventing making/receiving calls

Self Mode

Disables all functions that require communications such as making or receiving calls/PushTalk calls, communication in i-mode or sending/receiving mails. Infrared communication, infrared remote control and data transfer by USB connection are also disabled.

Default OFF

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select Yes

Self Mode is set and  is indicated on the standby display.

- When you use shortcut operations:  ▶ Select Yes

■ Canceling: (for over a second) ▶ Select Yes

- When you use shortcut operations:  ▶ Select Yes

INFORMATION

- Note that if emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) are dialed in Self Mode, Self Mode is canceled.
- If you receive a call when Self Mode is on, a guidance is played for the caller that radio waves are hard to reach or the power of your terminal is turned off. You can use Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service.
- The PushTalk call received in Self Mode is rejected, and the other party is notified of **Disconnected**.
- i-mode Mail or Message R/F sent during Self Mode are stored at the i-mode Center and SMS are stored at the SMS Center. When you receive messages, cancel Self Mode and perform Check i-mode Message or Check SMS.

Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule

PIM Lock

PIM Lock prevents the display of and tampering with private information:

- This function cannot be set when Reject Non-Reg. Caller is set to **ON**.
- When this function is set to **ON**, the previous redial data and received call history are deleted. Note that outgoing and incoming calls after the setting is made are recorded and dialing from the redial data or received call history can be performed.

Default OFF

1

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Press

PIM Lock is set and  is indicated on the standby display.

- To cancel the setting: Enter the terminal security code ▶ 

When PIM Lock is on

- The following operations and all or some settings become unavailable.
 - Mail/Chat Mail/SMS/Message R/F^{*1}
 - i-mode
 - Check i-mode Message
 - Full Browser
 - i-α ppli
 - Phonebook/PushTalk phonebook

- Answer Machine/Voice Memo
- Melody
- Movie Camera
- miniSD card
- Reset
- Alarm Clock
- ToruCa list
- Chaku-moji
- Alarm sound
- Ticker Setting
- Mail/Call Image(except for Contact Image)
- Reject/Accept Call
- Data Security Service
- Menu Setting (changing the settings for **Customized 1** or **Customized 2** of **Type of tile icons**)
- My Picture (**Image**)
- My document
- Bar Code Reader
- Scheduler
- Notepad
- Own Number
- Data transfer via infrared communication
- Mail/Msg Ring Alert
- Standby Display Setting
- Anonymous Caller
- Outgoing Call
- Videophone Alert
- i-motion
- Camera
- Music Player
- Call Cost Limit
- Headset Key Control
- Virus Scan Function
- Call Alert
- PushTalk Alert

*1 Messages can be received but the receiving screen, the icon for the received mail and the reception result screen are not displayed and the ring alert does not sound.

- Even if a call or PushTalk call is made/received to/from a caller registered in the phonebook, only phone number is displayed instead of the name and image.
-  is not indicated on the standby display because Answer Machine does not operate even when Answer Machine is set. An icon for a recorded message which has not been played is not displayed either.
- The i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display.

INFORMATION

- When the data which is subject to PIM Lock has been set for the standby display, the substitute image for videophone or the ring alert, the default setting is applied while PIM Lock is on. The setting you made is restored when PIM Lock is canceled. However, when data saved in the **Preinstalled** folder is set, the set standby display or ring alert is used even if PIM Lock is on.
- When PIM Lock is on, the notification such as by alert tone is not made when the number of voice messages of Voice Mail Service is increased.

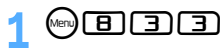
Prohibiting keypad dial

Keypad Dial Lock

Disables making a call or PushTalk call by dialing a phone number (Keypad dial).

- You can make a call using the phonebook/PushTalk phonebook and redial data.
- When this function is set to **ON**, the previous redial data and received call history are deleted. Note that the numbers dialed from the phonebook/PushTalk phonebook entries after the setting is made are recorded under the redial data.

Default OFF



2 Enter the terminal security code ► Press

Keypad Dial Lock is set and  is indicated on the standby display.

- To cancel the setting: Enter the terminal security code ► 

Unavailable operations when Keypad Dial Lock is on

- Dialing from the received call history
- Editing, adding or deleting the phonebook data/PushTalk phonebook data and Group Setting
- Editing and resetting Own Number data
 - Phone To (AV Phone To) and Mail To functions
- Transferring the phonebook data to/from the external devices

- Sending i-mode Mail/SMS
(Mail can be sent by specifying addresses using the phonebook or mail from the party registered in the phonebook can be replied.)
- Reading mail template from the mail composition screen
- Composing mail on the template list/view screen
(Composing mail is available from the template if the mail address entered in the address field of the template is registered in the phonebook.)
- Using network services by the dial key operation

Preventing unauthorized use of the functions such as phonebook or mail

Privacy Mode Setting

Setting the Privacy Mode operation

Set whether to enter the terminal security code when using the phonebook/PushTalk phonebook, mail or My Picture while Privacy Mode is on. Also, you can set Privacy Mode to manually start or to automatically start when no operation has taken place in a certain period of time.

- To enable Privacy Mode Setting, you need to start Privacy Mode.

Default Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My picture, i-motion, Schedule, i-appli: Show all Auto start: OFF

1    

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select each item to set

- When you use the following functions in Privacy Mode, set whether to enter the terminal security code. In addition, set the time period until Privacy Mode is started automatically when no operation has taken place in standby.

Phonebook & Logs :

Sets for displaying the phonebook/PushTalk phonebook, redials, received calls, recorded messages or voice memos.

Mail :

- Setting **Hide secret fldrs** hides the folders with the privacy set to **ON**. However, holding down  for over a second on the applicable folder list screen and entering the terminal security code cancel Privacy Mode temporarily and display the folder.

My picture :

Sets for using My Picture.

i-motion :

Sets for using i-motion.

Schedule :

Sets for using schedules.

i-appli :

Sets for using i-appli.

Auto start :

Sets the time period until Privacy Mode is started automatically.

3  ▶ Press 

INFORMATION

- If all items except **Auto start** are set to **Show all**, Privacy Mode is not activated. In addition, when Privacy Mode has been activated, it is canceled automatically.

Starting Privacy Mode

- If you set Privacy Mode to start automatically in Privacy Mode Setting, it is started according to the setting.

1 Hold down for over a second

■ Canceling:  (for over a second) ► Enter the terminal security code

INFORMATION

- When Privacy Mode is on, some restrictions apply in case **Authorized access** is set for the following items:

Item	Restriction
Phonebook & Logs	• The name and image of the other party registered in the phonebook are not displayed for incoming/outgoing calls/mails, and only the phone number or mail address is displayed. • The ring alert, vibrator or the videophone substitute image set in the phonebook data does not operate. They operate according to the settings for FOMA terminal.
Mail	If you search mails from the phonebook or schedule or download, update or delete Message i-appli, entry of the terminal security code is required.
My picture/ i-motion	• If the data other than the Preinstalled folder data is set for the ring alert or image in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the terminal operates according to the setting of Call Alert or Videophone Alert instead of the setting for the phonebook or Alert by Contact or Alert/Image by Group. However, when you set the data except the Preinstalled folder data in the setting of Call Alert or Videophone Alert, the terminal operates by the default setting. • When the data other than the Preinstalled folder data is set for the alarm clock sound or schedule alarm sound in Alarm Clock or the schedule, the setting of Sound Setting is applied. However, when you set the data except the Preinstalled folder data in Sound Setting, the terminal operates by the default setting. In addition, when Image of Scheduler is set to Yes and the data except the Preinstalled folder data is set, the image is displayed by the default setting.
My picture	• In still image shooting or video recording, shooting while setting a frame cannot be performed. • Even if entries in the FOMA terminal phonebook are copied/backed up to the miniSD memory card, the still images set in the FOMA terminal phonebook are not copied or backed up.
i-motion	Editing tickers directly after recording video cannot be performed.
i-appli	When you select the mail folder for Message i-appli or download i-appli, entry of the terminal security code is required.

- When you use the function which is set to **Authorized access** in Privacy Mode, if you enter the terminal security code once, entry of the terminal security code is not required until the standby display is returned. It is also the same as when using multiple items which are set to **Authorized access**.

(Example) In case you try to send the image saved in My Picture by mail in Privacy Mode (**Phonebook & Logs** and **My picture** set to **Authorized access**), entry of the terminal security code is not required even when trying to access to the phonebook from the mail composition screen because the terminal security code is already entered in starting My Picture.

In Privacy Mode (**Authorized access** set for **Phonebook & Logs**), if you enter the terminal security code once, for example, in case of calling from the phonebook, the name and image registered in the phonebook are displayed on the outgoing/incoming screen and the call alert set in the phonebook is used until the stand-by display is returned.

- When **Authorized access** is set for any of **My picture**, **i-motion** and **i-appli**, if you try to perform the settings which may require using these data and enter the terminal security code in Privacy Mode, a message is displayed indicating that the items set not to be displayed in Privacy Mode Setting are reflected when Privacy Mode is canceled.

Disables the key operations and prevent wrong operations while you carry the terminal around by putting it into the bag, etc.

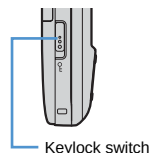
- Key Lock can be set/canceled even when the screen other than the standby display is displayed. However, it cannot be set after turning on the power until the standby display appears.

Default not set

1 Slide down the keylock switch and then take off your finger

When FOMA terminal is closed or Key Lock Setting is set to **Lock even slide open**, Key Lock is set, and the standby display disappears.

- The screen is still displayed and  is indicated on the upper part of the display when **Normal use of Display light time** is set to **Always** in Display Light Setting, when the shooting/recording screen of Camera/Movie Camera is displayed or during the shooting, when charging the battery in case **AC adapter connected of Display light time** is set to **Always**, when executing functions in which **Display light time** is set to **Always**, etc.
- During a call or PushTalk call, Key Lock is set in the state of temporary release and  (in gray) is indicated on the upper part of the display. When a call or PushTalk call is ended, Key Lock is set.
- When Key Lock Setting is set to **OFF when slide open**, if you set Key Lock while FOMA terminal is opened, Key Lock is set in the state of temporary release and  (in gray) is indicated on the upper part of the display. When FOMA terminal is closed, Key Lock is set.



Key lock switch

■ Canceling: Slide down the keylock switch and then take off your finger

Key Lock is canceled, and the display lights.

Setting the operation of Key Lock when opening FOMA terminal

Key Lock Setting

Set whether to release Key Lock temporarily when opening FOMA terminal

Default OFF when slide open

1 ► Press or

INFORMATION

- When Key Lock is released temporarily while setting **OFF when slide open**, if you change the setting to **Lock even slide open**, Key Lock is set. Closing FOMA terminal or pressing any key turns off the display.
- When the power is turned off by Auto Power OFF while Key Lock is on or is released temporarily, Key Lock is canceled. It is also the same as when the power is manually turned off during temporary release.
- Even while Key Lock is on, the following key operations can be performed:
 - When there is a voice call, receiving the call by  or opening FOMA terminal (only when Open Answer is set to ON), putting the call on hold by  , handling the call by Answer Machine by holding down  for over a second and stopping the ring alert by .
 - When there is a videophone call, receiving the call by  or  , putting the call on hold by  , handling the call by Answer Machine by holding down  for over a second and stopping the ring alert by .
 - When there is a PushTalk call, answering the call by  or  , or notifying of **Disconnected** by  and stopping the ring alert by .
 - Stopping the alarm sound, etc.
 - Hold down a switch of the equipment such as a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) for over a second to make a voice call or receive a voice/videophone call.
 - Operating Music Prayer by using a switch of the equipment such as a flat type stereo earphone set (optional)
- If an incoming call is received or the call is handled by Response and Hold or Answer Machine, Key Lock is released temporarily and the key operations can be performed. If the call is ended, Key Lock is set again.
- When the display disappears while Key Lock is on, pressing  or opening FOMA terminal lights the display.  or  (in gray) is indicated on the upper part of the display.

Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set

Secret Mode

If Secret Mode is set, the phonebook data/the schedule data with Secret Attribute set can be displayed. When you set/cancel Secret Attribute, you need to set Secret Mode on.

Default not set

1    

2 Enter the terminal security code

Secret Mode is set and  is indicated on the upper part of the display.

■ **Canceling:**  on the standby display

• Also, press     on the standby display to cancel it.

INFORMATION

- If an animation, Created animation or Flash movie is set on the standby display in Secret Mode, the first frame is displayed. If you press , Secret Mode is canceled and the animation, Created animation or Flash movie is played.
- When a call/mail is received from the other party with Secret Attribute set while Secret Mode is on, the ring alert, the incoming vibrator and the incoming lighting set in the phonebook data are used. While not in Secret Mode, each setting in Sound Setting, Vibrator Setting and Light Alert Setting is applied.

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers

Reject/Accept Call

Reject/Accept Call is set for each phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- To use this function, set Reject/Accept Call for each phone number and then enable Reject/Accept Call in this setting. The items to be set and operations of rejecting/accepting incoming calls are as follows:

Reject/Accept Call	Reject/Accept Call setting for each phone number		
	Accept call	Reject call	No setting
Cancel settings	Accept	Accept	Accept
Reject call	Accept	Reject*1	Accept
Accept call	Accept	Reject*1	Reject*1

- *1 Even if a call or PushTalk call is received from the set phone number, the call is disconnected without the ring alert sounding and the other party hears busy signals for the call or is notified of **Disconnected** for the PushTalk call.
- This function is activated only when the other party notifies the caller ID.
 - The rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
 - If the ringing time is set to 0 second for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the call is not recorded in the received call history.
 - Combination with Caller ID Request Service and Anonymous Caller is recommended when used.
 - This function is also available for incoming PushTalk calls. This function operates when Reject/Accept Call is set for the caller.

Specifying phone numbers to reject/accept

Reject/Accept Call is set for the phone numbers registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- Reject/Accept Call cannot be set for the phone numbers registered in the UIM phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶    

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select a phone number

3 Press **[1]** or **[2]**

- **[1]** is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on the details screen of the phonebook data for which Reject/Accept Call is set.
- To cancel the setting: **[3]**

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press **[Menu]** and select **Edit/Settings** → **Advanced settings** → **Accept/Reject call**.
- If the phone number with Reject/Accept Call set is changed or deleted, this function's setting is canceled. In that case, set Reject/Accept Call for the phone number changed or registered again.

Enabling Reject/Accept Call

- The setting of this function applies to all phone numbers with Reject/Accept Call set.
- Reject Call and Accept Call cannot be enabled at the same time.

Default [Cancel settings](#)

1 **[Menu]** **[8]** **[6]** **[6]** **[1]**

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Press **[2]** or **[3]**

- To cancel the setting: Enter the terminal security code ▶ **[1]**

INFORMATION

- If a call with no caller ID is received from a party that you set Reject Call to, FOMA terminal operates according to Anonymous Caller regardless of this function's setting.
- i-mode Mail or SMS is received regardless of this function's setting.

Menu 81114 / Menu 82326

Setting the operations for incoming calls with no caller ID

Anonymous Caller

The operation for an incoming call with no caller ID is set for each reason for no caller ID.

- For the ring alert and incoming image in case there is an incoming voice call without caller ID notification, this function's setting is given priority over the setting of Call Alert.
- When there is an incoming videophone call or PushTalk call without caller ID notification (for PushTalk call, when the caller does not notify the caller ID), this function operates only when the incoming setting is set to **Call Rejection**. If set otherwise, it operates as set in Videophone Alert for videophone calls or operates as set in PushTalk Alert for PushTalk calls.

Default [Disable settings \(all\)](#)

1 **[Menu]** **[8]** **[6]** **[3]** ▶ Enter the terminal security code

2 **[1]** to **[3]**

- Perform Step 2 to 4 repeatedly for every reason to hide the caller ID.
- The reason for no caller ID ◀P63

3 Select each item to set



Incoming setting :

Sets the operation for an incoming call with no caller ID.

- When **Disable settings** is set, the ring alert set in Call Alert sounds.
- Setting **Call Rejection** rejects an incoming call.
- Setting **Ring alert off** makes the ring alert to be silent.
- When **Select ring tone** or **Movie ringtone** is selected, select a melody or video/i-motion file.
- When **Disable settings** or **Call Rejection** is set, **Show image** cannot be set. When a video/i-motion with sound and image is set for **Movie ringtone**, **Show image** is set to **Sync ring alert**.

Show image : Sets an image displayed for an incoming call with no caller ID.

- When **Standard image** is selected, the default image is set.
- When **Select image** is selected, select **Select image** (under **List images**) to select an image.
- When **i-motion** is selected, select a video/i-motion file from the folder list. When the folder list is not displayed, select **Select image** (under **List images**).
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file when selecting **P129**

4 Press

INFORMATION

- When **Call Rejection** has been set, the rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
- **Standard image** may be set for **Show image** when the video/i-motion with only sounds (i-motion with no image such as singer's vocals) is set for **Movie ringtone** in the incoming setting. Note that the image except for Flash movie can be changed by selecting **Select image** in the **Show image** field.
- When Reject non-Reg. Caller is set and a call without caller ID notification is received, the setting of Reject non-Reg. Caller takes precedence over this function.

Setting not to answer a call from the party not registered in the phonebook

Mute Ring Time Setting

The ringer action by a ring alert or vibrator is set to be activated for an incoming voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook or does not notify the phone number after the specified time has elapsed. The function is effective to nuisance calls such as "One-Ring Call".

- This function cannot be set when Reject non-Reg. Caller is set to **ON**.

Default OFF

1

2 Select each item to set

Delayed ring alert : Specifies whether to enable this setting.

- When **OFF** is set, the following items cannot be set. The ringer action will be started immediately after receiving a call.

Delay time (sec) : Sets the time between the arrival of calls and the start of ringing (between 1 to 99 seconds).

Missed call : Sets whether to display a missed call which ends in less than the time set in **Delay time** in the received call history.

When Mute Ring Time Setting is on

When there is an incoming call or a PushTalk call from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook, the call will be notified only on the display for the set time period. After the set time has elapsed, normal ringer action will start.

- Even before the set time passes, answering an incoming call or PushTalk call or replying by Answer Machine can be performed.
- This function operates even for incoming calls from the party registered in the phonebook while PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (**Authorized access** set for **Phonebook & Logs**).
- This function also operates in the following cases:
 - When a call or PushTalk call with no caller ID is received even if the party is registered in the phonebook.
 - While not in Secret Mode, there is an incoming call from the party registered in the phonebook as an entry with Secret Attribute set.

INFORMATION

- The following functions and services are operated regardless of this function's settings:
 - Public mode (Driving mode) • Answer Machine • Voice Mail Service • Call Forwarding Service
- If you receive a call or PushTalk call from the phone number set to be rejected in Anonymous Caller, Anonymous Caller is prioritized over this function.
- In case **Delay time** is set to the same number of seconds as the set time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the ring alert may sound.

Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook

Reject non-Reg. Caller

- Combination with Caller ID Request Service is recommended to use.
- When **Delayed ring alert** in Mute Ring Time Setting is set to **ON**, this function cannot be set.
- This function is also available for incoming PushTalk calls. This function operates when the caller is registered in the phonebook.

Default OFF

1



2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Press

- To cancel the setting: Enter the terminal security code ▶ 

When Reject non-Reg. Caller is on

When there is an incoming call or PushTalk call from the party who is not registered in the phonebook, the call is disconnected without activating the ring alert and the caller hears busy signals, or is notified of **Disconnected** for the PushTalk call.

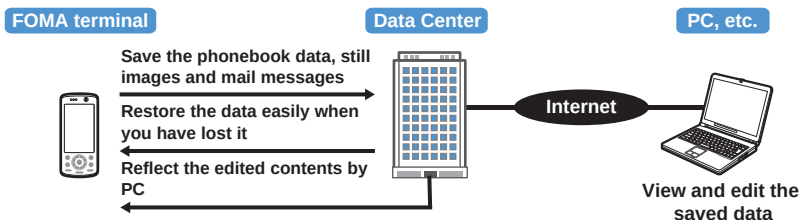
- The rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
- The call is also rejected in the following cases:
 - When a call or PushTalk call with no caller ID is received even if the party is registered in the phonebook.
 - While not in Secret Mode, there is an incoming call from the party registered in the phonebook as an entry with Secret Attribute set.

INFORMATION

- When there is an incoming call with no caller ID, this function's setting is prioritized over Anonymous Caller.
- i-mode Mail or SMS is received regardless of this function's setting.

Data Security Service is a service which allows you to save the phonebook data, still images and mail messages in your FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as the saved data) to the Data Center of DoCoMo. Even if your FOMA terminal is lost or exposed to water and the saved data is cleared, you can restore the phonebook data, etc. saved in the Data Center to a new FOMA terminal by operating in i-mode. In addition, you can edit easily the phonebook data saved in the Center from a PC by operating on the My DoCoMo web page and reflect the edited phonebook data to your FOMA terminal.

- For details of usage of Data Security Service, see "i-mode User's Manual".



- Data Security Service is a pay service for which subscription is required (it requires i-mode subscription).
- To save or restore the data, refer to the following pages:
 - Phonebook data ●P121, P125
 - Still images ●P319
 - Mail messages ●P254

Other “Safety settings”

The following Safety settings can be used:

Purpose	Function or Service	Page
To enable safe and reliable data communications by using the electronic authentication service, “FirstPass” (FirstPass-compatible sites only)	FirstPass	P201 P217
To receive only necessary mail messages out of large-volume messages received	Receive Option Setting	P257
To register/check the safety of relatives by using i-mode when a disaster occurs	i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	
To change mail addresses	Change Mail Address	See “ i-mode User’s Manual”.
To receive/reject only mail messages sent from the specified domains	Receive/Reject Mail Settings (against nuisance mail)	
To receive/reject mail messages only between i-mode terminals		
To receive/reject only mail messages from the specified addresses		
To reject SMS	SMS Rejection Settings (against nuisance mail)	
To reject i-mode Mail messages after 200th messages sent from an i-mode terminal (including mova terminal) in a day	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject unsolicited AD mail messages	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To stop the mail function temporarily	Suspend Mail	
To prevent use of the IC card function	IC Card Lock	P300
To reject “Nuisance calls” including malicious calls and repeating misdialled calls	Nuisance Call Blocking Service	P394
To update FOMA terminal software by using packet communication	Software Update	P457
To protect FOMA terminal from viruses by deleting data that may cause problems or stopping the starting of applications	Virus Scan Function	P461

Camera

Before using the camera.....	172
Shooting still images with Camera	Still Camera 176
Recording videos with Movie Camera	Movie Camera 181
Setting the still image/video size or the saving method	Still Image Setting/Recording Setting 183
Shooting by various methods	185
Changing the settings for shooting	187
Sending still images shot during voice calls	One-shot Message 191
Using Bar Code Reader.....	Bar Code Reader 192

Before using the camera

Still images and videos can be shot with your FOMA terminal camera. Still images and videos can be displayed/played on FOMA terminal, saved to the miniSD memory card, sent via i-mode Mail as attachments or sent via infrared communication.

- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle and needs to be purchased. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase one at electric appliance stores.

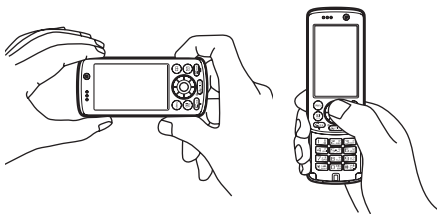
Precautions for using the camera

About the camera

- Though the camera is manufactured using extremely accurate technology, some pixels and lines may always be displayed to be lighter or darker than you expect. Noise such as dots and lines may increase especially when you shoot in a place with very low light intensity, but note that such noise is not a malfunction.
- When the lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time, the inside color filter will become discolored and images may be correspondingly discolored as well.
- When you attempt to shoot a strong light source such as the sun or a lamp or when the battery level is low, the image may become dark or degraded.
- Depending on the characteristics of the lens, displayed images may be distorted.
- Capturing under illumination flickering at high frequencies such as fluorescent lights, mercury vapor lights, or sodium lights may make the screen flicker, but this is not a malfunction. Flickers may be reduced by changing the distance or the angle of shooting the object or by moving to another position. In addition, flickers can be reduced by flicker adjustment. ◀P191
- Images taken with the camera may differ from the actual subjects in color and brightness, depending on conditions.
- When you activate the camera or auto focus or switch the in-/out-camera, a motor sound may be heard, but this is not a malfunction.
- The in-camera in FOMA terminal uses CMOS technology. Note that in darker places, a CMOS camera may take a slightly grainier picture compared to one taken by the out-camera (regular CCD camera) and this graininess is not an error.

To shoot clean images

Shooting can be performed even if FOMA terminal is closed or opened. Hold your FOMA terminal firmly to shoot, as shown in the illustration below.



- When shooting, be careful not to move FOMA terminal.
- Do not cover the lens with fingers or strap.
- To shoot a still image or video without camera shake, use the shake reduction function. Note that, however, depending on the image size, the shake reduction may not work correctly. ◀P189
Auto timer is also effective to avoid camera shake because the shutter is automatically released.

Points of concern when shooting images

- If the lens is contaminated with fingerprints or skin oil, you cannot shoot clean images. Use a soft cloth to remove any such contaminants before shooting.
- Set the brightness depending on the situation of the shooting. ◀P188
The compact light can be used for shooting in a dark place. ◀P177, P181
- There is a small time lag between taking a picture and pressing or . Do not move FOMA terminal for period after pressing or . If you shoot a fast moving subject, the shot image might slightly differ from the subject displayed on the screen when you press or .
- If you shoot the quickly moving subjects with Movie Camera, the image may be blurred.
- When you direct the camera toward yourself by using the in-camera, the screen displays a mirror image, but shot still images and videos are normal. For still images, setting **Auto save** of Still Image Setting to **No** can be used to save as mirror images.
- When you use the camera from i-αppli, the shot still images and the recorded videos are not saved in the **Image** (My Picture) or **i-motion** folder but saved in i-αppli. For some i-αppli applications, however, such images and videos may be saved in the **i-mode** folder or the **Deco-Mail picture** folder of **Image** (My Picture) or in the **i-mode** folder of **i-motion**. Shot images and videos may be automatically sent to the server.

- When the miniSD memory card is set as the destination, do not remove the miniSD memory card while using the camera. FOMA terminal may malfunction.
- If the battery power goes out before saving a shot still image or video, it is not saved.
- Because the camera consumes a lot of battery power, do not leave the camera activated long time or do not keep shot images long time without being saved.
- Some settings may require extra time to show an image on the shooting screen after you start the camera.

About copyrights and portrait rights

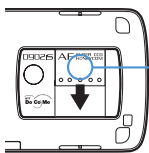
The copyright laws prohibit unauthorized use, such as reproduction, alteration and modification, of photographs or videos and i-mode or Internet web site information obtained by using the FOMA terminal without the permission of the relevant copyright holders except for personal use. Please refrain from unauthorized use of portraits or names of other persons that may infringe on portrait rights. When you release shot or recorded work on web pages, use care not to infringe on copyrights or portrait rights. Note that shooting or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Lens cover

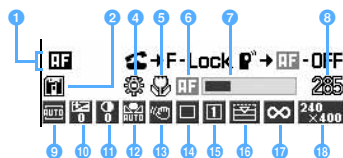
- Opening the lens cover in the standby display mode starts still image shooting with open cover sound.
- While shooting with the out-camera, closing the lens cover during standby for shooting stops still image shooting or video shooting with close cover sound. It is not deactivated if the lens cover is closed during a recording/viewing still images or videos, or performing some settings.
- The open cover sound and the close cover sound will not beep in Silent Mode.



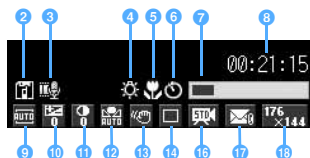
Press here and slide to the indicated direction.

Shooting screen

Viewing the shooting/recording screen



Still image shooting screen



Video recording screen

1 Guidance

While shooting still images with the out-camera, the auto focus on/off and key guidance are displayed.

For details about auto focus [P176](#)

<Auto focus on>

| **AF** **F-Lock** **P** **AF-OFF** |

<Auto focus off>

| **P** **AF-ON** |

2 Save to

Indicates the memory to save. [P185](#)

F: FOMA terminal **SD**: miniSD memory card

3 Recording type

Indicates the type of the video to be recorded.

[P185](#)

Video + Voice **Video only**

4 Compact light

Indicates **Compact Light** when the compact light is on.

[P177](#), [P182](#)

5 Macro

Indicates **Macro** in the macro mode. [P186](#)

6 Auto focus/auto timer

AF (gray) is displayed during shooting with auto-focus standby. During shooting, the state of auto focus is displayed (only for still image shooting with the out-camera). [P179](#)

Indicates **Auto timer** during the auto timer setting. [P186](#)

7 Indicator

<During standby for shooting>

Indicates the available storage space of the memory to save during the normal shooting. Indicates the time remaining until the shutter is released during auto timer count down.

- The miniSD memory card storage area usage rate may not become 0 even when no still image or video have been saved.

<During video recording/pause>

Indicates the rate of the recorded image size to the file size set in size restrictions (or the allowable saving size when *None* is set).

8 Counter

<During standby for shooting>

During the normal shooting, it indicates the maximum number (estimate) of still images or the maximum recording time (estimate) of videos that can be saved to FOMA terminal or the miniSD memory card in the current setting. Indicates the time remaining until the shutter is released during auto timer count down. Indicates shot number/total shot number during manual continuous shoot of still images.

<During video recording/pause>

Indicates the elapsed/remaining time (estimated remaining time before the recording stops).

9 Scene mode/effect

Indicates the scene mode/effect. ➡P187

10 Brightness

Indicates the current brightness setting. ➡P188

11 Color density

Indicates the current color density setting. ➡P188

12 White balance

Indicates the current white balance setting. ➡P189

13 Shake reduction

Indicates the shake reduction setting. ➡P189

14 Frame

Indicates the current frame setting. ➡P189

15 Continuous shoot

Indicates the current setting for continuous shooting. ➡P179

16 Quality

Indicates the setting of the quality of the still image and video. ➡P190

17 Size restrictions

Indicates the size restrictions of the file. ➡P190

18 Size

Indicates the size of the still image to shoot and the video to record. ➡P190

INFORMATION

- The indicator, counter and size restrictions are not displayed when the screen is started from i-a ppli. You can only switch the in-camera/out-camera, switch the macro mode/normal mode, turn on the compact light, start auto timer, zoom in/out and switch the shake reduction setting. You cannot use shake reduction for still image shooting.
- During video recording, when the horizontal shot for 320 x 240 (QVGA) is taken place, **STANDBY** (recording standby), **REC** (recording) and **PAUSE** (in pause) are indicated and the display position for the counter is changed:

File names and file formats

The shooting date/time is automatically assigned as the file name and displayed name of the shot image or recorded video file, or as the title of the recorded video file.

(Example) In case of 12:34:56 on July 10, 2006
→ 20060710123456

The file format is as follows:

■ Format of still image files

Item	Contents
File format	JPEG (compatible to Exif format, PRINT Image Matching III)
Extension	jpg

■ Format of video files

Item	Contents
File format	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method	Video: MPEG-4 Sound: AMR
Extension	3gp

INFORMATION

- The file name and display name can be changed after shooting. ➡P344
- If the date and time of FOMA terminal are not set, the file name, display name and title appear as "-----".

Maximum number of saved still images

The number of still images that can be saved in D902iS or the miniSD memory card varies depending on the settings of image size, quality and size restrictions or the shooting conditions.

- The image size, quality and size restrictions can be set in Still Image Setting.

Maximum number of saved still images (D902iS terminal)

The estimated number of still images that can be saved in D902iS is as shown below.

Size \ Quality	Economy	Standard	Fine
96 x 72	763	763	763
128 x 96	763	763	712
176 x 144	763	712	487
240 x 320	545	402	243
240 x 400	441	330	205
352 x 288	421	319	201
640 x 480	201	144	85
480 x 640	201	140	84
960 x 1280	77	48	26
1200 x 1600	57	34	19
1728 x 2304	17	11	6

Maximum number of saved still images (miniSD memory card)

The estimated number of still images that can be saved in the miniSD memory card is described below for each of 16 MB and 32 MB card.

■ For a capacity of 16MB

Size \ Quality	Economy	Standard	Fine
96 x 72	2057	1800	1600
128 x 96	1600	1440	1107
176 x 144	1309	1107	757
240 x 320	847	626	378
240 x 400	685	514	320
352 x 288	654	496	313
640 x 480	313	225	132
480 x 640	313	218	130
960 x 1280	121	74	41
1200 x 1600	89	54	30
1728 x 2304	27	17	10

■ For a capacity of 32MB

Size \ Quality	Economy	Standard	Fine
96 x 72	4246	3716	3303
128 x 96	3303	2972	2286
176 x 144	2702	2286	1564
240 x 320	1748	1292	782
240 x 400	1415	1061	660
352 x 288	1351	1025	646
640 x 480	646	464	272
480 x 640	646	450	270
960 x 1280	249	154	86
1200 x 1600	184	112	62
1728 x 2304	56	35	22

Maximum recording time of videos

The video recording time available varies depending on the size restrictions, image size, quality and recording type settings and the recording conditions.

- The size restrictions, image size, quality and recording type can be set in Recording Setting.

Maximum recording time per video clip (D902iS terminal)

The estimated recording time per video clip that can be saved in D902iS is as shown below:

Upper row in a cell: Video & Voice Lower row: Only video
Unit: seconds

Size restrictions	Size	Quality			
		LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attach (S)	128 x 96	113 191	71 96	51 72	21 24
	176 x 144	88 128	45 54	30 36	11 12
	320 x 240	32 36	17 18	14 15	6 6
Msg attach (L)	128 x 96	191 323	120 162	87 121	36 41
	176 x 144	149 217	76 91	51 61	19 21
	320 x 240	54 61	29 31	23 25	10 10

Total recording time (D902iS terminal)

The estimated total recording time of video clips that can be saved in D902iS is as shown below:

Upper row in a cell: Video & Voice Lower row: Only video
Unit: minutes

Size restrictions	Size	Quality			
		LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attach (S)	128 x 96	64 109	40 55	29 41	12 13
	176 x 144	50 73	25 31	17 20	6 6
	320 x 240	18 20	9 10	8 8	3 3
Msg attach (L)	128 x 96	64 109	40 55	29 41	12 13
	176 x 144	50 73	25 30	17 20	6 7
	320 x 240	18 20	9 10	7 8	3 3

Total recording time (miniSD memory card)

The estimated total recording time of video clips that can be saved in the miniSD memory card is described below for each of 16 MB and 32 MB card.

■ For a capacity of 16MB

Upper row in a cell: Video & Voice Lower row: Only video
Unit: minutes

Size restrictions	Size	Quality			
		LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attach (S)*1	128 x 96	90 158	56 79	40 59	16 19
	176 x 144	70 105	36 44	24 29	8 9
	320 x 240	25 29	13 14	11 12	4 4
Msg attach (L)*1	128 x 96	90 158	56 79	41 59	17 20
	176 x 144	70 106	36 44	24 29	9 10
	320 x 240	25 29	13 15	10 12	4 4
None*2	128 x 96	90 158	56 79	41 59	17 20
	176 x 144	70 106	36 44	24 30	9 10
	320 x 240	25 30	13 15	10 12	4 5

*1 The maximum recording time per video clip is the same as shown under "Maximum recording time per video clip (D902iS terminal)".

*2 You can also record one video clip for up to the total recording time.

■ For a capacity of 32MB

Upper row in a cell: Video & Voice Lower row: Only video
Unit: minutes

Size restrictions	Size	Quality			
		LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attach (S)*1	128 x 96	193 326	121 164	87 123	35 41
	176 x 144	150 218	76 92	51 61	18 20
	320 x 240	54 61	29 30	23 25	10 10
Msg attach (L)*1	128 x 96	193 326	121 163	87 122	36 41
	176 x 144	150 219	76 92	51 61	19 21
	320 x 240	54 61	29 31	23 25	10 10

Size restrictions	Size	Quality			
		LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
None*2	128 x 96	193 327	121 163	87 122	36 41
	176 x 144	150 219	76 92	51 61	19 20
	320 x 240	54 62	29 31	23 24	10 10

*1 The maximum recording time per video clip is the same as shown under "Maximum recording time per video clip (D902iS terminal)".

*2 You can also record one video clip for up to the total recording time.

Menu 66

Shooting still images with Camera

Still Camera

- A shutter sound is heard even when **silent** is set for the ring alert volume or Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is on. The shutter sound volume cannot be changed.

Shooting still images

The image can be shot by focusing on the object in the center of the screen by using the auto focus function.

- The distance that auto focus brings the camera into focus is from approx. 30 cm or more for the standard mode, and approx. 7 to 30 cm for the macro mode.
- Shooting with auto focus cannot be performed when shooting with the in-camera. The image is shot by fixed focus.
- When you activate Camera, the Enter key lights blue. When you shoot an image, both the compact light and the Enter key light red. You cannot set the compact light and the Enter key not to light. Also you cannot change the lighting pattern/color.

1 Open the lens cover



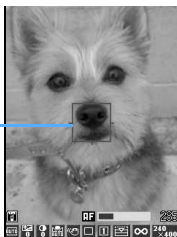
Still image shooting screen

- During standby for shooting, the following operations are enabled:
 - : Switches the compact light on ()/off (no icon) (only when shooting with the out-camera).
 - : Switches the screen between the full mode/standard mode
 - When the full mode is set, the icons and guide row disappear at the bottom of the screen.
 - Disabled when the camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i-appli.
 - : Switches the in-camera/out-camera.
 - (for over a second): Switches to Movie Camera.

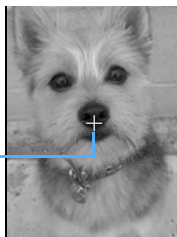
2 Point the camera at the object and



The orange focus frame is displayed on the center of the screen and the focus is adjusted. When the camera is brought into focus, the focus frame changes to a green +. The shutter sound is heard and a still image is shot before the image confirmation screen appears.



Focus frame



Green +

- When shooting with the in-camera, a still image is shot without displaying the focus frame.
- If you turn the compact light on, light intensity increases at the moment the shutter is released.
- If **Auto save** of Still Image Setting is set to **Yes**, the shot still image is saved and the shooting screen reappears. Operations from Step 3 are not required.

Camera is activated.

- Also, Camera can be activated by holding down for over a second.
- To activate Camera by shooting with the in-camera: (for over a second)

■ Shooting by focusing to other than the center of the screen (Shooting with focus lock):

① Set the object which you want to focus in the center of the screen

The orange focus frame is displayed.

When the camera is brought into focus, the confirmation sound sounds and the focus frame changes to a green +.

- To release focus lock:
- The confirmation sound is not issued in Silent Mode.

② Point the camera at the position where you want to shot

A still image is shot.

- You can also use for focus-lock shooting. Set the object in the center of the screen, press by half, and bring the camera into focus. Point the camera at the position where you want to shoot with half-pressed. Then fully press until you hear the shutter sound.
- If you release your finger from half-pressed , the focus lock is released.

■ Shooting without auto focus

The image is shot by fixed focus. This allows you to shoot the object quickly when you want to make sure you do not miss a shot.

①

Auto focus is turned off.

- Pressing the key again returns auto focus on.

② Point the camera at the object and

A still image is shot.

- Even when auto focus is turned off, pressing enables auto focus shooting.

3 View and confirm the still image

- To save the still image immediately: Go to Step 4
- To retake another image without saving the shot image:
- To enlarge the still image with the display size of 176 x 144 (QCIF) or smaller and check it:
 - Press to return to the original size.
- To display the still image with the display size of 640 x 480 (H-VGA) or more at the same size and check it:
- to scroll. Press to return to the original size.

■ Sending via mail:

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether or not to save the shot still image. Select **Yes** to save the image in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed. Depending on the image size or file size, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to the size of 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA) or save it to Data Box. P235

- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image is saved to FOMA terminal.
- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to adjust the file size of the shot still image depending on the settings of the image size and size restrictions. Select **No limit** to save the shot still image at the original size, select **Msg attach: Small** to save the shot still image in the file size smaller than 9,000 bytes to FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the shot and saved image is smaller than 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to paste the shot still image into the mail text. Select **Yes** to paste it into the mail text, and select **No** to set to the attached file.

■ Setting the image for the standby display:

   ▶ **Select Yes**

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and set for the standby display.

- The display size of the still image can be selected depending on the image size. P137
- If the i-a ppli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen asking whether or not to cancel it is displayed continuously.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be set for the standby display.

■ Adding the image to phonebook entries (only when the image size is 96 x 72 (phonebook)):

  ▶  or  ▶ **select Yes**

- The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.
- To update saved entries, select the party to add the image.
 - When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be added to the phonebook entry.

■ Changing the title: ▶ **Enter the title (up to 31 one-byte or two-byte characters (30 characters for continuous shot images))** ▶

■ Adjusting the brightness or color balance:



This brings you to the still image correction mode. For the subsequent steps P318

- When the image size is 640 x 480 (H-VGA), 480 x 640 (V-VGA), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M), it cannot be corrected.
- When a frame is set in four-frame shooting, mirror images cannot be corrected.

■ Rotating and saving the image:

- The image cannot be rotated if any of the following applies:
 - When the image size is 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M)
 - When a frame is set
 - When the image size is 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF), 640 x 480 (H-VGA), 480 x 640 (V-VGA), or 960 x 1280 (SXGA) and when the shooting date/time is set to **Date** or **Date+Time**
 - When the image size is 640 x 480 (H-VGA), 480 x 640 (V-VGA), or 960 x 1280 (SXGA) and **Size restrict** is set to **Msg attach: Large**

① ▶ **Rotate the still image**

: Rotate 90 degrees to the left

: Rotate 90 degrees to the right

- You can also get rotation on a 90 degree basis by rotating Speed Selector.

② ▶ **Select Yes**

■ Saving as mirror image (only when shooting with the in-camera):

- When a frame is set, mirror image saving is unavailable.

■ Switching the normal display/mirror display (only when shooting with the in-camera):

■ Switching the memory to save between FOMA terminal/miniSD memory card:

- After saving the still images, the setting for the memory to save returns to the setting before switching.

■ Displaying the list of images stored:

  ▶  or 

- When you display the images in the miniSD memory card in the list, select the folder.

4 Press or

The shot still image is saved in the **Camera** folder of **Image** (My Picture).

- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image is saved in the **My picture** folder of the miniSD memory card.

■ Checking the saved still image immediately: ► Select the still image

- For operations while displaying the images, follow Step 3 in "Displaying images".
- P312
- Press  twice to return to the still image shooting screen.
- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, select a folder by pressing  and then select the still image. Press  3 times to return to the still image shooting screen.
- The images cannot be checked when Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i-a ppli software.

INFORMATION

[General information]

- Saving the shot still image may take time depending on the image size, quality or memory to save.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, delete unnecessary images according to the screen or change the settings of image size and quality to lower values.
- Shooting still images during a voice call may interrupt the call.
- If there is an incoming call or PushTalk call before the shutter sound is heard during standby for shooting still image, shooting will stop. When the shutter sound has been heard and a still image has been shot already, the still image is saved automatically if **Auto save** is set to **Yes**. If **Auto save** is set to **No**, a confirmation screen is displayed after the end of the call or communication. However, the shot still images may be discarded depending on the timing of receiving calls.
- You cannot use the following functions at the confirmation screen when Camera is started from the phonebook or mail:
 - Composing mail
 - Standby display settings
 - Saving images in the phonebook
 - Adjusting/rotating images
 - Displaying at the same size
 - Switching where to save
 - Displaying the image list
- Some functions may not be used at the image confirmation screen when the miniSD memory card is not inserted or the miniSD memory card is activated.

- Even if you shoot while setting the shooting date/time to **Date** or **Date+Time** in Still Image Setting, the date or the time is not displayed on the image confirmation screen. The date or the time is displayed on the saved still image. In addition, on the still image with the display size of 640 x 480 (H-VGA) or more, if you press  on the image confirmation screen and display the still image at the same size, the date or the time is displayed.
- If you shoot an image with the image size of 1728 x 2304 (4M), the file size of the shot still image may exceed 500 Kbytes. In this case, you cannot send the still image via infrared communication. You can save, copy or move the still image to the miniSD memory card, but you cannot copy or move it to your FOMA terminal from the miniSD memory card.
- When the image size is 640 x 480 (H-VGA), 480 x 640 (V-VGA), or 960 x 1280 (SXGA), if you shoot with the shake reduction function set to **Auto**, it may take time before you see key operations on the image confirmation screen or some of the submenus become available.
- The following should be set for the out-camera and the in-camera separately. When you switch between the cameras, the settings are also switched accordingly.
 - Zooming
 - Scene mode/effect
 - Frame
 - Continuous shoot
 - Image quality
 - Size restrictions
 - Size

[Shooting with auto focus]

- In the following cases, the camera may not be automatically focused using auto focus:
 - When shooting an object of which color has no shading
 - When the shooting object is moving
 - When shooting in a dark place
 - When shooting while moving FOMA terminal
 - When there is light in the shooting area
- During adjusting the focus,  (gray) on the screen changes to  (black). In addition, in case of shooting with focus lock or manual continuous shooting, if the camera comes into focus, changes to  (green).
- Depending on the object or shooting situation, the focus may fail to be adjusted, thus showing the red **AF** (red).

Shooting continuously

The following types of shooting can be performed. In any case, automatic continuous shooting which shoots automatically at about 0.4 seconds intervals and manual continuous shooting which shoots by one piece at a time can be performed.

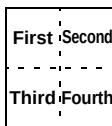
- Automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting

Up to 6 still images can be shot continuously. The shot images are saved in the format of Created animation in **Image** (My Picture) and can be displayed continuously like animations. The image sizes which can be shot are 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF), 176 x 144 (QCIF), 240 x 320 (QVGA), 240 x 400 (standby) and 352 x 288 (CIF).

- The number of images to be shot is set in Still Image Setting.
- If you use the function to cancel Created animation in My Picture, you can divide the continuous shots into individual still image.
- If the still images shot continuously are saved in the miniSD memory card, they are saved as a still image per sheet.

- Automatic four-frame shooting/manual four-frame shooting

Shots 4 still images of the size of 120 x 160 and makes the images arranged to one still image. The image size which can be shot is only 240 x 320 (QVGA).



- When shooting with the out-camera, the image can be shot with auto focus. In case of automatic continuous shooting or automatic four-frame shooting, the focus is adjusted when shooting the first image, and after that, the image is shot with the same focus as the first sheet. In case of manual continuous shooting or manual four-frame shooting, the image is shot by focusing the camera every one sheet. You can also shoot with focus lock or without auto focus.
- When Camera is activated from the phonebook, mail or i-appli, continuous shooting/four-frame shooting cannot be performed. However, continuous shooting can be performed depending on i-appli.
- During shooting, the compact light turns on in red. Also, the Enter key lights in red (for auto continuous shooting by the in-camera), or in multiple colors changing sequentially (for shooting by the out-camera, or manual continuous shooting by the in-camera). You cannot set the compact light and the Enter key not to light. Also you cannot change the lighting pattern/color.

1 Open the lens cover

Camera is activated.

- Also, Camera can be activated by holding down for over a second.

- To activate Camera by shooting with the in-camera: (for over a second)

2 to highlight the icon for continuous shooting ▶ to switch the icon ▶



Icon of continuous shooting

- : Automatic continuous shooting
- : Manual continuous shooting
- : Automatic four-frame shooting
- : Manual four-frame shooting
- : Continuous shooting not used

- The cursor does not move to the icon for continuous shooting on the image size in which continuous shooting cannot be performed. Changing the image size P187
- To cancel continuous shooting: to highlight the icon for continuous shooting ▶ to switch to ▶

3 Point the camera at the object and or



In the auto continuous shoot, the still images are continuously shot till their count reaches the predefined number, each shooting with the shutter sound for the auto continuous shoot. In the manual continuous shoot, the first of the continuous still images is shot with the shutter sound. To shoot the next ones, press or for each. The image confirmation screen is displayed after shooting the predefined number.

- If **Auto save** of Still Image Setting is set to **Yes**, the shooting screen reappears after still images of the predefined number are shot and saved. The operations from Step 4 are not needed.
- To stop manual continuous shooting or manual four-frame shooting on the way, press .
 - When **Auto save** is set to **Yes** in manual continuous shooting, the still images already shot are automatically saved and the shooting screen reappears. When **Auto save** is set to **No**, the image confirmation screen is displayed.
 - In case of manual four-frame shooting, the still images shot by then cannot be saved.
- Automatic continuous shooting and automatic four-frame shooting cannot be interrupted on the way.

4 View and confirm the still images shot continuously

- Functions available on the image confirmation screen are the same as in normal shooting. However, if two or more shots are taken by automatic continuous shooting or manual continuous shooting, rotation is unavailable.
- To retake another shot without saving the shot images:
- When you have shot two or more images by automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting, each time you press , the display switches between one image and thumbnail display. While one image is being displayed, pressing displays the previous or next still image.

5 Press or

The still images are saved.

- Saving destination and process are the same as in normal shooting.
- **Saving only one still image (only for automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting):**
- ① **Highlight a still image**
 - Display the still image to be saved for one image display.
 - ② **(for over a second) ► Select Yes**
 - When shooting with the in-camera, select *Save normal* or *Save mirror*.
 - Unsaved still images are discarded.
- **Saving the selected still images (only for automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting):**
- ① while displaying thumbnail
 - **Select still images**
 - Press to zoom the still image at the cursor position. To return to the thumbnail display, press .
 - ② ► **Select Yes**
 - When shooting with the in-camera, select *Save normal* or *Save mirror*.
 - Unsaved still images are discarded.

- **Saving all the still images as mirror images (only when shooting with the in-camera):**

INFORMATION

- If a call or PushTalk call arrives or the time set for the alarm or schedule alarm is reached during manual continuous shoot, shooting stops at that point. In case of manual continuous shooting, when *Auto save* is set to *Yes*, the still images already shot are automatically saved. When *Auto save* is set to *No*, the image confirmation screen is displayed after the end of the call, communication or alarm. In case of manual four-frame shooting, the still images shot up until then are discarded and cannot be saved.
- If a call or PushTalk call arrives or the time set for the alarm or schedule alarm is reached during auto continuous shoot, shooting continues. When *Auto save* is set to *Yes*, the still images already shot are automatically saved. When *Auto save* is set to *No*, the image confirmation screen is displayed after the end of the call, communication or alarm. Ring alert, alarm sound or alarm clock sound is disabled until the shutter sound stops.
- In case of manual continuous shooting or manual four-frame shooting, if the compact light has been turned on, it may take time for a while before the next still image can be shot after shooting.

Recording videos with Movie Camera

Movie Camera

- At the time of purchase, the video with sound is set to be shot. It can be changed in Recording Setting.
- A shutter sound is heard even when *silent* is set for the ring alert volume or Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is on. The shutter sound volume cannot be changed.
- When you activate Movie Camera, the Enter key lights in blue. While you are shooting, the compact light flashes in red and the Enter key flashes in multiple colors. During pause, the compact light lights in red and the Enter key lights in green. You cannot set the compact light and the Enter key not to light/flash. Also you cannot change the lighting pattern/color.

1

► **Open the lens cover**



Video recording screen

Movie Camera is activated.

- During standby for recording, the following operations are enabled:
 - : Switches the compact light on ()/off (no icon).*1
 - : Switches the vertical shot/horizontal shot (only when the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA)).*1
 - : Switches the in-camera/out-camera. (for over a second): Switches to Still Camera.
- *1 You can perform this operation only when shooting with the out-camera.

2 Point the camera at the object and or



The shutter sound is heard and recording is started. appears at the lower part of the screen.

- Press to pause during shooting. switches to . Press or , and the recording restarts.
 - Recording cannot be paused when Movie Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i-α ppli software.

3 or

The shutter sound is heard and the recording is finished. The image confirmation screen is displayed.

- If **Auto save** of Recording Setting is set to **Yes**, the shooting screen reappears after saving the video shot. The operations from Step 4 are not needed.
- If the size of video file reaches the limit while recording, recording is stopped and the video recorded up to that point is saved.
- If is pressed to end the recording while in pause, the video recorded up to that point is saved.

4 View and confirm the video shot

- To save the video immediately: Go to Step 5
- To retake another video without saving the shot video:
- To play the video:
 - When **Auto Play** in Recording Setting is set to **Yes**, the recorded video is played automatically.

■ Sending via mail:

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the recorded video. Select **Yes** to save the recorded video in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed.

- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the video is saved to FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the recorded video exceeds 500 Kbytes, the video cannot be attached.
- When the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA), the video cannot be attached.
- When the quality of video is set to **HQ+**(highest quality), the video cannot be attached.

■ Setting the video for the standby display:

▶ **Select Yes**

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and set for the standby display.

- If zooming is available for the shot video, select **Yes (Same size)** to maintain the image size or select **Yes (Large size)** to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i-α ppli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen asking whether or not to cancel it is displayed continuously.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be set for the standby display.

■ Adding the video to phonebook entries:

▶ or ▶ **Select Yes**

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- To update saved entries, select the party to add the video.
- Videos can be added to the phonebook entry only when the image size is set to 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF) and the recording type is set to **Video only**.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the video cannot be added to the phonebook entry.

■ Changing the title: ▶ **Enter the title (up to 31 one-byte or two-byte characters)** ▶

- The changed title will be valid after the video is saved.

■ Inserting a ticker: ► Select

Yes

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and the ticker setting screen is displayed. Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Inserting tickers". ►P324

- When the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA), a ticker cannot be inserted.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, a ticker cannot be inserted.

■ Switching the memory to save between FOMA terminal/miniSD memory card:

- If the file size of the recorded video exceeds 500 Kbytes, the saving destination cannot be switched.
- After saving the videos, the setting for the memory to save returns to the setting before switching.

■ Displaying the list of videos stored:

  ►  or 

- When you display the videos in the miniSD memory card in the list, select the folder.

5 Press or

The recorded video is saved in the **Camera** folder of **i-motion**.

- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the image is saved in the **Movie** folder of the miniSD memory card.

■ Checking the saved video immediately:

 ► Select a video

- After the confirmation, press  twice to return to the video recording screen.
- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, select a folder by pressing  and then select the video. Press  3 times to return to the video recording screen.
- The check is not available when Movie Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i-appli software.

- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum allowable number is exceeded, delete unwanted videos or sounds according to the screen or change settings of the size restrictions.
- When a call or PushTalk call arrives, the time set for the alarm or schedule alarm is reached or  is pressed during video recording, the recording stops at that point. The data recorded before the stop is saved automatically when **Auto save** is set to **Yes**. When **Auto save** is set to **No**, the image confirmation screen is displayed.
- If the battery is almost exhausted during recording, the low battery message appears and the recording process stops. If **Auto save** is set to **Yes**, the data that has been recorded till then is automatically stored; pressing  returns you to the recording screen. If **Auto save** is set to **No**, pressing  displays the image confirmation screen. Even after you return to the recording screen, you cannot operate it while you see a message indicating that the battery level is too low for recording.
- If an alarm clock sound, schedule alarm or battery alarm interrupts recording, you may hear the alarm clock sound, schedule alarm or battery alarm at the end of the recorded video/sound.
- You cannot use the following functions on the image confirmation screen when Movie Camera is started from the phonebook or mail.

• Composing mail	• Standby display settings
• Saving videos in the phonebook	
• Inserting a ticker	• Switching where to save
• Displaying the video list	
- The following should be set for the out-camera and the in-camera separately. When you switch between the cameras, the settings are also switched accordingly.

• Zooming	• Scene mode/effect
• Frame	• Image quality
• Size restrictions	• Size
• Recording type	

Setting the still image/video size or the saving method

Still Image Setting/Recording Setting

- Images/videos cannot be set when Still Camera or Movie Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i-appli software. In this case, **Camera time-out** is automatically reset to **1 min**.

INFORMATION

- When key operation is made or recharging is started during recording, operation tone may be recorded.
- Recording may be stopped before the file size reaches the limit set for the size restrictions, depending on data you record.
- If you set the size restrictions to **None**, data may not be saved when the battery power goes out during recording.

Default

- Still Image Settings
 - Image size:OUT camera: 240 x 400 (Standby)
 - Size restrict:OUT Cam: None
 - Quality:OUT camera: Standard
 - Image size:IN camera: 240 x 400 (Standby)
 - Size restrict: IN Cam: None
 - Quality:IN camera: Standard
 - Shooting date/time: None
 - Auto-timer duration: 10 sec.
 - Continuous shot photos: 6 Auto save: No
 - Save to: Phone Camera time-out: 1 min.
 - Shutter sound: Shutter sound1
 - Open cover sound: Open cover sound1
 - Close cover sound: Close cover sound1
 - Set lighting: Always on
- Recording Settings
 - Size restrict:OUT Cam: Msg attach:Small
 - Quality:OUT camera: STD (Standard)
 - Image size:OUT camera: 176 x 144 (QCIF)
 - Recording Type:OUT Cam: Video + Voice
 - Size restrict:IN Cam: Msg attach:Small
 - Quality:IN camera: STD (Standard)
 - Image size:IN camera: 176 x 144 (QCIF)
 - Recording Type:IN Cam: Video + Voice
 - Size restrict:SoundREC: Msg attach:Small
 - Quality:Sound recorder: STD (Standard)
 - Auto-timer duration: 10 sec.
 - Auto play: No Auto save: No
 - Save to: Phone Camera time-out: 1 min.
 - Shutter sound: Shutter sound1
 - Set lighting: Always on

Example When changing Still Image Setting

- 1 **Open the lens cover** ▶  
 - **Changing Recording Setting:**
 -    ▶ **Open the lens cover** ▶
 -  
- 2 **Select each item to set** ▶ **Press** 
 - **Checking the number of still images that can be shot (estimate):** 

The number of still images that can be shot (estimate) is displayed for each image size and for each quality,

 - The number of still images that can be shot (estimate) for the in-camera is displayed if the image size (in-camera), size restrictions (in-camera) or quality (in-camera) has been selected. Otherwise, the number of still images that can be shot (estimate) for the out-camera is displayed.
 - The number of images is calculated according to the current size restrictions. For any image size that cannot not be set from the current size restrictions, however, assignable size restrictions will be used for the calculation.

- When the image size selection screen is being displayed, the number can also be displayed by pressing .

Items to be set

■ Still Image Settings

Image size:OUT camera:

Set the image size for shooting with the out-camera. 

- If you select the image size on the selection screen, you can use icons at the lower part of the screen to check the availability of shake reduction, continuous shooting, frame shooting and shooting with the out-camera/in-camera.

- You cannot set **Msg attach:Small** (size restrictions) and any of the following at the same time: 240 x 400 (standby), 352 x 288 (CIF), 640 x 480 (H-VGA), 480 x 640 (V-VGA) and 960 x 1280 (SXGA). Likewise, you cannot set 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M) and **Msg attach:Small** or **Msg attach:Large** (size restrictions) at the same time.

Size restrict:OUT Cam:

Set the size restrictions for shooting with the out-camera. 

Quality:OUT camera:

Set the image quality for shooting with the out-camera. 

*Image size:IN camera, Size restrict:IN Cam and**Quality:IN camera:*

Set the image size, size restrictions and image quality for shooting with the in-camera. The settings are the same as for the out-camera. However, available image sizes are different from those for the out-camera.



Shooting date/time:

Set whether to insert the shooting date and time at the lower right of still images.

- Even when **Date** or **Date + Time** has been set, if the image size is set at 96 x 72 (phonebook), the shooting date/time will not be inserted.

Auto-timer duration:

Set the duration of time until the shutter is released while using auto timer (2 to 15 seconds).

Continuous shot photos:

Set the number of images to be shot continuously (2 to 6 images).

Auto save:

If **Auto save** is set to **Yes**, the shot still image is automatically saved. When setting **No**, the image confirmation screen appears after shooting.

Save to:

Set the memory to save the shot still image.

Camera time-out :

Set the duration of time until Camera turns off when no operation is made.

Shutter sound :

Select one from the shutter sounds 1 to 5.
• The selected sound is played.

Open cover sound :

Select the sound played when the lens cover is opened to activate Camera from any of the open cover sounds 1 to 3 and **OFF**.
• The selected sound is played. However, it is not played if **OFF** is set.

Close cover sound :

Select the sound played when the lens cover is closed to deactivate Camera from any of the close cover sounds 1 to 3 and **OFF**.
• The selected sound is played. However, it is not played if **OFF** is set.
• The sound for deactivating Movie Camera is also changed.

Set lighting :

When **Always on** is set, the lighting of the display stays on while the still image shooting screen is displayed. When **Phone settings** is set, the setting conforms to **Normal use of Display light time** of Display Light Setting. 

■ Recording Settings**Size restrict:OUT Cam :**

Set the size restrictions for recording with the out-camera. 
• When **Phone** is set for **Save to**, **None** cannot be set for size restrictions.

Quality:OUT camera :

Set the video quality for recording with the out-camera. 

Image size:OUT camera :

Set the image size for recording with the out-camera. 

Recording Type:Out Cam :

Select **Video + Voice** or **Video only** as the recording type for shooting with the out-camera.

Size restrict:IN Cam, Quality:IN camera, Image size:IN camera and Recording Type:IN Cam :

Set the size restrictions, image quality, image size and recording type for recording with the in-camera. The settings are the same as for the out-camera.

Size restrict:SoundREC :

Set the restrictions on file size for the voice recorded with Sound Recorder. 
• When **Phone** is set for **Save to**, **None** cannot be set for size restrictions.

Quality:Sound recorder :

Set the sound quality of the voice recorded with Sound Recorder. 

Auto-timer duration :

Set the duration of time until the shutter is released while using auto timer (2 to 15 seconds).

Auto Play :

Set whether to play the video/sound automatically when the image confirmation screen is displayed.

Auto save :

If **Auto save** is set to **Yes**, the recorded video/sound is automatically saved. Selecting **No** displays the image confirmation screen after recording.

Save to :

Set the memory to save.

Camera time-out :

Set the duration of time until Movie Camera/ Sound Recorder turns off when no operation is made.

Shutter sound :

Select one from the shutter sounds 1 to 5.
• The selected sound is played.

Set lighting :

When **Always on** is set, the lighting of the display stays on while the video/sound recording screen is displayed. When **Phone settings** is set, the setting conforms to **Normal use of Display light time** of Display Light Setting. 

INFORMATION

- You can also change the recording settings by pressing  in the Sound Recorder screen and selecting **Recording settings**.
- If Recording Setting is set in Movie Camera or Sound Recorder, both settings for Movie Camera and Sound Recorder are changed.
- The settings of **Shutter sound**, **Open cover sound** and **Close cover sound** are reflected to the settings of **Operation sound (Shutter sound, Movie camera sound, Lens cover sound)** of Set Sound. The **Set lighting** setting is reflected to the settings of **Display light time (Camera session, Movie camera session)** of the display light setting.

Shooting by various methods**Zooming**

The display magnifications which can be changed in each image size are as follows:

- With the out-camera
 - During still image shooting

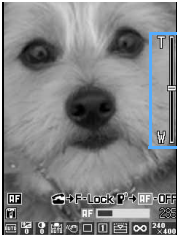
Image size	Max. display magnification	Zoom scale
96 x 72 (phonebook)	28 times	65 scales
128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	28 times	65 scales
176 x 144 (QCIF)	16 times	65 scales
240 x 320 (QVGA)	8 times	65 scales
240 x 400 (standby)	6 times	65 scales
352 x 288 (CIF)	6 times	65 scales
640 x 480 (H-VGA)	3 times	65 scales
480 x 640 (V-VGA)	4 times	65 scales
960 x 1280 (SXGA)	3 times	65 scales
1200 x 1600 (UXGA)	2 times	6 scales
1728 x 2304 (4M)	2 times	6 scales

- During video recording

Image size	Max. display magnification	Zoom scale
128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	20 times	9 scales
176 x 144 (QCIF)	16 times	8 scales
320 x 240 (QVGA vertical shoot)	4 times	3 scales
320 x 240 (QVGA horizontal shoot)	8 times	5 scales

- With the in-camera
 - Switching between scales (x1 and x2) is available.

1 Press on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen



During still image shooting

Each time you press, the slider shifts.

- You can also use Speed Selector to zoom.
- Shooting procedures for still images and videos are the same as in normal shooting.

Slider

Using auto timer

Since the shutter is automatically released after the specified number of second has elapsed, you can take your own picture and avoid blurring of images due to camera shake.

- You cannot use auto timer for manual continuous shooting or manual four-frame shooting.
- The number of seconds until the shutter is released can be set in Still image Setting or Recording Setting.

1 Press on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen



Auto timer is set and  is indicated.

- To cancel the setting: Press   again
Icon of auto timer

2 Point the camera at the object and press or

The countdown sound is heard and the auto timer starts countdown. The indicator and counter show an estimate of the remaining time before shooting and the remaining number of seconds. The interval of sounds becomes shorter as the shooting time approaches. After the specified number of seconds has elapsed, the shutter sound is heard and shooting is started.

- If you press  or  when shooting a still image with the out-camera, countdown is started after focusing by the auto focus function, and when the set number of seconds has passed, the image is shot in that focus. You can also shoot with focus lock or without auto focus.
- During countdown, the compact light flashes in red and the Enter key flashes in green. The intervals of flashing become shorter as the shooting time approaches.
- A countdown sound is heard even when *silent* is set for the ring alert volume or while Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is on. The countdown sound volume cannot be changed.
- To stop the auto timer on the way: 
- The shooting stops if a call arrives, the time set for the alarm or schedule alarm arrives, or  is pressed during auto timer countdown.

Shooting nearby object

Macro

When shooting a object from a very short distance, switching to Macro enables the camera to bring into focus. Macro is unavailable for shooting with the in-camera. The distances in which the camera can be brought into focus by Macro are about 7 to 30 cm for shooting still images with auto focus. Except the time of shooting still images with auto focus, the camera is brought into focus in about 7 to 11 cm.

1 Press **[#]** on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen



Icon of the macro mode

Switches to the macro mode and  is indicated.

- To cancel the setting: **[#]** again
- Shooting procedures for still images and videos are the same as in normal shooting.

- Keypads of **[1]** to **[9]** and **[0]** are assigned for each icon from the left. Icons can be selected also by pressing the relevant keypad.

[1] : Scene mode/effect

[2] : Brightness **[3]** : Color density

[4] : White balance **[5]** : Shake reduction

[6] : Frame

[7] : Continuous shooting (only when shooting still images) 

[8] : Quality **[9]** : Size restrictions

[0] : Image size

- Flicker adjustment cannot be set by the icon. Setting flicker adjustment 

Changing the settings for shooting

Scene mode/effect, brightness, color density, white balance, shake reduction, frames, quality, size restrictions, image size or flicker adjustment can be set.

- The following settings will be kept even if you finish using Camera or Movie camera.
 - Brightness • Color density • Shake reduce
 - Quality • Size restrictions • Image size
 - Flicker adjustment

Default SceneModes: Full auto Brightness: ± 0
 ColorDnsty: ± 0 WhiteBalnc: Auto
 ShakeReduc: Auto Frame: not set
 Quality: (Still image) Standard (Video) STD (Standard)
 Size Limit: (Still image) None (Video) Msg attach S Size: (Still image) 240 x 400 (standby) (Video) 176 x 144 (QCIF) Adjust flicker: Auto

Example Setting a frame

1 to highlight the icon of frame on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen



Icon of frame

- Similarly, to change other settings than a frame, highlight each icon.

Name of icon
 Current setting

2 to switch between frames Press

- To change other settings, switch between icons with  and press  in the same manner.
- For scene mode/effect, white balance, shake reduction, frame, continuous shooting, quality, size restrictions and image size, you can also switch the value by pressing the corresponding keys (**[1]**, **[4]** to **[9]**, **[0]**) and then pressing .

INFORMATION

-  or dial keys are not available to change settings when Still Camera or Movie Camera is started from the phonebook or mail. To change the setting of the scene mode/effect, brightness, color density, white balance, shake reduction or flicker adjustment, press  and select **Scene mode/effect**, **Camera settings** or **Shake reduce Auto** (or **Shake reduce OFF**). The quality, size restrictions, image size and frame cannot be set.
- The settings cannot be changed when Still Camera or Movie Camera is started from i-a ppli software. However, shake reduction setting for Movie Camera can be changed by pressing  and select **Shake reduce Auto** or **Shake reduce OFF**.

Scene mode/effect

24 setting types are available according to color tone and shooting situation.

- For details of operation 

 **Full auto** :

Standard scene mode/effect. Use this mode normally.

 **Sensitivity up** :

Enhances the camera sensitivity for shooting in the dark.

 **Super sensitivity up** :

Shoots a black-and-white picture even in a dim light situation.

 Adjust backlight :

Compensates backlight images by adjusting brightness of the darkened part such as face.

 Spot photometry :

Brightness of the whole image is set based on its central part.

 Scenery :

Suitable for shooting nature or cityscape vividly. Intensity and sharpness are set rather high.

 Night :

Slows the shutter speed for night shooting. Hold the terminal firmly to prevent blurring.

 Twilight :

Suitable for shooting the beautiful sunset scenery. With high intensity, images tend to look rather cyan.

 Surf&Snow :

Enhances the blue of the sky and sea, and the white of snow.

 Sport :

Shutter speed is set to high, allowing you to shoot fast-moving objects with less jiggling.

 Pet :

Shutter speed and color intensity are set to high.

 Gourmet :

Suitable for shooting cuisines and sweets.

 Letter :

Enhances letter outlines.

 Color reversal :

Shoots in negative colors. Images look just like negative prints.

 Painting :

Shot images will look like oil paintings.

 Woodcut :

Enables you to shoot a woodprint-like images, taking advantage of black-and-white contrast.

 Whiten :

Skin-color looks brighter and whiter. Recommended for indoor shooting.

 Suntan :

Skin-color looks sun-tanned. Recommended for outdoor shooting situation.

 Soft touch :

Blurs the outlines to soften the image.

 Mono tone (red) :

Shoots in monotone of red gradation.

 Mono tone (green) :

Shoots in monotone of green gradation.

 Mono tone (blue) :

Shoots in monotone of blue gradation.

 Monochrome :

Shoots images like black-and-white photographs.

 Sepia :

Shoots in sepia colors.

- **Sensitivity up, Super sensitivity up, Adjust backlight, Spot photometry, Color reversal, Painting, and Woodcut** settings are unavailable during the in-camera shooting.
- **Scenery** cannot be set with the automatic continuous shooting or automatic four-frame shooting.
- In **Night** mode, color is captured more precisely; due to the camera characteristics, there may be noise (such as lines) in the image when shootings are done in a low-light situation.
- In **Sport** or **Pet** mode, shoot in a sufficient-light situation. There may be noise in the images shot in a room or a low-light situation.
- In **Gourmet** or **Letter** mode, switch to Macro when shooting from a close range.
- Press   on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen to select a mode while viewing the description of each mode.

Brightness

Brightness level can be set from among 5 levels.

- For details of operation ►P187

 : -2  : -1  : ±0
 : +1  : +2

- If you change the level, it may not give much effect depending on the object.
- Unavailable when the scene mode/effect is set to **Super sensitivity up, Twilight, Woodcut, Whiten, or Suntan**.

Color density

Color density level can be set from among 5 levels.

- For details of operation ►P187

 : -2  : -1  : ±0
 : +1  : +2

- If you change the level, it may not give much effect depending on the object.
- Unavailable when the scene mode/effect is set to **Super sensitivity up, Letter, Woodcut, Whiten, or Suntan**. Unavailable also when the scene mode/effect is set to **Mono tone (red), Mono tone (green), Mono tone (blue), Monochrome** or **Sepia**, as well as the above, during the in-camera shooting.

White balance

Natural color tone coordinated with the light source is provided for shooting.

- For details of operation ➡P187



Auto:

Adjusts white balance automatically.



Sunlight:

Sets when shooting outdoor in fine weather.



Cloudy:

Sets when shooting in cloudy weather, shade or evening.



Fluorescent light:

Sets when shooting under illumination such as a fluorescent lamp.



Bulb light:

Sets when shooting under illumination such as an electric bulb.

- Unavailable when the scene mode/effect is set to **Super sensitivity up**, **Scenery**, **Surf&Snow**, **Woodcut**, **Mono tone (red)**, **Mono tone (green)**, **Mono tone (blue)**, **Monochrome**, or **Sepia**. Unavailable also when the scene mode/effect is set to **Twilight**, **Whiten** or **Suntan**, as well as the above, during the in-camera shooting.

Shake reduction

Set whether to use the shake reduction function.

- For details of operation ➡P187



Auto:

Shake reduction is automatically activated when the settings and conditions for shooting are likely to cause camera shake.



OFF:

Shake reduction is disabled.

INFORMATION

- In the following cases, shake reduction is automatically set to **OFF** and cannot be changed:
 - Shooting still image/video with the in-camera
 - Continuous shooting and four-frame shooting of still images
 - When the still image size is 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M)
 - When you shoot a still image while i-α ppli is running or being set as the i-α ppli standby display
- Camera shake may not be corrected in the following cases:
 - When camera shake is too much
 - When the object is moving
 - When shooting with zoom
 Even in other cases, note that camera shake may not be corrected, depending on the object or shooting situation.

- When you shoot still images using the shake reduction function, sometimes images may be overlapped or become grainier. In these cases, set shake reduction to **OFF**.
- When you shoot still images using the shake reduction function, post-shooting process may take longer time.
- When you record video using the shake reduction function, the angle of coverage becomes narrower as compared with the case where shake reduction is disabled.
- If you use the shake reduction function with the flicker adjustment being set to **Auto**, flickering may not be adjusted sufficiently. It is recommended that you change the flicker adjustment setting according to the local power supply frequency.

Frames

You can select frames saved in FOMA terminal or frame images downloaded from sites.

- For details of operation ➡P187



Frame is set



Frame is canceled

- The frames registered in FOMA terminal by default are applicable to image sizes of 176 x 144 (QCIF), 240 x 320 (QVGA) and 240 x 400 (standby). ➡P424
- Frames cannot be set when 96 x 72 (phonebook), 640 x 480 (H-VGA), 480 x 640 (V-VGA), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M) for image size of still image, or 320 x 240 (QVGA) for image size of video is set.
- Canceling: [6] (for over a second)

INFORMATION

- You can also select frames from the list by pressing [3] [1] on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen.
- If you select a frame that is opposite in horizontal and vertical values to the image size, the frame is displayed after rotating 90 degrees clockwise; for example, suppose that you have selected a 144 x 176 frame when the image size is 176 x 144 (QCIF). In this case, the frame rotates 180 degrees by pressing [3] [3] on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen. Note that your frame cannot be rotated if it is the same as the image size in terms of horizontal and vertical values.
- If the frame is downloaded from a site during shooting, the added frame becomes selectable by pressing [3] [4] on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen.

Quality

Set the quality of still image or video to shoot.

- For details of operation ➡P187

■ During still image shooting



Economy:

Provides the lowest quality. The file size is reduced.



Standard:

Provides the standard quality.



Fine:

Provides the highest quality. The file size is enlarged.

■ During video recording



LP:

Provides the lowest quality. The file size is reduced and the recording time becomes the longest.



STD:

Provides the standard quality



HQ:

The video motion becomes smooth.



HQ+:

Provides the highest quality. The file size is enlarged and the recording time becomes the shortest. The shot video cannot be attached to i-mode Mail.

INFORMATION

- When videos with an image size of 320 x 240 (QVGA) are recorded with **HQ+** (highest quality), the result will be a little lower definition if shake reduction is set to **Auto** as compared with the case where shake reduction is **OFF**.

Size restrictions

Set the size restrictions of files.

- For details of operation ➡P187

■ During still image shooting

When the file size of the shot still image is larger than the limit value, this setting automatically degrades the quality or reduce the file size to save the image.



Msg attach:Small*1:

Restricts the file size to 9,000 bytes. The image with this file size is suitable for attaching to i-mode Mail.



Msg attach:Large*1:

Restricts the file size to 500 Kbytes. You can attach the image to i-mode Mail without changing the file size.



None:

No restriction for the file size.

- **Msg attach:Small** can be set only for the image with the size of 240 x 320 (QVGA) or smaller.

- This setting cannot be changed for the image with the size of 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M).
- The setting for size restrictions may be changed automatically depending on the setting for the image size.

■ During video recording

When the file size of video exceeds the limit value during video recording, recording ends automatically.



Msg attach:Small*1:

Restricts the file size to 290 Kbytes. The image with this file size can be attached to i-mode Mail and sent to the terminal which does not support large message.



Msg attach:Large*1:

Restricts the file size to 490 Kbytes. The image with this file size can be sent to the terminal which supports large message.



None:

No restriction for the file size. When the memory to save is set to **Phone** in Recording Setting, you cannot select this.

- When you attach the shot video to i-mode Mail and send it to an i-mode terminal or a PC, set to other than **None**.

*1 When you select the icon, **Msg attach S** or **Msg attach L** is displayed on the screen.

Image size

You can set the following image size:

- For details of operation ➡P187

Shooting method	Icon	Image size	Remarks
Still Camera		96 x 72 (phonebook)	①
		128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	
		176 x 144 (QCIF)	
		240 x 320 (QVGA)	
		240 x 400 (standby)	
		352 x 288 (CIF)	②
		640 x 480 (H-VGA)	
		480 x 640 (V-VGA)	
		960 x 1280 (SXGA)	
		1200 x 1600 (UXGA)	
Movie Camera		1728 x 2304 (4M)	③
		128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	
		176 x 144 (QCIF)	
		320 x 240 (QVGA)	④

- ①: Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC. In addition, these sizes are suitable for attaching to Deco-mail.

- ②: Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC. A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert to 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA) when attaching files to mail.
- ③: Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC.
- ④: Images cannot be attached to i-mode Mail.
 - 640 x 480 (H-VGA), 480 x 640 (V-VGA), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) and 1728 x 2304 (4M) settings are unavailable during the in-camera shooting.
 - The maximum size of an image file that can be sent to the i-mode terminal is 500 Kbytes.
 - The still image size best suited for viewing on the i-mode terminal other than D902i and D902iS is 240 x 320 (QVGA).
 - The setting for size restrictions may be changed automatically depending on the setting for the image size.
 - While i-αppli is running or being set as the i-αppli standby display, the image size cannot be set to 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) and 1728 x 2304 (4M). If the still image shooting screen is displayed during i-αppli running when the image size is set to 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M), the image size is changed to 960 x 1280 (SXGA).

Flicker adjustment

If you set the flicker adjustment according to the power supply frequency of the area of use when the screen flickers under a fluorescent light etc., the flicker may be able to be reduced.

- Even if you adjust the flicker under a strong light source, the flicker may not be disappeared.
- This setting is also reflected to the flicker adjustment setting for the videophone and Bar Code Reader.

1 ② ④ on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen

2 Press any of to

Auto:

Adjusts to reduce the flicker automatically.

50Hz (East-Japan):

Adjusts according to the electromagnetic wave frequency of Eastern Japan.

60Hz (West-Japan):

Adjusts according to the electromagnetic wave frequency of Western Japan.

Restoring the default settings for shooting

Reset the settings for the scene mode/effect, brightness, color density, white balance and flicker adjustment to the default settings.

- For the scene mode/effect, only the out-camera setting is reset during the out-camera shooting; only the in-camera setting is reset during the in-camera shooting.

1 ② ⑤ on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen

2 Select **Yes**

Sending still images shot during voice calls

One-shot Message

Send the still image shot during a voice call by attaching it to i-mode Mail to the other party during the call.

- Set the memory to save to **Phone** in Still Image Setting to use this function.

1 during a voice call

2 Shoot a still image

- When **Yes** is set for **Auto save** in Still Image Setting, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to attach the shot image to mail. If **Yes** is selected, the shot still image can be checked.
- The still images shot continuously are displayed as thumbnails. Press  to highlight the still image.

3 Select **Yes**

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the mail composition screen is displayed. If the mail address of the other party you are talking to has been registered in the phonebook, the other party's address is inserted in the receiver field automatically. However, the mail address is not inserted when Privacy Mode is active (**Authorized access** set for **Phonebook & Logs**)

- Depending on the image size or the file size of the shot image, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image size to 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA) or save the image to Data Box. P235

- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to adjust the file size of the shot still image depending on the settings of the image size and size restrictions. Select **No limit** to save the shot still image at the original size, select **Msg attach:Small** to save the shot still image in the file size smaller than 9,000 bytes to FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the shot and saved image is smaller than 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to paste the shot still image into the mail text. Select **Yes** to paste it into the mail text, and select **No** to set to the attached file.
- Press **Ch/Disp** to return to the shooting screen without composing i-mode Mail. To cancel shooting, press **Ch/Disp** on the shooting screen.

4 Compose and send i-mode Mail

- To return to the talking screen: **Ch/Disp**

Using Bar Code Reader

Bar Code Reader

Data such as text and number contained in the JAN code or QR code can be scanned using the camera. The scanned data can be saved as the phonebook or bookmark data. Also, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions are available from the data.

- You can save the scanned data up to 5 items.
- Bar Code Reader can be used only with the out-camera.
- The bar codes and two-dimensional codes other than JAN and QR codes cannot be scanned.
- Some bar codes may not be scanned depending on the types and sizes.
- Scratches, dirt, damages, the low print quality, the strong reflection of light or some QR code versions may prevent the codes from being scanned.
- You can activate Bar Code Reader on the character entry screen and enter the scanned data directly. **P409**

JAN Code

The JAN code is one of the bar codes indicating numbers with the vertical lines (bars) of different width. The bar codes of 8 digits (JAN8) or 13 digits (JAN13) can be scanned.

The JAN code below shows the numeral data "4942857124156".



QR Code

The QR code is one of the two-dimensional codes indicating a string of alphanumeric and other characters (kanji, kana and pictograms) or data such as melody or image with the vertical and horizontal patterns.



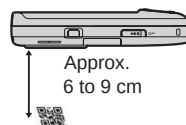
The left QR code shows the text data "FOMA D902iS".

1 **Menu** **6** **1** **▶ Open the lens cover**

- During scanning the bar codes, the following operations are enabled:
 - [M]** : Switches the compact light on ()/off (no icon).
 - [#]** : Switches between the normal mode (no icon)/macro mode ().
 - Switch to the normal mode before scanning the large size codes.
- To set flicker adjustment: **Menu** **2** **▶** **1** to **3**
 - This setting is also reflected to the flicker adjustment setting for the camera and videophone.
 - For details of settings **P191**

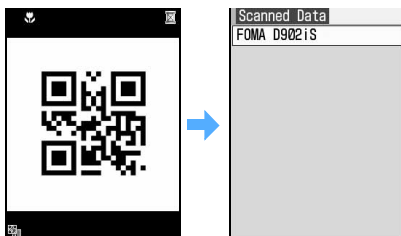
Scanning the code

Activating Bar Code Reader switches to Macro automatically. Keep the out-camera about 6 to 9 cm away from the code to scan.



2 Scan the code

When you point the out-camera toward the code, the code is scanned automatically. If scanned correctly, a confirmation sound is played and the scanned data is displayed.



- When it is hard to scan the code, if you adjust the distance, angle or direction of the code and the out-camera, the code may be able to be scanned.
- If the data exceeds 11,000 one-byte or 5,500 two-byte characters, the exceeded characters are not displayed, but can be saved.
- When scanning is paused such as while a submenu is displayed, the icon indicated at the upper right of the screen changes to .

■ Re-scanning the code:

3 Press 4

The scanned data is saved to FOMA terminal.

- When 5 data has already saved or the memory is not enough, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the saved data. Select **Yes** to delete the saved data.

■ Copying the text data in the scanned data: ① 1 ▶ Select the start position to copy

- To copy the entire text data:

② Select the end position to copy

Scanning divided QR codes

When the data is divided into multiple parts (up to 16), scan them one by one according to messages displayed on the screen.



State of scanning the QR code
Green: Last scanned code
Blue: Scanned codes
Gray: Remaining unscanned codes

Remaining number of QR codes/total number of QR codes

- Press to cancel scanning on the way. Select **Yes** when a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to discard the scanned QR code data.

INFORMATION

- If you press on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen and select **Switch mode** → **Bar code reader**, Bar Code Reader can be used as well.
- When **Call alert volume** or **Mail/Msg alert vol.** is set to **silent** or Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the confirmation sound for scanning the bar code does not sound.
- Press 4 on the bar code reading screen and press or to switch to Still Camera or Movie Camera. When Bar Code Reader is started from other than the character entry screen or i-appli, switching is not available.
- The scanned data is given a file name made up of the scanned date and time + serial file number + .jan or .qr ("jan" is for JAN code and ".qr" for QR code). The file name 20060710123400.jan, for example, means the JAN code scanned at 12:34 on July 10, 2006. When there are any previously saved data at the same date and time, 1 is added to the serial file number. Note that the date and time part of the file name appears as "-----" if the date and time of FOMA terminal is not set. The file name cannot be changed.

Using the scanned data

The available operations vary depending on the scanned data.

Example Adding data to the phonebook

1 6 1 ▶ Open the lens cover

2 ▶ Select the scanned data

■ Deleting the scanned data: Highlight the data ▶ 3 1 ▶ Select **Yes**

- To delete all: 3 2 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select **Yes**

3 Highlight the data to add to the phonebook

- ▶ 3 1 (Add new data) or 3 2 (Update) ▶ Press or

The registration screen for the phonebook is displayed with the highlighted data entered.

- To update saved entries, select the party to add the data.

- **Adding all data to the phonebook at one time:** Select *Add to phonebook* ►  or 

The registration screen for the phonebook is displayed. The name and the reading are also entered depending on the data.

- **Sending i-mode Mail: Select a mail address or *Compose message***

The mail composition screen is displayed.

- When *Compose message* is selected, the subject and the text are entered depending on the data.

- **Connecting i-mode sites or Internet websites:** Select a URL ► Select *Yes*

- **Saving URLs as bookmarks:**

- ① Highlight a URL ►   or select *Add bookmark*

- ② Select a folder

- ③ Enter a title name (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) ► 

- When *Add bookmark* is selected, the title name is also entered depending on the data.

- **Starting i-appli:** Select *Start i-appli*

- **Making voice/videophone/PushTalk calls:**

- ① Select a phone number ► Set the dialing conditions ◀P58

- ②  ► Select *Yes*

- **Saving still images:**

- ① Select the file name of a still image ► Select *Save*

- To display a still image: Select *Display*

- ② Select each item to set ►  ◀P345

- ③ Select a folder to save

- **Saving melodies:**

- ① Select a file name of melody ► Select *Save*

- To play the melody: Select *Play*

- ② Enter a display name ► 

The melody is saved in the *Data transfer* folder of *Melody* in Data Box.

i-mode/i-motion

What's i-mode?	196
Displaying sites	
Displaying sites	200
Reading and operating sites	202
Using My Menu	My Menu 203
Changing your current i-mode password	Change i-mode Password 204
Displaying Internet websites	Internet Connection 204
Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing ...	Bookmark 205
Saving site contents	Screen Memo 207
Downloading images and melodies from sites	
Downloading images from sites	Save Image 208
Downloading melodies from sites	i-melody 209
Downloading PDF data from sites	209
Downloading dictionaries from sites	210
Downloading Chara-den from sites	210
Useful functions of i-mode	
Useful functions of i-mode	211
Making i-mode settings	
Making i-mode settings	i-mode Setting 212
Using Message Service	
When Message R/F is received	Receive Message R/F 214
Displaying saved Message R/F	Message R/Message F 215
Using certificate	
Operating certificates	217
Using i-motion	
i-motion	219
Downloading i-motion from sites	219
Setting auto play and the type of i-motion to be downloaded	i-motion Setting 221

What's i-mode?

With i-mode, you can use online services such as connecting to Sites (Programs) or Internet websites, or sending and receiving i-mode Mail by using the display of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal).

■ Sites (Programs) connection

You can access various online services such as weather information or news provided by IPs (Information service providers) from Menu List of iMenu. You can also download and enjoy games, standby images, etc.

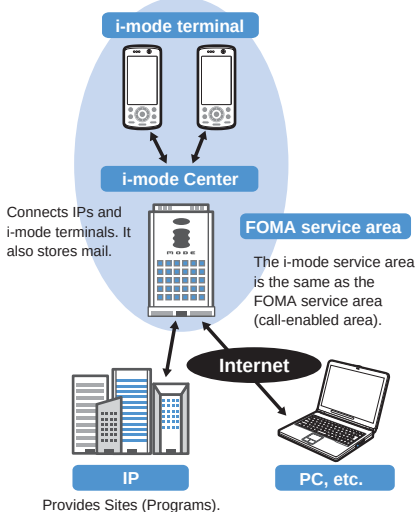
■ Internet connection

You can view a wide variety of i-mode compatible websites by directly entering the URLs into your i-mode terminal.

■ i-mode Mail

You can exchange e-mail (of up to 5,000 two-byte characters) with other i-mode terminals and with anyone with Internet mail address. You can also transmit Deco-mail or mail with still image and video.

Service schematic



- i-mode is an optional service to be charged requiring subscription. Please refer to the back of this manual for further information on subscription.

INFORMATION

- When you newly subscribe to the FOMA service, all services are available as of the first day.
- The contents of My Menu are carried over as it is when you change the mova service (with i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service. However, some sites may not be carried over to My Menu of the FOMA service. In that case, register them again. You can check the sites that can be carried over to My Menu in お知らせ&ヘルプ of iMenu.
- i-mode service is charged based on the sent/received information volume (packet count). This manual does not include fee-related information. For details of usage fees, see "i-mode User's Manual" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.
- i-mode service contents are subject to change; for details, see the latest "i-mode User's Manual".

Sites (Programs) connection

You can access sites using simple key operations and use various online services provided by IPs. For example, you can check your bank balance, make wire transfers, reserve tickets, watch news, search dictionaries, download melodies, etc.

Displaying sites

When you are connected to the i-mode Center, iMenu is displayed first. From this menu, you can access Sites (Programs), 週刊 i ガイド, etc.



- Sites displaying procedure ●P200
- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. The display may differ depending on the settings.

1 マイメニュー (My Menu)

You can register your favorite sites and quickly access the sites later. ●P203
Pay sites in iMenu are automatically registered. Up to 45 sites can be registered.

2 週刊 i ガイド (Weekly i Guide)

The latest site information including new and recommended sites is released and updated every day from Monday to Friday every week.

3 メニューリスト (Menu List)

Lists all sites by categories or regions. You can access the desired site from here.

④ とくするメニュー (Tokusuru Menu)

Includes information on exciting campaigns, gifts, and discount coupons. The information is updated every week (provided by D2 Communications).

⑤ i エリア (i-area)

You can easily check the weather, map and town information of your place or vicinity.

⑥ かんたん検索 (Easy Search)

You can search sites easily by keyword from categories such as game and standby display.

i アプリサーチ (i-appli Search)

Introduces i-appli based on usage purposes, e.g. free of charge, game, etc.

便利サイトサーチ (Useful Site Search)

Introduces useful sites in Menu List that can be used daily according to usage scenarios.

⑦ マイボックス (My Box)

This is a service for members to access more conveniently to certain shop information and sites through advance registration.

⑧ オプション設定 (Options)

Used to set i-mode Mail and change i-mode password, etc.

⑨ お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help)

Includes information from DoCoMo, i-mode operation procedures and rules.

■ 料金&お申込 (Charges & Applications)

You can confirm or pay the fees, change subscriptions, or apply for services.

ENGLISH

iMenu changes to English display.

- Same menus in Japanese iMenu are not supported in English iMenu.

INFORMATION

- You may need to pay information fee to access certain sites (i-mode pay sites).
- You may need to subscribe to use some services provided by IPs.
- You will not be charged for packet communication unless the i-mode Center is accessed, even if  flashes.
- The screen such as iMenu appears different for Dual Network Service subscribers.

Other convenient functions

■ i-channel

This service is provided by DoCoMo or IPs and delivers graphical information such as news and weather information to your i-mode terminal.

You can receive information regularly, and read the latest information as it appears on the standby display as ticker. You can also view the information in the channel list by pressing . In addition, you can

download rich, detail information by selecting your favorite channel in the channel list.

- Supporting models: i-channel compatible models. For more information, see "i-mode User's Manual".

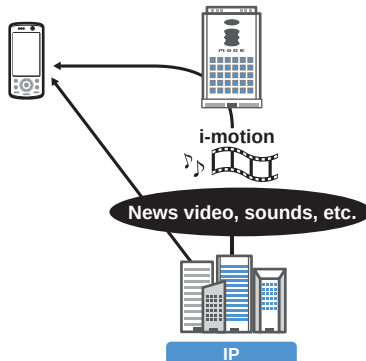
■ i-motion

You can download videos and sounds from sites to your i-mode terminal and play or set them for the standby display.

- Downloading i-motion  P219
- Playing i-motion  P320
- Setting auto play of i-motion  P221

i-mode terminal

i-mode Center



■ Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)/Chaku-Uta®

i-motion can be downloaded from i-mode sites to your i-mode terminal and set as ring tone or incoming image. The vocals of your favorite singers can be used as ring tone as well as melodies (some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone).

- Setting Movie ringtone  P128, P322
- "Chaku-Uta®" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

■ i-appli

You can conveniently use your i-mode terminal by downloading i-appli from sites. For example, you can download games to play or i-appli stock software to automatically check stock prices periodically. Furthermore, because the map-related i-appli downloads only necessary data, smooth scrolling can be performed.

- Downloading i-appli  P271
- Starting i-appli  P273
- Automatically starting i-appli  P282

■ i-α ppli standby display

On the i-α ppli standby display, i-α ppli can be used as the standby display, which also allows directly receiving mail and making phone calls. The function of the standby display can be enhanced by setting it to display news and weather forecast update or by using your favorite character to inform you of incoming mail and alarms.

- Setting the i-α ppli standby display ●P139

■ i-α ppli DX

i-α ppli DX is more useful and enjoyable i-α ppli. In conjunction with the i-mode terminal data (such as mail, call log or phonebook data), i-α ppli DX allows you to compose a message on your favorite character screen and to inform you of the caller of incoming call by character's comments. Also, i-α ppli DX updates stock price information, game status, or other information in real time in conjunction with mail.

- i-α ppli DX ●P270

■ 3D sound

The 3D sound compatible i-mode terminal, using stereo speakers (or a flat type stereo earphone set (optional)), allows you to create 3-dimensional sound that moves around in space and to enjoy realistic i-α ppli games, i-motion and ring tone (for 3D sound content only).

■ Chara-den

When using videophone, you can have a character displayed on the other party's videophone terminal instead of your image, move its mouth in response to sounds, and make motions by key operation. You can download your favorite character and set it for the standby display. Also you can record the Chara-den in an image or video file and set the file for the standby display or attach it to mail to send (you cannot send image/video files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

- Downloading Chara-den ●P210
- Displaying Chara-den ●P327
- Setting Chara-den ●P85, P91, P327
- Operating Chara-den ●P328
- Recording Chara-den ●P328

Videophone terminal



Chara-den image

Videophone terminal



Camera image

Videophone

Chara-den contents



IP

■ Infrared communication function

Phonebook data, mail, bookmarks, etc. can be exchanged with mobile phones, PCs and other devices that are provided with the infrared communication function.*1

In addition, by using the infrared communication with i-α ppli, you can use your terminal in a wide range of ways in conjunction with other devices provided with the infrared communication function. For example, a mobile phone with this function can be used as a TV remote control or member card, etc.

*1 Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the other party's device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

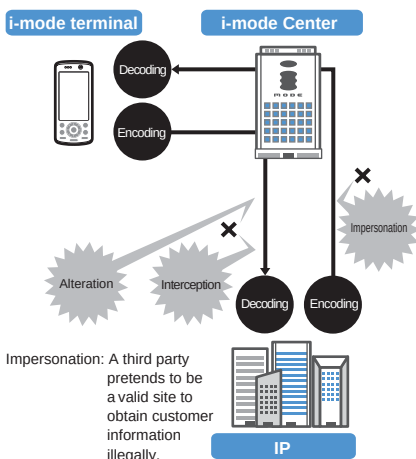
- Using infrared communication ●P347, P287

■ SSL communication

SSL is a safer data communication method that uses certification/encryption technology to protect privacy. On SSL pages, data is encrypted and sent/received to prevent information interception, impersonation or alteration, thus allowing personal information such as credit card numbers and street addresses to be exchanged more safely.

There are 2 types of SSL communication: one is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the CA certificate stored in your i-mode terminal and the other is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the user certificate downloaded from the FirstPass center. The certificates used to display sites differ depending on the site. ●P217

- Using the CA certificate stored in your i-mode terminal ●P217
- Using the user certificate of FirstPass ●P217



■ UIM operation restriction function

When the UIM containing user information (phone numbers, part of phonebook data, etc.) is inserted in your i-mode terminal, this function restricts operations of melodies, still images and i-motion downloaded from sites or received by mail. When the terminal is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted, playing or displaying of these obtained files will be disabled. ●P39

- This function does not apply to still images or videos you shot with the camera, or files saved to your i-mode terminal via infrared communication (excluding the data compatible with Movable Contents).
- This function resets the ring tone and standby display or other settings, if any, made in your i-mode terminal.

■ i-melody

You can download the latest music or your favorite music from sites to your i-mode terminal and use them as ring tone. ●P209

■ i-anime

You can download your favorite animation from sites to your i-mode terminal and use it as the standby image or incoming image. ●P208

■ Flash®

Flash is an animation technology that uses images and sounds, which makes colorful animations and expressive sites by displayed. Images using Flash movie can be downloaded to i-mode terminals and set for the standby display. Some Flash movies can reference the information of your i-mode terminal. The information to be used is as follows:

- Battery level
- Received signal level
- Time information

- Ring volume for calls
- Select Language
- Model information

■ Message Service

Message Service is a service that automatically delivers desired information (messages) to your i-mode terminal. There are 2 types of Message Service: Message R (request) and Message F (free).

Message R (request)	Information is delivered automatically after subscribing to a site that provides Message Service.
Message F (free)	Messages are delivered free of packet communication fee.

- Receiving Message R/F ●P214, P241
- If you apply to the i-mode service at the same time as new subscription to FOMA on or after October 1, 2004, the initial Message F (free) setting is 受信する (Receive). Please note that, if you do not like to receive Message F, you have to change the setting to 受信しない (Not receive) by yourself.
 - If you like to use Message F in cases other than above, you have to make the setting from オプション設定 of iMenu in advance. The initial setting is 受信しない.
- Message R/F is stored in the i-mode Center when i-mode terminal is off or outside the service area.
- The maximum number of Message R/Fs and the period they are stored at the i-mode Center are as follows. Message R/F will be deleted after the maximum storage period expires. When the maximum number of messages that can be stored is exceeded, Message R/F is deleted beginning with the chronologically oldest message.

Message type	Maximum number of items	Maximum storage period
Message R	300	72 hours
Message F	300	72 hours

- You can use Check i-mode Message (●P241) to receive Message R/F stored in the i-mode Center.

■ トクだねニュース便 (Convenient News)

This service is provided by DoCoMo and delivers information such as news and weather information to your i-mode terminal using Message R (request). トクだねニュース便 is a pay service for which subscription is required. After application, this service is automatically registered in My Menu, and you can access the same information from My Menu.

- Reading the Message R screen ●P215

■ i-mode password

You need an i-mode password to subscribe to pay sites, register and cancel sites in My Menu, or make i-mode Mail settings. By default, the i-mode password is set to "0000". Be sure to change it to a 4-digit number of your own choice. ➡P204

Be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

Internet connection

You can display i-mode compatible websites via the Internet by entering the addresses (URLs).

- Displaying procedures ➡P204

INFORMATION

- Internet websites other than i-mode compatible websites (sites created using i-mode compatible tags) may not be displayed correctly.
- Sites may be displayed differently on a PC.
- Internet websites with the URLs longer than 512 characters may not be displayed.
- If you have a PC, data such as mail and bookmarks can be saved to the PC by using data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional). If you subscribe to Data Security Service (charged), you can save mails in the Data Center.
- Data such as mail and bookmarks can be saved to the miniSD memory card.

Before using i-mode

- The contents of Sites (Programs) and Internet websites are usually protected by copyright laws. All or any portion of text, image or other data downloaded to your i-mode terminal from a Site (Program) or Internet website cannot be used or altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.
- Data saved/registered in your i-mode terminal (mail, Message R/F, screen memo, i-appli, i-motion, and bookmark) may be erased due to failure, repair, or other handling of i-mode terminal. It is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the data you saved/registered in your i-mode terminal. We are not responsible for any lost data.

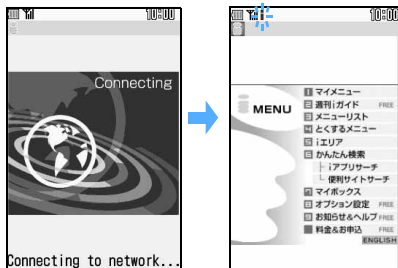
- When i-mode terminal is sent for repair, the data you downloaded using i-mode, i-appli or i-motion (except some data) is not transferred to the new mobile terminal in accordance with copyright laws. Depending on the model, you cannot display or play still images, i-motion, or melodies downloaded from sites, files (images, videos, melodies, etc.) attached to sent/received mail, screen memos or Message R/Fs when your terminal is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted.
- When data with the UIM operation restriction enabled is set for the standby display or ring tone, the settings return to default if another UIM other than yours or no UIM is inserted. It returns to the previous settings when the UIM that was used during downloading the data is inserted.

Menu 21

Displaying sites

1 ➡ Select **ENGLISH**

Flashes in i-mode communication.



- Press  on the connecting screen to stop connection.
- Item with the number such as  or  can be selected by pressing the key of number corresponding to the item (Direct key function). However, you may not be able to select them on some sites.

2 Select **Menu List**

▼News/Intro
 1)  Shinbun
 2)  Daily
 3)  News
 ▼Entertainment
 4)  Game
 5)  SPORTS
 ▼Ringing Tone
 6)  Music

- Press  while accessing the page to stop downloading.

3 Select an item

You are connected to a site. You can display the target page by repeating this operation.

4 when you finish viewing the site ▶ Select Yes

INFORMATION

- When you display a site containing an image, the following icons may be displayed instead of the image:
 -  : When **Not display** is set for **Image** in Image & Effect Setting ( in case of undownloaded image of Message R/F)
 -  : When no image has been received because, for example, the image data is invalid, the image is missing, or FOMA terminal is out of the service area
 -  : When the image cannot be displayed because of incorrect URL
- i-mode requires online connection and cannot be used outside the service area.
- To return to iMenu during site display, press  and select **iMenu**.
- When a site requests your FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number, a confirmation screen appears. When you select **Yes**, your FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number is sent. The IP uses the FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number to identify you for providing the information customized for you or for determining whether your FOMA terminal supports the site content provided by the IP. Since your FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number is sent to the IP via the Internet, there is a possibility the information could be intercepted by third parties. However, your information such as FOMA terminal's phone number, your address, age, and sex will never be disclosed to the IP with this operation.
- If a site requests entry of the user name and password, the entry screen is displayed. Enter the user name and password of the site and select **OK**.

Connecting to SSL pages

You can display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) by the same operation as for ordinary sites.

- Some SSL pages may not allow connection unless the date and time are set.
- To connect to a FirstPass compatible site, you need to download a user certificate for the site from the FirstPass center and save it in the UIM.

Connecting to an SSL page

A screen informing you of the start of an SSL session is displayed.  appears on the top of the screen when the SSL page is displayed.

■ Displaying a certificate during SSL page

display:   

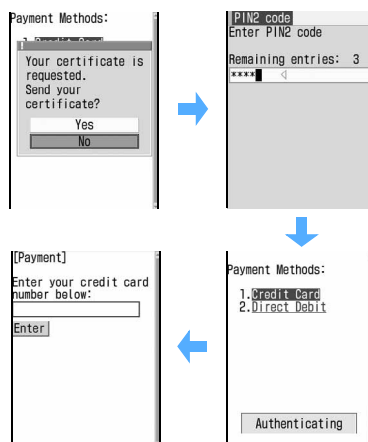
- Certificate  P217

Displaying an ordinary page from an SSL page

A confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** to display an ordinary page and  disappears on the top of the screen.

Connecting to a FirstPass compatible page

The following screens appear:



① Select Yes

② Enter the PIN2 code

The user certificate is sent and the FirstPass compatible page is displayed.

- If the correct PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the SSL communication is disconnected.

INFORMATION

- Establishment of SSL session requires electronic information called "certificate" for the connected site and FOMA terminal issued by the same certifier.  P217
- Packet communication fee while being connected to FirstPass compatible sites will be included in the Pake-Houdai service. However, the fee for data communication using a connected PC will not be included in the Pake-Houdai service.

Reconnecting to the last page displayed

Last Visited URL

Last Visited URL allows you to quickly reconnect to the page displayed last.

- Some pages may not be displayed. In addition, pages different from the last visited one may be displayed.



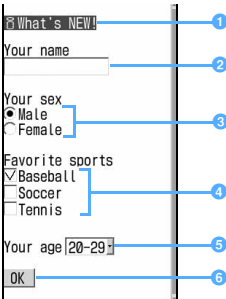
- When no last visited URL is recorded, a message indicating you that there is no record appears.



Reading and operating sites

Selecting links and items

Selectable items and entry fields appear depending on the page. Press  to highlight an item or entry field and press  to select the item or enter characters.



1 Link

Select to jump to a related page. The link is highlighted when the cursor is placed over.

2 Character entry field

Enter characters. The character types and the maximum number of characters that can be entered depend on the character entry field.

3 Radio button (: Unselected : Selected)

You can select only one from selections.

4 Check box (: Unselected : Selected)

You can select multiple items from selections. Press  to switch between  and .

5 Pulldown menu

Select an item from the item list.

6 Button (name differs depending on the site)

You can send page settings to a site or cancel the settings.

INFORMATION

- Some images may have links.
- Items with numbers such as 1 and 2 can be selected by pressing the corresponding numbers (Direct key function). You may not be able to select them on some sites.
- On the character entry screen allows you to enter the phonebook data, registered contents of your phone number and character strings information of the JAN or QR code read by Bar Code Reader. P408
- Depending on the pulldown menu, multiple items can be selected by pressing . After selecting items, press .
- The information set or entered using radio buttons, check boxes, pulldown menus, or character entry fields does not replace the contents of registered bookmarks or screen memos.

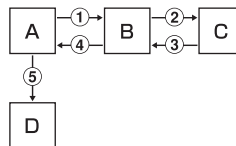
Flash movie displays

Flash movie allows expressive sites to be displayed.

- Flash movie is not displayed when **Not display** is set for **Image** in Image & Effect Setting.
- Some sites that use Flash movie may not be operated or displayed in the same way as normal sites.
- When saved as an image or screen memo, some Flash movies may appear different from those displayed on sites because part of the image is not saved.
- The sound of Flash movie set for the standby display or incoming image does not play.
- Even if Flash movie is displayed, it may not operate correctly. Also, you may not be able to save Flash movie that does not operate correctly.
- If an error occurs while playing Flash movie, the image cannot be saved.
- Even if  is not indicated, some Flash movies may be operated.
- To play Flash movie from the beginning, press   .
- Some Flash movies may have sound effects. The volume conforms to the ring alert volume for calls specified by Adjust Volume. To disable sound effects during site display, press    and set **Sound effect setting** to **OFF**.
- Even if Vibrator Setting is other than **OFF**, FOMA terminal does not vibrate when the sound of Flash movie plays.
- Note that some Flash movies may vibrate FOMA terminal during play even if Vibrator Setting is **OFF**.
- If no operation is performed for 30 seconds or longer while playing Flash movie, it is brought to a pause. To replay, press any of the following keys: , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , .

- Some Flash movies use the information of i-mode terminal. To allow use of the terminal information, set **Use phone information to Yes** in Image & Effect Setting. It is set to **Yes** by default. The information to be used is as follows:

- Battery level
- Received signal level
- Time information
- Ring volume for calls
- Selected language
- Model information



Displaying the previous or next page

FOMA terminal keeps a record of the last 20 pages displayed in a cache.

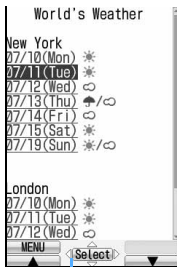
- Cache is a storage space in FOMA terminal that temporarily records the displayed pages. You can display the recorded pages by pressing without establishing communication. In case the cache is full or a page that is set by the site to load the latest page is displayed, FOMA terminal starts communication.
- This function is unavailable while being connected to the FirstPass center.

1 page before the current page



Indicates you can proceed to the next page.

Current page

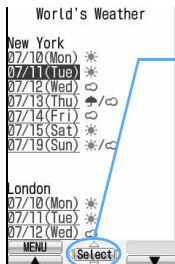


Indicates you can return to the previous page.

INFORMATION

- Records in the cache may be deleted when it is full. Pressing may not return to previous pages.
- Information such as entered characters or settings is not recorded.
- When you terminate i-mode, all records in the cache are deleted.
- The operation may differ when Flash movie is displayed.
- When you display page A → page B → page C in this order (①, ②), return to page A (③, ④), and proceed to page D (⑤), the display record of page A → page B → page C is deleted. You can return to page A from page D but you cannot then return to page B.

Scrolling the screen



When there are more rows or links not shown on the screen, and appear on the guide row to allow scrolling.

- Press to scroll the screen. Hold down the button to scroll continuously.
- Press or to scroll the screen by a page. Hold down the button to scroll the screen continuously by a page.

Reloading data

When sites cannot be displayed because of connection interruption, etc., you may be able to display the sites by reloading.

- Press during site display

Displaying the URL of current site

- Press during site display

INFORMATION

- In the URL history list, bookmark list, i-mode shortcut list, or screen memo list, press . Pressing and selecting **URL** can also display the URL.

Using My Menu

My Menu

You can register i-mode sites in My Menu, which allows you to quickly access the sites later.

- Up to 45 sites can be registered.
- You need the i-mode password to register sites. The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default.

- When you submit an application to a pay site registered in Menu List of iMenu, the site is automatically registered in My Menu.
- Only the sites listed in Menu List of iMenu can be registered in My Menu. However, some sites cannot be registered in My Menu. To register the site which cannot be registered or Internet websites, use Bookmark.

Registering sites in My Menu

1 Select マイメニュー登録 (Register) during site display

- Since the page structure differs depending on the site, press the key of the number corresponding to the item or select the applicable item.

2 Select the i-mode password entry field Enter the i-mode password

- The entered i-mode password is masked with “*”.

3 Select 決定 (OK)

Displaying sites from My Menu

1 Select 1 My Menu in iMenu (English) Select a site

Changing your current i-mode password

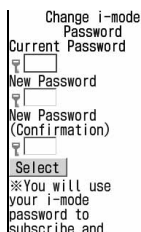
Change i-mode Password

Your i-mode password is required to register/delete sites in/from My Menu, subscribe to/cancel Message Service or i-mode pay sites, or make the mail settings. The i-mode password is set to “0000” by default; be sure to change it to your own number (4 digits). Be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

- The entered i-mode password is masked with “*”.
- Please note that, if you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

1 Select 4 Options in iMenu (English) Select 2 Change i-mode Password

2 Select Current Password field Enter the current i-mode password



3 Select New Password field Enter a new password

4 Select New Password (Confirmation) field Re-enter the password entered in Step 3

5 Select Select

- When there is an error or omission in the entered contents, an error screen is displayed. Select **Re-enter** and operate from Step 2 again.

Menu 231

Displaying Internet websites

Internet Connection

- Internet websites incompatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly. In that case, you can switch i-mode to Full Browser. ➡ P307

1 3 1

- From the next time, the last URL you connected to appears.

2 Enter a URL (up to 256 one-byte characters) Press

- Press repeatedly in the alphabet input mode to enter “/”, “.”, “-”, etc. To enter “http://www.”, “.co.jp”, “.ne.jp”, “.com” and “.html”, press repeatedly in the alphabet input mode.

INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press and select **Go to location** → **Enter URL**.
- A message is displayed when received data exceeds the maximum size for a page. Press to clear the message and display the received data.
- The operation procedures when displaying Internet website are the same as when displaying i-mode site.

Displaying sites using URL history URL History

The terminal keeps a record of the last 20 URLs you connected to. You can use this URL History to connect to Internet websites.

1

2 Select the URL of an Internet website

- A long URL is shown only partially. To check the URL, highlight it and press .

■ Editing the URL and connecting to it:

- 1 Highlight a URL in the URL history list ▶

- 2 Edit the URL ▶ 

■ Deleting URL history:

- 1 Highlight a URL in the URL history list ▶

- To delete all:    in the URL history list ▶ Enter the terminal security code

- 2 Select Yes

INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press  and select *Go to location* → *URL history*.
- When the number of recorded URLs exceeds 20, the oldest URL is overwritten.

Displaying characters correctly Character Encode

When characters are not displayed correctly on i-mode or Internet web sites, they may be displayed correctly by changing the character encode. Character encode is a generic term for the encoding scheme and structure developed for making characters available on computers.

1 Press during i-mode or Internet web site display

- Each press of these keys switches the character encode in the following order: *Auto switch* → SJIS → EUC → JIS → UTF8. Pressing the keys 5 times returns to the original encode. Pressing    returns to *Auto switch*.
- When you display an i-mode or Internet web site, *Auto switch* is set.
- Characters may not be displayed correctly even if you change character encodes.
- Changing the character encode while characters are displayed correctly may cause them not to be displayed correctly.

Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing

Bookmark

If you register your favorite sites or Internet websites in Bookmark, you can quickly display the pages by only selecting bookmarks.

- The maximum number of bookmarks that can be registered 
- You cannot register URLs longer than 256 one-byte characters in Bookmark.
- Some sites may not be registered in Bookmark.

Registering in the bookmark

1 Display an i-mode or Internet web site ▶ Select a folder to save the bookmark to

2 Enter a title name (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) ▶

- If you save the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed in the bookmark list.
- In the bookmark list, up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters of a title or URL are displayed and the remaining characters, if any, are omitted.

INFORMATION

- In the screen memo list, screen memo display, or URL history list, press  and select *Add bookmark*.
- When the number of bookmarks exceeds the maximum number, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite registered bookmarks. To register, select the bookmark to overwrite.

Menu 22

Displaying websites or i-mode sites from Bookmark

1

2 Select a folder

: No bookmark

: Bookmark present

3 Select a bookmark

- Checking the URL: Highlight a bookmark

▶ 

INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press  and select *Bookmark* → *Display*.

Connecting to sites using simple key operation

i-mode Shortcut

When you register a bookmark as i-mode shortcut, you can quickly display i-mode or Internet web site from the standby display.

- Up to 10 sites can be registered in total for i-mode and Full Browser.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a bookmark ▶

- If a bookmark unregistered as an i-mode shortcut has been highlighted, you can also register it by pressing .

- **Canceling:** Highlight a bookmark ▶  

3 Select the registration destination

- The icon numbers ( to ) correspond to the dial keys ( to ) used to display the site with i-mode Shortcut.
- In the bookmark list, the icon changes from  to  when registered.
- If the registered folder to save is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite it. When **Yes** is selected, it is overwritten.

Displaying a site using an i-mode shortcut

1 The dial key (to) ▶ Press

Operating from the list of i-mode shortcuts Menu 281

1 Press

The list of i-mode shortcuts is displayed.

-  is indicated for a bookmark of Full Browser.

- **Displaying a site:** Select a bookmark

- **Registering a site:**

① Highlight *Not recorded* ▶

- Registering a bookmark of Full Browser:
Highlight *Not recorded* ▶   

② Select a folder ▶ Select a bookmark

- **Canceling an i-mode shortcut:** Highlight a bookmark ▶   ▶ Select **Yes**

- **Checking the URL:** Highlight a bookmark ▶ 

Creating/deleting folders

Creating a folder

- Up to 20 folders can be registered.

1 ▶

- **Changing a folder name:** Highlight a folder in the folder list ▶  

- **Changing the order of folders:** Highlight a folder in the folder list ▶  ▶  or 

2 Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶ Press

Deleting folders

- When only one folder exists, it cannot be deleted.
- Deleting a folder also deletes the bookmark in the folder.

1 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select **Yes**

Moving/copying bookmarks

Bookmarks can be moved to the folders or copied to the miniSD memory card.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a bookmark ▶

- **Moving selected bookmarks:**    ▶ Select bookmarks ▶ 

- **Copying a bookmark to the miniSD memory card:** ▶ Highlight a bookmark ▶     ▶ Select **Yes**

- **Copying all bookmarks to the miniSD memory card (backup):**

①

② Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select **Yes**

3 Select a folder to move the bookmark to

Renaming bookmark titles

- 1 ► **Select a folder** ► **Highlight a bookmark** ► **Press**

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 of "Registering in the bookmark". ➡P205

Deleting bookmarks

- 1 ► **Select a folder**
 - **Deleting all bookmarks:** on the folder list ► **Enter the terminal security code** ► **Go to Step 3**
- 2 **Highlight a bookmark** ►
 - **Deleting selected bookmarks:** ► **Select bookmarks** ►
 - **Deleting all bookmarks in the folder:** ► **Enter the terminal security code**
- 3 **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

- If you delete an i-mode shortcut bookmark, i-mode Shortcut is also canceled.

Sorting bookmarks

Sort

Bookmarks in the list are temporally sorted. When you quit the display, **By access date** returns.

- All the folders are the target of sorting.
- You can select from **By access date**, **By title**, **By URL** or **By access frequency**.

Default **By access date**

- 1 ► **Select a folder** ► ► **Press any of** to

INFORMATION

- When **By title** is set, if one-byte, two-byte, alphabetic, and kanji characters and URLs are mixed in titles, the result may not be in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Saving site contents

Screen Memo

Saving screen memos

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡P38
- The maximum size of a screen memo that can be saved is 100 Kbytes including images, on the screen, etc.

- 1 **Display a site** ►

- 2 **Enter a title name (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)** ► **Press**

- When you save the screen memo without entering a title, **No title** is displayed in the screen memo list.
- In the Screen Memo list, up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters of a title are displayed and the remaining characters, if any, are omitted.

INFORMATION

- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum allowable number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite saved screen memos. Select the screen memos to overwrite. The protected screen memos are not overwritten.

Menu 24

Displaying screen memos

- 1

- 2 **Select a screen memo**

: Ordinary screen memo

: Protected screen memo

- The available operations are the same as on site displays, with a few exceptions. ➡P202

INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press and select **Screen memo** → **Display**. At this time, if the character encode has been changed, it is reset to **Auto switch** when returning to the site from the displayed screen memo.
- To play Flash movie again during screen memo display, press and select **Display** → **Retry**.

Renaming screen memo titles

- 1   ► **Highlight a screen memo** ► Press 

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 of "Saving screen memos".

INFORMATION

- During screen memo display, press  and select **Rename title**.

Protecting screen memos

- The maximum number of items that can be protected 

- 1  
 - 2 **Highlight a screen memo** ► Press   
The screen memo is protected and the icon changes from  to .
• To cancel protection: Highlight a screen memo ►   
- **Protecting selected screen memos:**
   ► **Select screen memos** ► 
 - **Canceling protection of selected screen memos:**    ► **Select screen memos** ► 
 - **Canceling protection of all screen memos:**
  

INFORMATION

- During screen memo display, press  and select **Protect** or **Release**.

Deleting screen memos

- Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

- 1  
- 2 **Highlight a screen memo** ►   
■ **Deleting selected screen memos:**
   ► **Select screen memos** ► 
■ **Deleting all screen memos:**    ►
Enter the terminal security code
- 3 **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

- During screen memo display, press  and select **Delete**.

Downloading images from sites

Save Image

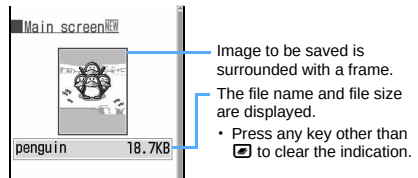
Images or frames can be downloaded and saved from the site. The saved images can be viewed from **Image** (My Picture) or set for the standby display.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved 
- The maximum size of an image that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.
- Images in GIF, JPEG or Flash format can be saved.

Example Downloading an image from a site

- 1 **Display a site** ►   
■ **Saving the background image on site:**
Display a site ►    ► **Go to Step 3**

2 Select an image



3 Select each item to set

- For images that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (file restriction set to **File restricted**), you can change the display name only.

Display name :

36 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

File name :

36 characters including one-byte alphanumeric, ".", "-", and "_" can be entered. However, "." character cannot be used for the first character of file name.

Comment :

100 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

Use as frame :

Sets whether to enable an image to be pasted as a frame image.

- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 240 x 400 or 352 x 288 cannot be changed to **Yes**.

Use as stamp :

Sets whether to enable an image to be pasted as a stamp image.

- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 240 x 400 cannot be changed to **Yes**.

File restriction :

When you send an image to another mobile phone via mail attachment, you can set whether to restrict that image from being sent again from the received party's mobile phone to any other mobile phone.

- The image files downloaded from sites cannot be changed.
- Some items may not be available for setting depending on the image file.
- Press  to display the menu list for setting images for the standby display, etc. 

4 ▶ Select the folder to save the image to

INFORMATION

- Some images may not be displayed correctly.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save or the maximum allowable number is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the saved images. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete images. Before deletion, an image can be displayed by pressing  on the image list and detail information on the image can be displayed by pressing .
- When displaying a site containing an image wider than the display, the image will be reduced.

Downloading melodies from sites

i-melody

Your terminal can download melodies from sites and play and save them (compatible with i-melody). The saved melodies can be played from **Melody** or used as ring tone.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved 
- The maximum size of a melody that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.
- Melodies in the SMF and MFi formats can be saved.

1 Display a site ▶ Select a melody

- Press  to stop downloading.

2 Select Save

- To play the melody: Select **Play**
- To cancel saving: Select **Back** ▶ Select **No**

3 Enter a display name (up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters) ▶ Press

The melody is saved in the **i-mode** folder of **Melody**. 

INFORMATION

- Some melodies may not play correctly.
- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum allowable number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved melodies. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the melodies. Before deletion, you can play a melody by pressing  on the melody list and view detail information on the melody by pressing .

Downloading PDF data from sites

You can download PDF data from sites and display and save them.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved 
- The maximum size of a PDF data file that can be saved is 2 Mbytes.
- Note that downloading large PDF data may incur high packet communication fees.

1 Display a site ▶ Select PDF data

The data is downloaded and then displayed on the PDF compatible viewer. 

- Press  to stop downloading.
- When a password is set for the PDF data, enter the password and press . The entered password is masked with " * ".

2

- If the same PDF data already exists, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite it, depending on the data. Select **Yes** to overwrite.

3 Enter a display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters) ► Press

The PDF data is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *My documents*. ►P354

- When  is displayed in the guide row, press  and press  to save the data to the miniSD memory card. The current folder to save can be checked by the display on the task bar.
- If not all pages are downloaded, the downloaded part is saved.

INFORMATION

- When you attempt to download PDF data exceeding 2 Mbytes, a message appears indicating that the data exceeds the download size limit and the download fails.
- When the data size is unknown, the PDF data cannot be downloaded.
- When you attempt to download the PDF data for which the total size of i-mode bookmarks or marks is larger than 100 Kbytes is downloaded, a message appears indicating that the data exceeds the download size limit and the download fails.
- When a different i-mode bookmark or mark is set for the PDF data that you are downloading again, a new i-mode bookmark or mark is added. However, when the number of registered i-mode bookmarks or marks reaches 10, a message appears indicating that the limit is reached. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete i-mode bookmarks or marks until the number is below the limit.
- If you stop downloading or the network connection breaks while downloading the PDF data, the data is saved incompletely. You can download it again by selecting the data saved in *My Documents*. Some PDF data may not be downloaded again.
- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum allowable number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete PDF data saved in FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete. The communication will be disconnected when you delete the PDF data on the miniSD memory card. Before deletion, you can view detail information on the data by pressing  on the data list.
- When you download PDF data exceeding 500 Kbytes in size, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download. To download such data, select **Yes**.
- When the PDF data is downloaded partly, you can download the rest of it by pressing   on the PDF data display.

Downloading dictionaries from sites

You can download dictionaries from sites and save them.

- Up to 10 items can be saved
- The maximum size of a dictionary that can be saved is 32 Kbytes.
- Using the downloaded dictionary ►P412

1 Display a site ► Select a dictionary

- Press  to stop downloading

2 Select **Save**

- To cancel saving: Select **Back** ► Select **No**

3 Press

Download a dictionary from sites and save it.

INFORMATION

- When the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the dictionary cannot be saved. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete any of the saved dictionaries.

Downloading Chara-den from sites

You can download Chara-den characters from sites and save them.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ►P38
- The maximum size of a Chara-den image that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.

1 Display a site ► Select Chara-den

- Press  to stop downloading.

2 Select **Save**

- To check the Chara-den: Select **Display**
- To cancel saving: Select **Back** ► Select **No**

3 Select each item to set

Display name :

Up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

Comment :

Up to 100 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

4 Press

The Chara-den is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *Chara-den*. ➡P327

INFORMATION

- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum allowable number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved Chara-den. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete. Before deletion, Chara-den can be displayed by pressing  on the Chara-den list and detail information can be viewed by pressing .
- If preinstalled Chara-den has been deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site, My D-style. ➡P426

Useful functions of i-mode

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

When phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs are displayed on the screen (site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.), select them to make voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls (Phone To/AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To), or connect to i-mode or Internet web sites (Web To).

- Some functions may not be available depending on i-mode or Internet web sites.

1 Display a site ▶ Select a phone number, mail address, or URL

- You can select only highlighted phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs.

■ Phone To (AV Phone To):

The Call Option screen appears.

- ① Set dialing conditions ➡P58
- ②  ▶ Select Yes

■ Mail To:

The mail composition screen with the selected mail address set as the receiver is displayed.

① Compose and send i-mode Mail

- When multiple addresses are listed with no space in between, the Mail To function may not be available.

■ Web To:

You are connected to the selected i-mode or Internet web site.

Copying the URL

Copy the URL of the site or screen memo being displayed. The copied text can be pasted in the entry fields on the mail composition screen, phonebook registration screen, etc.

- The copied text is recorded until the power of FOMA terminal is turned off. You can paste it in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be recorded. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example Copying the URL of current site

1 Display the URL of a site ▶

- Displaying the URL ➡P203

2 Select the start position of the copying range ▶ Select the end position

- Press   to select all the text.
- Press  to specify the start position again.
- Press  or  after specifying the start position to move the cursor to the beginning or end of the text.

3 Display a character entry screen ▶ Paste the copied text

INFORMATION

- In the URL history list, i-mode shortcuts, or screen memo list, press  and select **Copy URL**. In the bookmark list, press  and select **Enter URL/Copy URL** → **Copy URL**. When you operate from any of these screens, the whole URL is copied.
- To paste the URL of the current site to mail, press  during site display and select **Compose message**. The mail composition screen is displayed with the URL of the site pasted in the message text.

Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook

Add to Phonebook

When phone numbers or mail addresses are displayed on the screen (site, screen memo or Message R/F), you can register them in the phonebook.

You can register a new entry or add data to an existing entry.

- You may be able to register the data other than displayed items depending on the sites.
- The previously registered data may be changed when you add to an existing entry. Confirm the data on the phonebook edit screen.

Example Registering a new phone number displayed on the site screen

1 Display a site ► Highlight a phone number

- You can register only highlighted phone numbers or mail addresses.

2

- To add to an existing entry:   

3 or ► Register the name, etc. ◀P107, P110

- To add the data to the registered phonebook data:  or  ► Select the party ► Modify the data ◀P118

INFORMATION

- During screen memo display, press  and select **Phonebook** → **Add to phonebook** or **Update phonebook**, and on the Message R/F view screen, press  and select **Record** → **Add to phonebook** or **Update phonebook**.

Registering URLs in the phonebook

Add URLs to the phonebook from the bookmark list or screen memo list. You can register a new entry or add data to an existing entry.

- The registered data may be changed when you update an existing entry. Confirm the data on the phonebook edit screen.

Example Registering a URL from the bookmark list

1 ► Select a folder

2 Highlight a bookmark ►

- To add to an existing phonebook entry: Highlight a bookmark ►   

3 Register the name, etc. ◀P107, P110

- To add the data to the registered phonebook data: Select the party ► Modify the data ◀P118

INFORMATION

- In the screen memo list, press  and select **Phonebook** → **Add to phonebook** or **Update phonebook**.
- When displayed from a site screen, the URL cannot be saved.

Making i-mode settings

i-mode Setting

Menu 282

Setting the connection timeout

Connection Timeout Setting

Set the timeout for connection to the i-mode Center. If a connection is not established correctly, it is automatically interrupted after the set period of time and you do not need to perform any key operation.

Default 60 seconds

1 ► Press any of to

INFORMATION

- Even if you set the connection timeout to **Unlimited**, a connection with the i-mode Center may be interrupted due to poor signal conditions, etc.

Menu 288

Changing the host from i-mode (ISP Connection Communication)

Host Selection

You do not have to change the settings when using DoCoMo i-mode service.

Default i-mode(UIM)

■ About ISP connection communication

You can connect to various providers (ISPs) by changing the host of i-mode terminal of DoCoMo. Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP connection communication.

- Please note that packet communication fee for connection to the ISP will not be included in the Pake Houdai service.
- You do not need to additionally subscribe to DoCoMo.

■ About provider subscription

- You need to separately subscribe to a provider to use the ISP connection communication. Contact the provider for details on services (site and Internet connection, mail function, etc.) and subscription.
- Information fee may be charged for some services, but DoCoMo will never charge you for it.
- Your phone number may be sent to the provider for some sites you visit.
- Up to 10 hosts can be registered.
- You cannot make or change the host settings during communication.

1

2 Highlight one from *User host1* to *10*

▶ Enter the terminal security code

■ Restoring the setting for using i-mode:

Select *i-mode (UIM)* ▶ Go to Step 5

■ Changing to the previously set host:

Select a host ▶ Go to Step 5

3 Select each item to set

Host name :

Up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters can be entered.

Access point :

Up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Host address :

Up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Host address2 :

Up to 30 one byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

- *Host address2* is the host of i-channel. 

• You can delete all contents entered by pressing .

4 Select the edited host

5 Press

INFORMATION

- If you change the host, the i-channel information will no longer be displayed as a ticker on the standby display. When the i-channel information is automatically updated or when you press  on the standby display to show the channel list, the latest information is received and displayed as a ticker on the standby display.

Menu 286

Setting image display and sound effects

Image & Effect Setting

You can set image display and sound effects (when playing Flash movie) on a site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.

Default Image, Animation: Display
Use phone information: Yes
Sound effect setting: ON

1

2 Select each item to set

Image :

Specifies whether to display images.

- When *Not display* is set, images, Flash movie or animation are not displayed and  is displayed instead. Also, *Animation* and *Use phone information* cannot be set.

Animation :

Specifies whether to play animation.

- When *Not display* is set, the first frame of animation is displayed.

Use phone information :

Specifies whether to use the data saved in FOMA terminal when displaying Flash movie.

Sound effect setting :

Specifies whether to play the beep sound of Flash movie.

3 Press

INFORMATION

- On the site screen or screen memo view screen, press  and select *Display* → *Set image & effect*.
- Press  on the i-channel list and select *Sound effect setting* to set whether to play beep sound for Flash movie.
- When *Not display* is set for *Image*, the images attached to i-mode Mail using the Web To function are not displayed or saved.
- Even if *Not display* is set for *Animation*, Flash movie plays.
- The setting for *Image* does not apply to the images attached as attachment or images inserted in the text of Message R/F. In addition, *ON/OFF* of *Sound effect setting* does not have effect on Message R/F, either.
- When *Yes* is set for *Use phone information*, information such as the battery level, received signal level, time, ring volume for calls, selected language, and terminal model may be sent to IPs via the Internet, which may give the information to third parties.

Menu 283

Setting the display lighting for use during site display

Display Light

You can set the lighting for a site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.

- This setting is also reflected to *i-mode session* of *Display light time* of Display Light Setting. 

Default Terminal setting

1 ▶ Press or

Terminal setting :

The display light conforms to the setting of *Normal use* of *Display light time* of the Display Light setting.

Always ON :

The display always lights up.

INFORMATION

- On the site screen or screen memo view screen, press  and select *Display* → *Set lighting*.

When Message R/F is received

Receive Message R/F

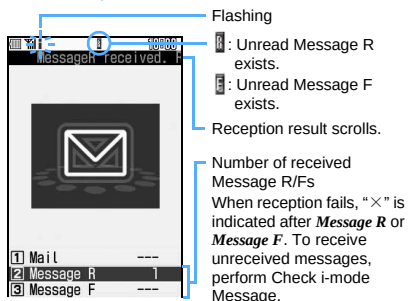
When Message R/F is received, you are informed by the screen display, ring alert, vibrator, and/or the Enter key. The received Message R/F is saved in FOMA terminal.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
P38

1 A Message R/F is received



Reception completed



Reception result screen

and or flash and **Receiving messages...** is displayed.

When reception is completed, the Message R/F ring alert sounds, the Enter key lights/flashes, and the reception result screen is displayed.

- Press on the receiving screen to stop reception.
- The reception result screen is displayed for about 15 seconds if you do not press any key or until the ring tone stops if ring time is set to 15 seconds or longer in Message Alert. When Auto-display is set, the contents of received Message R/F are displayed before the display returns to the previously displayed screen. To return to the previous screen immediately, press .

INFORMATION

- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum allowable number of saved items is exceeded, the received Message R/Fs except unread ones will be overwritten, oldest first. Be sure to protect Message R/F you want to keep. P216
- If the message cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F, Message R/F reception is stopped. (red) or (red) is indicated on the screen (P29). To receive new messages, display unread Message R/Fs (P215), delete unnecessary Message R/Fs (P216) or cancel message protection (P216) beforehand.
- The receiving screen or reception result screen will not be displayed depending on Display Priority. P260
- Incoming Message R/F is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases:
 - The power is off
 - During a videophone call
 - During a PushTalk call
 - In Self Mode on
 - When reception fails
 - While being out of service area
 - While receiving SMS
 - During infrared communication
 - Connecting to the Data Center
 - While Omakase Lock is on
 - While connecting to the FirstPass center
 - When the storage is filled with unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F
- When FOMA terminal receives Message R/F, the Message R/F in the i-mode Center is deleted.
- If there are unreceived Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center, (P29) is indicated. However, the icon may not be displayed even when there are Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be stored in the i-mode Center (P199) is reached, the icon changes to (P29).

Displaying newly-received Message R/F

1 (2) or (3) on the reception result screen



- The received Message R is saved in **Message R** and the received Message F is saved in **Message F**.

2 Select a Message R/F

- When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off. P259
- However, when a Message R/F is displayed automatically, it does not play.
- Viewing the Message R/F screen P215

Displaying Message R/F automatically

Auto-display

Sets whether to automatically open and display Message R/Fs for about 15 seconds upon reception. In addition, either one of Message R/F or Message R/F is set.

You can set the priority of messages to be displayed.

Default MessageR preferred

1 Press any of to

INFORMATION

- Auto-display is available only from the standby display. When you display a mail or Message R/F from the reception result screen or when you receive a Message R/F using Check i-mode Message, Auto-display is not performed.
- When Auto-display is set, the contents of received Message R/F are automatically displayed when the Message R/F reception result screen returns to the screen that was displayed prior to reception. If you do not press any key during Auto-display, the Message R/F is saved as unread.

Setting operations for incoming Message R/F

Message Alert

- This setting is also reflected to Sound Setting, Light Alert Setting and Vibrator Setting.

Default Ring alert: Melody/メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C)
Light alert: Glimmer/Lemon Vibrate alert: OFF
Ring time (sec): 10

Example Setting operations for incoming Message R

1

■ Setting operations for incoming Message F:

2 Select each item to set

Ring alert:

Select *Melody* or *Movie ringtone* and then select a melody or video/i-motion.

- When **OFF** is selected, the ring tone does not sound.
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion

Light alert:

Sets the lighting pattern and color of the Enter key for incoming messages.

- When you set the lighting pattern to *Sync melody* or **OFF**, the lighting color cannot be set.

Vibrate alert:

Sets the vibration of incoming messages.

Ring time (sec):

Sets the duration of ring tone (1 to 30 seconds).

3 Press

INFORMATION

- If you set *Sync melody* for *Light alert* or *Vibrate alert*, lighting or vibrator may not operate depending on the melody.

Displaying saved Message R/F

Message R/Message F

- If unread Message R/F exists, or is displayed on the standby display.

Example Displaying Message R

1

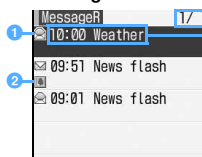
■ Displaying Message F:

2 Select a Message R

Reading the Message R/F list/view screen

Reading Message F is the same as that of Message R.

■ Message R/F list screen

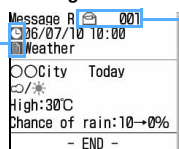


Page No./total number
Reception date/time and subject

- In the reception date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.

1 : Unread : Read : Protected
2 : Image attached : Melody attached
 : ToruCa attached : Multiple files attached

■ Message R/F view screen



Status icon, attachment icon (only when there is an attachment), Message R/F number

: Reception date/time : Subject

- You can display the previous/next Message R/F by pressing .

- When a file is attached, its icon, file name, file size, etc. are displayed on the Message R/F view screen.
 - Description of image icons ➡P243
 - Description of melody icons ➡P245
 - Description of ToruCa icons ➡P246
- When an image is inserted in the message, the image is displayed.
If you could not receive the image, an icon is displayed. The icon is the same as when you cannot display images on a site. ➡P201

Displaying and saving the attached file

Display or save images attached to Message R/F or ToruCa, or play or save melodies.

Example Saving an attached file

- 1 **Display the Message R/F list**
 - 2 **Select a Message R/F**
 - 3 **Highlight the file name of the attached file**
▶   
 - For the images, follow the procedure from Step 3 of "Downloading images from sites". ➡P208
 - For the melodies, follow the procedure from Step 3 of "Downloading melodies from sites". ➡P209
- **Displaying and playing: Select the file name**
 - For the images, displaying/not displaying is switched.
 - **Displaying the title: Highlight the file name**
▶   
 - For the images, it cannot be operated.

INFORMATION

- To save the image inserted in the text or the background image, press  and select **Save image** → **Select image** or **Save Background**, and then select an image.

Protecting Message R/F

Protect Message

- The maximum number of items that can be protected ➡P38
- Unread Message R/F cannot be protected.

- 1 **Display the Message R/F list**

- 2 **Highlight a Message R/F** ▶ **Press**

The Message R/F is protected and the icon changes from  to .

- To cancel protection: Highlight a Message R/F ▶

- **Protecting selected Message R/Fs:**

   ▶ **Select Message R/Fs** ▶ 

- **Canceling protection of selected Message R/Fs:**    ▶ **Select Message R/Fs** ▶ 

- **Canceling protection of all Message R/Fs:**

INFORMATION

- On the Message R/F view screen, press  and select **Protect** or **Release**.

Deleting Message R/F

Delete Message

- Protected Message R/Fs cannot be deleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

- 1 **Display the Message R/F list**

- 2 **Highlight a Message R/F** ▶   

- **Deleting only read Message R/Fs:**

- **Deleting selected Message R/Fs:**

   ▶ **Select Message R/Fs** ▶ 

- **Deleting all Message R/Fs:**    ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

- 3 **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

- On the Message R/F view screen, press  and select **Delete**.

Selecting the type of Message R/F to display

Display by Type

Display only the specified type of Message R/F temporarily on the Message R/F list. When displaying is ended, **Display all** returns.

- You can select from **Display all**, **Display unread only**, **Display read only**, or **Display protected**.

- 1 **Display the Message R/F list** ▶  
▶ **Press any of**  **to** 

- When you select **Display read only**, the protected Message R/F is not displayed.

Operating certificates

Perform the operation of certificates required for the SSL communication.

Menu 2851

Displaying certificates and setting certificate validity/invalidity

Certificate Setting

Default all valid

Displaying a certificate

- User certificate is displayed after it has been downloaded.
- When the blue UIM is inserted in FOMA terminal, **DoCoMo Cert** or **User Certificate** is not displayed.

1 ▶ Select a certificate

CA Certificate :

It is a certificate issued by the certifier. It is stored in FOMA terminal by default.

DoCoMo Cert :

It is a certificate required for connecting to the FirstPass center and FirstPass compatible sites. It is saved in the UIM in advance.

User Certificate :

It is a certificate required for connecting to FirstPass compatible sites. You request the FirstPass center to issue the certificate and download. The downloaded certificate is saved in the UIM.

INFORMATION

- Certificate contents displayed:

User

CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number

O= : (Organization) Company name, etc.

C= : (Country) Country name

Issued by

CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number

OU= : (Organization Unit) Departments or other positions in the company

O= : (Organization) Company name, etc.

Expiration date

Serial number

- When a certificate has no information on the user, issuer and/or expiration date, only the item names are displayed.

Setting validity/invalidity of certificate

1

2 Highlight a certificate ▶

- Each press switches **On/Off**.

3 Press

The checked certificate is set as valid.

INFORMATION

- **DoCoMo Cert2** cannot be disabled.
- The settings for **DoCoMo Cert** and **User Certificate** are saved in the UIM.

Menu 2852

Setting FirstPass

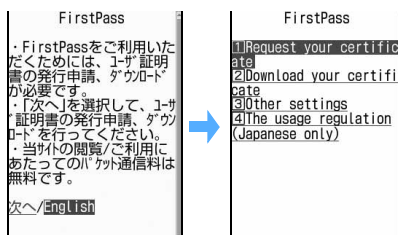
Certificate Download

Connect to the FirstPass center to request a user certificate and download it.

- The screens and operations displayed by the FirstPass center may be changed.
- Mail cannot be sent/received and Message R/F cannot be received while being connected to the FirstPass center.

1

2 Select English ▶ Select Request your certificate



■ Invalidating the issued certificate:

- 1 Select English ▶ Select  Other settings
- 2 Select  Revoke your certificate ▶ Select Yes
- 3 Enter the PIN2 code ▶ Select Continue
- 4 Select Continue
- 5 Select Continue

3 Select Continue

```
FirstPass
You have requested a certificate.
Refer to the usage regulation for more details.
Continue/Menu
```

4 Enter the PIN2 code

- If the PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the request is canceled.

5 Select Download ▶ Select Continue

```
FirstPass
Requesting a certificate is completed.
Download the certificate.
Download/Menu
```

➔

```
OU=DoCoMo Secure Network
Secondary 1
O=NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
C=JP
Issuer:
OU=DoCoMo Secure Network
Secondary 1
O=NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
C=JP
Expiration:
XXXX/XX/XX XX:XX:XX
Serial Number:
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
XXXXXXXXXX
Continue/Menu
```

- The downloaded user certificate is added to the certificate list. ▶P217

INFORMATION

- Packet communication fee is not charged for connection to the FirstPass center.
- The user certificate certifies that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. Downloaded user certificate is saved on the UIM and it can be used in FirstPass compatible sites.
- If you install FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM to your PC, you can connect FOMA terminal to the PC and perform communication using FirstPass. See "FirstPassManual" in the attached CD-ROM for details. To view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website (communication fee is required separately for downloading). See the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Using FirstPass allows client authentication, in which a site and the FOMA terminal exchange and verify each other's certificate for authenticating each other.
- FirstPass can be used for Internet communication using FOMA terminal and for Internet communication using the FOMA terminal that is connected to a PC. To use FirstPass with a PC, FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM is needed.
- When requesting a user certificate, be sure to read FirstPass usage regulation displayed on the screen and accept the terms and conditions.
- Use of a user certificate requires entry of the PIN2 code.
- All operations made after the entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as operations you made. Use abundance of caution not to let the UIM or PIN2 code used by any third party.
- If the UIM is lost or stolen, you can contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual to have the user certificate nullified.
- Under no circumstances shall DoCoMo have any obligation or be held responsible for sites and information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Any issue that arises must be settled between you and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.
- Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier provides any guarantee for security, etc. in use of FirstPass or SSL. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.

Menu 2853

Changing the certificate host

Certificate Host

If you use services other than FirstPass, set the connection destination. If you change this setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass center.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

Default DoCoMo

1    

2 Select **HOST** field ▶ 

- To restore settings for connecting to FirstPass:
Select **Host** field ▶  ▶ Go to Step 5

3 Select **User host** field ▶ Enter the connection destination (up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters)

4 Select **User host URL** field ▶ Enter the URL (up to 100 one-byte alphanumeric characters)

5 Press 

i-motion

Images or sounds downloaded and saved from i-mode or Internet website can be played as “i-motion” or can be set for Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion). The vocals of your favorite singers can be used as ring tone as well as melodies (some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone). Generally, there are 2 types of i-motion as follows. You cannot change or select the data type when downloading the data.

■ Normal type (can be saved*1)

Playing action	Description
Replay while downloading data (up to 500 KB)	The i-motion file is played while the data is being downloaded. After downloading data is completed, the i-motion can be operated in the same way as the i-motion replayed after downloading all data.
Replay after downloading data (up to 500 KB)	The i-motion file is played after downloading all data.

*1 Some i-motion cannot be saved.

■ Streaming type (cannot be saved)

Playing action	Description
Replay while downloading data (up to 2 MB)	The i-motion file is played while the data is being downloaded. The i-motion data is deleted after playback is completed and cannot be stored in FOMA terminal.

Downloading i-motion from sites

- The maximum number of items that can be protected  P38

1 Display a site ▶ Select i-motion

A message indicating the completion appears when downloading i-motion is finished.

- When streaming i-motion is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to replay. Select **Yes** to replay with downloading i-motion. The message indicating the completion of downloading is displayed when the i-motion finishes playing, but streaming i-motion cannot be saved.
- When trying to download streaming i-motion if **i-motion type setting** in i-motion Setting is set to **Normal type**, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to change the setting. Select **Yes** to change the setting to **Norm·Streaming** so that you can download the streaming i-motion. 

■ i-motion replayed while the data is being downloaded:

i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded. After finishing the replay, the operation is the same as the i-motion replayed after downloading data.



Amount of received data/total data

- During playback, the following operations are enabled:
 - ⏸ : Pause/play (only normal type)
 - 🔊 : Adjust volume
 - ⏹ : Interrupt (streaming type)
Stop (normal type; press ⏸ to play from the beginning.)
 - ⓘ : Display detail information
- Even if you pause or stop playing, the data reception continues.
- When the operation is interrupted, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select **Yes** to interrupt.
- When **Auto replay setting** in i-motion Setting is set to **Auto Play OFF**, i-motion is not played automatically.

■ i-motion played after downloading data:

i-motion is played automatically when downloading is completed.



- During playback, the following operations are enabled:
 - ⏸ : Pause/replay
 - 🔊 : Adjust volume
 - ⏩ : Play at fast speed
 - ⏮ : Rewind and play
 - ⏹ : Stop (the message is displayed indicating the completion of downloading.)
 - ⓘ : Display detail information
- When **Auto replay setting** in i-motion Setting is set to **Auto Play OFF**, i-motion is not played automatically.

2 Select Save

- Streaming i-motion cannot be saved.
- To play i-motion again: Select **Play**
- To display detail information: Select **File property**
- To cancel saving: Select **Back** ▶ Select **No**

3 Enter a display name (up to 36 one- or two-byte characters) ▶ Press ⓘ

The downloaded i-motion is saved in the **i-mode** folder of **i-motion**.

- When  is displayed in the guide row, press ⓘ and press ⓘ to save in the miniSD memory card. The saved i-motion file is stored in the Home folder for i-motion compatible with Movable Contents. ⚡P339
- The existing saving destination is checked by the display on the task bar.

■ When a link is set within ticker stream of downloaded i-motion:

If a link such as a phone number, a mail address, or a site is set in a ticker, you can use Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To, and Web To after playback is finished or interrupted. For Phone To and AV Phone To, the Call Option screen appears. For Mail To and Web To, a confirmation screen is displayed.

- When the link type is Phone To (AV Phone To), pressing ⓘ allows you to add phone numbers to the phonebook. Selecting **Add to phonebook** allows you to add mail addresses to the phonebook when the link type is Mail To.
- If no i-motion is saved, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save it.
- When there are two or more link items, only one will be effective. The item which is to become effective depends on i-motion data.

■ Setting for the standby display: ⓘ ⓘ ▶ Select Yes

- If zooming is available, select **Yes (Same size)** to maintain the image size or select **Yes (Large size)** to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i-a ppli standby display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it.

- **Registering a new phonebook entry:** ▶ **Set the name, etc. and register**

- **Adding to an existing phonebook entry:** ▶ **Select a party** ▶ **Confirm the contents and register**

- If video/i-motion is already set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.

- **Setting as Movie ringtone:** ▶ to

- **Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail):**
 ▶ or ▶ **Select a party**
after confirming the contents

- When a ring alert has been set, it will be replaced by the selected video/i-motion.
- For entering the phonebook No., follow Step 4 of "Editing saved phonebook entries". ➡ P118

- **Setting as incoming image (voice call, videophone call):** ▶ or
- When an incoming image has been set, it will be replaced by the selected video/i-motion.

INFORMATION

- Precautions of setting data in the standby display and phonebook ➡ P322
- Only the i-motion in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format can be downloaded and played. i-motion in ASF format cannot be downloaded and played.
- The replay restrictions such as number of replayable times or expiration of playback may be set for i-motion files.
- When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, replay may be temporarily stopped in wait for data reception. The replay is automatically resumed when data reception is restarted.
- When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, i-motion may become unable to play or may be blurred depending on radio wave conditions. In such a case, the i-motion can be replayed after the completion of downloading if the data is normally received. However, some i-motion files may allow downloading of data but may not be replayed correctly.
- Even for the type of i-motion which is replayed while the data is being downloaded, it may not be played during downloading depending on the status of sites.
- When i-motion data is improper, reception of i-motion may be canceled.
- When you use i-motion from i-appli and attempt to save it, sometimes it cannot be saved even if **Ring alert** and **Receive display** are set to **Available** in the detail information. In this case you cannot set the i-motion as the ring alert or incoming image.

- When there is an incoming call in case streaming i-motion is being played while downloading or when the date and time specified by Alarm Clock or schedule arrives, downloading is interrupted and playing is stopped. When streaming i-motion is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to replay it.
- When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete data saved in FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the saved video/i-motion. The communication will be disconnected when you delete the data on the miniSD memory card. Before deleting, you can play video/i-motion by pressing on the video/i-motion list or view the detail information about it by pressing .

Menu 287

Setting auto play and the type of i-motion to be downloaded

i-motion Setting

Set whether or not to play i-motion files automatically and the i-motion type to be downloaded.

Default **Auto replay setting: Auto Play ON**
i-motion type setting: Normal type

1

2 Select each item to set

Auto replay setting :

Sets whether to automatically play normal type i-motion during or after downloading.

- Even when **Auto Play OFF** is set, i-motion can be played by selecting **Play** after downloading i-motion.
- Streaming type i-motion is automatically played regardless of the auto play setting.

i-motion type setting :

Sets the type of i-motion to be downloaded.

- When replaying streaming type i-motion, select **Norm·Streaming**.

3 Press

INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press  and select **Display** → *i-motion settings*.

Mai

FOMA terminal mail function	224
Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-mail	
Composing and sending i-mode Mail	Compose Message 228
Composing and sending Deco-mail	Deco-mail 230
Attaching files	Attachment 234
Using mail templates	236
Saving i-mode Mail for sending later	Save Mail 238
Composing mail quickly	Quick Mail 239
Receiving and handling i-mode Mail	
Receiving i-mode Mail	Mail Auto Receive 239
Selecting i-mode Mail to receive	Receive Option 240
Checking for i-mode Mail	Check i-mode Message 241
Replying to received i-mode Mail	Reply to Mail 241
Forwarding received i-mode Mail	Forward Mail 242
Displaying and saving attached images	Display/Save Image 243
Playing and saving i-motion from i-motion Mail	244
Playing and saving melodies from i-mode Mail	Play/Save Melody 245
Displaying and saving ToruCa from i-mode Mail	245
Deleting attachments	Delete Attachment 246
Using the mail box	
Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox	Inbox/Outbox 246
Useful functions of mail	253
Saving mail in the Data Center	Data Security Service 254
Setting mail	
Setting mail functions of FOMA terminal	Mail Setting 255
Using chat mail	
Composing and sending chat mail	Chat Mail 261
Using SMS (Short Message)	
Composing and sending SMS	Compose SMS 264
When SMS is received	Receive SMS 265
Checking for SMS	Check SMS 266
Making SMS settings	SMS Setting 266
Saving SMS to the UIM	Save SMS to UIM 267

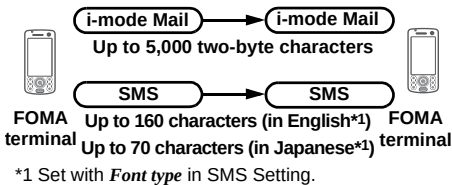
FOMA terminal mail function

FOMA terminal provides 2 mail functions: i-mode Mail and SMS.

- To use i-mode Mail, an i-mode subscription is required.
- You can use SMS without an i-mode subscription.

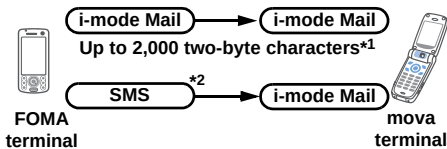
Sending and receiving mail

FOMA terminal → FOMA terminal



FOMA terminal → mova terminal

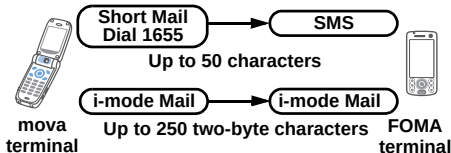
SMS sent from a FOMA terminal is received by a mova terminal as i-mode Mail.



- *1 The limit varies by the settings of a mova terminal.
- *2 When you set the delivered report to **Request** for SMS setting, SMS cannot be sent to the mova terminal.

mova terminal → FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal receives Short Mail sent from mova terminal as one SMS message.



- Short Mail Service allows the exchange of text messages between DoCoMo mobile phones.

i-mode Mail

i-mode subscribers can send and receive mail to and from other i-mode terminals (including mova terminal) or via Internet e-mail.

The mail address for i-mode subscribers is constructed as follows:

When you newly subscribe to i-mode

The part of the address preceding the @ symbol is a combination of random alphanumeric characters. Be sure to check your mail address after subscribing to i-mode.

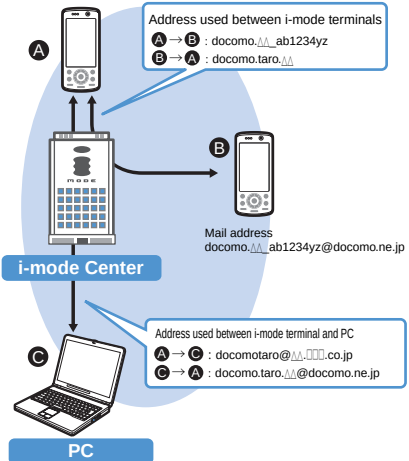
Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

• How to check your mail address

iMenu → **ENGLISH** → **4 Options** → **1 Mail Settings** → **Confirm Mail Address**

- For mail exchange between i-mode terminals (including mova terminal), mail can be sent also only with the address before the @ symbol.
- For receiving e-mail from a PC, use the entire address including @docomo.ne.jp.

Mail address
docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp



Mail address
docomotar@△△.○○○.co.jp

- Sending mail ☎P228
- Receiving mail ☎P239

■ Receive Option

You can check the subject of i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and select the mail to receive or delete without receiving it. ☎P240

Setting mail

The following settings can be made for mail:

Setting procedure

iMenu → **ENGLISH** → **4 Options** → **1 Mail Settings** → Follow each setting in [] below.

- For details, see “i-mode User’s Manual” you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

■ Changing the mail address [Mail Address (Change Mail Address)]

You can change the address before the @ symbol to another, such as “docomo.△△_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp”.

■ Checking the mail address [Mail Address (Confirm Mail Address)]

You can check your current mail address.

■ Registering a secret code [Mail Address (Other Settings) → Register a Secret Code]

When you use the phone number address, a 4-digit secret code can be registered in addition to the mail address. Since mail with no secret code specified is not received, you can avoid receiving unnecessary mail.

■ Resetting the mail address [Mail Address (Other Settings) → Reset Mail Address]

You can set your mail address to “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”.

■ Spam Mail Prevention

You can restrict incoming mail by setting to receive/reject mail in one of the following methods:

① Reject/Receive Mail Settings [Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) → Reject/Receive Mail Settings]

- You can receive only the mail through the specified carrier(s) out of DoCoMo, au, Vodafone, TU-KA, and WILLCOM. Of the mail through carriers other than above, you can receive from the specified domain(s) or address(es). In addition, you can reject the mail that pretends to be the domain of the mobile phone/PHS via Internet.

② SMS Rejection Settings [Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) → SMS Rejection Settings]

- You can set to reject SMS to be received and select from 4 types, **Reject All SMS**, **Reject Anonymous SMS**, **Reject Intl. SMS** or **Reject Anonymous and Intl. SMS**. You can also confirm the current settings.

③ Rejecting mass i-mode Mail senders

[Receiving Mail (Other Settings) → Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders]

- The 200th and later i-mode Mail messages sent from an i-mode terminal (including mova terminal) in a single day are rejected. The initial setting is **Reject** and you do not need to make any settings to reject mail from large-volume senders.

④ Rejecting Unsolicited Ad Mail (mail with “未承諾広告※”) [Receiving Mail (Other Settings) → Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail]

- Unsolicited mail sent for the purpose of advertising and publicity without the receiver’s consent that is marked with “未承諾広告※” at the beginning of the subject can be rejected. The initial setting is **Reject** and you do not need to make any settings to reject such mail. (The sender is required by law to add “未承諾広告※” (6 two-byte characters) at the beginning of the subject.)

■ Restricting mail size [Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size)]

You can restrict the i-mode Mail you receive to a specified size.

■ Checking current settings [Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings)]

You can check the current settings for receiving/rejecting mail, etc.

■ Suspending i-mode Mail function [Suspend Mail]

If you do not use the mail function, you can stop it in the i-mode Center.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The number of characters that can be sent and received in i-mode Mail is as follows:

Item	One-byte characters (alphanumeric, katakana, etc.)	Two-byte characters (kanji, hiragana, pictograms, etc.)
Subject	30 characters	15 characters
Mail address	50 characters	—
Message	10,000 characters	5,000 characters

INFORMATION

- The message of i-mode Mail can contain up to 5,000 two-byte characters (10,000 bytes) but the maximum number of characters may be smaller depending on the size of attachments.
- When the message exceeds the number of characters that can be received, " / " or " // " is inserted at the end and the excessive characters are deleted automatically.
- When you send i-mode Mail to a mova terminal, the message can contain up to 2,000 two-byte characters. i-shot Mail or i-motion Mail is sent as mail containing a URL. Any attachments other than that are deleted.
- When the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, the excessive characters are deleted.
- Except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova terminal), do not use one-byte katakana characters or pictograms. They may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.

When you cannot receive mail

The i-mode Mail received by the i-mode Center is immediately sent to your i-mode terminal. However, when you cannot receive mail because the terminal is turned off or out of the service area, i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center. When mail is stored in the i-mode Center, it is resent a maximum of 3 times at a certain interval. You can also select and receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center using Receive Option.

INFORMATION

- The maximum storage number of i-mode Mail items and the period they are stored at the i-mode Center are as follows:

Item	Maximum number of items	Maximum storage period
i-mode Mail	207 to 1,000 (up to approx. 2 MB)	720 hours

- i-mode Mail is automatically deleted after the maximum storage period expires.
- The maximum number of items that can be stored depends on the size of i-mode Mail. When the maximum number is exceeded, the i-mode Center no longer accepts a mail and returns it to the sender together with an error message. At this time,  or  is indicated on your i-mode terminal. When Receive Option Setting is on, however,  or  is not indicated even if the maximum number is exceeded.
- When the i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center is received by your i-mode terminal, the mail is deleted from the i-mode Center. The received mail is stored in your i-mode terminal.
- Extremely large volume i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center.
- You can use Check i-mode Message or Receive Option to receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center. In addition, if a new mail arrives, you can receive it with other stored mail and Message R/Fs.

Other useful functions

■ Mail with attachments

• Attaching melodies to mail

You can send/receive melody files downloaded from i-mode or Internet web sites by attaching them to i-mode Mail (you cannot send melody files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

- Sending P234 • Receiving P245

• Attaching images to mail

You can send/receive still image files obtained from i-mode or Internet web sites, or external memory by attaching them to i-mode Mail (you cannot send still image files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

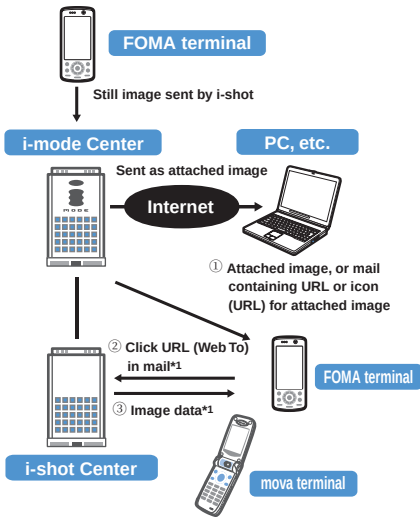
- Sending P234 • Receiving P243

■ i-shot

Still images shot by a terminal with the camera function can be attached to mail and sent/received to/from i-mode terminals (including mova terminal), PCs, or other company's mobile phones. The still images are sent as attachments or mail containing a URL (or icon) for viewing the still image is sent with the storage period specified. Click the received URL to download the image.

The maximum number of characters that can be sent to a mova terminal is 184 two-byte characters (369 bytes). If you attach multiple files to mail to a mova terminal, the attachments are deleted from the mail and only the message text is sent.

- Sending P234 • Receiving P243



*1 When mail containing a URL for the attached image is received

- The i-shot Center stores images for up to 10 days and deletes the images automatically after that period.
- i-mode terminals can send still image files of up to 500 Kbytes. When you send an image exceeding 20 Kbytes as mail attachment to an i-mode terminal, the image will be automatically reduced and downloaded to the receiver's terminal.

■ i-motion Mail

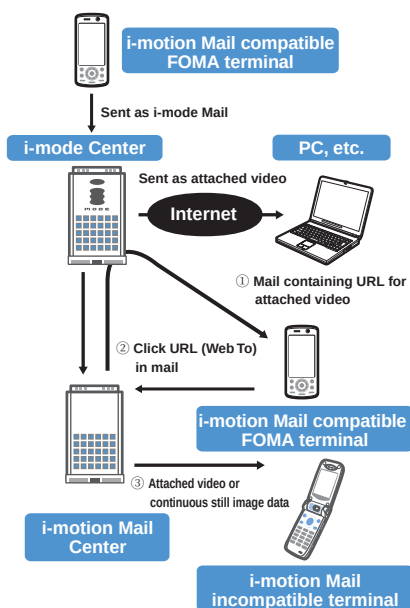
Videos recorded with an i-motion Mail compatible terminal or downloaded from sites can be sent/received to/from i-motion Mail compatible terminals, PCs, or other company's mobile phones (you cannot send video files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

- Sending ◀P234
- Receiving ▶P244

• Service schematic

Video files attached to i-motion Mail are sent to the i-motion Mail Center and stored there (if the destination is a PC, the file is directly sent to the PC as an attachment).

When i-motion Mail is received by an i-motion Mail compatible terminal, the video can be downloaded by clicking the URL displayed in the message text. When received by a non-compatible terminal, the video is converted to continuous still images and received as mail containing a URL. The receiver can download the continuous still images by clicking the displayed URL.



- The i-motion Mail Center stores images for up to 10 days and deletes the images automatically after that period.
- i-motion Mail compatible terminals can receive video files of up to 500 Kbytes. When attached videos are downloaded, the image sizes are automatically changed to fit the terminal screen.

■ Deco-mail

Compose and send your original i-mode Mail messages by changing the character size/background color or inserting images in the text, and also enjoy receiving decorated mail (when decorated mail is received from a PC, operations may not be the same as on PC because some decorations are not supported by i-mode terminals).

When Deco-mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it is received as mail containing a URL. The receiver can view Deco-mail by clicking the displayed URL.

- Editing Deco-mail ▶P230
- Sending Deco-mail ▶P230
- Supporting models: Available with Deco-mail compatible models. For details, see "i-mode User's Manual".

■ Sending mail to multiple addresses

You can send i-mode Mail to multiple addresses (up to 5) at one time. ▶P229

- The communication fee is the same as for sending one mail (however, the communication fee increases corresponding to the information volume for additional addresses).

■ Sending/receiving CC and BCC

When editing i-mode Mail, you can select the address type from TO, CC and BCC in the same way as on PCs.

If there is no TO address, however, mail cannot be sent. ▶P229

■ Chat mail

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation.

- The communication fee for chat mail to multiple addresses is the same as for sending mail to multiple addresses at one time.

SMS (Short Message)

Text messages can be exchanged between FOMA terminals.

- Sending ▶P264
- Receiving ▶P265
- Checking for SMS ▶P266

Address of SMS

The address of SMS is the subscribed mobile phone number.

- You can exchange SMS with users of overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For more information, please visit the DoCoMo website.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The maximum number of characters is different depending on the font type setting. ➡P266

Item	English	Japanese
Address	20 characters (numbers only)*1	
Message	160 one-byte characters*2	70 one- or two-byte characters

*1 If a one-byte "+" is contained, up to 21 characters can be entered.

2 One-byte alphanumerics and symbols (except for `、`,`、`` and `°`) can be sent.
When symbols (`|` `^` `{` `}` `[` `]` `~` and `¥`) are entered, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced.

When you cannot receive SMS

SMS sent to your FOMA terminal is received by the SMS Center and sent to your FOMA terminal immediately. When you cannot receive messages because the terminal is turned off or outside the service area, the messages are stored in the SMS Center.

INFORMATION

- The SMS Center stores messages for a maximum of 72 hours. The sender can specify the storage period. ➡P266
- The messages are automatically deleted after the maximum storage period expires.
- You can use Check SMS to receive the messages stored in the SMS Center. ➡P266
- When FOMA terminal receives the messages stored in the SMS Center, the messages are deleted from the Center. Received SMS is stored in FOMA terminal.

Other useful functions

■ Delivered report

You can receive a delivered report that informs you whether the other party has received the sent SMS. ➡P266

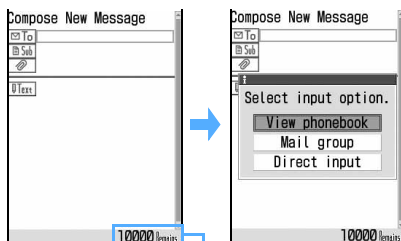
■ Saving to the UIM

You can save received and sent SMS to the UIM. ➡P267

Composing and sending i-mode Mail

Compose Message

1 ☎ (for over a second) ▶ Select ☐ To field



Mail composition screen

Remaining number of one-byte characters that can be entered

2 Select Direct input ▶ Enter the address (up to 50 one-byte characters)

- When sending mail to an i-mode terminal, you may omit "@docomo.ne.jp" in the mail address.
- In 5-touch Input Method, press **[1]** repeatedly in the alphabet input mode to enter ". ", "@", "- ", etc. In addition, ".com", ".ne.jp", ".co.jp", etc. can be entered by pressing **[*]** repeatedly in the alphabet input mode.
- When the other party has registered a secret code, enter the other party's i-mode terminal phone number followed by the 4-digit secret code.

■ Searching the phonebook: Select View phonebook ▶ Search the party

- When multiple mail addresses are registered, select a mail address.

■ Using a mail group: Select Mail group ▶ Select a mail group

- Mail addresses must be registered in a mail group in advance.
- If the total of entered addresses exceeds 5, the mail group cannot be added.
- Highlight a mail group and press **[Menu]** to check the mail group details.

3 Select ☐ Sub field ▶ Enter the subject (up to 30 one-byte or 15 two-byte characters)

4 Select ☐ Text field ▶ Enter the message (up to 10,000 one-byte or 5,000 two-byte characters)

- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press **[#]** to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method (except for the one-byte/two-byte numeric modes).

- A space of one- or two-byte or a line feed is also counted as a character in the message.
- Text can be decorated. ➡P230

■ Inserting a signature:

- Signature must be registered beforehand.

5 Press

- Press  on the connecting screen, press  on the sending screen to stop sending and to save the i-mode Mail to the **Unsent messages** folder of **Unsent messages**. Even when saved in the **Unsent messages** folder, the i-mode Mail may be sent depending on the operation timing.
- When you are outside the service area and the auto-send mails already saved is 4 or less, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to send mail automatically in the service area. When you select **Yes**, the mail is saved as auto-send mail in the **Unsent messages** folder of **Unsent messages**.

INFORMATION

- When mail exceeding 10,000 bytes was automatically saved due to start of other functions, part of the mail being composed may not be saved.
- Depending on signal conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- When transmission is completed correctly, the i-mode Mail is saved in the **Outbox** folder of **Outbox**. However, when the sent mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder. When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.
- When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and the i-mode Mail is saved in the **Unsent messages** folder of **Unsent messages**. You can edit and send i-mode Mail from **Unsent messages**.
- Even if i-mode Mail is sent correctly, "**Transmission failed.**" may be displayed depending on signal conditions, and the mail may be saved in the **Unsent messages** folder of **Unsent messages**.
- Except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova), do not use one-byte katakana characters or pictograms. They may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side. Depending on the model of the receiver's i-mode terminal, some pictograms may not be displayed correctly.
- Depending on the settings of the receiver's terminal such as the number of characters that can be displayed, the font or its display size, face marks may not be displayed correctly and their shapes and views may be different from the original ones.
- An error message for address unknown etc. may not be received when mail is sent to addresses other than DoCoMo.

- When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, i-mode Mail cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and/or SMS from **Unsent messages**. ➡P252

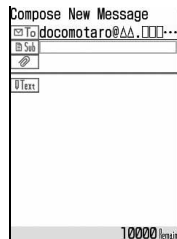
Adding receivers

Add Address

You can send i-mode Mail to up to 5 addresses at one time (Multi-address transmission).

- There are 3 address types:  (TO),  (CC) and  (BCC).
 -  : Used for usual addresses.
 -  : Used when you want to inform the other party of the content of the particular mail sent to the TO address.
 -  : Used when you want to inform the other party as with CC, but the BCC-specified address is not shown for the other party.
- Mail with no address entered in the  field cannot be sent.

1 Highlight the address field on the mail composition screen



An address field is added.

- Repeat the same procedure to add as many more fields as you want.

■ Adding CC and BCC:

- ①   on the mail composition screen
 - ▶ Select an input method
- ② Select **CC** or **BCC** ▶ Enter a mail address
 - Also **TO** can be selected.
 - When you have added by selecting **Mail group**, TO, CC and BCC are set as registered for the mail group.

■ Changing TO, CC and BCC: Highlight an address field ▶ Select an address type

- Deleting the added address field: Highlight an address field   ▶ Select **Yes**
 - Only the address in the field is deleted when there is only one field.

2 Enter the address in the added field Press

- The operation is the same as when there is only one address field.

INFORMATION

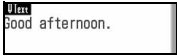
- The mail address entered in the  field and  field can be seen at the receiver side. However, it may not be displayed depending on the terminal, device, or mailing software.
- When sending of mail to some addresses fails, an error message is displayed. Pressing  may display a list of mail addresses for which transmission failed.

Composing and sending Deco-mail

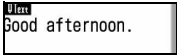
You can decorate the i-mode Mail message by changing the font size, font color, or background color and inserting still images including the ones shot with the camera to compose Deco-mail.

Examples of decoration

1 Changing font color



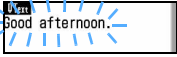
2 Changing font size



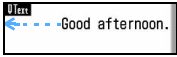
3 Inserting images



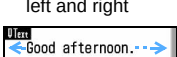
4 Blinking characters



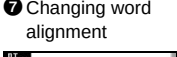
5 Setting tickers



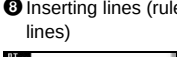
6 Swinging characters



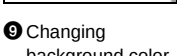
7 Changing word alignment



8 Inserting lines (ruled lines)



9 Changing background color



Flow of Deco-mail composition

Step 1 Display the message text entry screen from the mail composition screen

Start composing i-mode Mail and display the message text entry screen.

Step 2 Enter characters and decorate them

- Enter decorated characters and images: For the operation procedure (P230), refer to "Entering characters after specifying the decoration method".
- Decorate entered characters: For the operation procedure (P233), refer to "Specifying decoration method after entering characters".
- Press   during editing to check the decoration on the preview screen.

Step 3 Confirm the decoration before sending

Check the decoration on the mail composition screen.

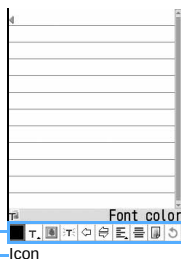
INFORMATION

- Even if you delete decorated characters, the decoration data may remain and the number of characters to be entered may be fewer. Cancel the decoration first and then delete characters. Holding down  for over a second deletes all the characters and decoration (except the background color).
- When sent and received to/from other than the Deco-mail compatible FOMA terminal such as a PC, the decoration in Deco-mail may not be correctly displayed.
- The actions of decoration such as blink, ticker, swing, and animation stop automatically after a certain period of time on the mail composition screen or the preview screen.
- When a Deco-mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it will be received as a mail containing a URL for viewing the Deco-mail. The Deco-mail cannot be viewed from the mail containing the URL that has been transferred or by entering the URL directly (it can be viewed only on the terminal of the original receiver).

Entering characters after specifying the decoration method

- 1 Select  on the mail composition screen 

2 Select the decoration ▶ Enter characters



Decoration selection screen

Highlight an icon on the decoration selection screen and press to select a decoration. You can set more than one decoration by selecting multiple icons. However, *Ticker*, *Swing* and *Word alignment* cannot be selected at the same time.

- To set more than one decoration: Highlight icons on the decoration selection screen ▶
 - To cancel a selected decoration and enter characters: Place the cursor on the character entry position ▶ ▶
- Font color*, *Font size*, *Blink*, *Ticker*, *Swing* and *Word alignment* can be canceled.

■ **Font color :**

Changes the color of characters and lines (ruled lines).

⌂ **Font size :**

Changes the font size.

■ **Insert image :**

Inserts images.

⌂ **Blink :**

Displays characters that blink.

⌂ **Ticker :**

Displays characters in a ticker (ticker display).

⌂ **Swing :**

Displays characters that swing left and right.

⌂ **Word alignment :**

Changes the position of characters or images.

⌂ **Insert line :**

Inserts separating lines (ruled lines).

■ **Background color :**

Changes the background color.

⌂ **Undo :** Restores the previous condition.

3 ▶ Check the decoration

You can check the set decoration and the accurate remaining number of bytes that can be entered.

4 after checking the details

- **Changing the decoration:** ▶ Place the cursor on the start position ▶

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Specifying decoration method after entering characters". ▶ P233

■ **Canceling all decorations:**

5 ▶ Press

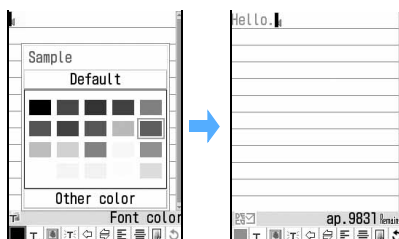
INFORMATION

- You can also select decorations by pressing on the message text entry screen and selecting *Decorate mail*.

Operations on the decoration selection screen

- The number in parentheses () indicates the example of decoration in P230.

■ **Changing font color (example ①):** Select ▶ Select a color ▶ Enter characters



- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in *Other color*.
- The color of pictograms is also changed. To return to the original color, specify the range and select *Default*. For operations, see "Specifying decoration method after entering characters". ▶ P233

■ **Changing font size (example ②):** Select (or) ▶ Select a size ▶ Enter characters



■ **Inserting images (example ③):** Select ▶ Select *Phone memory* ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

- To insert an image from the miniSD memory card: Select *miniSD card* ▶ ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

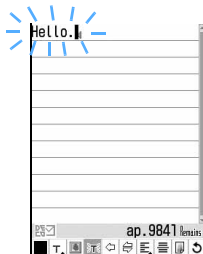
- To take and insert a still image: Select *Use still camera* ▶ Shoot ▶
- The size of still image is automatically set to 96 x 72 (phonebook).
- Deco-mail pictures set by default ◀P423



The image is inserted at the cursor position.

- When *Phone memory* is selected, an image that cannot be inserted is not displayed. When *miniSD card* is selected, in case of selecting an image that cannot be inserted, a message appears indicating that it cannot be inserted.
- In case the available number of characters exceeds the limit by inserting an image, a message appears indicating that it cannot be inserted.

■ Making characters blink (example ④): Select ▶ Enter characters

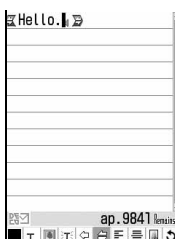


■ Making characters into ticker to run from right to left (example ⑤): Select ▶ Enter characters



- Enter characters between and .

■ Making characters swing left and right (example ⑥): Select ▶ Enter characters



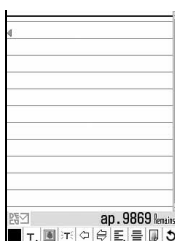
- Enter characters between and .

■ Changing word alignment (example ⑦): Select (or) ▶ Select the display position ▶ Enter characters



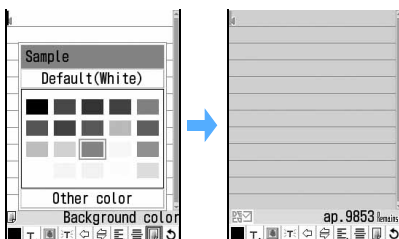
- When characters are already entered and the cursor is placed between characters, a new blank line is started at the selected position.

■ Inserting lines (ruled lines) (example ⑧): Select



A line (ruled line) is inserted in the color specified with font color ().

■ Changing text background color (example ⑨): Select ▶ Select a color



- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in *Other color*.

- **Restoring the previous condition: Select** 
 - The last decoration or characters entered are canceled.

Specifying decoration method after entering characters

You can decorate entered characters and change the decoration of characters by specifying the range.

- The number in parentheses () in Step 3 indicates the example of decoration in P230.
- You cannot insert lines or images, or change the background color. Specify the decoration first.

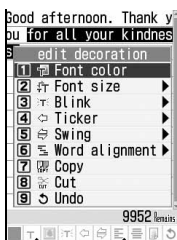
1 Highlight the start position on the message text entry screen

2 Place the cursor on the end position



- To select from the start position to the beginning of the text:  
- To select from the start position to the end of the text:  
- To select all the text: 

3 Select the decoration method



- The procedure for confirming and canceling decorations is the same as when entering characters after specifying decoration. 

- **Changing the font color (example ①):**

  **Select a color**

- The color of lines (ruled lines) is also changed.

- **Changing the font size (example ②):**

   to 

- **Making characters blink (example ④):**

- To cancel:  

- **Making characters into ticker to run from right to left (example ⑤):**  

- To cancel:  

- **Making characters swing left and right**

(example ⑥):  

- To cancel:  

- **Changing the word alignment (example ⑦):**

   to 

- The display position of an image is also changed.

- **Copying characters:** 

- **Cutting characters:** 

- **Restoring the previous condition:** 

- The last decoration or characters entered are canceled.

- **Decorating characters continuously:** 

- ▶ Repeat Step 3

4

The selection of decorated characters is canceled.

- You can also unselect it by pressing .

5 Press

INFORMATION

- On the message text entry screen, press  and select **Decorate mail** → **Edit decoration**.
- Press   on the message text entry screen to display the preview screen and confirm the accurate remaining number of bytes that can be entered at the lower right of the screen.

Attaching melodies to Deco-mail

Melo-deco

1 on the decoration selection screen

- When a melody is already attached, the list of attached melodies is displayed. Go to Step 3, "Attaching another melody" or "Removing an attached melody".

2 Select a folder

- When a miniSD memory card is inserted, select **Phone memory** or **miniSD card** and then select a folder.

3 Select a melody

The melody is attached and its file name and file size are displayed in the list of attached melodies.

- When **Phone memory** is selected, melodies that cannot be attached are not displayed. Highlight a melody and press  to play the melody. Press  to attach it or  to return to the list.

- When **miniSD card** is selected, if you select a melody that cannot be attached, a message appears indicating that the file cannot be selected.

■ Attaching another melody:

- ①  **Select a folder**
 - When a miniSD memory card is inserted, press , select **Phone memory** or **miniSD card** and then select a folder.
- ② **Select a melody**

■ Removing an attached melody: Highlight a melody **Select Yes**

- If all the melodies are deleted, a message appears indicating that there is no attached melodies. Press .

■ Playing melodies: Select a melody

- Completing the play returns to the list.

4 

 appears at the lower part of the screen.

5  **Press** 

Mail attachment melodies

The following melodies are saved in the **Mail attach melody** folder by default.

Title	Song title (composer name in [])
クリスマス (Christmas)	JOY TO THE WORLD [HANDEL GEORGE FRIDERIC/MASON LOWELL]
結婚式 (Wedding)	BRIDAL MARCH [WAGNER RICHARD WILHELM]
誕生日 (Birthday)	—
嬉しい (Glad)	—
悲しい (Sad)	—

- The composer's name are described in accordance with the JASRAC website.

Attaching files

Attachment

You can send i-mode Mail with images, video/i-motion, melodies and ToruCa attached.

- The type of attachable files and the maximum number of files that can be attached to one mail are as shown below:

File type	Maximum number of files
Melody (Melodies in SMF format can be attached only)	10*6
ToruCa*1 (Up to 321 bytes for attachment; up to 1,024 bytes for transfer*2)	
Image of up to 10,000 bytes*3 (only images in JPEG and GIF formats can be attached; Created animation cannot be attached)	
Image exceeding 10,000 bytes and up to 500 KB*3 (only images in JPEG format can be attached; Created animation cannot be attached)	1
Video/i-motion of up to 500 KB*4 (files with replay restriction cannot be attached*5)	

*1 Data is sent as the state before obtaining ToruCa (details). ToruCa (details) can be downloaded at the receiver side. However, it may not be downloaded depending on the receiver's terminal.

*2 The maximum file size may vary by ToruCa.

*3 Depending on the receiver's device (terminal, PC, etc.), images will be received as attachments to mail or mail containing URLs.

*4 Depending on the receiver's model, video may be degraded or displayed as continuous images. Video with the image size other than 176 x 144 (QCIF) or 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or video recorded with "HQ+ (highest quality)" cannot be attached regardless of the file size.

*5 Some files without replay restriction may not be attached.

*6 Up to 10 melodies, ToruCa and images in total can be attached on condition that the total size including the message text is 10,000 bytes or smaller. The number of files that can be attached, however, may be reduced depending on the size of the attachment.

- The maximum number of characters in a message differs by the size of attachment.
- When the remaining data amount that can be entered in the message text (after melodies, ToruCa and images of up to 10,000 bytes are attached) is less than 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters (400 one-byte or 200 two-byte characters for Deco-mail), you cannot attach video/i-motion or images exceeding 10,000 bytes.
- Files prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (except images with the file restriction set to **File restricted** on your terminal) and files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be attached.
- Only one JPEG image can be attached and sent to a mova terminal. In this case, it is received as mail containing a URL (i-shot Mail).

- Recorded video of up to 500 Kbytes (excluding the message) can be attached to i-motion Mail.
- The data recorded with Sound Recorder is saved as i-motion and can be attached to mail.
- When sent to other than FOMA D701i, D701iWM, D702i, D851iWM, D901i, D901iS, D902i, or D902iS, melodies may not play correctly at the receiver side.

1 Select field on the mail composition screen

2 Select the attachment type ► Select a file

■ Attaching an image:

① Select Image

② Select Phone memory ► Select a folder

- To select from the miniSD memory card:
Select **miniSD card** ►  or  ►
Select a folder
- To take and attach a still image: Select **Use still camera** ► Shoot ►  ► Go to Step 3
- The size of images is automatically set to 240 x 320 (QVGA).

③ Select an image

The file name of the selected image is displayed in the  field of the mail composition screen.

- Images that cannot be attached are not displayed. Highlight an image and press  to display. Press  to attach it or  to return to the list.
- For a JPEG image with the image size exceeding 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA), a confirmation screen appears asking whether to reduce it to QVGA. When file size of the reduced image exceeds 10,000 bytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save the image to Data Box. When you do not save it to Data Box or a message saying that saving failed appears, the reduced image is not saved. When the mail is saved, attached files are canceled. Also, the attachment to auto-send mail will not be sent.
- For a JPEG image exceeding 500 Kbytes, it is automatically reduced to a size that can be attached to mail, and a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save the image to Data Box. This operation may take some time.

- When **miniSD card** is selected, if you select an image exceeding 10,000 bytes and up to 500 Kbytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to copy the image to FOMA terminal. If it is not copied to FOMA terminal, attached files are canceled when the mail is saved and the attachment to auto-send mail will not be sent.

■ Attaching video/i-motion (Compose i-motion Mail):

① Select i-motion

② Select Phone memory ► Select a folder

- To select from the miniSD memory card:
Select **miniSD card** ►  or  ►
Select a folder
- To record and attach video: Select **Use movie camera** ► Record ►  ► Go to Step 3
- The size of video images is automatically set to 176 x 144 (QCIF).

③ Select a video/i-motion file

The file name of the selected video/i-motion is displayed in the  field of the mail composition screen.

- When **Phone memory** is selected, video/i-motion that cannot be attached is not displayed. Highlight video/i-motion and press  to play. Completing the play returns to the list.
- When **miniSD card** is selected, if you select video/i-motion that cannot be attached, a message appears indicating that the file cannot be attached. Highlight a video/i-motion file and press  to play. Pressing  returns to the list.
- When **miniSD card** is selected, if you select video/i-motion of up to 500 Kbytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to copy the file to FOMA terminal. If it is not copied to FOMA terminal, attached files are canceled when the mail is saved and the attachment to auto-send mail will not be sent.

■ Attaching a melody:

① Select Melody

- When a miniSD memory card is inserted, select **Melody** and then select **Phone memory** or **miniSD card**.

② Select a folder

③ Select a melody

The file name of the selected melody is displayed in the  field of the mail composition screen and  appears at the lower part of the screen.

- When **Phone memory** is selected, melodies that cannot be attached are not displayed. Highlight a melody and press  to play. Press  to attach it or  to return to the list.
- When **miniSD card** is selected, if you select a melody that cannot be attached, a message appears indicating that the file cannot be attached. Highlight a melody and press  to play and pressing  returns to the list.

■ Attaching ToruCa:

① Select ToruCa

- When a miniSD memory card is inserted, select **ToruCa** and select **Phone memory** or **miniSD card**.

② Select a folder ▶ Select ToruCa

The file name of the selected ToruCa is displayed in the  field of the mail composition screen.

- Highlight ToruCa and press  to confirm the contents. Press  to attach it or  to return to the list.
- If you select any ToruCa that cannot be attached, a message appears indicating that the data cannot be attached.

■ Recording and attaching sound (Compose i-motion Mail): Select **Record sound** ▶ **Record (Sound Recorder)** ▶

The file name of the recorded sound is displayed in the  field of the mail composition screen.

3 Press

- You can display or play the attached file by selecting the  field.

INFORMATION

- When you send mail with a JPEG image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to an i-mode terminal, the image is reduced in the i-shot Center to a size that can be sent to the i-mode terminal.
- When you send mail with GIF image, melody, ToruCa or sound attached to a mova terminal, the attached file will be deleted and mail with no attachment will be delivered.
- Images exceeding 10,000 bytes can be reduced to 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA). ◀P315
The QVGA size is suitable for sending an image to an i-mode terminal.

Changing/removing attachments

Example Removing an attachment

1 Display the mail composition screen

2 Highlight field ▶

■ Changing the attachment: Highlight  field ▶  ▶ Attach a file ◀P234

3 Select **Yes**

Using mail templates

Mail templates are samples of the i-mode Mail. You can easily compose i-mode Mail by using mail templates; adding and editing the content. In addition, the Deco-mail also can be composed easily by using the mail template that has the decoration such as images predefined. You can use the mail template downloaded from the sites or those you have composed besides the mail template (◀P423) set by default.

- Mail templates downloaded or composed are saved in **Read template** as well as the mail templates set by default.
- You cannot use templates for SMS.

Using templates while composing mail

Read Template

You can read templates while composing new i-mode Mail.

- Templates cannot be read while Keypad Dial Lock is set.

1 on the mail composition screen

- Highlight a template and press  to display the template. Press  to read it, press  to return to the list.

2 Select a template

- : Including an image of up to 10,000 bytes
- : Including a melody
- : Including ToruCa
- : Including files of various types

- When you read a template on the mail composition screen after entering any text, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite the mail contents. When you select **Read body only** and then select a template, only the message text is overwritten with the template. When you select **Read all** and then select a template, the address, subject, attachment, and message text are all overwritten. Press **CH/END** to stop reading.
- Multiple templates cannot be read for one mail.

3 Edit the mail ▶ Press

Menu 18

Viewing templates and composing mail

Read templates

Display a list of registered templates and select a template to use on the mail composition screen.

- Templates cannot be read while Keypad Dial Lock is set. However, if the mail address entered in the address field of a template is registered in the phonebook, the template can be read.

1 ▶ Select a template

- Press to display the previous or next template.

2

The contents of the template are set on the mail composition screen.

3 Edit the mail ▶ Press

Saving templates

Save Template

Composed or received/sent i-mode mail can be saved as a template.

- Maximum number of items that can be saved P38
- You can edit a preinstalled template and save it as new template.
- Video/i-motion or images exceeding 10,000 bytes cannot be saved in templates.
- If none of address, subject, attachment or text is entered, the template cannot be saved.
- If none of text is entered, the received/sent i-mode Mail cannot be received. In addition, the address and subject are not be saved.

1 on the mail composition screen ▶ Select Yes

- To register a received/sent i-mode Mail:
 on the mail view screen

2 Select each item to set

Display name:

the subject of the mail is entered (the date and time if no subject is set). Up to 20 one- or two-byte characters can be entered.

File name:

the date and time is entered. The file name can contain up to 36 characters including one-byte alphanumeric, ".", "-", and "_". However, the "." character cannot be used for the first character of a file name.

3 Press

- To overwrite a saved template: ▶ Select a template ▶ Select Yes
- The preinstalled templates cannot be overwritten.

INFORMATION

- To check or change the detail information of saved templates, select a template and press in the template list and select **Detail info** → **View** or **Edit**. The detail information of preinstalled templates cannot be changed.
- If you save a template containing an image that cannot be sent, the image may be deleted.
- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved templates. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the template.

Downloading templates

Mail templates can be downloaded from sites.

- Maximum number of items that can be saved P38

1 Select a mail template during site display

- Press to stop downloading.

2 Select Save

- To check the template: Select **Display**
- To cancel saving: Select **Back** ▶ Select **No**

3 Select each item to set

Display name:

Can enter up to 20 one-byte or two-byte characters.

File name:

Can enter up to 36 characters including one-byte alphanumeric, ".", "-", and "_". However, the "." character cannot be used for the first character of a file name.

4 Press

- To overwrite a saved template:  ➤ Select a template ➤ Select **Yes**
- The preinstalled templates cannot be overwritten.

INFORMATION

- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved templates. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the template.
- When a mail template downloaded from a site has a file attachment, it cannot be saved until the attachment is deleted.
- When a mail template downloaded from a site has the image that cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal or the image that cannot be used on FOMA terminal, it cannot be saved until the image is deleted.

Deleting templates

- Preinstalled templates cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting a template

1

- ## 2 Highlight a template ➤
- **Deleting selected templates:**   
 - **Select templates** ➤ 
 - **Deleting all templates:**    ➤
- Enter the terminal security code

3 Select **Yes**

Saving i-mode Mail for sending later

Save Mail

Saving unsent i-mode Mail

- Maximum number of items that can be saved 
- If none of address, subject, attachment or text is entered, the mail cannot be saved.

1 Press on the mail composition screen

i-mode Mail is saved in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*.

Sending i-mode mail automatically inside the service area

Auto-send

You can set i-mode mail composed outside the service area to be sent automatically inside the service area and save it.

- Up to 5 items can be saved.
- You cannot save without setting the receiver (To).

1 Press on the mail composition screen

The mail is saved as auto-send mail in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages* and  appears at the top of the screen.

Inside the service area

Auto-send mail is sent automatically.  flashes while auto-send mail is being sent and  disappears after all the auto-send mail items are sent.

- When sending fails, the auto-send failure mail remains in *Unsent messages* and  flashes. When there are no failure mail by deleting, canceling the auto-send setting or exchanging the UIM,  disappears.

INFORMATION

- Auto-send mail is not sent automatically while editing the signature.
- Once auto-send mail fails to be sent, it is not sent automatically inside the service area next time.

Canceling the auto-send setting for auto-send mail/failure mail

1 Highlight the auto-send mail or failure mail in the list of *Unsent messages* ➤ ➤ Select **Yes**

INFORMATION

- The auto-send setting is canceled even if an auto-send mail item is selected in the list of *Unsent messages*.
- When a failure mail item is selected in the list of *Unsent messages*, the cause of the error is displayed. Pressing  cancels the auto-send setting.
 - In case a message indicating that sending to the broadcast addresses has failed appears as the cause of the error, you can display the broadcast address by pressing . Pressing  cancels the auto-send setting.
- The auto-send setting for auto-send mail/failure mail is also canceled in the following cases:
 - When the mail is moved to the folder for the Message i-appli
 - When exchanging the UIM

Editing and sending unsent/sent i-mode Mail

Example Editing unsent mail**1** **4** ▶ **Select a folder**

-  is displayed for SMS.
- To edit and send sent mail:  **5** ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Select a mail**

- To edit sent mail: Highlight a mail ▶ 

3 **Edit the mail** ▶ **Press** **INFORMATION**

- You can also edit mail by pressing  on the sent mail view screen.
- When **ON** is set for **Unsent message** and **Outbox** in Edit by Slide, you can display the edit screen by opening FOMA terminal while the mail is selected or displayed.

Composing mail quickly

Quick Mail

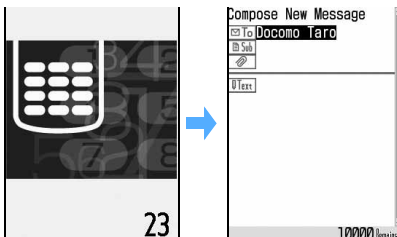
You can compose i-mode Mail and SMS easily to the parties saved to the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- The first mail address registered in the phonebook entry for the party is set as the address of i-mode Mail and the first phone number as the address of SMS.

Example Sending i-mode Mail to the party of phonebook No. 23

1 **Enter the phonebook No. (23 in this case)** ▶ **Press**

The first mail address registered in the phonebook entry is set as the address.



- Enter the phonebook No. without prefix 0.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail P228

■ Composing SMS: Enter the phonebookNo. ▶  (for over a second)

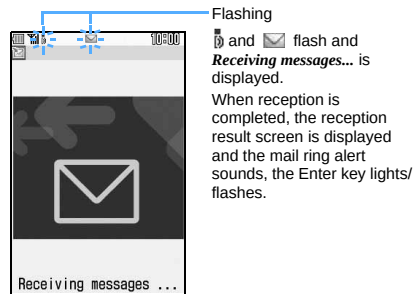
- The SMS composition screen is displayed.
The first phone number registered in the phonebook entry is set as the address.
- Composing and sending SMS P264

Receiving i-mode Mail

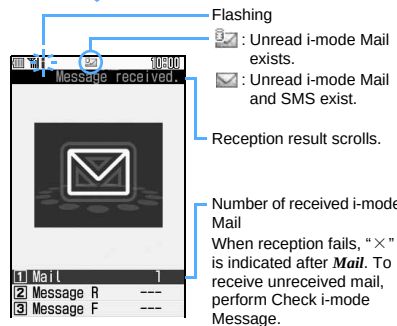
Mail Auto Receive

When there is incoming i-mode Mail, it is automatically received and you are informed by the screen display, ring alert, vibrator and/or the Enter key. The received i-mode Mail is saved in **Inbox**.

- Maximum number of items that can be saved P38

1 **An i-mode Mail is received**

Receiving screen

Reception completed

Reception result screen

- Press  while receiving to stop reception but depending on the receiving condition, the mail will be received.

- The reception result screen is displayed for about 15 seconds if you do not press any key and in case **Ring time (sec)** of Mail Alert is set to above 15 seconds, the reception result screen is displayed until the ring alert stops sounding. To return to the previous screen immediately, press .

INFORMATION

- The i-mode Center will delete the attachments that are not compatible with i-mode Mail and that are larger than the receivable data size (attachable data size). If an attachment has been deleted, **[添付ファイル削除]** (Attachment deleted) is inserted in the message. Attachable data size .
- If the data size of received mail (number of characters, attachment file size) exceeds the limit (maximum number of characters) set with **Limit Mail Size** in **Options** of iMenu, the attachments are deleted at the i-mode Center and cannot be received.
- When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest received mail except unread one is overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep.
- If the mail cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail, reception of i-mode Mail is stopped.  or  is indicated on the screen.  To receive new messages, display unread mail, change unread mail to read, delete unnecessary mail or cancel mail protection.
- i-mode Mail may not be received automatically soon after sending it. Perform Check i-mode Message.
- Extremely large i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center and be returned to the sender with an error message.
- The receiving screen or reception result screen will not be displayed depending on Display Priority. .
- When new i-mode Mail is delivered, the i-mode Mail and chat mail stored in the i-mode Center are also received.
- When i-mode Mail is received by FOMA terminal, it is deleted from the i-mode Center.
- FOMA terminal shows which of TO, CC and BCC is specified for you when you receive a mail from a party who can specify TO, CC and BCC. .
- When i-mode Mail is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation of the ring alert, vibrator and/or the Enter key. For details on checking with the phonebook, see "Name displays". 
 - When multiple items of i-mode Mail or Message R/F are received at the same time, the operation depends on the conditions set for the last i-mode Mail or Message R/F received.

- Incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases:
 - The power is off
 - During a videophone call
 - During a PushTalk call
 - In Self Mode
 - When reception fails
 - While being out of service area
 - While receiving SMS
 - During infrared communication
 - When Receive Option Setting is on
 - While connecting to the Data Center
 - While Omakase Lock is on
 - While connecting to the FirstPass center
 - When the storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail
- If there is unreceived i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center,  or  () is indicated. However, the icon may not be displayed even when there is i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of mail that can be stored in the i-mode Center () is reached, the icon changes to  or .

Displaying newly-received i-mode Mail

1 on the reception result screen



- The received i-mode Mail is saved in the **Inbox** folder of **Inbox**. However, when the received mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

2 Select a folder ▶ Select a mail

- When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off. .
- Displaying received mail .
- Select a Message i-α ppli folder to start the corresponding i-α ppli.

Selecting i-mode Mail to receive

Receive Option

You can select and receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center without receiving automatically.

When mail arrives in the i-mode Center

07/10 MON
You have mail at
i-mode center

When Receive Option Setting is set to **ON**, incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center and the message shown on the left appears.

- Even if i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center, the mail ring alert or vibrator is not activated.
- Press any key other than **[OK]** to clear the message.

INFORMATION

- During All Lock, Omakase Lock or PIM Lock, the notification message does not appear for mail coming to the i-mode Center.
- Even if Receive Option Setting is on, all i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center is received when Check i-mode Message is performed. If you do not want to receive mail, unselect the mail in Message Retrieval Setting.
- SMS and Message R/F are received automatically even if Receive Option Setting is on.

Menu 163

Selecting mail to receive

You can check the subjects of i-mode Mail stored at the i-mode Center and select mail to receive or delete mail at the i-mode Center before receiving it.

- To select mails to receive, set Receive Option Setting to **ON** in advance. When **ON** is set, i-mode Mail is not received automatically.

1 [M] [6] [3]



You are connected to the i-mode Center and the list of i-mode Mail stored appears.

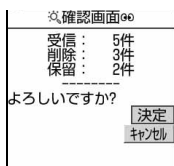
- : Image attached
- : Melody attached
- : i-motion attached
- : ToruCa attached

2 Select 保留 (Hold) for each mail ▶ Select 受信 (Receive), 削除 (Delete) or 保留 (Hold)

- When 保留 is selected, the mail is stored at the i-mode Center. It can be received by using Check i-mode Message, etc.
- To delete all mails stored at the i-mode Center, select 削除 for *i モードセンターから全てのメールを* (All mails from the i-mode Center).

- When the mail list has more than one page, select 前ページ (Previous page) and 次ページ (Next page) at the end of the list to view the previous and next pages.

3 Select 受信/削除 (Receive/Delete) ▶ Select 決定 (OK)



Menu 161 / Menu 25 / [M] 61 / [V] 5

Checking for i-mode Mail

Check i-mode Message

You can check whether i-mode Mail has been delivered to the i-mode Center while FOMA terminal was out of the service area or turned off. Also check for Message R/F at the same time if it is set so in Message Retrieval Setting.

- Depending on the signal condition, you may not be able to perform Check i-mode Message. Operate the terminal in locations with good radio wave conditions.

1 Press [M] [M]

Check i-mode Message is executed. If stored in the i-mode Center, i-mode Mail is received.

- The operation on the reception result screen is the same as for auto reception. However, the screen does not return to the previous screen after about 15 seconds.

Replying to received i-mode Mail

Reply to Mail

- You may not be able to reply to some received mail.
- You cannot reply to the SMS for which **User unset**, **Payphone** or **Not supported** is displayed in the sender field.
- Mail Reply Format allows you to set whether to quote the message in a reply mail and to select the character to be inserted at the beginning of the quoted message.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a mail

The quick reply message selection screen appears.

- When Quick Reply Setting is set to **OFF**, a quick reply message is not registered or you are replying to SMS, the quick reply message selection screen does not appear. Go to Step 4.

■ When FOMA terminal is closed:

When **ON** is set for **Inbox** in Edit by Slide, you can reply by opening FOMA terminal while the mail is selected or displayed.

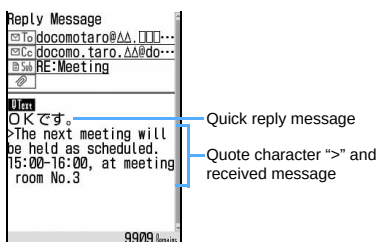
■ Replying to all addresses of received mail:

You can reply to the sender and all the receivers except you. You can select whether to quote the text.

  ▶  or 

3 Select a quick reply message

The sender's mail address or phone number of the received mail is entered in the  field, "RE:" followed by the subject of the received mail in the  field (for only i-mode Mail), and the quick reply message and quote character ">" followed by the received message text in the  field.



- To cancel inserting a quick reply message, select **Compose Message**. The message text entry screen appears.

4 Edit the mail ▶ Press

- When you display the received mail list after replying, you will see the icon for the received mail change to  or .

INFORMATION

- On the received mail view screen, press .
- If you press  on the received mail list and view screen, and select **Reply/Forward** → **Reply** or **Reply with quote**, you can select whether to quote the text regardless of the setting for Mail Reply Format. When there are multiple addresses, you can also select **Reply all** or **Reply all w/ quote**.

- The attachments to received mail are not attached to reply mail.
- The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i-appli or melodies (MFi format) displayed in the message) is neither attached nor quoted as characters in reply mail.
- When received Deco-mail is quoted, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted. However, if file restriction is set to the images, they are not quoted in reply mail.
- When you reply to the mail that was sent to multiple addresses by pressing  or opening FOMA terminal, the mail addresses entered in the address field differ depending on the screen. When you reply from the received mail list, the mail address of the sender is entered. When you reply from the received mail view screen, the mail addresses of the sender and all the receivers except you are entered.

Forwarding received i-mode Mail

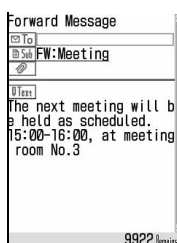
Forward Mail

- You can forward received SMS in the same way. i-mode Mail is forwarded as i-mode Mail and SMS is forwarded as SMS.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a mail

The "FW:" followed by the subject of the received mail is entered in the  field (for only i-mode Mail) and the received message text in the  field.



- When forwarding received mail with an attachment, the attachment is also set.

3 Edit the mail ▶ Press

- When you display the received mail list after forwarding, you will see the icon for the received mail change to  or .

INFORMATION

- On the received mail view screen, press  and select **Reply/Forward** → **Forward**.

- Regarding the attachments to received mail (image, melody and ToruCa), files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal are not attached to forwarding mail.
- The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i-appli or melodies (MFi format) displayed in the message) is neither attached nor quoted as characters in forwarding mail.
- When forwarding the mail with an image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download attached, the image will not be attached.
- When received Deco-mail is forwarded, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted. When the maximum data size that can be sent is exceeded, a message indicating that the mail cannot be sent is displayed when  is pressed.
- When forwarding a mail with ToruCa exceeding 1,024 bytes in size attached, the ToruCa is not attached.

Displaying and saving attached images

Display/Save Image

Saved images can be viewed from **Image** (My Picture) of Data Box or set for the standby display.

- Maximum number of items that can be saved
 P38

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode Mail with an image attached



Image icon, file name and file size

-  : Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal
-  : Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal
-  : Image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download
-  : Image exceeding 10,000 bytes downloaded
-  : Attachment of image of which download failed
-  : Data error

■ Switching between displaying and not displaying image: Select the file name

- You can switch displaying and not displaying an image on the view screen for sent mail, mail template, or mail in the miniSD memory card in the same way as above.

■ Checking the title: Highlight the file name

▶   

■ Displaying the URL for image exceeding 10,000 bytes: Highlight the file name ▶

- To display the URL before download:
Highlight **保存期限** (Storage period) in the message ▶   

2 Highlight the file name ▶

- A JPEG image exceeding 10,000 bytes is automatically downloaded and saved in the **i-mode** folder of **Image** (My Picture). You cannot save the image again by pressing   . When the image cannot be downloaded because you have interrupted reception or moved outside the service area, you can download it by selecting **保存期限** in the message.

■ Saving an image displayed in Deco-mail:

   ▶ Select an image

3 Select each item to set

- For images that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (file restriction set to **File restricted**), you can change the display name only.
- For the setting procedure, follow Step 3 in "Downloading images from sites". 

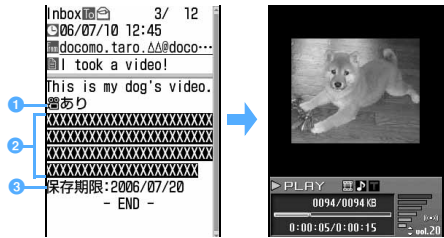
4 ▶ Select the folder to save the image to

- Saved images can be set for the standby display, etc. 

INFORMATION

- To check the image title on the view screen for sent mail, mail template, or mail in the miniSD memory card, highlight the file name of an image, press  and select **Attachment** → **Check title**.
- You can save images attached to sent mail in the same way as above.
- For an image of up to 10,000 bytes that is displayed in the message, the display name or file name does not appear.
- When an image is wider than the display, the reduced image is displayed.

- Some images may not be displayed correctly.
- Images exceeding 352 horizontal x 288 vertical or 240 horizontal x 400 vertical view size cannot be used as a frame.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes of 240 x 400 and larger cannot be used as a stamp.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.
- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved images. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete. Before deletion, an image can be displayed by pressing  on the image list and detail information about the image can be shown by pressing .
- Images of up to 100 Kbytes in JPEG or GIF format can be downloaded.
- When received mail with an image attached is displayed, the attached image is automatically displayed. The image inserted in the message text of received Deco-mail is also displayed automatically, but the image attached to Deco-mail is not displayed automatically. Select the file name of image to display the image.



- 1 Indicates that i-motion is attached.
- 2 URL for i-motion
- 3 Storage period of i-motion at the i-motion Mail Center

3 Select **Save when the play ends**

- To play the i-motion again: Select **Play**
- To display the information on the i-motion: Select **File property**
- To cancel saving: Select **Back** ▶ Select **No**

4 Enter a display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters) ▶

The downloaded i-motion is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *i-motion*.

■ Setting for the standby display: ▶ Select **Yes**

- Video/i-motion without image, i-motion with replay restrictions set and i-motion with the image size exceeding 320 x 240 cannot be set for the standby display.
- If zooming is available for the video/i-motion, you can select the same size or large size.
- If the i-αppli standby display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it. If **Yes** is selected, the i-αppli standby display is canceled and selected video/i-motion is set as the standby display.
- Playing the video/i-motion set as the standby display ▶P137

5 Select **Back**

INFORMATION

- You can play video/i-motion attached to sent mail by selecting the file name in the same way as above. However, you cannot play the video/i-motion if it has been deleted from FOMA terminal.
- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum allowable number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved video/i-motion. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete. Before deletion, you can play video/i-motion by pressing  on the video/i-motion list and view detail information by pressing .

Playing and saving i-motion from i-motion Mail

When video/i-motion is attached to mail and sent, it is stored at the i-motion Mail Center and mail containing a URL to view the i-motion is received. Select the URL to download and play or save the i-motion. Saved i-motion can be played from *i-motion* of Data Box or set for the standby display.

- Maximum number of items that can be saved ▶P38
- i-motion of up to 500 Kbytes can be downloaded.

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode Mail containing a URL for i-motion

2 Select the URL ▶ Select **Yes**

FOMA terminal is connected to the i-motion Mail Center and i-motion download/playback begins.

- Playback screen operating procedure ▶P320

- Playing i-motion attached to mail on a PC requires special software. ●P446
- When i-motion Mail is sent to an i-mode terminal, i-motion can be downloaded up to 50 times for each URL for viewing the i-motion saved at the i-motion Mail Center. When 50 times have been exceeded, i-motion download will be disabled.

Playing and saving melodies from i-mode Mail

Play/Save Melody

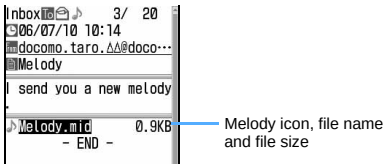
Saved melodies can be played from **Melody** of Data Box or used as a ring alert.

- If the sender uses a terminal other than FOMA D701i, D701iWM, D702i, D851iWM, D901i, D901iS, D902i and D902iS, the received melodies may not play correctly.
- Maximum number of items that can be saved ●P38

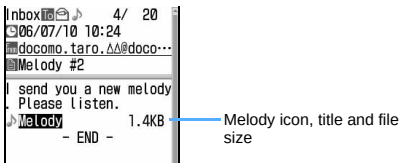
1 Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode Mail with a melody attached

- There are 2 types of display formats for attached melodies depending on the file type.

Displayed under message (SMF format)



Displayed in message (MFi format)



- ♪ : Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal
- ♪📧 : Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal
- ♪✕ : Data error

■ Playing the melody: Select the melody

The melody plays at the volume set for the call alert volume.

- To stop playback: **CH/STOP**

■ Checking the title:

- For melodies displayed under the message (SMF format): Highlight the melody ▶



- For melodies displayed in the message (MFi format): Highlight the melody ▶



■ Displaying the data as text (data display):

- This function is not available with melodies (SMF format) that appear under the message.

① Highlight the melody ▶



- To return to the title display: Highlight the first row of the melody data ▶



2 Highlight the melody ▶



3 Enter a display name (up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters) ▶ Press



The melody is saved in the *i-mode* folder of **Melody**.

INFORMATION

- To play and save the melody during data display, highlight the first row of the displayed data, press **Menu**, and select **Attachment** → **Play** or **Save**.
- On the sent mail view screen, highlight a melody, press **Menu** and select **Attachment** → **Save**.
- You can play melodies attached to sent mail, mail template, and mail in the miniSD memory card in the same way as above.
- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete saved melodies. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete. Before deletion, you can play a melody by pressing **Enter** on the melody list and view detail information on the melody by pressing **Menu**.
- When an attached melody in MFi format has no title, the mail reception date and time are displayed as the title.

Displaying and saving ToruCa from i-mode Mail

Saved ToruCa can be viewed from the **ToruCa** folder of the ToruCa list.

- Maximum number of items that can be saved ●P38

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode Mail with ToruCa attached



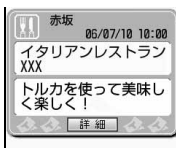
ToruCa icon, file name and file size

- : Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal
- : Data error

■ **Checking the title: Highlight the file name**

▶

2 Select the file name



■ **Saving without downloading ToruCa (details): Highlight the file name** ▶

The ToruCa is saved in the **ToruCa** folder of the ToruCa list.

3 Select 詳細 (Details) ▶ Select Yes

The ToruCa (details) is received.

INFORMATION

- You can display and save ToruCa from the sent mail view screen in the same way as above. You can also display ToruCa on the mail template view screen, but cannot save it from that screen.
- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a message appears indicating that the ToruCa cannot be saved. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete saved ToruCa. Before deletion, you can display ToruCa by pressing on the ToruCa list.

Delete attachments

Delete Attachment

You can delete images, melodies and ToruCa attached to received mail.

- Melodies (MFi format) displayed in the message or links to start i-α ppli cannot be deleted.
- Images exceeding 10,000 bytes can be deleted from the **i-mode** folder of **Image** (My Picture).

Example Deleting an attached image

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode Mail with an image attached

2 Highlight the file name ▶

- To delete all attachments:

3 Select Yes

- The file name of the deleted attachment is displayed in a light color and cannot be selected.

INFORMATION

- On the sent mail view screen, highlight an image, melody or ToruCa, press and select **Attachment** → **Delete** or **Delete all**.
- When you display a received mail with the attached image exceeding 10,000 bytes that has been deleted, the storage period of the attached image is displayed in a light color and cannot be selected.

Menu 11 / Menu 14 / Menu 15

Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox

Inbox/Outbox

You can check received/sent/unsent i-mode Mail and SMS. The received i-mode Mail and SMS are saved to folders in **Inbox** and the sent i-mode Mail and SMS are to folders in **Outbox**. Folders in **Unsent messages** contain the i-mode Mail and SMS that were saved without sending and that failed to be sent and the i-mode Mail that is set to be sent automatically upon entering the service area.

- Maximum number of items that can be saved
▶ P38

Example Displaying received mail in **Inbox**

1

- To display sent mail in **Outbox**:
- To display unsent mail in **Unsent messages**:

2 Select a folder

The received mail list is displayed.

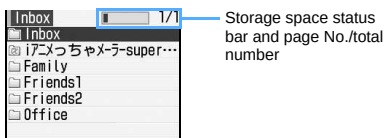
- Select a Message i-α ppli folder to start the corresponding i-α ppli.
- To display mail in a Message i-α ppli folder without starting i-α ppli: Highlight the folder ▶

3 Select a mail

- You can make calls, send i-mode Mail, or display sites using phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs. You can also register the phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs in the phonebook and the URLs in Bookmark. In addition, you can copy text. ●P253
- Selecting mail from the unsent mail list displays the mail composition screen.

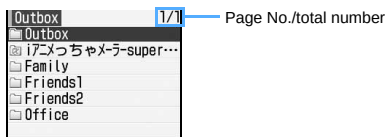
Reading the folder list screen

■ Received mail folder list screen



- (in gray): No mail
- (in yellow): No unread mail
- : No mail/No unread mail (Privacy on)
- : No mail/No unread mail (used for Message i-α ppli)
- : Unread mail exists
- : Unread mail exists (Privacy on)
- : Unread mail exists (used for Message i-α ppli)

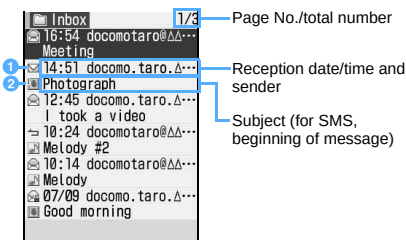
■ Sent/unsent mail folder list screen



- (in gray): No mail
- (in yellow): Mail exists
- : Privacy on
- : Message i-α ppli

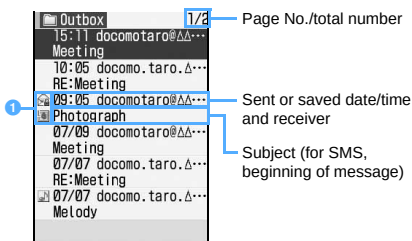
Reading the mail list screen

■ Received mail list screen



- : Unread
 - : Unread (unable to reply)
 - : Read
 - : Read (unable to reply)
 - : Read (replied)
 - : Read (forwarded)
 - : Protected
 - : Protected (unable to reply)
 - : Protected (replied)
 - : Protected (forwarded)
 - For replied/forwarded mail, icon indication priority is given to the last operation made.
 - : Image of up to 10,000 bytes attached
 - : Image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached
 - : Melody attached
 - : ToruCa attached
 - : Files of various types attached
 - : SMS
 - : Delivered report/missed call notice
 - : i-α ppli To
 - : Mail used for Message i-α ppli
- When **Display 1 row** is set in Mail List Setting, is displayed before the subject of a mail with attachment.
 - When an image exceeding 10,000 bytes is attached, the icons for attached images of up to 10,000 bytes, attached melodies or ToruCa are not displayed.
 - When the sender is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.
 - For SMS sent from overseas, "+" is appended at the beginning of the sender address.
 - In the reception date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
 - The subject may not be displayed depending on the received i-mode Mail.
 - For SMS which contains an error, is indicated and the reception date/time becomes "--/--" (only on the reception day). The sender is not displayed.

■ Sent/unsent mail list screen



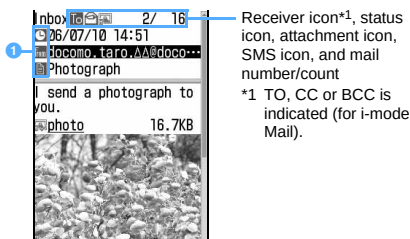
1 No icon: Unprotected

- : Protected
- : Auto-send
- : Protected (auto-send)
- : Auto-send failure
- : Protected (auto-send failure)
- : Image of up to 10,000 bytes attached
- : Image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached
- : Melody attached
- : i-motion attached
- : ToruCa attached
- : Files of various types attached
- : SMS
- : Mail used for Message i-appli

- When **Display 1 row** is set in Mail List Setting, is displayed before the subject of a mail with attachment in the sent mail list.
- When an i-motion or image exceeding 10,000 bytes is attached, the icons for attached images of up to 10,000 bytes, melodies or ToruCa are not displayed.
- In the sent or saved date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- When the receiver is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

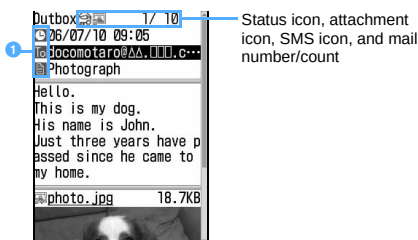
Reading the mail view screen

■ Received mail view screen



- 1 : Reception date and time
- : Sender
- : Receiver (TO) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Receiver (CC) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Subject (**Received SMS**, **SMS report request** or **Notify missed call** for SMS)
- : Sender (unable to reply)
- : Receiver (To) (unable to reply) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Receiver (CC) (unable to reply) (only i-mode Mail)
- For SMS which contains an error, is displayed.

■ Sent mail view screen



- 1 : Sent date and time
- : Receiver (TO)
- : Receiver (CC) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Receiver (BCC) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Subject (**Sent SMS** for SMS)

INFORMATION

- The character which cannot be displayed is replaced by a blank, etc.
- When decorated mail is received from a PC, operations may not be the same as on the PC.
- When there is more than one data item attached in the message text (links to start i-appli or melodies (MFi format) displayed in the message), the attached data becomes invalid. In this case, is displayed for the attachment icon.

- When viewing Deco-mail, URLs for downloading images or i-motion may not be visible depending on the background color of the mail.
- For i-mode Mail, the mail address of sender or receiver is checked against the mail address field in the phonebook data. For SMS, the phone number of sender or receiver is checked against the phone number field in the phonebook data. For details on checking with the phonebook, see "Name displays". ➡P107
- The subject and sender of the received SMS, delivered report, and missed call notice are displayed on the view screen as shown below:

Item	SMS	Delivered report	Missed call notice
Subject	Received SMS	SMS report request	Notify missed call
Sender	Phone number	SMS Center	DoCoMo SMS

- When the phone number is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed in the sender field.
- When the caller ID is not notified, the following characters are displayed in the sender field:

User unset:

Message was sent by setting not to notify the caller ID

Payphone:

Message was sent from a payphone

Not supported:

Message was sent using a procedure that does not provide the caller ID

- When there are attachments or links to start i-appli, the icon, the file name, etc. are displayed on the view screen.
 - Description of image icons ➡P243
 - Description of melody icons ➡P245
 - Description of ToruCa icons ➡P246
 - Starting i-appli from links ➡P283

Adding/deleting folders

Adding folders

- In **Inbox**, you can add up to 40 folders other than the **Inbox** folder and Message i-appli folders.
- In **Outbox** or **Unsent messages**, you can add up to 20 folders other than the **Outbox** folder or the **Unsent messages** folder and Message i-appli folders respectively.
- Folder settings for the **Inbox**, **Outbox** and **Unsent messages** folders and Message i-appli folders cannot be changed.

Example Adding a folder in **Inbox**

1  

- **Outbox** ➡P246
- **Unsent messages** ➡P246

2  

■ **Changing folder settings: Highlight a folder** ➡  

■ **Moving up or down the folder: Highlight a folder** ➡  ➡  or 

3 **Select each item to set**

Folder name:

Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters).

Privacy:

When **ON** is set, the folder is not displayed when Privacy Mode is active (**Hide secret fldrs** set for **Mail**).

4 **Press** 

Deleting folders

- The **Inbox**, **Outbox** and **Unsent messages** folders registered by default cannot be deleted.
- Folders containing protected mail cannot be deleted. Cancel protection and then delete the folders.
- Message i-appli folders cannot be deleted when the i-appli for the folder exists.

Example Deleting a folder in **Inbox**

1  

- **Outbox** ➡P246
- **Unsent messages** ➡P246

2 **Highlight a folder** ➡  

3 **Enter the terminal security code** ➡
Select Yes

Checking number of mail items Msgs. in Folder

You can check the number of received, sent or unsent mail saved in each folder.

Example Checking the number of received mail saved

1  

- **Sent mail** ➡P246
- **Unsent mail** ➡P246

2 **Highlight a folder** ➡ **Press**  

INFORMATION

- On the mail list screen, press  and select **Display** → **Check No. of items**.

Checking mail addresses

Display Address

You can view an entire mail address when the whole address is not displayed or when the address is registered in the phonebook and only the name is displayed.

Example Checking the mail address of a received mail

1 ► Select a folder ► Select a mail

• Sent mail  P246 • Mail templates  P237

2 Select a sender or receiver

INFORMATION

- To check multiple mail addresses at one time, press  on the mail view screen and select **Display** → **Display address**. In the received/sent/unsent mail list, highlight the mail to display mail address, press  and select **Display** → **Display address**. All receiver's addresses are displayed for sent/unsent mail, and the addresses of sender and all receivers (except you) for received mail (**TO:** and **CC:** are also displayed).

Moving received/sent mail to another folder

Move Mail

Saved mail can be moved or copied to other folders or the miniSD memory card.

Example Moving a received mail to another folder

1 ► Select a folder

• Sent mail  P246 • Unsent mail  P246

2 Highlight a received mail ►

   
 **Moving selected mails:**     ►
 Select mails ► 

 **Moving all mails in the folder:**

 **Copying a mail to the miniSD memory card: Highlight a received mail ►**

    ► **Select Yes**

 **Copying all mails to the miniSD memory card (Backup):**     ► **Enter the terminal security code ► Select Yes**

3 ► Select the destination folder ► Select Yes

INFORMATION

- To copy an unsent mail to the miniSD memory card, highlight a mail in the unsent mail list, press  and select **Move/Copy** → **Copy to miniSD** → **One item**. To back up, press  in the unsent mail list and select **Move/Copy** → **Copy to miniSD** → **Backup**.
- If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, **Unable to display message** appears and the operation may be canceled.
- When i-mode Mail with the auto-send setting is moved to a Message i-appli folder, the auto-send setting is canceled.
- The protection setting is not copied on the miniSD memory card.

Searching mail

Mail Search

Search received/sent mail by specifying sender/receiver or by received/sent date.

- Received mails are searched by specifying sender or received date.
- Sent mails are searched by specifying receiver or sent date.

Example Searching received mails by sender

1

• Sent mail  P246

2 ► Select the phonebook entry to use for search



- To search by received date or sent date:    ► Select the date
- When you highlight a phonebook entry or a date, when **Display 1 row** is set in Mail List Setting, the first 4 mails that meet the search condition are displayed. When **Display 2 rows** is set, the first 2 mails that meet the search condition are displayed.
- Press  to display all mails in a list that meet the search condition.
- If you search sent mails by receiver, the mails are searched even if the party registered in the phonebook is set in the address after the second item (the first address is displayed on the screen).

- To display the phonebook entry with Secret Attribute set, activate Secret Mode.

3 Select a mail to display

- The search result screen can be operated in the same way as the mail list.
- To cancel mail search:

INFORMATION

- In the received mail or sent mail list, press and select **Search message** → **With phonebook** or **With scheduler**. In this case, only the mails in the selected folder are searched.

Sorting received/sent mail

Sort

You can temporarily change the order of received or sent mail list. Closing the list resets the sorting order to **By date**.

- You can select from **By date**, **By sender** (**By address** for sent mail), or **By title**.
- You cannot change the order of unsent mail and received/sent SMS in UIM.

Default **By date**

Example Sorting the received mail list

1 **Select a folder**

- Sent mail

2 to to

INFORMATION

- When **By sender** or **By address** is set, the mail will be sorted by mail address not by name in the phonebook even if the mail address is registered in the phonebook.
- When **By title** is set, if the subject contains both one-byte and two-byte characters, the mail may not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- When **By title** is set, the mail will not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary if any SMS is saved in the same folder and beginning of the message is displayed as subject.

Changing the read/unread status of received mail

- You cannot change the read/unread status of protected received mail.

Example Changing a read mail to unread

1 **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight a mail**

■ **Changing an unread mail to read:**

Highlight a mail

■ **Changing multiple read mails to unread:**

Select Yes

■ **Changing multiple unread mails to read:**

Select Yes

■ **Changing all mails in the folder to unread:**

■ **Changing all mails in the folder to read:**

Protecting received/sent mail

Protect Mail

You can protect received, sent and unsent mail to avoid accidental deletion or being overwritten when there is not enough storage space.

- Maximum number of items that can be protected
- Unread mail cannot be protected.

Example Protecting a received mail

1 **Select a folder**

- Sent mail • Unsent mail

2 **Highlight a mail**

The mail is protected and the icon changes to one of the following:

Received mail : (read) (unable to reply)
 (replied) (forwarded)

Sent/unsent mail:

- To cancel protection: Highlight a mail

■ **Protecting selected mails:**

Select mails

- Selecting all is not possible when the number of unprotected mail being saved exceeds the limit.

■ **Protecting all mails in the folder:**

■ **Canceling protection of selected mails:**

■ **Canceling protection of all mails:**

INFORMATION

- On the mail view screen, press and select **Protect** or **Cancel protection**.

- If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message.* appears and the operation may be canceled.
- When **Protect all** is selected, mails are protected in the chronological order, most recent first, until the limit is reached.

Deleting received/sent mail

Delete Mail

Unnecessary mail can be deleted from **Inbox**, **Outbox** and **Unsent messages**.

- Protected mail cannot be deleted. When you delete all mails at one time, protected mail remains undeleted even if it matches the specified criteria. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

Deleting received mail

○: Available ×: Not available

Deletion method	Screen for starting operation		
	Folder list	Mail list	Mail view
All messages	○	×	×
Read in folder	○	○*1	×
All in folder	○	○*1	×
7days past in fldr*3	○	○*1	×
14days past in fldr*3	○	○*1	×
30days past in fldr*3	○	○*1	×
One item/Selected item*2	×	○	○
Selected items	×	○	×
All search result	×	○*2	×

- *1 Not available from the mail search results list
 *2 Available only from the mail search results list
 *3 Mail is deleted when the specified number of days has passed since it was received.
- When you delete all mails at one time, unread mails that match the specified criteria are also deleted.

Example Deleting a received mail

-
- Deleting all mails: Enter the terminal security code Go to Step 4
- Select a folder
- Highlight a received mail
- Deleting selected mails: Select mails
- Deleting read mail in the folder:

- Deleting all mails in the folder: Enter the terminal security code
- Deleting when the specified number of days has passed: to

4 Select Yes

INFORMATION

- On the mail view screen, press and select **Delete**.
- If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message.* appears and the operation may be canceled.

Deleting sent/unsent mail

○: Available ×: Not available

Deletion method	Screen for starting operation		
	Folder list	Mail list	Mail view (sent mail)
All messages	○	×	×
All in folder	○	×	×
All items*1	×	○*2	×
One item/Selected item*3	×	○	○
Selected items	×	○	×
All search result	×	○*3	×

- *1 Deleting all mails in the folder
 *2 Not available from the sent mail search results list
 *3 Available only from the sent mail search results list

Example Deleting a sent mail

-
- Unsent mail
- Deleting all mails: Enter the terminal security code Go to Step 4
- Select a folder
- Highlight a mail
- Deleting selected mails: Select mails
- Deleting all sent mails in the folder: Enter the terminal security code

4 Select Yes

INFORMATION

- In the folder list, press and select **Delete message**.
- On the mail view screen, press and select **Delete**.

Useful functions of mail

When a mail message contains phone numbers, mail addresses or URLs, select them to make voice/videophone/PushTalk calls (Phone To/AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To), or connect to sites (Web To). You can also copy characters in the i-mode Mail or SMS and save phone numbers or mail addresses, etc. in the phonebook.

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

- The operation is the same as when performing the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function from sites.
- When mail is received from a PC, these functions may not be available.

Copying text

You can copy characters in the i-mode Mail, SMS, or mail template being displayed. Copied text can be pasted in entry fields in the mail composition screen, phonebook registration screen, etc.

- For SMS stored in the UIM, you can copy the message text, receiver and sender.
- For Deco-mail, only the text can be copied.
- Copied text is recorded until FOMA terminal is turned off and it can be pasted into other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be retained. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example Copying text from the received mail view screen

1 Display the received mail view screen

- Highlight the item to copy when copying a selected item.

2 2

- When a mail template is displayed, press  3.

3 Select the copying method

Copy text:

Copies a specified range of the message text.

Copy title: Copies the subject.

Copy selected item:

Copies a highlighted item.

- For **Copy text**, specify the copy range. Follow Step 2 in "Copying the URL". ➡P211

4 Display a character entry screen ▶ Paste the copied text

INFORMATION

- When text in the Date To format is included in the message, it needs to be pasted and saved to Notepad before saving as schedule.

Making calls from received/sent mail Phone Call

Calls can be made to the sender of received mail or the receiver of sent mail.

- The mail address (except "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp") and phone number must be registered in the phonebook.
- When mail addresses are registered in the phonebook entry with Secret Attribute set, calls can be made only in Secret Mode.

Example Making a call from received mail

1 Display the received mail list

2 Highlight a mail ▶ 6

- In the received/sent mail view screen, highlight the party to call (sender/receiver) and press  7.
- When there are multiple receivers, the mail address selection screen appears. Select the mail address to make a call to.

3 Set dialing conditions

4 ▶ Select Yes

Registering phone numbers, addresses and URLs in the phonebook

You can register phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs in the i-mode Mail or SMS being displayed in the phonebook. You can register the data as a new entry or add the data to an existing entry.

Example Registering data from the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail containing an item

2 Highlight the item ▶ 4

- You can register only the items that can be highlighted.

3 Press **[1]** to register a new entry or **[2]** to add to an existing entry

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook". ➡P212

INFORMATION

- On the view screen for sent mail, SMS in the UIM, or mail in the miniSD memory card, press **[Menu]** and select **Save**.
- Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.
- When multiple addresses are listed with no space in the message text, you may not be able to register them.

Registering URLs in Bookmark

You can register URLs in the message text of the i-mode Mail or SMS being displayed in Bookmark.

Example Registering a bookmark from the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail containing a URL

2 Highlight the URL ▶ **[Menu]** **[4]** **[3]**

3 Select a folder

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 of "Registering in the bookmark". ➡P205

INFORMATION

- Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.

Saving mail in the Data Center

Data Security Service

Data Security Service allows you to save i-mode Mail and SMS in the Data Center.

- Data Security Service is a fee-based service that requires you to make an application. For more information, see "i-mode User's Manual".

Saving mail

- Mail for which the file capacity of one item exceeds 10,000 bytes cannot be saved.

Example Saving received mail

1 **[Menu]** **[1]** ▶ Select a folder

- Sent mail ➡P246 • Unsent mail ➡P246

2 **[Menu]** **[4]** **[5]** ▶ Select mail ▶ **[Menu]**

- Up to 10 items can be selected.
- Delivered report cannot be saved.

■ **Saving sent mail:** **[Menu]** **[4]** **[5]** ▶ Select mail ▶ **[Menu]**

■ **Saving unsent mail:** **[Menu]** **[4]** **[3]** ▶ Select mail ▶ **[Menu]**

3 Select **Yes** ▶ Enter the terminal security code

The selected mail is saved in the Data Center. When saving is completed, the result is displayed.

- The result disappears in about 5 seconds and returns to the mail list. Press **[End]** to return to the list immediately.

INFORMATION

- If you have not yet subscribed to Data Security Service, a screen appears to inform you of that effect.

Restoring mail

Mail saved in the Data Center is saved from the site of the Data Center to FOMA terminal. For more information, see "i-mode User's Manual".

- Files will be protected when restored. However, this is not applicable in the following cases:
 - When unread mail saved in the Data Center is restored
 - When the maximum number of protected mails that can be saved in FOMA terminal is reached

Checking the communication log

You can check the log of communication with the Data Center.

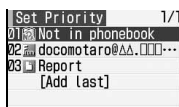
- Up to 30 accesses are recorded. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted chronologically.

1 **[Menu]** **[6]** **[9]** **[2]** ▶ Select the communication log

- When a Message i-appli folder is selected, a message appears indicating that mail in the selected folder is used for i-appli. To set as the folder to sort mail to, select **Yes**.

5 Specify the priority

The new criteria is added above the selected row.



- To set the first criteria in the list: Select **[Add last]**.
- To add the criteria to the end of the list: Select **[Add last]**.
- Criteria are listed in the order of priority.
- When registered criteria are changed, **[Move to last]** is displayed instead of **[Add last]**.

INFORMATION

- If the sender uses an i-mode terminal with its phone number set as the mail address, only the phone number is received as the address. Therefore, no sorting occurs when "mobile phone number @docomo.ne.jp" is specified in the criteria.
- When the same mail address is registered in both of the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook, the FOMA terminal phonebook addresses are given priority for sorting. The sort priority set in this function may not apply.
- The criteria are checked in accordance with their priority. For example, when 2 criteria are set, mail is sorted as follows:
 - ① Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of first priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, the procedure goes to ②.
 - ② Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of second priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, it is saved in the **Inbox** folder or the **Outbox** folder.

Checking and changing sort criteria

1 or

2 Select the sort criteria

- You can change or delete sort criteria while checking it.

■ Changing registered sort criteria:

- ① **Highlight the sort criteria** **Specify the sort criteria**
 - Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Setting sort criteria". ◀P255
- ② **Select Yes**

■ Changing the priority: Highlight the sort criteria **Select the position**

- The criteria is moved to just above the selected row. To move to the end of the list, select **[Move to last]**.

■ Deleting criteria: Highlight the sort criteria **Select Yes**

- To delete all: Enter the terminal security code **Select Yes**

Setting auto sort

- Even if **ON** is set, no sorting occurs when sort criteria are not set.

Default all ON

Example Sorting received mail automatically

1

2

- To sort sent mail automatically

3 Press or

Menu 194

Registering signature for mail

Signature

You can register the signature to be inserted in the message of i-mode Mail and SMS. You can also set whether to automatically insert the signature when you compose mail.

Editing and registering signature for mail

- The signature can be decorated. However, Melo-deco cannot be used. Decoration reduces the number of characters you can enter accordingly.
- Mail becomes Deco-mail if any decorated signature is inserted into the mail.

Default not recorded

1

2 **Enter the signature (up to 9,998 one-byte or 4,999 two-byte characters)**

- Up to 10,000 one-byte or 5,000 two-byte characters can be entered. However, since a line feed is entered when you insert a signature, reduce 2 one-byte or 1 two-byte for line feed.

3 Press

Setting whether to insert signature automatically

- Even if **ON** is set, the signature cannot be inserted when not registered.

Default **ON**

- 1 **9** **4** ▶ **1**
- 2 Press **1** or **2**

INFORMATION

- The signature text is counted as characters in the message. If there is no available space, for number of characters of the signature and line feed, a signature cannot be inserted.
- When **Auto add** is set to **ON**, the signature is always inserted at the end of message when replying and forwarding. However, as for the background color which is set for Signature, it is reflected only at the state of composing i-mode Mail or replying to received i-mode Mail without quoting.
- When a signature is registered, you can insert the signature by pressing in the message text entry screen and selecting **Phrase/Kuten/Quote** → **Add signature**, regardless of this function's setting. However, as for the background color which is set for Signature, it is reflected only at the state of non-input in i-mode Mail
- The signature cannot be inserted in SMS in following cases:
 - When the number of characters exceed 70 (one- or two-byte), if you add the signature.
 - When the signature is decorated.
 - When composing SMS if the font type is set to **English** in SMS Setting.
 - When replying to or forwarding SMS for which the font type is set to **English**.
- When the registered signature includes phone number, mail address or URL and is sent to an i-mode terminal, the receiver can use the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function.

Menu 164 / Menu 2632 / ▼ 632

Setting items to inquire to the i-mode Center

Message Retrieval Setting

- **Mail**, **MessageR**, and **MessageF** are all selected as ☒ by default. If you do not want to check for any item, change it to ☐.

Default **selected (all)**

- 1 **6** **4**
- 2 **Select the item to inquire**
 - You cannot save the setting with no items selected.
- 3 Press

Menu 1972

Setting to select and receive only necessary mail

Receive Option Setting

Default **OFF**

- 1 **9** **7** **2** ▶ Press **1** or **2**
 - When **ON** is selected, a message appears indicating that mails will not be automatically delivered. Press .

Menu 196

Registering addresses in a mail group

Mail Group Setting

By registering multiple mail addresses in a mail group, multiple addresses can be set by a simple operation when composing i-mode Mail.

- Up to 20 mail groups can be registered. Up to 5 mail addresses can be saved in each mail group.

- 1 **9** **6**
- 2
 - **Renaming a mail group:** Highlight a mail group ▶ **2**
 - **Copying a mail group:** Highlight a mail group ▶ **3**
 - **Deleting a mail group:** Highlight a mail group ▶ **4** **1** ▶ **Select Yes**
 - **Deleting all mail groups:** **4** **2** ▶ **Select Yes**
- 3 **Enter a mail group name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)** ▶

- To add another group:

4 Select a mail group

5 ▶ Select each item to set

Address Type:

Sets TO, CC and BCC. ▶P229

Address:

Enter a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters).

- To select from the phonebook: ▶ Select the party
- When multiple mail addresses have been registered, select a mail address.

6

- When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the name in the phonebook is displayed. When the mail address is not registered in the phonebook, the mail address is displayed.
- To add another mail address to the mail group: Repeat from Step 5

■ **Editing a mail address: Select a mail address (or name) ▶ Edit the mail address** ▶ 

■ **Deleting a mail address: Highlight a mail address (or name) ▶  2 ▶ Select Yes**

■ **Displaying mail address details:  3** ▶  after checking the details

7 Press

The mail addresses are registered in the mail group.

- Highlight a mail group and press  to compose i-mode Mail.

INFORMATION

- If there is no TO address entered, mail cannot be sent.

Menu 1951

Setting whether to quote the message when replying Mail Reply Format

You can set whether to quote the message text when you reply to i-mode Mail or SMS. In addition, you set the quote characters that are added to the quoted message.

Default Quote:Yes
Quote characters:> (one-byte character)

1

2 Select each item to set

Quote:

Sets whether to quote the message when replying to mail.

Quote characters:

Up to 2 one-byte or 1 two-byte character can be entered.

- The quote characters are counted as characters in the message.
- If a character that cannot be sent is specified, the default character is used.

3 Press

Menu 1952

Setting whether to insert a quick reply message when replying Quick Reply Setting

- Quick reply messages cannot be inserted in SMS messages.
- Even if **ON** is set, a quick reply message cannot be inserted when not registered.

Default **ON**

1 ▶ Press or

Menu 1953

Registering quick reply messages to be inserted when replying Quick Reply Template

- Up to 5 messages can be registered.
- To add a new quick reply message when there are 5 default messages, select and edit or delete a default message.

Default OKです。(OK) NGです。(No Good) ありがとう！(Thank you!) ゴメンなさい！(Sorry!) 後ほど連絡します。(Get in touch later.)

1 ▶ Select a message2 Enter the message (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters) ▶ ▶ Select Yes

- A line feed cannot be inserted.

■ **Viewing a registered message: Highlight a message in the quick reply message list** ▶ 

■ **Deleting a registered message: Highlight a message in the quick reply message list** ▶  1 ▶ Select Yes

■ **Registering a new message: Select <New reply template> in the quick reply message list ▶ Enter the message** ▶ 

■ **Restoring the default settings:  2 in the quick reply message list ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select Yes**

Menu 1975

Setting the display style of the mail list

Mail List Setting

The display style of the mail list can be set for received/sent mail.

- The 2-row display applies to unsent mail and SMS in the UIM regardless of this setting.

Default Display 2 rows

Display 2 rows



Display 1 row



Sender address of the highlighted received mail (first receiver address for sent mail)

1 [Envelope Icon] [9] [7] [5] ▶ Press [1] or [2]

Menu 1976

Preventing mail from being peeped

Only View

Specifies whether to set Only View to the i-mode Mail/SMS composition screen, view screen, signature edit screen (not decorated), or mail template display screen.

- Setting **ON** adjusts the contrast of the display screen, making it difficult to see the display, so that one can hardly peep the screen.
- For the following screens, Only View is not available.
 - Entering characters
 - Deco-mail
 - Listing
 - Chat mail

Default OFF

1 [Envelope Icon] [9] [7] [6] ▶ Press [1] or [2]

INFORMATION

- Each time [6] is held down for over a second on the screen which can set Only View, the function switches between the normal display and the Only View display, irrespective of the settings. Switching displays on each screen will affect the setting for Only View as well.

Menu 1973

Setting whether to receive attachments

Incoming Msg. Attach.

You can set whether to receive images, melodies and ToruCa attached to i-mode Mail.

Default Image/Melody/ToruCa

1 [Envelope Icon] [9] [7] [3] ▶ Press any of [1] to [4]

INFORMATION

- When **Not receive** or **Melody only** is set, images inserted in a message cannot be received.
- Note that unreceived attachments are deleted in the i-mode Center and become unavailable.
- Melodies in MFi format pasted in the message are received regardless of this setting.

Menu 1974 / Menu 2633 / ♦ 633

Setting whether to play melodies automatically

Attachment Auto-play

You can set whether to play melodies attached to i-mode Mail or Message R/F automatically when the mail or message is displayed.

Default Auto play

1 [Envelope Icon] [9] [7] [4] ▶ Press [1] or [2]

INFORMATION

- When **Auto play** is set, displaying received mail, sent mail, mail template or Message R/F with a melody attached plays the melody once at the ring volume for call set in at the volume set for the ring volume for calls. When more than one melody is attached, the melodies play one after another. Press [H/END] to stop playing.
- When Message R/F is displayed automatically, melodies are not played automatically even **Auto play** is set.

Selecting the type of mail to display

Display Type

Only mail of the specified type is displayed. Closing the list resets the setting to **Display all items**.

- For received mail, you can select from **Display all items**, **Unread item only**, **Read item only**, or **Protected item only**.
- For sent mail, you can select **Display all** or **Display protected**.
- You cannot change the display type of unsent mail and received/sent SMS in UIM.

Default Display all items (for received mail)/Display all (for sent mail)

Example Selecting the display type for received mail

1 [Envelope Icon] [1] ▶ Select a folder

- Sent mail P266

2 [Menu Icon] [7] [2] ▶ Press any of [1] to [4]

INFORMATION

- When **Read item only** is set, protected mail is not displayed.

Changing the font size of the mail view screen

Font Size

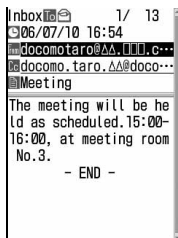
You can change the font size of the displayed message for received mail, sent mail and mail template.

- The change of font size applies to all mail including incoming/outgoing mail, mail template, and mail in the miniSD memory card.
- The settings in this function are reflected to **Mail view** of Font Size Setting.

Default Medium (standard)



Large: 24 dots



Medium (standard): 20 dots



Small: 16 dots

Example Changing on the received mail view screen

1 Select a folder

- Sent mail

2 Select a mail

- When a mail template is displayed, press .

3 Press any of to

INFORMATION

- The font size can be changed from **All listed** or **Mail view** of Font Size Setting.
- On the view screen for received/sent/unsent mail in the miniSD memory card, press and select **Font size**.
- The new font size of the mail view screen is retained until it is changed.
- The font size at the time of composing and editing mail can be changed from or **All listed** or **Text input** of Font Size Setting.

Menu 191

Setting operations for incoming mail

Mail Alert

You can set the operations that are performed when i-mode Mail or SMS is received.

- The settings of this function are also reflected to Sound Setting, Light Alert Setting and Vibrator Setting.

Default Ring alert: Melody/ メール・メロディ A (Mail, melody A) Light alert: Glimmer/Aqua
Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10

1

2 Select each item to set

Ring alert:

Select **Melody** or **Movie ringtone** and then select a melody or video/i-motion. To disable the ring tone, select **OFF**.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion

Light alert:

Sets the lighting pattern and color of the Enter key.

- When you set the lighting pattern to **Sync melody** or **OFF**, the lighting color cannot be set.

Vibrate alert:

Sets the operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec):

Sets the duration of ring alert (1 to 30 seconds).

3 Press

INFORMATION

- Even if you set **Sync melody** for **Light alert** or **vibrate alert**, operation of lighting or vibrator may not occur depending on the melody.
- When mail is received from a sender with the incoming mail settings made in the phonebook, the phonebook settings take precedence.

Menu 1971

Setting mail reception notification

Display Priority

You can set whether or not to give priority to the display of receiving screen and reception result screen when i-mode Mail, SMS, or Message R/F is received during FOMA terminal operation.

Default Show message

1 Press or

Continue operation:

Displays neither the receiving screen nor reception result screen.

Show message:

Displays the receiving screen and reception result screen.

INFORMATION

- When **Continue operation** is set, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring alert is not activated in any mode other than the standby mode (while other function is running). The Enter key for incoming mails does not light nor flash.
- Even when **Show message** is set, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring alert is not activated during a voice call, video-phone call, PushTalk, camera use, i-appli operation, streaming type i-motion play, alarm clock or alarm sounding. The Enter key for incoming mails does not light nor flash.
- When All Lock, PIM Lock, or Public mode (Driving mode) is active, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring alert is not activated, regardless of the setting. The Enter key for incoming calls does not light nor flash.

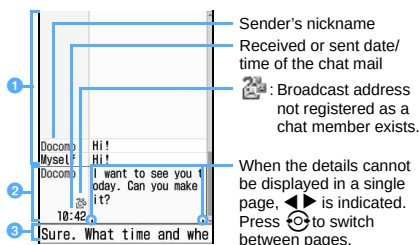
Composing and sending chat mail

Chat Mail

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation. The sent and received mail can be read on the same screen.

- Mail addresses of the receivers must be registered as chat members in advance.
- Chat mail is not available when Receive Option Setting is **ON** or there is no available storage space for received/sent mail.
- When chat mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it is received as a mail with the subject "チャットメール (Chat mail)". If a mail with the subject containing "チャットメール" is sent from a registered chat member who uses a non-compatible terminal, FOMA terminal can receive it as chat mail.
- The communication fee for sending and receiving chat mail to/from multiple parties is the same as that for sending broadcast mail.

Chat mail screen



1 Sent/received log

100 items from the latest history can be displayed.

- Press Ⓜ to scroll the log when △▽ is displayed in the guide row.
- To scroll by a page: Ⓜ/Ⓜ
- To move to the first row: Ⓜ 5 1
- To move to the last row: Ⓜ 5 2

2 Details field

Displays details of the latest chat mail or the highlighted chat mail. Up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters can be displayed.

3 Text entry field

Menu 13

Adding chat members

Chat Member Setting

- Up to 5 chat members can be registered. You cannot register the same mail address for multiple members.

1 Ⓜ 3

A confirmation screen appears asking whether to add chat members.

- When a member is already registered, the chat mail screen appears. To add another member, press Ⓜ and go to Step 3.

2 Select Yes

3 Ⓜ

4 Select Address field ▶ Enter a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters)

- When registering a mail address for which a secret code is set, register the mail address and set the secret code in the phonebook, and then register only the phone number for chat member.

■ Searching the phonebook: ► Select the party

- When multiple mail addresses are registered, select a mail address.

5 Select **Nickname** field ► Enter a nickname (up to 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters)

- When the mail address matches the address registered in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook (the first 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters) is displayed in the **Nickname** field.
- When no nickname is entered, the first 8 characters preceding the @ symbol in the mail address are displayed.

6 Select **Font color** field ► Select a color

- The color not used for registered members is displayed in the following priority order: blue, red, green, orange, and black.
- The nickname is displayed in the selected color on the chat mail screen.

7

The chat member is displayed.

- To add another member:  ► Repeat Steps 4 to 7

8 Press

Menu 13

Composing and sending chat mail

- Chat mail is sent to all registered members by default. You can select members when sending, but the setting returns to default when you quit chat mail or change chat member information.
- The sent chat mail is saved in the **Outbox** folder of **Outbox**. However, when the sent mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1

- When a confirmation screen appears asking whether to add members, select **Yes** and register.

2 Select the text entry field ► Enter a message (up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters)

- When **ON** is set for **Chat mail** in Edit by Slide, you can display the text entry screen by opening FOMA terminal on the chat mail screen.

■ Copying and pasting text from chat mail log:

① Highlight a chat mail ►

Specify the range

- Specifying the range P410

② Select the text entry field ► Specify the paste location

■ Selecting members to send mail:

► Select addresses ►

3 Press

- When the chat mail is sent correctly, it is displayed on the chat mail screen.

■ Replying to all broadcast addresses of received mail:

INFORMATION

- Chat mail can be displayed on the chat mail screen by the following operations:
 - In the received/sent mail list, highlight a chat mail, press  and select **Display** → **Start chat mail**.
 - In the received/sent mail view screen, press  and select **Display** → **Start chat mail**.
- If chat mail fails to be sent or is unsent when quitting chat mail, it is saved in the **Unsent messages** folder of **Unsent messages**. In this folder, only one chat mail item can be saved. If sending of another chat mail fails, the chat mail saved in the **Unsent messages** folder is overwritten. In addition, the chat mail saved in the **Unsent messages** folder is displayed in the text entry field next time chat mail is started. To resend unsent chat mail, start operation from the chat mail screen.

Receiving chat mail

Receive Chat Mail

When chat mail has been started

When mail with the subject containing “チャットメール” in one-byte or two-byte characters is received from a registered chat member, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

- When chat mail has been activated, the ring alert or vibrator does not start even if a chat mail is received. The Enter key for incoming mails does not light nor flash.
- When chat mail is received from a sender not registered as a chat member, follow the procedure in “When chat mail has not been started” below to display the mail on the chat mail screen.

When chat mail has not been started

Chat mail is saved in the **Inbox** folder of **Inbox** as i-mode Mail.

- When received chat mail matches the criteria set in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1 Highlight the mail to display as chat mail in the received mail list ▶ Press 7 5

- In the received mail view screen, press  3 3.
- If the sender address of the selected mail is not registered as a chat member, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to register it. Select **Yes** to register. ➡ P261
- Deco-mail or HTML mail received from PCs cannot be displayed on the chat mail screen.

Receiving chat mail stored in the i-mode Center**1 Press 1 on the chat mail screen**

If there is chat mail stored in the i-mode Center, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

- When chat mail is received using Check i-mode Message, i-mode Mail is also received at the same time.

INFORMATION

- Even if the message on the chat mail screen contains phone number, mail address or URL, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, or i-appli To function is not available. No attachments are displayed. When you quit chat mail and display the chat mail from **Inbox**, these functions become available.
- When you delete chat mail from **Inbox**, the nickname appears as "-----", date/time as "--/--" and text as **Deleted**. on the chat mail screen.
- Chat mail received from a registered chat member while chat mail is not started will be displayed on the chat mail screen next time chat mail is started.
- The chat mail displayed on the chat mail screen will be marked as read in **Inbox**.
- When mail is sent or received from Message i-appli, the mail is displayed on the chat mail screen when received as chat mail.

Displaying broadcast addresses

Broadcast addresses of received mail can be displayed.

1 Highlight a mail on the chat mail screen ▶ Press 4

- When a broadcast address is not registered as a chat member, **Not recorded** appears in the nickname field. When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the registered name appears instead of the mail address. Press  to display the mail address.

■ Adding unregistered broadcast address for chat member: Highlight an address ▶

- Follow the procedure from Step 5 in "Adding chat members". ➡ P262

■ Copying broadcast addresses: Highlight an address ▶ 2**Deleting all the chat mail log**

All chat mail on the chat mail screen can be deleted.

- The chat mail in **Inbox** or **Outbox** is also deleted except for protected mail.

1 9 on the chat mail screen ▶ Select Yes**Editing chat members**

You can edit chat member information and add/delete members. Also, you can check the information about registered members and replace all registered members.

1 7 on the chat mail screen**2 Select a member ▶ Edit****■ Deleting a member: Highlight a member ▶**

▶ Select Yes

■ Displaying member details:

②  after checking the details

■ Adding a member: **■ Replacing all members by mail group:**

▶ Select a mail group ▶ Select Yes

All members are replaced by those registered in the selected mail group.

3 Press **Setting personal information**

You can set your nickname and text color displayed on the chat mail screen.

1 8 on the chat mail screen

2 Select **Nickname** field ▶ Enter a nickname (up to 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters)

- When no nickname is entered, **Myself** is displayed on the chat mail screen.

3 Select **Text color** field ▶ Select a color

4 Press

Quitting chat mail

1 or on the chat mail screen

2 Select **No**

Chat mail quits. The previous chat mail log is displayed next time chat mail is started.

- When **Yes** is selected, all chat mails are deleted. The chat mail in **Inbox** or **Outbox** is also deleted except for protected mail.

Menu 192

Setting operations for incoming chat mail

Chat Mail Alert

Set the operations for incoming chat mail when chat mail has not been started.

- The settings of this function are also reflected to Sound Setting, Light Alert Setting and Vibrator Setting.

Default Alert setting: **Customize**

Ring alert: Melody/メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B) Light alert: Glimmer/Lavender
Vibrate alert: OFF
Ring time (sec): 10

1

2 Select each item to set

Alert setting:

Specifies whether to set the operations for incoming chat mail or follow the settings for Mail Alert.

- When **Customize** is set, the following items can be set.

Ring alert:

Select **Melody** or **Movie ringtone** and then select a melody or video/i-motion. To disable the ring alert, select **OFF**.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion ▶P137

Light alert:

Sets the lighting pattern and color of the Enter key.

- When you set the lighting pattern to **Sync melody** or **OFF**, the lighting color cannot be set.

Vibrate alert:

Sets the operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec):

Sets the duration of ring alert (1 to 30 seconds).

3 Press

INFORMATION

- When more than one mail is received at the same time, this function setting applies only when the last received mail is chat mail.
- Even if you set **Sync melody** for **Light alert** or **Vibrate alert**, operation of lighting or vibrator may not occur depending on the melody.

Menu 171

Composing and sending SMS

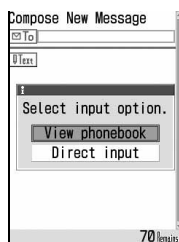
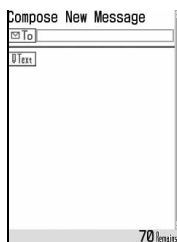
Compose SMS

Compose and send SMS messages. SMS can be saved without sending.

- Maximum number of items that can be saved ▶P38
- If you use one-byte katakana, the receiver may not be able to display them correctly.
- When you send SMS, pictograms other than ♥, ♥ or , are replaced by one-byte space, and ♥ is replaced by ♥.
- International SMS can be sent and received to/from the parties that use overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. Please visit the DoCoMo website for the countries where the service is provided and available overseas carriers.
- Reading the received/sent/unsent SMS list/view screen ▶P247

Example Composing and sending SMS message by entering address directly

1 ▶ Select field



2 Select Direct input ▶ Enter the address (the other party's phone number)

- To send to a party that uses an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo, enter "+" (by holding down  for over a second) and the country code plus the party's mobile phone number. Omit the first 0 of the phone number. You can also send by entering "010" and the country code plus the party's mobile phone number (add "010" when replying to a received SMS message from overseas).
- You can enter up to 26 characters in the  field. However, up to 20 characters (21 characters if "+" is contained) can be sent as address.

■ Searching the phonebook: Select View phonebook ▶ Select the party

- When multiple phone numbers are registered, select a phone number.

3 Select ▶ Enter the message

- When the font type is set to *Japanese* in SMS Setting, up to 70 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered. A space is also counted as a character in the message.
- When the font type is set to *English* in SMS Setting, up to 160 one-byte characters can be entered. Alphanumerics and symbols (except for ` ° 「」、・ and °) can be sent. A one-byte space is counted as a character in the message.
- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press  to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method (except in the one-byte and two-byte numeric modes). A line feed is counted as a character in the message. However, it is replaced by a one-byte space on the receiver's terminal.

- Inserting a signature:   
- Signature must be registered beforehand.

4 Press

- Saving without sending:  
- If neither the address nor message is entered, the SMS cannot be saved.
 - You can edit and send the unsent SMS.
P239

INFORMATION

- Depending on signal conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- Even if *Not notify* is set in Caller ID Notification, the caller ID is sent to the receiver when SMS is sent.
- If you enter some symbols (| ^ { } [] ~ and ¥) when the font type is English, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced. In this case, you may not be able to send the message even if the number of characters is less than the limit. In this case, reduce the number of characters and send it again.
- When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, SMS cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and/or SMS from *Unsent messages*. P252
- Even when SMS has been sent, a model incompatible with SMS reception cannot receive SMS normally.
- The font type and whether to receive the delivered report must be set in SMS Setting beforehand. You can also change the settings for the delivered report and storage period in the SMS Center while composing SMS.
- When transmission is completed correctly, SMS is saved in the *Outbox* folder of *Outbox*. However, when the sent SMS matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder. When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.
- When transmission fails, an error message appears and SMS is saved in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*. You can edit and send the SMS from the *Unsent messages* folder. P239
- When you set the delivered report to *Request* and send SMS, you will receive a delivered report that notifies you that the message has been received by the other party's FOMA terminal. The delivered report is saved in *Inbox*.

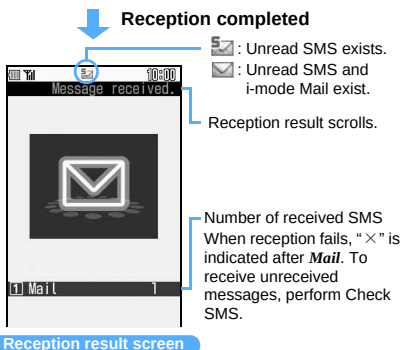
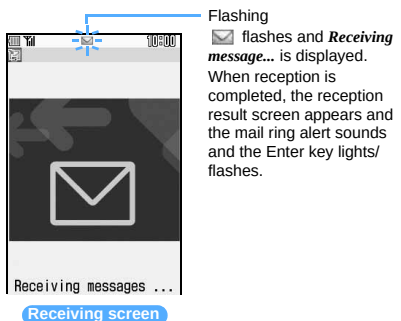
When SMS is received

Receive SMS

When there is incoming SMS, it is automatically received and you are informed by the screen display, ring alert, vibrator, and/or the Enter key. The received SMS is saved in *Inbox*.

- Maximum number of items that can be saved
P38

1 An SMS message is received



- Press **[Enter]** while receiving SMS to stop reception.
- The reception result screen is displayed for about 15 seconds if you do not press any key, or until the ring alert stops, in case you set the Mail Alert for more than 15 seconds. To return to the previous screen immediately, press **[ch/2nd]**.

- **Reading the received SMS immediately:** **[Enter]** or **[Left]** on the reception result screen
Select a folder ▶ Select an SMS message
 - You can reply to (P241) or forward (P242) the received SMS. The operation is the same as for i-mode Mail.

INFORMATION

- While receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F, or connecting to the Data Center, SMS is not automatically received. Perform Check SMS.
- When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest received mail except unread ones is overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep.
 - When the mail cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail, reception of SMS is stopped. or is indicated on the screen (P29). To receive new messages, you need

to display unread mail, change unread mail to read, delete unnecessary mail or cancel mail protection.

- When the UIM already contains 20 messages, SMS may not be received even though there is space available in **Inbox**. or is indicated on the screen (P29). Move to FOMA terminal (P268) or delete SMS from the UIM (P268).
- When the received SMS has been set to be saved directly to the UIM, it will be saved directly on the UIM. Note that, when the number of messages in the UIM reaches 20, SMS cannot be received any more. Delete unnecessary messages and perform Check SMS again.
- The receiving screen or reception result screen may not be displayed depending on Display Priority.
- Short Mail sent from a mova terminal is received by FOMA terminal as SMS.
- When SMS is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation of the ring alert, vibrator and/or the Enter key. For details on checking with the phonebook, see "Name displays". P107
 - When multiple items of SMS are received at the same time, the operation depends on the conditions set for the last SMS received.
- When SMS is received from overseas carriers other than DoCoMo, "+" is added before the sender address. If the sender address with "+" in front of it is registered in the phonebook, the name in the phonebook is displayed.

Menu 162

Checking for SMS

Check SMS

You can make inquiry for any SMS delivered while FOMA terminal was out of service area or turned off.

- Depending on signal condition, you may not be able to perform Check SMS.

1 Press [6] [2]

If the SMS Center stores any messages, they are received.

INFORMATION

- It may take time to receive SMS with Check SMS.

Menu 174

Making SMS settings

SMS Setting

Usually, you do not need to change **SMSC**, **Address** and **Type of Number** settings.

Default Font type: Japanese
 SMS report request: Not request
 Keep in SMS center: 3 days SMSC: DoCoMo
 Address: 81903101652
 Type of Number: international

1   

2 Select each item to set

Font type:

Select Japanese or English language of messages to be sent. The maximum number of characters that can be sent differs depending on the font type.

SMS report request:

Specifies whether to request a delivered report when you send SMS.

Keep in SMS center:

Sets the storage period of sent SMS in the SMS Center in cases the receiver cannot receive the message.

SMSC:

Sets SMSC when you use SMS services other than DoCoMo.

- When **Others** is set, select the **Address** field and enter the address (up to 20 one-byte characters).

Type of Number:

- Select either **international** or **unknown**.
- When you select **Others** for **SMSC** and enter only numbers or numbers plus “*” or “#” in the **Address** field, select **unknown**.

3 Press

INFORMATION

- On the SMS composition screen, press  and select **SMS settings**. In this case, only **SMS report request** and **Keep in SMS center** can be set and the settings are valid only for the SMS being composed.
- The settings for **Font type**, **Keep in SMS center**, **SMSC** and **Type of Number** are also stored on the UIM.

Saving SMS to the UIM

Save SMS to UIM

You can move or copy sent and received SMS from FOMA terminal to the UIM.

Moving/copying SMS to the UIM

- Maximum number of items that can be saved


- SMS in **Unsent messages** cannot be saved to the UIM.
- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to **Received SMS** together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving a received SMS message to the UIM

1 ▶ Select a folder

- Sent SMS 

2 Highlight an SMS message ▶

■ Moving multiple messages:

    ▶ Select messages ▶



■ Copying a message: Highlight a message

▶    

■ Copying multiple messages:

    ▶ Select messages ▶



3 Select Yes

INFORMATION

- On the received/sent mail view screen, press  and select **Move/Copy** → **Move to UIM** or **Copy to UIM**.
- When the UIM already contains 20 messages, you cannot move or copy additional messages to the UIM. Delete unnecessary messages from the UIM.
- The protection setting is not moved/copied to the UIM.

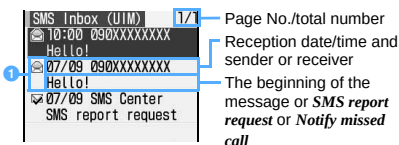
Menu 172 / Menu 173

Displaying SMS in the UIM

Example Displaying received SMS

1

Received SMS is displayed in 2 rows in the received SMS (UIM) list screen.

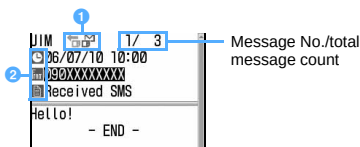


-  : Unread (able to reply)
-  : Unread (unable to reply)
-  : Read (able to reply)
-  : Read (unable to reply)
-  : Delivered report/missed call notice

Next

- The read/unread icon in the list indicates whether SMS in the UIM has been displayed. The status of unread/read before moving or copying is also carried over.
- In the reception date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- To display sent SMS: .

2 Select an SMS message



- 1 : Received (able to reply)
 : Received (unable to reply)
 : Sent
 : Delivered report/missed call notice
 : SMS in the UIM
- 2 : Date and time : Address
 : Sender
 : Sender (unable to reply)
 : Subject (*Received SMS, Sent SMS, or SMS report request*)

- **SMS Center** is displayed as the sender of delivered report and **DoCoMo SMS** as the sender of missed call notice.
- When sent SMS is moved or copied to the UIM, the sent date and time are cleared from the SMS in the UIM.

INFORMATION

- When you reply to/forward or resend SMS in the UIM, the sent SMS is saved in **Outbox** of FOMA terminal.

Moving/copying SMS from the UIM to FOMA terminal

Move/copy SMS saved in the UIM to **Inbox** or **Outbox** of FOMA terminal.

- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to **Inbox** together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving a received SMS message to FOMA terminal

- 1
- To move/copy sent SMS:

2 Highlight an SMS message ▶



- **Moving multiple messages:** ▶
Select messages ▶
- **Copying a message: Highlight a message** ▶
- **Copying multiple messages:** ▶
Select messages ▶

3 Select the destination folder ▶ Select Yes

INFORMATION

- On the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press and select **Move/Copy** → **Move to phone** or **Copy to phone**.
- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, you cannot move or copy SMS. Unprotected SMS and/or i-mode Mail are not overwritten. Delete unnecessary mail/messages.

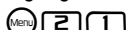
Deleting SMS from the UIM

- When you delete sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are also deleted from the UIM.

Example Deleting a received SMS message

- 1
- To delete sent SMS:

2 Highlight an SMS message ▶



- **Deleting multiple messages:** ▶
Select messages ▶
- **Deleting all messages:** ▶
Enter the terminal security code
- **Deleting all delivered reports:** ▶
Enter the terminal security code

3 Select Yes

INFORMATION

- On the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press and select **Delete**.

i-α ppli

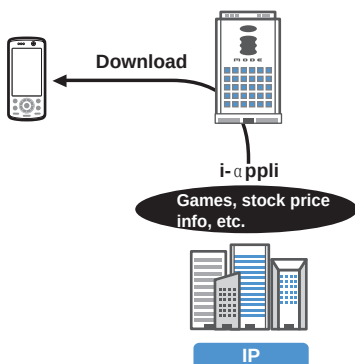
i-α ppli	270
Downloading i-α ppli from sites	271
Starting i-α ppli	273
Using pre-installed i-α ppli	275
Starting i-α ppli with One-key Shortcut	One-key Shortcut 282
Starting i-α ppli with Two-key Shortcut	Two-key Shortcut 282
Automatically starting i-α ppli	282
Starting i-α ppli from a site or mail	i-α ppli To 283
Operating the i-α ppli standby display	i-α ppli Standby Display 284
Managing i-α ppli	284
Using various functions from i-α ppli	287

i-α ppli

Downloading i-α ppli software from sites allows more convenient use of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal). For example, various games can be downloaded to the i-mode terminal for amusement and i-α ppli for stock price information can be downloaded for automatically checking stock prices at regular intervals. Map i-α ppli downloads only necessary data and allows smooth scrolling. In addition, direct registration to the phonebook and schedule from i-α ppli may be made and working with Data Box including saving and obtaining of image may be available with some i-α ppli software.

i-mode terminal

i-mode Center



- Downloading i-α ppli ➡P271
- Starting i-α ppli ➡P273
- Automatically starting i-α ppli ➡P282

INFORMATION

- Some i-α ppli may use the mobile phone or UIM serial number of your i-mode terminal.
- Some i-α ppli attempts to make connection when running. Such attempts can be disabled by presetting not to make connection. ➡P274

Using saved data

Some i-α ppli allows viewing, registering and operating of the data (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icons) saved in your i-mode terminal. The following operations can be performed using saved data:

- Register Phonebook entries
- Use icons
- Add bookmarks
- Save schedules

- Obtain images from Data Box
- Save images in Data Box
- Save ToruCa
- Use the miniSD memory card

INFORMATION

- Some i-α ppli software may not be used in Privacy Mode (*Authorized access set for Phonebook & Logs, My picture or Schedule*).
- Any image saved by i-α ppli is stored in the *i-mode* or *Deco-Mail picture* folder of *Image* (My Picture) and/or the i-α ppli respectively. The obtained ToruCa are saved in *ToruCa* folder of the ToruCa list.

i-α ppli DX

i-α ppli DX is more convenient and enjoyable i-α ppli. In conjunction with i-mode terminal information (such as mail, call log or phonebook data), i-α ppli DX allows you to compose mail on your favorite character screen and inform you of a sender of an incoming call by character's comments when a call is received. Also, i-α ppli DX updates desired information on stock price, game in progress or other information further in real time in conjunction with mail.

Using saved data

Some i-α ppli DX allows viewing, registering and operating of saved data such as mails, redials, received calls and ring alerts in addition to the saved data available with standard i-α ppli (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icons). The following operations can be performed using saved data:

- Register Phonebook entries
- View phonebook
- Add bookmarks
- Use Mail menu
- Use mail composition screen
- View latest redial
- View latest received call
- View latest unread mail
- Change ring alert (phone, mail, Message R/F)
- Obtain images from Data Box
- Save images in Data Box
- Save video in Data Box
- Save ring alert in Data Box
- Refer to or obtain ToruCa
- Save ToruCa
- Change image settings (standby display, incoming/outgoing call, incoming/outgoing videophone call, incoming/outgoing mail, Message R/F reception)
- Use the miniSD memory card
- Use icons
- Save schedules

INFORMATION

- With i-αppli DX, communication may be made to confirm the validity of i-αppli regardless of the NW transmission setting of i-αppli. The number of attempts to make communication and the timing depend on i-αppli.
- Activating i-αppli DX requires Date and Time Setting of FOMA terminal.
- Some i-αppli DX cannot be used in Privacy Mode (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My picture, i-motion* or *Schedule*).
- Any image, video and ring alert saved by i-αppli DX is saved in the *i-mode* or *Deco-Mail picture* folder of *Image, i-mode* folder of *i-motion/Melody* or the i-αppli DX respectively. The obtained ToruCa are saved in *ToruCa* folder of the ToruCa list.

Message i-αppli

Message i-αppli is a type of i-αppli DX that allows more convenient and enjoyable use of i-αppli by providing real-time update of desired information on stock prices, games in progress, etc. through exchanging information by i-mode Mail.

- Mail messages used in Message i-αppli may not be correctly displayed.

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli allows you to read and write the data in the IC card and use convenient functions such as downloading electronic money or tickets or referring to the balance and usage history on FOMA terminal.

- Using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli sends the information in the IC card to IP (Information Provider) of the service that you subscribe to.
- Osaifu-Keitai ●P294

Other convenient functions

■ i-αppli standby display

On the i-αppli standby display, i-αppli can be used as the standby display screen, which allows directly receiving mails and making phone calls. Also the i-αppli standby display enables you to check the latest news and weather forecast on the screen or to have your favorite character inform you of incoming messages and alarms. ●P284

- This function is available with i-αppli supporting the i-αppli standby display.

■ i-αppli auto start

i-αppli can be automatically started at the user-specified time, date, day of week, etc. Some i-αppli allows auto start at the time intervals preset with i-αppli. ●P282

■ Shooting with camera

Images can be taken with the FOMA terminal camera from i-αppli.

- This function is available with i-αppli supporting shooting with camera. ●P287

■ Infrared communication

The data can be exchanged with the devices that are provided with the infrared communication function from i-αppli. It allows enhanced use by interacting with devices provided with the infrared communication function. ●P287

- This function is available with i-αppli supporting infrared communication.
- Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

■ Infrared remote control

Various devices such as electrical appliances that support infrared remote control can be operated from i-αppli. ●P351

For example, the preinstalled Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) allows using your terminal as an AV remote controller which works with TV programs. ●P279

- This function is available with i-αppli supporting infrared remote control. i-αppli that supports the device to control is required.

Downloading i-αppli from sites

You can download your favorite i-αppli from sites and store it in FOMA terminal.

- Maximum number of software that can be saved ●P38
- If i-αppli download has failed due to poor signal quality, etc., i-αppli will not be saved in FOMA terminal.

1 Display the site containing i-αppli ▶ Select i-αppli

The selected i-αppli is downloaded.

- To cancel downloading: (⊕) ▶ Select **Yes**

- **When Software Info Display is set to ON:**
i-α ppli information is displayed. When you select **Yes**, i-α ppli is downloaded.
 - To check the detail information of i-α ppli to be downloaded: 
- **When downloading i-α ppli that uses saved data, serial number of the mobile phone/ UIM or miniSD memory card:**
A confirmation screen is displayed. When you select **Yes**, i-α ppli is downloaded.
 - When **Guide** is displayed in the guide row, the details of the data to be used by i-α ppli can be checked by .
- **When the selected i-α ppli is already downloaded:**
Already downloaded is displayed. When the new version of i-α ppli is released, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to upgrade. When you select **Yes**, i-α ppli is downloaded to upgrade.
- **When the selected i-α ppli is already downloaded to a UIM:**
A confirmation screen asking whether to overwrite or not is displayed. Select **Yes** to overwrite the downloaded i-α ppli.

2 Select a folder to save i-α ppli

- For some i-α ppli, the settings screen for i-α ppli Standby Display, NW transmission or icon information appears. Select each item to set and press .
- For items to set, see Step 3 of "Setting the operating conditions of i-α ppli". ➡P274

3 Select Yes

- The downloaded i-α ppli starts.
- To return to the site screen: Select **No**

INFORMATION

- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen to delete saved i-α ppli. The deleted i-α ppli and the deleted data on the miniSD memory card cannot be restored even if downloading has failed.
- Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-α ppli cannot be downloaded while IC Card Lock is on.
- Depending on the amount of data in the IC card, even if there is enough storage space available for i-α ppli, some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-α ppli cannot be downloaded. In this case, download the i-α ppli again after deleting saved Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-α ppli until enough storage space is available in the IC card according to the instructions on the screen. Note that some i-α ppli applications may not be indicated as being deletable

depending on the type of the i-α ppli. In addition, some i-α ppli applications must be started to delete the data in the IC card before being deleted.

Downloading Message i-α ppli

When Message i-α ppli is downloaded, folders for Message i-α ppli are automatically created in the lists of **Outbox**, **Inbox** and **Unsent messages**. The automatically created folder is named with the name of Message i-α ppli downloaded, which cannot be changed.

- Message i-α ppli can be saved up to 5 applications (included in the 100 maximum number of i-α ppli applications). If the maximum number of Message i-α ppli is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen to delete an existing Message i-α ppli folder (When the folder is deleted, the corresponding i-α ppli is also deleted).
- If Message i-α ppli that uses the same mail folder has already been saved in FOMA terminal, the software cannot be downloaded. However, i-α ppli can be updated if a new version is available.

INFORMATION

- If a Message i-α ppli application is tried to be downloaded again while only the relevant Message i-α ppli folder remains, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to use the folder. When you select **Yes**, the Message i-α ppli is downloaded. If you choose not to use the mail folder, delete the folder before downloading the Message i-α ppli.
- If received mail that supports Message i-α ppli to be downloaded has already been saved in FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to move the received mail to the folder that was created at the time of downloading. When you select **Yes**, the received mail is sorted. However, when Privacy Mode is on (**Hide secret fldrs** set for **Mail**), you cannot sort them.

Viewing i-α ppli information when downloading

Software Info Display

You set whether to display i-α ppli information when downloading.

Default **OFF**

1     ▶ Press  or 

Starting i-appli

1 (for over a second)

■ Displaying only the IC card software (Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli):



The IC card software list screen is displayed.

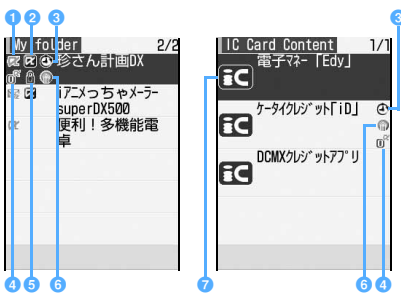
Go to Step 3.

2 Select a folder

The software list is displayed.

: No i-appli : i-appli present

3 Select an i-appli application to start



Software list screen

IC card software list screen

- 1 : Normal i-appli
: i-appli DX
: Message i-appli
- 2 : i-appli that can be set for i-appli standby display
: i-appli that is set for i-appli standby display
- 3 : i-appli with Auto Start
: i-appli at stopped condition by IP
- 4 : i-appli registered in Two-key Shortcut
- 5 : Protected i-appli
: i-appli downloaded from SSL pages
: Protected i-appli which was downloaded from SSL pages
- 6 : i-appli registered in One-key Shortcut
: Unavailable because of the UIM operation restriction
- 7 : Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

- When **Confirm every session** is set for NW transmission of i-appli to be started, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect.

Quitting i-appli

Quit i-appli in the procedure specified for each.

- You can also quit i-appli by pressing and selecting **Yes**.

INFORMATION

- i-appli is interrupted in the following cases. When you quit the function being used and running, i-appli is resumed. To resume i-appli without quitting the current function, press and select **i-appli**. However, i-appli may not be resumed by depending on the function running. Some i-appli may not return to the state before interruption when resumed.
 - When there is an incoming call (except when the ringing time of Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service is set to **0 Sec.**)
 - When a PushTalk call arrives (excluding the case where **i-mode preferred** is set in **i-mode arv. act:PT** and a PushTalk call arrives during i-appli communication)
 - When the time set by Timer has passed
 - When the time set in the schedule alarm or Alarm Clock has come
 - When you switch to another function
- When you are outside the service area or the saved data cannot be used, i-appli may not start or not operate correctly.
- Images used on i-appli or your entered data may automatically be sent to the server via Internet. Images used on i-appli are images shot with the camera while i-appli is activated, images obtained using the i-appli infrared communication function, images downloaded by i-appli from i-mode or Internet websites, or images obtained by i-appli from Data Box.
- For some i-appli, the IP can access i-appli saved in the mobile phone and directly stop its use. In this case, starting, setting for standby or upgrading of the i-appli cannot be performed and only deleting and displaying the detailed information can be performed. To use again, please contact the IP to release suspension of i-appli.
- For some i-appli, the IP may send data to i-appli saved in the mobile phone.
- When the IP requests to stop/restart i-appli or send data to i-appli, FOMA terminal communicates and blinks. In this case, the communication charge is not required.
- Some software allows data to be saved on the miniSD memory card. Show the detail information to see whether or not the miniSD memory card is used. The data saved on the miniSD memory card may not be used by other FOMA models.
- The i-appli continues its operation even if you set Key Lock and the display indication disappears while i-appli is operating.
- Because of the 3D polygon*1 engine loaded, 3 dimensional image can be displayed with i-appli.

*1 By combining polygons (triangles and squares), 3 dimensional image with depth can be displayed.

- The sound volume for i-α ppli operation can be set by *i-α ppli effect sound*. However, sound effect is unavailable for some i-α ppli.
- To i-α ppli creators
If i-α ppli being created does not operate normally, trace display may help. Pressing on the standby display displays the trace. Note that trace information cannot be displayed if i-α ppli created to record trace information is not saved.
To delete the trace information, press and select **Yes**.

Displaying history when operation finishes without using saved data Security Error History

When i-α ppli ended because of an error such that i-α ppli cannot use the saved data, the name of i-α ppli, date and time, cause of the security error is recorded.

- Up to 20 errors are recorded in the security error history. When there are more than 20 abnormal exits, the 21st exit is written over the oldest one.

- 1 Press
 - Deleting the history: ► Select **Yes**

Displaying i-α ppli detail information Detail Info

Detail information such as the name and version of i-α ppli can be checked.

- 1 (for over a second) ► Select a folder
- 2 Highlight i-α ppli ► Press
 - The displayed items differ depending on i-α ppli.
 - For i-α ppli downloaded from SSL pages, you can check the site certificate by pressing on the software description screen.

Setting the operating conditions of i-α ppli Settings

- Items that can be set vary depending on i-α ppli.
- This function is unavailable for i-α ppli having no items to be set.

- 1 (for over a second) ► Select a folder
- 2 Highlight i-α ppli ►
- 3 Select each item to set

Speed selector :

You can set rotary selector functions of Speed Selector to be used while i-α ppli is running.

- When **Up and down** is set, you can use Speed Selector in the same way as .
- When **Right and left** is set, you can use Speed Selector in the same way as .
- When **OFF** is set, rotation of Speed Selector is invalidated.
- Rotary selector functions cannot be set when **Speed selector** of **Set speed selector** is set to **OFF**.

Set i-α ppli display :

Used to set whether to set i-α ppli which supports i-α ppli standby display as your standby display.

- Only one i-α ppli application can be set.

Set NW transmission during i-α ppli display :

Used to set whether to allow automatic connection while the i-α ppli standby display is operating.

Set NW transmission :

Used to set whether to allow automatic connection while i-α ppli is running.

Use icons :

Specifies whether to enable i-α ppli to use icons for mail, Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode and reception level.

Start from browser :

Used to set whether to start i-α ppli from sites (i-α ppli To).

Start from mailer :

Used to set whether to start i-α ppli from mail (i-α ppli To).

Start from external :

Used to set whether to start i-α ppli from external devices (i-α ppli To).

Allow ring tone/image changes by software*1 :

Specifies whether to allow i-α ppli to change the settings of ring tones or images on the screen such as the standby display.

Confirm all changes*1 :

Specifies whether i-α ppli displays a confirmation screen each time the settings of ring tones or images are changed.

Allow access to phonebook/call records by software*1:

Specifies whether to allow i-α ppli to refer to the phonebook, redial data and received call history.

- This also applies to ToruCa saved in FOMA terminal.

*1 This setting is available only for i-α ppli DX.

4 Press

- When **Set i-αappli display** is set to **Yes**, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to set i-αappli as the standby display. Selecting **Yes** sets the i-αappli standby display.

INFORMATION

- Even if **Speed selector** is set to **OFF**, some i-αappli may not invalidate the Speed Selector functions.
- Even if **Up and down** or **Right and left** is set for Speed Selector, rotating Speed Selector may cause a different action or no action for some i-αappli.
- Note that if you set **No** for **Set NW transmission**, i-αappli may not be started and timely information such as stock prices or weather forecast may not be provided by i-αappli.
- If **Yes** is set for **Use icons**, information about icons for unread mail, unread Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode, and icons within service area/outside service area may be sent to IPs through the Internet, which may give the information to a third party. When **Use icons** is set to **No**, i-αappli that requires the icon information may not operate.
- If you rotate Speed Selector during i-αappli operation, the moving direction conforms to the setting of **Direction of Set speed selector**. However, some i-αappli may ignore the setting of moving directions.

Setting the lighting and vibrator during i-αappli running

Display Light/Vibrate Effect

Setting display light

- The i-αappli standby display light operation conforms to the setting of **Normal use of Display light time** of Display Light Setting. 
- While Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the light does not operate while i-αappli is running even if **Software** is set.
- This setting is also reflected to **i-αappli active of Display light time** of Display Light Setting.

Default Terminal setting

1     ► Press  or 

Terminal setting :

The setting of **Normal use of Display light time** of the display light setting is assumed.

Software :

The light comes on according to i-αappli.

Setting vibrator

Allow the vibrator operation by i-αappli.

- While Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the vibrator does not operate while i-αappli is running regardless of this setting.

- This setting is also reflected to the vibrator setting of **Alerts & Sounds**.

Default ON

1     ► Press  or 

Starting another i-αappli application from i-αappli

You can start i-αappli specified by some i-αappli applications, and enjoy it without returning to the software list.

1 If a message appears indicating that the specified i-αappli will be started, press

INFORMATION

- If the i-αappli to start is not specified, select i-αappli.
- When the i-αappli does not exist in the software list even if specified, it is necessary to download it.

Using pre-installed i-αappli

The following i-αappli applications are registered by default:

- 珍さんの釣り物語 (Chin-san's Fishing)
- コラムスジュエル (Columns Jewel)
- 電子マネー「Edy」 (Electronic money "Edy")
- Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)
- ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」 (iD credit payment service)
- 「DCMX」クレジットアプリ (DCMX Credit i-αappli)
- 珍さん計画DXおこづかい帖プラス (Chin-san's Scheduled Cashbook)
- i アニメっちゃメール superDX500 (i-anime Mailer superDX500)
- 便利！多機能電卓 (Useful! Multifunction Calculator)

Select each i-αappli application from the list to start.

- Some i-αappli names may be different from those on the display.
- 珍さん計画 DX おこづかい帖プラス and i アニメっちゃメール superDX500 can be set as the i-αappli standby display.
- If you delete i-αappli preloaded by default, you can download it from i-mode site "My D-style". 

珍さんの釣り物語 (Chin-san's Fishing)

This is a game is to catch fish by operating a panda named Chin-san.

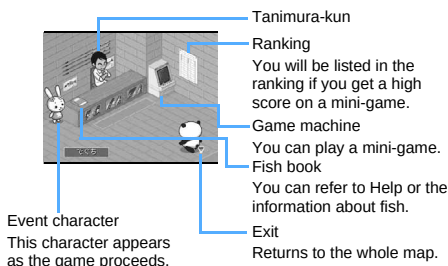
In the メっちゃ湖 (Lake Mecha) Section, when you catch all kinds of fish available at one fishing spot, go to たにむら釣具店 (Tanimura Fishing Tackle Shop) and satisfy an event character's request. Then you can go to the next fishing spot. When you have caught all kinds of fish and achieved the last challenge, you can proceed to the 地底湖 (Underground Lake) Section.

- The kind of fish available and fishing level requirements vary depending on time and fishing spots.
- Hold your FOMA terminal horizontally for the game. Pressing (D) in the title screen turns the screen upside down. (L) in the description corresponds to Speed Selector's operation when you hold FOMA terminal horizontally.
- In the fishing spot or the whole map you can check or change the settings by pressing (D). In the whole map you can also check the status and items.

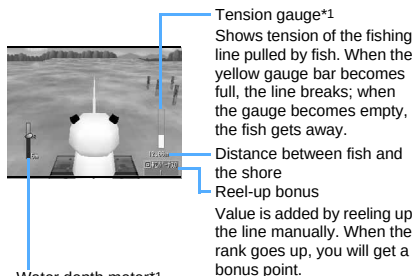
■ たにむら釣具店 (Tanimura Fishing Tackle Shop)

In this shop you can use the points you get through fishing to do your shopping or get a hint for fishing from Tanimura-kun. Also, you can hear the event character's request, play a mini-game, or refer to Help.

- To move Chin-san on the screen, select the moving direction with (L) or Speed Selector and press (R).



■ Basic operation of fishing



Water depth meter*1

Shows how deep the lure goes down.

When fish bites the lure, the meter becomes yellow.

*1 The water depth meter and the tension gauge or reel-up bonus will not be displayed at the same time.

① Cast the line

- Select a casting point using (L) and press (R) to cast the lure out into the lake.

② Control the lure and wait for a bite

- When the lure has sunk to the bottom of the lake, wind the reel by rotating Speed Selector (manual reel) or holding down (L) for over a second (electric reel). Check the lure position by the water depth meter.

③ When you have a bite, then set the hook

- You will know when fish bites the lure by vibration or "/" on the screen. Then quickly press (L). If you are lucky, you can hook the fish.

④ Battle

- Rotate Speed Selector to keep the line tension as high in the gauge as possible.

⑤ Landing the fish

- When the line becomes short by reeling up, the instruction to press any of (L), (R), (D), or (L+R) appears on the screen. If you press proper key, you can land your fish.

コラムス Jewel (Columns Jewel)

In this game, you arrange the same type of jewels that drop from the top of the screen to eliminate them. There are 3 game modes: in ストーリーモード (Story Mode), you play against five opponents, in ひたすらモード (Score Mode), you try to achieve the highest score and in パズルモード (Puzzle Mode), you can take the challenge to solve a total of 40 puzzles.



©SEGA

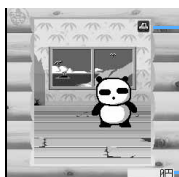
Arrange three or more of the same jewels vertically, horizontally or diagonally to eliminate them.

- ⊖ : Rotate the jewel (one down)
- ⊕ : Rotate the jewel (one up)
- ←→ : Move to left/right
- ⦿ : Increase the dropping speed

You can select the game mode, set options and display Help in the menu screen on the top page. For details, see ヘルプ(Help).

珍さん計画DXおごづかい帖プラス (Chin-san's Scheduled Cashbook)

This i-a ppli has scheduler and cashbook functions. It is compatible with i-a ppli standby display.



Icon for the schedule

Money in hand

To change the display position or to turn off the display, press ⊖, select 所持金表示設定 (Display setting) and select 右下 (Right down), 左下 (Left down), or 非表示 (No display).

■ Scheduler function

You can register a schedule. If you set this i-a ppli for the i-a ppli standby display, the icon is displayed on the specified date of registration.

Registering:

- Press ⊖, select 予定設定 (Set schedule), set the contents of schedule and press ⊕.
- The number of the schedules which can be registered in a day is up to 3.

Checking:

Press ⊖ and select 予定確認 (Check schedule). Press ⊕ and select 修正 (Edit) or 削除 (Delete) to edit or delete the schedule.

■ Cashbook function

You can record monthly incomes and expenses. The interior of the room of Chin-san changes by the amount of money in hand.

Setting pocket-money:

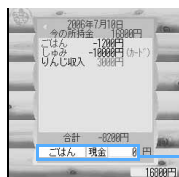
Press ⊖, select おごづかい設定 (Set pocket-money) and set the income day, the present money in hand or the monthly income amount. ⊕ registers the data.

- When the current day is set as the income day, money is not put in until the next month will come. Add the income of the current month to the money in hand.
- If this setting has not been activated for two months or more, pocket-money will be put in for only one month of the previous month.

Setting fixed payment:

Press ⊖, select 毎月の支払い (Set fixed payment) and set the amount of money paid every month such as house rent.

Entering daily expense, casual income:



A write-in field

Press ⊖, select おごづかい帖 (Cashbook), select the detail of expenses and manner of payment from the write-in field and enter the amount of money (in ¥ 100 unit).

- Select クルンじ収入 (Casual income) and enter an amount of money to add it to the money in hand.
- To display the previous cashbook, highlight the detail of expenses in the write-in field and press ⊖.

i アニメっちゃメール superDX500 (i-anime Mailer superDX500)

You can compose 3D エフェクトメール (3D effect mail) and えほんメール (Cartoon mail).

■ 3D エフェクトメール (3D effect mail)



You can compose fun mail by adding color or moving effects to the text or adding animated characters and background music.

Select 3D エフェクトメール of 新規メール作成 (Create new mail) on the top screen. Enter an address and title and select 本文へ (Message) to enter the message (up to 750 one-byte or two-byte characters).

To set an effect, press ⊕ and select an effect item.

1. ステージエフェクト (Stage effects) :

You can select either stage effects (background color/ background pattern) or background animation.

- If you select the color white, some patterns are not visible.

2. テキストエフェクト (Text effect) :

You can set the font color and size, and text motion.

3. キモチアニメ (Emotional animation) :

You can insert the 3D animated panda "Chin-san" (up to 5 characters in one mail message). Select one of the inserted animation characters to enter the text you want the character to say.

4. アニメっちゃ絵文字 (Animation pictogram) :

You can enter the pictogram of i アニメっちゃメーラー superDX500.

5. アクション (Action) :

You can set the effect of "Chin-san" to present or erase the text.

6. エフェクト解除 (Clear effect) :

You can clear the text effect.

0. プレビュー (Preview) :

You can confirm the set effect.

After confirming the effect, press  and select メール送信 (Send mail). If you select メール保存 (1件のみ) (Save mail (only one message)), you can save the mail being composed.

■ えほんメール (Cartoon mail)



You can send mail by composing a story using four frames. At the end of the story, the entered text is displayed.

Select えほんメール of 新規メール作成 on the top screen. Enter an address, title and message (up to 500 one-byte or two-byte characters) and select a story from the 6 different story types.

If you press  and select プレビュー (Preview), you can confirm the story.

After confirming the story, press  on the mail composition screen and select メール送信. If you select メール保存 (1件のみ) (Save mail (only one message)), you can save the mail being composed.

■ Other features

受信ボックス (Inbox) :

Displays received mail.

送信ボックス (Outbox) :

Displays sent mail.

未送信ボックス (Unsent messages) :

Displays mail that failed to be sent.

保存データ (Saved data) :

Displays mail saved before being sent.

センター問い合わせ (Check new message) :

Shows the Mail menu of FOMA terminal where you can perform Check i-mode Message.

待受画面設定 (Standby screen setting) :

You can set the received mail as the standby display.

- Only the mail received from i アニメっちゃメーラー superDX500 and sent or saved using i アニメっちゃメーラー superDX500 can be shown.

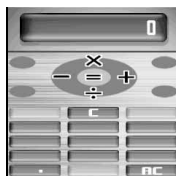
INFORMATION

- Other parties also need to support i アニメっちゃメーラー superDX500 to receive the mail composed with this function. The mail composed with i アニメっちゃメーラー superDX500 cannot be shown correctly with the FOMA terminal's mail function or any mail software of PC.

便利! 多機能電卓 (Useful! Multifunction Calculator)

In addition to basic calculation, this i-appli provides several useful calculation functions such as calculation for splitting a bill.

■ Basic calculation



When you select 基本計算 (Basic) from the title screen, the calculator screen is displayed.

The calculation methods are the same as with usual calculators. Use  to select "+", "-", "×", or "÷".  displays the calculated value.

To change entered incorrect digits, press .

To renew the calculation from the beginning, press .

- When you press  and select 計算一覧表示 (Details), the details of current calculation are displayed. When you select 過去計算一覧表示 (Last calculations), up to 5 past calculations are displayed.

■ Useful calculations

Select a calculation type from the title screen.

ワリカン計算 (Splitting) :

When you set the rate of splitting the bill (0.1 to 2.0) and the number of persons for each attribute such as male/female and select **ワリカン!** (Split!), the amount of money per person is displayed for each attribute.

ゴチルーレット (Roulette) :

Determines the amount of money to be paid by a roulette for each person. When you set the total amount of money, number of persons, seriousness (difference of money for each person) and select **開始** (Start), the roulette starts to spin. When you press **決定** (Enter) the amount of money is displayed. Then each person presses **決定** (Enter) to start the roulette and **決定** (Enter) to determine his or her share.

時間計算 (Time duration) :

Calculates the time duration from the start date/time to the end date/time. To set the start date/time and end date/time, press **決定** (Enter), highlight the position to be changed with **決定** (Enter), change the digits with **決定** (Enter) and then press **決定** (Enter). When you select **決定** (Enter) after setting the date and time, the time duration is displayed on the screen.

Press **決定** (Enter) to select the units to display the time. In addition, by selecting **あと何日?** (How many days remain?), you can calculate the time duration from the present to the specified date/time, or selecting **あれから何日?** (How many days past?), you can calculate the duration from the specified date/time to the present.

カロリー計算 (Calories) :

Calculates the total calories of food intake. Enter the sex and age, and the calories calculation screen is displayed.

あなたの基本必要カロリー: 1537kcal/日		Basic required calories	
前回の平均摂取カロリー: 8kcal/日		The average calories of the previous week	
7/10 (月)	1139	7/11 (火)	0
7/12 (水)	0	7/13 (木)	0
7/14 (金)	0	7/15 (土)	0
7/16 (日)	0	7/17 (日)	0
7/18 (月)	0	7/19 (火)	0
7/20 (水)	0	7/21 (木)	0
7/22 (金)	0	7/23 (土)	0
7/24 (日)	0	7/25 (月)	0
7/26 (火)	0	7/27 (水)	0
7/28 (木)	0	7/29 (金)	0
7/30 (土)	0	7/31 (日)	0
7/1 (月)	0	7/2 (火)	0
7/3 (水)	0	7/4 (木)	0
7/5 (金)	0	7/6 (土)	0
7/7 (日)	0	7/8 (月)	0
7/9 (火)	0	7/10 (水)	0
7/11 (木)	0	7/12 (金)	0
7/13 (土)	0	7/14 (日)	0
7/15 (月)	0	7/16 (火)	0
7/17 (水)	0	7/18 (木)	0
7/19 (金)	0	7/20 (土)	0
7/21 (日)	0	7/22 (月)	0
7/23 (火)	0	7/24 (水)	0
7/25 (木)	0	7/26 (金)	0
7/27 (土)	0	7/28 (日)	0
7/29 (月)	0	7/30 (火)	0
7/31 (水)	0	8/1 (木)	0
8/2 (金)	0	8/3 (土)	0
8/4 (日)	0	8/5 (月)	0
8/6 (火)	0	8/7 (水)	0
8/8 (木)	0	8/9 (金)	0
8/10 (土)	0	8/11 (日)	0
8/12 (月)	0	8/13 (火)	0
8/14 (水)	0	8/15 (木)	0
8/16 (金)	0	8/17 (土)	0
8/18 (日)	0	8/19 (月)	0
8/20 (火)	0	8/21 (水)	0
8/22 (木)	0	8/23 (金)	0
8/24 (土)	0	8/25 (日)	0
8/26 (月)	0	8/27 (火)	0
8/28 (水)	0	8/29 (木)	0
8/30 (金)	0	8/31 (土)	0
9/1 (日)	0	9/2 (月)	0
9/3 (火)	0	9/4 (水)	0
9/5 (木)	0	9/6 (金)	0
9/7 (土)	0	9/8 (日)	0
9/9 (月)	0	9/10 (火)	0
9/11 (水)	0	9/12 (木)	0
9/13 (金)	0	9/14 (土)	0
9/15 (日)	0	9/16 (月)	0
9/17 (火)	0	9/18 (水)	0
9/19 (木)	0	9/20 (金)	0
9/21 (土)	0	9/22 (日)	0
9/23 (月)	0	9/24 (火)	0
9/25 (水)	0	9/26 (木)	0
9/27 (金)	0	9/28 (土)	0
9/29 (日)	0	9/30 (月)	0
10/1 (火)	0	10/2 (水)	0
10/3 (木)	0	10/4 (金)	0
10/5 (土)	0	10/6 (日)	0
10/7 (月)	0	10/8 (火)	0
10/9 (水)	0	10/10 (木)	0
10/11 (金)	0	10/12 (土)	0
10/13 (日)	0	10/14 (月)	0
10/15 (火)	0	10/16 (水)	0
10/17 (木)	0	10/18 (金)	0
10/19 (土)	0	10/20 (日)	0
10/21 (月)	0	10/22 (火)	0
10/23 (水)	0	10/24 (木)	0
10/25 (金)	0	10/26 (土)	0
10/27 (日)	0	10/28 (月)	0
10/29 (火)	0	10/30 (水)	0
10/31 (木)	0	11/1 (金)	0
11/2 (土)	0	11/3 (日)	0
11/4 (月)	0	11/5 (火)	0
11/6 (水)	0	11/7 (木)	0
11/8 (金)	0	11/9 (土)	0
11/10 (日)	0	11/11 (月)	0
11/12 (火)	0	11/13 (水)	0
11/14 (木)	0	11/15 (金)	0
11/16 (土)	0	11/17 (日)	0
11/18 (月)	0	11/19 (火)	0
11/20 (水)	0	11/21 (木)	0
11/22 (金)	0	11/23 (土)	0
11/24 (日)	0	11/25 (月)	0
11/26 (火)	0	11/27 (水)	0
11/28 (木)	0	11/29 (金)	0
11/30 (土)	0	12/1 (日)	0
12/2 (月)	0	12/3 (火)	0
12/4 (水)	0	12/5 (木)	0
12/6 (金)	0	12/7 (土)	0
12/8 (日)	0	12/9 (月)	0
12/10 (火)	0	12/11 (水)	0
12/12 (木)	0	12/13 (金)	0
12/14 (土)	0	12/15 (日)	0
12/16 (月)	0	12/17 (火)	0
12/18 (水)	0	12/19 (木)	0
12/20 (金)	0	12/21 (土)	0
12/22 (日)	0	12/23 (月)	0
12/24 (火)	0	12/25 (水)	0
12/26 (木)	0	12/27 (金)	0
12/28 (土)	0	12/29 (日)	0
12/30 (月)	0	12/31 (火)	0

Basic required calories

The average calories of the previous week

Your total calorie intake for today

Enter icons of the food you have eaten today

- Move the cursor to the entry position and press **決定** (Enter) to select the food from the list. An icon indicating the calorie level is displayed. Highlight the icon to check the food name.
- This calorie calculation gives only rough results and not the precise value.

- Whether the calories are insufficient or excessive is determined by referring to the standard reference for calories according to the sex and age.

いろいろな変換 (Conversion) :

You can convert the units of distance, space, weight, Christian/Japanese year, and the like. Enter the value in the unit you want to convert, and the value in each unit will be displayed.

Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)



- The display shown here represents an example. It differs from the actual display. TV channels according to the home area are displayed.

This is a convenient application, with no monthly subscription fee, containing a TV program table and an AV remote control.

You can simply acquire the analog or digital terrestrial TV program information no matter when or where. You can receive information of program titles, contents, and starting and ending time.

You can schedule recording of your favorite TV program onto the DVD recorder from a remote place via Internet. This function is available with DVD harddisk recorders that support remote scheduling of recording. Before using this i-a ppli, it is necessary to perform initial settings. It is possible to search for the program information using keywords such as the TV program genre or your favorite entertainer. You can also operate the TV, video deck and DVD player remotely (some devices do not support this function).

- When using it for the first time, it is necessary to make initial setting and consent to the agreements for use.
- Packet communication fee is separately required.
- For more information, see "i-mode User's Manual".

Remote scheduling of recording

If your DVD recorder supports remote scheduling of recording, you can schedule to record TV programs using the program list of this i-a ppli from a remote place via Internet.

For remote scheduling, it is necessary to perform initial settings with this i-a ppli.

■ Performing initial settings

① Connect your DVD recorder to Internet

- See the manual of your DVD recorder.

② Start this i-a ppli and select リモート録画予約 (Remote scheduling of recording) from the menu.

- The guidance appears. Perform initial settings according to the guidance.

■ Scheduling to record TV programs

After the initial settings is completed, specify your favorite TV program and highlight リモート録画予約 on the menu. Your FOMA terminal connects via Internet to your DVD recorder at home and schedules to record the program.

- If recording is already scheduled for the same time, a message appears on the program list.
- Packet communication fee is required separately.

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-a ppli

電子マネー「Edy」(Electronic money “Edy”)

電子マネー「Edy」is a simple and useful prepaid type electronic money service. 電子マネー「Edy」is a service provided by bitWallet, Inc. When using this service, perform initial settings after reading through the precautions and the terms of use.

Initial setting/Service registration (no charge)

Charge (deposit)

- Charge (deposit) Edy at stores
- Charge (deposit) Edy by i-mode*1

Use (payment)

- Payment at stores
- Mobile Edy (payment on the Web)*1

Useful functions

- Checking balance/usage history
- Receiving Edy gifts
- Edy to Edy (Sending/receiving Edy money to/from other terminals)*1

Support

- Procedure regarding Edy at model change*1
- Procedure regarding Edy for failure*1

*1 Advance registration is required.

For details about the service, stores accepting Edy, and procedures required for Edy after model change/failure/loss of FOMA terminal, see the Internet web page or i-mode site of Edy, or contact Edy emergency call shown below.

- For information about this service, contact bitWallet, Inc.

- See the following Edy i-mode site or web page for information about Edy:
i-mode site:

iMenu → ③ メニューリスト (Menu list) → うちの情報 (Life information) → 電子マネー「Edy」の生活総合 (Total life)



QR code for website access

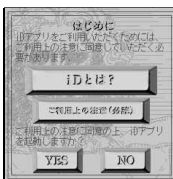
Internet web page: <http://www.edy.jp>

- If you have any problems regarding the procedures of Edy, please contact the following:
Edy emergency call: 0570-081-999 (Navi Dial)
Monday thru Friday: 9:30 to 19:00 / Saturday, Sunday and national holidays: 10:00 to 18:00
- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

INFORMATION

- Packet communication fee is charged when using i-mode communication e.g. during initial setting of 電子マネー「Edy」or use of the function of the 主なメニュー (Main menu) or サービスメニュー (Service menu).
- When **Set NW transmission** is set to **No** for Settings for software or when Self Mode is on, i-mode communication cannot be made. Therefore note that you cannot make initial setting of 電子マネー「Edy」or use the function of 主なメニュー or サービスメニュー.
- To use Mobile Edy (payment on the Web), you need to receive the payment start message from the Edy Center. If you set your terminal to reject mail coming from Internet to prevent nuisance mail, register the domain “@bitwallet.co.jp”.
- When you change FOMA terminal models, note that the old Edy compatible FOMA terminal can still be used as an Edy card. Take care when discarding the terminal.

ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」 (iD credit payment service)



- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. It may differ from the actual screens.

The iD credit payment service is a credit service that enables shopping or cashing by holding Osaifu-Keitai over the reader. With this service you do not need to take out the credit card from the wallet nor sign the slip, allowing you to enjoy shopping more conveniently.

- To use iD, it is necessary to apply for a credit card supporting iD. Also iD i-αppli and a card i-αppli issued by a card company are required.
- When you use iD i-αppli for the first time, you have to agree on Terms and Conditions for Use, prepare for usage, and download the card i-αppli.
- The cost for using an iD-supported credit card service, such as the annual fee, depends on card companies.
- To download iD i-αppli and card i-αppli issued by a card company, packet communication fee is required.
- For more information, see "i-mode User's Manual".

See the following iD i-mode site or Internet web page for information about iD.

i-mode site:

iMenu → ③ メニューリスト (Menu list) → ケータイクレジット「iD」(iD credit payment service)

Internet web page: <http://id-credit.com>



QR code for website access

「DCMXクレジットアプリ」 (DCMX credit i-αppli)



- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. It may differ from the actual screens.

"DCMX" is a credit service that NTT DoCoMo group provides for the iD credit payment service. DCMX is available in three types: DCMX mini, DCMX and DCMX gold. With DCMX mini, you can receive a monthly credit of up to 10,000 yen. DCMX and DCMX gold provide cashing service and revolving payment service and issue a credit card as well. You can apply for "DCMX mini" from this i-αppli to use ケータイクレジット (iD credit payment service) immediately.

■ i-αppli functions

Application and screening*1

Card information setting

Use

No cumbersome charge required.
You can enjoy shopping only by holding the FOMA terminal over a reader/writer.
You do not need to sign a slip.

Check*2

You can check your credit card balance and usage details from your FOMA terminal.

Change

You can update the card or request card reissuance from this i-αppli.

*1 A quick online screening of application will be done. For any application for other than DCMX mini, your terminal automatically connects to the online application page of i-mode.

*2 Checking the usage details, etc. is available only for DCMX mini.

- For details of the service or application procedure, see the following:

i-mode site:

iMenu → ③ メニューリスト (Menu list) → DCMX (ケータイクレジット) (DCMX credit payment service)

Web page: <http://www.dcmx.jp>



QR code for website access

- Contact "General Inquiries" described on the back of this manual for details.

INFORMATION

- When you use this i-αppli for the first time, you have to agree on Terms and Conditions for Use before using it.
- When you use i-mode communication as required by this i-αppli, packet communication fee is charged.
- After application and settings have been completed, you cannot activate the service from this i-αppli. When you want to check the usage or change the settings, start iD i-αppli, select DCMX i-αppli and make them operate together.

Precautions for Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli

- DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the information saved in the IC card.
- For more information, see "i-mode User's Manual".

Starting i-α ppli with One-key Shortcut

One-key Shortcut

Registering i-α ppli to One-key Shortcut

- Only one i-α ppli can be registered. By default, “ケータイクレジット「iD（アイディ）」” of i-α ppli is registered.

1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight i-α ppli ▶ Press   

- To cancel: Highlight i-α ppli ▶   

INFORMATION

- You can also register i-α ppli by highlighting it in the software list and press .

Starting i-α ppli with One-key Shortcut

1 Hold down  for over a second

Starting i-α ppli with Two-key Shortcut

Two-key Shortcut

Registering i-α ppli to Two-key Shortcut

- Up to 10 i-α ppli can be registered.

1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight i-α ppli ▶   

- To cancel: Highlight i-α ppli ▶   

3 Select the registration destination

- The icon number ( to ) corresponds to the dial key ( to ) used to start i-α ppli.
- When you select a dial key that has already been assigned an i-α ppli application, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite it. Select **Yes** to overwrite the previous registration.

INFORMATION

- You can also register i-α ppli by highlighting it in the software list and press .

Starting i-α ppli with Two-key Shortcut

1 Dial key ( to ) ▶ Hold down  for over a second

Displaying the Two-key Shortcut list

1 Press    

- To start: Select i-α ppli
- To display details: Highlight i-α ppli ▶ 
- To cancel registration: Highlight i-α ppli ▶   ▶ Select **Yes**

Automatically starting i-α ppli

Select whether to use auto starting and set different auto starting conditions for each i-α ppli.

- Date and Time Setting of FOMA terminal is required to start i-α ppli automatically.

Specifying whether to start automatically

Auto Start

- When set to **OFF**, Auto Start is also disabled for i-α ppli even if **User** of Auto Start Info Setting is set to **ON**.

 **Default** 

1     ▶ Press  or 

Setting the date and time of Auto Start

Auto Start Info Setting

Select Auto Start ON/OFF or the start time for each i-α ppli application and display the preset details.

- The conditions that can be set depend on i-α ppli.
- Some i-α ppli may not be started automatically.
- When Auto Start is set to **OFF**, this setting is not available.

1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight i-α ppli ▶  

3 Select each item to set

User :

Select whether to set conditions of Auto Start.

- When you select **ON**, set **Time**, **Repeat**, **Weekly** and **Date**.

Time :

Enter the time to automatically start i-α ppli.

Repeat :

Set the condition for repetitive automatic starting of i-α ppli.

- When **OneTime** is set, set the date for auto starting in **Date** field.
- When **Daily** is set, i-α ppli starts automatically at the time set in **Time** field every day.
- When **Weekly** is set, set the day of week for auto starting in **Weekly** field.

Weekly :

Set the day of week for auto starting when **Weekly** is set for **Repeat**.

Date :

Set the date for auto starting when **OneTime** is set for **Repeat**.

Software :

Specify whether to automatically start at the intervals preset for i-α ppli.

i-α ppli 1 to 4 :

Depending on i-α ppli DX, up to 4 conditions of Auto Start can be set while it is operated. Specify whether to enable the settings.

4 Press

INFORMATION

- Even when auto starting is set, i-α ppli is not started if the time of activation arrives in one of the following situations. If i-α ppli is not started for the following reasons (except for the ones marked with *1),  is indicated on the standby display and the name of i-α ppli, the date and time and the reason for the start failure are recorded in Start Failure History.
 - When FOMA terminal power is off*1
 - When UIM operation is restricted (except for pre-installed i-α ppli)
 - When UIM cannot be detected
 - When Auto Start is set to **OFF***1
 - The interval of auto start is too short
 - During a call, communication, or a PushTalk call
 - When a screen other than the standby display is displayed or i-α ppli standby display operation is in progress
 - When any other function is being used (excluding the list display and edition of My Picture, the list display, replay, and edition of i-motion, the list display and replay of melody, or the list display and replay of Music Player)
 - In All Lock, PIM Lock or Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)
 - When Privacy Mode is on (while **Authorized access** is set to **i-α ppli**)
 - While an alarm clock or schedule alarm is sounding (including when the set time is the same as the time for Auto Start)
 - While Timer is in operation
 - When i-α ppli usage is stopped by the IP

- When two or more i-α ppli applications are specified to start automatically at the same time, only one i-α ppli is activated. The failed i-α ppli information is recorded in Start Failure History, but  is not displayed on the standby display.
- In the **User** settings, the same setting set for other i-α ppli cannot be set.
- If all of the start time are set before the time set in Date and Time Setting, auto starting will be disabled.

Displaying history when Auto Start of i-α ppli fails

Start Failure History

If automatic start of i-α ppli fails,  appears on the standby display and the i-α ppli name, the date and time and the failure reason are registered.

- Up to 20 start failures are recorded. When there are more than 20 abnormal exits, the 21st exit is written over the oldest one.
- When you display the start failure history or when the next automatic start is successful,  on the standby display disappears.

1 Press

■ Deleting the history:  ► Select Yes

Starting i-α ppli from a site or mail

i-α ppli To

Select a link item that can start the site or i-α ppli of the site or i-mode Mail and then start the i-α ppli (i-α ppli To).

1 Select a link item enabled to start i-α ppli from the site or i-mode Mail

2 Select Yes

The connection to the site is terminated and i-α ppli is started.

INFORMATION

- If the i-α ppli you attempt to start with i-α ppli To is not saved in FOMA terminal, the message that there is no specified i-α ppli is displayed and i-α ppli cannot be started. Note that some i-α ppli may start just after downloaded from sites even if it is not saved.
 - For i-α ppli that starts just after downloaded from a site, a confirmation screen may be displayed asking whether to make communication while it is activated.
 - When you quit i-α ppli started just after downloaded from sites, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save i-α ppli. Note that some i-α ppli may not be able to be saved in FOMA terminal.

- If the specified i-α ppli is set not to start with i-α ppli To, a message is displayed and i-α ppli is not started. ➡P274

Operating the i-α ppli standby display

i-α ppli Standby Display

When i-α ppli is set for the standby display, you can start i-α ppli from the standby display to operate. On the i-α ppli standby display  or  is indicated at the top of the screen.

- It is necessary to set i-α ppli for the standby display beforehand. ➡P139

INFORMATION

- When you set i-α ppli that performs communication, it may not operate correctly depending on radio wave conditions, etc.
- While All Lock, PIM Lock, Privacy Mode (i-α ppli is set to **Authorized access**) or Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is active, the i-α ppli standby display will be canceled temporarily. If you cancel All Lock, PIM Lock, or Privacy Mode, the i-α ppli standby display restarts.
- If the use of i-α ppli set to the i-α ppli standby display is stopped by IP, the i-α ppli standby display is canceled.
- While the i-α ppli standby display is activated, if an error that makes it difficult to continue the i-α ppli standby display occurs, a confirmation screen appears asking whether you will cancel or not. When you select **Yes**, the i-α ppli standby display setting is canceled. At this time, the name of i-α ppli and end date/time are recorded in Abnormal Exit History.
- You cannot connect to a site (Web To) from the i-α ppli standby display.
- When FOMA terminal is turned on with the i-α ppli standby display set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to start the i-α ppli standby display. When you select **Yes**, the i-α ppli standby display starts. When you select **No**, the i-α ppli standby display setting is canceled. If you operate nothing within 5 seconds after the confirmation screen appeared, the i-α ppli standby display starts automatically. When the power is turned on by Auto Power ON, the i-α ppli standby display automatically starts, without displaying the confirmation screen.

Starting i-α ppli of the i-α ppli standby display

- 1 Press  in the i-α ppli standby display**
The screen is changed to the i-α ppli screen and  or  blinks at the top of the display.

Quitting i-α ppli to return to the i-α ppli standby display

- 1  while i-α ppli is running ▶ Select *End***

i-α ppli is ended and the i-α ppli standby display is activated. The icon at the top of the display switches from  to , or from  to .

- The procedure to quit i-α ppli and return to the i-α ppli standby display depends on the type of i-α ppli.  makes some types of i-α ppli return.
- Even if **End** is selected, the i-α ppli standby display setting is not canceled. To cancel, select **Cancel**.  and  at the top of the display disappear.

INFORMATION

- You can also cancel i-α ppli by highlighting i-α ppli of the i-α ppli standby display in the software list, pressing , selecting **i-α ppli display** and then selecting **Cancel**.

Displaying the exit history of i-α ppli standby display

Abnormal Exit History

When an error that makes it difficult to continue the i-α ppli standby display occurs, the name of i-α ppli, date and time are recorded.

- Up to 20 abnormal exits are recorded. When there are more than 20 abnormal exits, the 21st exit is written over the oldest one.
- In the normal end, exits are not registered.

- 1 Press    **
■ **Deleting the history:  ▶ Select *Yes***

Managing i-α ppli

Upgrading i-α ppli

Upgrade

When i-α ppli has been updated, it can be upgraded.

- i-α ppli whose usage is stopped by IP cannot be upgraded.

- 1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder**
- 2 Highlight i-α ppli ▶   ▶ Select *Yes***
 - When upgrade is unnecessary, the message that i-α ppli is the newest is displayed.

INFORMATION

- When you upgrade i-α ppli, data such as game scores stored by the i-α ppli may be erased.
- Some i-α ppli may inquire the DoCoMo server about the availability depending on the length of time of use/ number of times of use. If the server gives a notice of i-α ppli having been updated, it can be upgraded after confirming whether to upgrade it.
- Some i-α ppli may be upgraded automatically.

Creating/deleting folders

Folders can be created to sort out i-α ppli. Also folders can be moved up or down or deleted.

Creating a folder

- Up to 20 folders can be created.

- 1  (for over a second)
- 2  
 - Changing the folder name: Highlight the folder  
 - Moving up or down the folder: Highlight the folder   or 
- 3 Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) 

Deleting folders

- Note that the folder cannot be deleted if it contains the protected i-α ppli. Cancel the protection, and then delete it.
- If there is only one folder, it cannot be deleted.

- 1  (for over a second)
- 2 Highlight a folder   
 - To delete a folder with any i-α ppli stored in it, enter the terminal security code.
- 3 Select Yes
 - If there is any Message i-α ppli in the folder to be deleted, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the mail folder at the same time. Select Yes to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in the folder. Select No to delete i-α ppli only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i-α ppli or mail folder even when you select Yes.

- If the folder to delete contains any Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-α ppli that cannot be deleted unless the data in the IC card is deleted, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete i-α ppli other than that.
- If the folder to be deleted contains any i-α ppli that has data in the miniSD memory card, a confirmation screen may appear to ask whether to delete the data in the miniSD memory card as well. If you select Yes, the data on the miniSD memory card is also deleted. Select No to delete i-α ppli only.

INFORMATION

- When the mail folder for Message i-α ppli to be deleted is being used (including being displayed in the list), the i-α ppli may not be deleted.
- When only i-α ppli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i-α ppli is left undeleted, the message can be displayed from the submenu in the folder list of mail. 

Protecting i-α ppli

- Maximum number of software that can be protected 

- 1  (for over a second)  Select a folder
- 2 Highlight i-α ppli   
 - i-α ppli is protected and  or  is indicated on the software list.
 - To cancel: Highlight i-α ppli   
 - Switching the protection of selected items on/off:     Select i-α ppli 
 - Switching the protection of all items in the folder on/off:     Enter the terminal security code

Deleting i-α ppli

- For some i-α ppli, the data in the IC card is also deleted.
- Some i-α ppli cannot be deleted unless you start i-α ppli and delete the data in the IC card.
- Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-α ppli may not be deleted.

- 1  (for over a second)  Select a folder
- 2 Highlight i-α ppli   
 - Deleting selected items:    
 - Select i-α ppli 

■ Deleting all items in the folder:

► Enter the terminal security code ► Select **All** or **w/o protect**

3 Select Yes

- When you attempt to delete Message i-α ppli, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the automatically created mail folder at the same time. Select **Yes** to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in it. Select **No** to delete i-α ppli only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i-α ppli or mail folder even when you select **Yes**.
- If the i-α ppli to be deleted by **Selected items** or **All items** includes Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-α ppli that cannot be deleted unless the data in the IC card is deleted, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete i-α ppli other than that.
- When you delete the i-α ppli that has data in the miniSD memory card, a confirmation screen may appear to ask whether to delete the data in the miniSD memory card as well. If you select **Yes**, the data on the miniSD memory card is also deleted. Select **No** to delete i-α ppli only.

INFORMATION

- When deleting all i-α ppli in a folder from the folder list, highlight the folder, press , and select **Delete** → **Delete software**.
- The protected i-α ppli cannot be deleted by **One item** or **Selected items**. To delete protected i-α ppli, cancel its protection first and then delete it. Alternatively, select **All items**, enter the terminal security code, and then delete i-α ppli by selecting **All**.
- If the folder for Message i-α ppli to be deleted is in use (as while displaying a list), i-α ppli may not be deleted.
- When only i-α ppli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i-α ppli is left undeleted, the message can be displayed from the submenu in the folder list of mail. ►P246

Moving i-α ppli to another folder

1 (for over a second) ► Select a folder

2 Highlight i-α ppli ►

■ Moving the selected items: ►
Select i-α ppli ►

■ Moving all items in folder:

3 Select the folder to move to ► Select **Yes**

INFORMATION

- When you press on the standby display and only Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-α ppli is listed, i-α ppli cannot be moved to other folders.

Sorting i-α ppli

Sort Software

1

2 Press any of to

- For **By download time** and **By access time**, i-α ppli is sorted by the time set in Date and Time Setting of FOMA terminal.
- For **By name**, the sorted order may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary if two-byte and one-byte characters/alphabetic characters are included in the name of i-α ppli.
- For **By access frequency**, the frequency does not include the number of being started as the i-α ppli standby display. The access frequency is carried over even when i-α ppli version is upgraded.
- For **By software size**, the total of the software size of i-α ppli and scratchpad to be used is sorted from large to small.

Checking the number of i-α ppli in a folder

Software in Folder

1 (for over a second)

2 Highlight a folder ► Press

- Meaning of the icon ►P273

Checking current settings of i-α ppli

Software Information

1 Press (for over a second)

2 Press

Storage :

Total size of i-α ppli saved is indicated in bar and numeric.

Software count :

Total number of i-α ppli saved is displayed.

i-α ppli display :

Name and storage folder of i-α ppli set as the i-α ppli standby display are displayed.

One-key shortcut :

The name and storage folder of i-α ppli registered to One-key Shortcut are displayed.

Auto start :

Name, storage folder and start time of i-αppli set for the next automatic start are displayed.

Displaying i-αppli data saved in the miniSD memory card

miniSD Data

You can display the folder data saved in the miniSD memory card from i-αppli and confirm and delete the information.

- The contents of data cannot be displayed.

1 Press

The folder list of i-αppli data is displayed.

■ Confirming the information of folder: Select a folder

- Displays availability of the folder, the name of i-αppli for use and the reason why it is not available. All items may not be displayed for every folder.

■ Deleting the folder:

- 1 **Highlight a folder**   
 - Deleting selected items:   
Select a folder  
 - Deleting all:    Enter the terminal security code
- 2 **Select Yes**

Using various functions from i-αppli

- Downloading i-αppli that supports individual functions beforehand is required.
- The operation varies for each i-αppli application and some i-αppli may not be used.

Making calls from i-αppli

1 Select a phone number Set the call conditions

- Setting of the call conditions 

2 Select Yes

A call is made by the settings. When you make a call, i-αppli is interrupted.

Connecting to sites from i-αppli

1 Select Yes when a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect to sites

i-αppli is ended and the site is displayed.

Using Camera from i-αppli

1 Operate i-αppli to use Camera

INFORMATION

- Saved images or videos may be automatically sent from i-αppli to the server by communication.
- When Camera has been activated from i-αppli, a shot image is saved in the *i-mode* folder or *Deco-Mail picture* folder of *Image* (My Picture) or in the i-αppli. The shot video is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *i-motion* or in the i-αppli.
- Some i-αppli can change the image size or set the frame, etc.

Using Bar Code Reader from i-αppli

1 Operate i-αppli to scan barcodes

- A message that scan results are used and saved in the i-αppli is displayed.

Using infrared communication from i-αppli

- Infrared communication may not be made depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

1 Operate i-αppli to perform infrared communication

- i-αppli can also be started by receiving i-αppli starting data via infrared communication.
- If you perform infrared communication while your terminal is connected to a site or sending/receiving mail, the site connection or mail transmission is stopped.

Saving ToruCa from i-appli

- 1 When a confirmation screen asking whether to save ToruCa appears, select *Yes (NewEntry)*

ToruCa is saved in the *ToruCa* folder in the ToruCa list.

- To save (overwrite) ToruCa: Select *Yes (OverWrite)* ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select ToruCa ▶ Select *Yes*
- To display ToruCa: Select *Preview*

Using ToruCa from i-appli

- 1 When a message prompting to select ToruCa appears, press  ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select ToruCa

i-channel

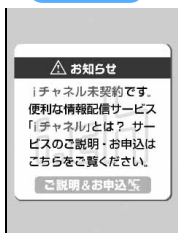
i-channel	290
Displaying i-channel	Channel List 291
Changing i-channel settings	Ticker Setting 292

i-channel

i-channel is a service in which DoCoMo or IP (Information Provider) delivers graphical information such as news and weather information to i-channel compatible terminals. Users can receive information regularly, and read latest information as it appears on the standby display as tickers, or view it in the channel list by pressing the i-channel compatible key (**ch/wv**) (Displaying the channel list **P291**). Additionally, users can obtain rich, detail information by selecting a desired channel in the channel list.

- i-channel information is displayed in Japanese only.
- For important notes on using i-channel and detail information about how to use i-channel, see "i-mode User's Manual".

Not signed

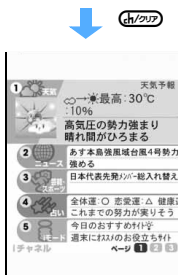


Before you sign up for i-channel.

After sign-up



After you sign up for i-channel, tickers automatically run on the standby display as information is received or as you display the channel list.



Pressing **ch/wv** displays the channel list. Each channel contains various information in a list form including those that ran as tickers.

↓ to make connection



You can select each channel to view detail information.

- The screens shown above are for information purpose only and may differ from the actual screens.

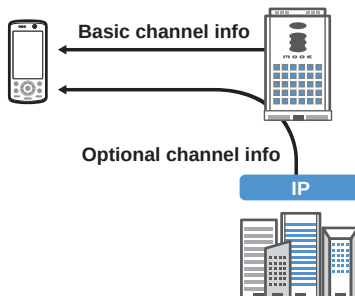
There are 2 types of channels: "Basic channel" and "Optional channel". Basic channel is pre-registered channels provided by DoCoMo and ready for use immediately after i-channel sign-up. Packet communication fee for automatic information update in relation to Basic channel is included in the i-channel service fee. Optional channel is provided by non-DoCoMo IPs and users register their desired channel for viewing. Packet communication fee for automatic information update and other fees in relation to Optional channel are not included in the i-channel service fee.

Please note that only Basic channel information appears as tickers on the standby display.

- Information charge may be imposed to use Optional channels.
- Some Optional channels require separate sign-up to the IPs who provide the channels.
- Viewing detail information from the channel list, whether Basic channel or Optional channel information, causes separate packet communication fee that is not covered by the i-channel service fee.

i-mode terminal

i-mode Center



i-channel is a pay service for which subscription is required. (You need an i-mode subscription in order to subscribe to i-channel.)

- Operating i-channel **P291**
- Compatible devices: 701i, 702i, 902i, 902iS series, D851iWM and P851i

Trial channel

Basic channels are available for free of service charge for a set period of time to i-mode subscribers who use an i-channel compatible terminal, and who have never signed up for the subscriber line.

However, packet communication fee caused by viewing detail information from the channel list is to be borne by the users.

- For important notes on using Trial channel and detail information about how to use the service, see "i-mode User's Manual".

In principle, Trial channel automatically begins after a set amount of time once the UIM (FOMA card) is inserted and the i-channel compatible terminal goes into use. If Trial channel does not start automatically, you can start it by pressing **CH/2007**.

Trial channel is available only once per subscriber line.

Trial channel automatically stops after a certain period of time following the launch. For information about how to stop the channel, see "i-mode User's Manual".

INFORMATION

- Neither ring tone nor vibrator operates at the reception of information. Likewise, the Enter key does not light or flash.
- If you cancel i-channel or i-mode service subscription, tickers are no longer displayed. Pressing **CH/2007** displays the pre-subscription screen. Until the cancellation procedure has finished, however, tickers may be displayed on the screen and pressing **CH/2007** may display the last received information in the channel list.
- When **Show ticker** is set to **No** in Ticker Setting, no tickers are displayed.
- If you cannot receive information because FOMA terminal is turned off or due to out-of-service area or poor signal quality, press **CH/2007** to receive information.
- **CH/2007** blinks during reception of information.

Changing the i-channel host

You can change the i-channel host (although you usually do not need to change it).

- 1 **CH/2007**
 - 2 **Highlight the user host** **▶** **Menu** **▶** **Enter your terminal security code**
 - 3 **Select each item to set** **▶** **Menu**
 - **Host address2** should be filled with the address of the i-channel host (up to 30 one-byte characters).
 - **Host address** is the host for i-mode. **▶**P212
 - 4 **Select the host you have edited** **▶** **Menu**
- If you enter or change the address of **Host address2**, the i-channel information will no longer be displayed on the standby ticker. Sometimes, the information will not be updated automatically. When you press **CH/2007** on the standby display to view the channel list, the latest information is received and the tickers are shown on the standby display.

Menu 271

Displaying i-channel

Channel List

1

CH/2007

The channel list appears.

- When video/i-motion, Chara-den or i-appli is set as the standby display: **CH/2007** **▶** **7** **▶** **1**
 - i-channel cannot be displayed even if **CH/2007** is pressed.

2

Select the channel

Your terminal connects to the site and the information appears.

- Depending on the situation, information may be received when displaying the channel list.

INFORMATION

- To refresh the channel list, press **Menu** in the channel list and select **Retry**.
- When you press **Menu** in the channel list and select **Sound effect setting**, you can set whether to enable sound effect for Flash movie. For setting **▶**P213 "Setting image display and sound effects"

Changing i-channel settings

Ticker Setting

You can set whether to run tickers of received i-channel information on the standby display. You can also set the ticker running speed.

- When **Show ticker** is set to **Yes**, up to 10 tickers for the newest information are shown on the standby display each time the display appears until the display items disappear. When **Show ticker** is set to **No**, no tickers are displayed.
- In the default state or when the UIM is replaced, or when the host address 2 is changed, if the i-channel information is automatically updated or if you press **ch/zip** to display the channel list, the ticker is displayed and you can set the ticker setting.

Default Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Normal



2 Select each item to set

Show ticker :

Select **Yes** or **No**.

- If **No** is selected, **Ticker speed** cannot be set.

Ticker speed :

Select from **Slow**, **Normal**, or **Fast**.

3 Press

- If **Show ticker** is set to **Yes**, a confirmation screen appears when video/i-motion, Chara-den or i-α ppli is set on the standby display. If you select **Yes**, video/i-motion, Chara-den or i-α ppli is released.

INFORMATION

- In the following cases, i-channel information cannot be displayed in the ticker.
 - In All Lock
 - In PIM Lock
 - In Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)
 - In Public mode (Driving mode)
 - When UIM not inserted

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

What's Osaifu-Keitai?	294
Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- a ppli	295
What's ToruCa?	295
Obtaining ToruCa	296
Displaying ToruCa	297
Specifying whether to obtain ToruCa	ToruCa Setting 299
Preventing use of IC card functions	IC Card Lock 300

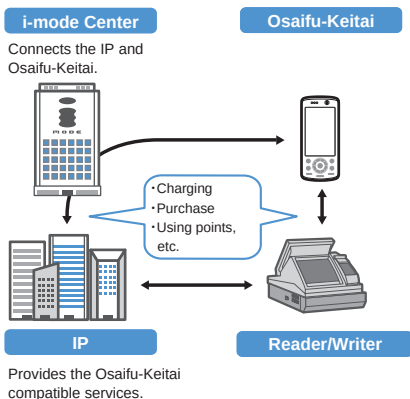
What's Osaifu-Keitai?

The i-mode terminal that is equipped with an IC card and provides useful functions of i-mode (i-mode FeliCa) using the IC card is called "Osaifu-Keitai".

FeliCa is the contactless IC card technology, which allows reading and writing data just by holding an IC card over a reader/writer.

The Osaifu-Keitai can be used conveniently in daily life, as electronic money for payment, as airplane tickets, or as reward point cards, just by holding it over a compatible reader/writer*. Also, compared to a conventional contactless IC card compatible with FeliCa, the Osaifu-Keitai provides more useful functions; you can charge electronic money from sites into the IC card of the terminal or check the balance and usage history.

* A reader/writer is used to read and write the data in an IC card.



- To use the IC card functions, download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli that supports the IC card functions.
- How to subscribe to and use Osaifu-Keitai compatible services depend on each service. Contact the service provider such as IP (Information Provider) for details. Before using Osaifu-Keitai compatible services, see "i-mode User's Manual" for usage precautions.
- Keep secure your terminal security code and take care not to reveal the password to anyone.

- Take a separate note of the name and contact information for each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. Data in the IC card may be lost or modified due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of your Osaifu-Keitai terminal. Please note that you will be required to delete the data before repair. If the data in the IC card should be lost or modified, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of data. If you delete the data in the IC card or the data is accidentally lost or modified, the response differs for each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. For details, contact your service provider such as IP beforehand.
- Data in the IC card cannot be copied to a new terminal when you replace your Osaifu-Keitai terminal at a DoCoMo Shop (including the case of failure). The method differs for each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. For details, contact your service provider such as IP beforehand.
- Be careful not to lose your Osaifu-Keitai terminal. If the terminal should be lost, contact your service provider such as IP for information regarding the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. Please note that use of the IC card functions cannot be restricted.

Using the Osaifu-Keitai

Step 1: Download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli

◆P271

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, 電子マネー「Edy」(Electronic money "Edy"), ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」(iD credit payment service) and 「DCMX」クレジットアプリ (DCMX Credit i-αppli) are registered by default.

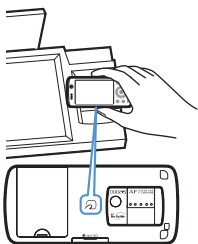
Step 2: Start Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli to read and write data in the IC card

◆P295

Use Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli to charge electronic money and tickets or to check the balance and usage history.

Step 3: Hold the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer

- When **ON** is set for the lighting during IC card transaction in Alert Light Setting, the Enter key flashes according to the setting of lighting color. You can use FOMA terminal as electronic money for shopping or as tickets by holding the FeliCa mark on the terminal over a reader/writer. This function can be used without starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.



INFORMATION

- If the IC card is not recognized when you hold the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer, try again by changing the position, angle, etc.
- Do not expose FOMA terminal to strong shocks when holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer.
- The IC card can be used during a call or i-mode connection by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer. However, you cannot start Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli during i-mode connection.
- The IC card can be used by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer even when the power is off, but not when the battery pack is removed. When you use an IC card function, attach the battery pack. Even when the battery pack is attached, if it is not used for an extended period or is not charged after a low battery alert, the IC card may not be used. In this case, charge the battery.
- When the power is off, you cannot start Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli to read and write data in the IC card. You cannot obtain ToruCa either.
- i-appli may start when you hold the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer. However, no i-appli starts when the target i-appli is not saved or is set not to start with i-appli To.

Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

1

2 Select Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

- Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli can be auto started, deleted and its folders managed in the same way as normal i-appli.
- Meaning of the marks

■ Quitting:

Quit the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli using the procedure specified for each.

- You can also quit by pressing and selecting **Yes**.

INFORMATION

- While Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli is started, the IC card may not be used by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer.
- Some of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli operations may not be available during a videophone call.
- When any of the following conditions occurs, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli under operation and reading and writing data in the IC card are interrupted. In that case, the data may be discarded:
 - When there is an incoming call (except when the ringing time for Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service is set to **0 sec**)
 - When a PushTalk call arrives (excluding the case where **i-mode preferred** is set in i-mode Arrival Act: PT and call arrives while communicating)
 - After the specified time by Timer has elapsed
 - When the date and time set in Alarm Clock or Scheduler arrives
 - When you switch to another function
- When you press during a call or alarm sounding to switch to the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli screen, the operation varies for each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service that you subscribe to.
- Some functions of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli may not start or operate correctly when your terminal is outside the service area or cannot use the saved data.

What's ToruCa?

ToruCa is an electronic card that is available through Osaifu-Keitai, which can be used as a flyer, restaurant card, coupon, etc.

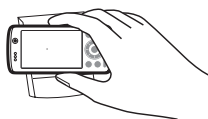
You can obtain ToruCa from the reader/writer and sites and exchange the obtained ToruCa easily by using mail, infrared communication, and miniSD memory card.

The obtained ToruCa is saved in **ToruCa** in the **LifeKit** menu.

- Supporting models: 902i series, 902iS series and F702iD

For details, see "i-mode User's Manual".

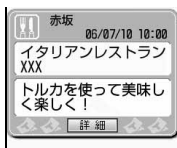
Procedure for using ToruCa



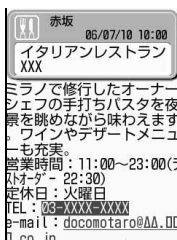
Hold the Osaifu-Keitai over the reader/writer to obtain ToruCa.



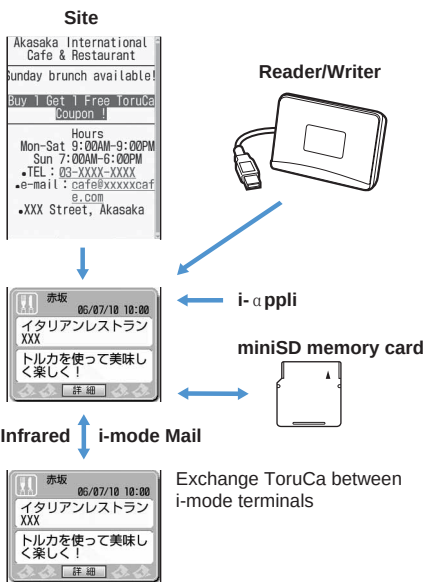
Select obtained ToruCa from the **ToruCa** folder of the ToruCa list.



You can see detailed information by using the **詳細** (Details) button.



How to get ToruCa



INFORMATION

- Exchanging ToruCa in i-mode communication needs packet communication fee.

Obtaining ToruCa

- Maximum number of items that can be saved
 - P38
- The ToruCa size that can save data is up to 1 Kbytes per item. For ToruCa (details), up to 100 Kbytes can be saved.
- The obtained ToruCa is saved in the **ToruCa** folder of the ToruCa list. ● P297
- If you download detailed information from saved ToruCa, it is not saved as another file, and the detailed information is added in original ToruCa. Obtaining ToruCa (details) from ToruCa ● P297

INFORMATION

- You can also obtain ToruCa by the following methods. When you obtained ToruCa from the received mail, message R/F or i-appli, it is saved as already read.
 - Received mail or Message R/F ● P245
 - i-appli ● P288
 - Infrared communication ● P349
 - miniSD memory card ● P336

Obtaining ToruCa from a reader/writer

- **ToruCa receive** must be set to **ON** in ToruCa Setting.
- You cannot obtain ToruCa while IC Card Lock is on.

1 Hold the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer

You will hear a sound that lets you know ToruCa is obtained and the Enter key flashes.

INFORMATION

- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a message indicating the ToruCa cannot be saved appears. Delete unnecessary ToruCa.

Downloading ToruCa from sites

Download ToruCa from a site, then display and save it.

1 Display the site ▶ Select ToruCa

- Pressing  while downloading cancels the downloading.

2 Select Save

- To display the card: Select **Preview**
- To cancel saving: Select **Back** ▶ Select **No**

INFORMATION

- When there is not enough available storage space to save or the maximum allowable number is exceeded, a confirmation screen asking whether to delete the saved ToruCa or not is displayed. Follow the instructions on the screen to delete it. To view unwanted ToruCa before deleting it, press  in the ToruCa list.
- ToruCa downloaded from a site is regarded as being read even if being saved without **Preview** is selected.

Displaying ToruCa

1 ▶ Select a folder

- To switch to the folder list of the miniSD memory card:  on the folder list
- How to handle the miniSD memory card
●P338

■ Sending ToruCa via mail as an attachment: Highlight ToruCa on the ToruCa list ▶

- When sending ToruCa, it is sent in the state before obtaining ToruCa (details). If there is detailed information in the site, the receiver can obtain ToruCa (details) again.
- Some ToruCa cannot be sent. ●P234

2 Select ToruCa

- **Obtaining ToruCa (details):** Select **詳細** in the **ToruCa view screen** ▶ Select **Yes**
FOMA terminal is connected to i-mode and saves ToruCa (details).
- **Updating ToruCa (details):**   in the **ToruCa (details) view screen** ▶ Select **Yes**
FOMA terminal is connected to i-mode and updates and saves ToruCa (details).

INFORMATION

- To send ToruCa via mail as an attachment from the view screen, press  .
- If the displayed text includes the phone number, mail address, and/or URL, you can use Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To.
- To register new data in the phonebook, highlight the phone number and mail address on the view screen and press   . To update the data in the phonebook, press   . To register a URL in Bookmark, highlight the URL and press   . To save an image, press    and select the image.
- To replay the animation on the view screen, press  .

Reading the folder list/ToruCa list screen

Reading the folder list screen

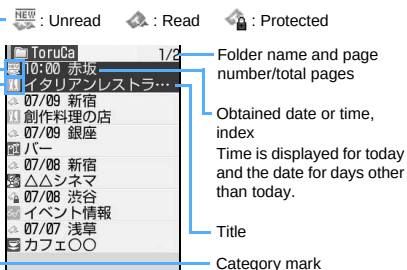


The storage area usage rate and page number/total pages

ToruCa can be categorized and saved in the **ToruCa** folder and a maximum of 20 other folders.

 : No ToruCa  : No unread ToruCa
 : Unread ToruCa exists

Reading the ToruCa list screen



■ **Moving multiple cards:** **5** **1** **2** ▶ **Select ToruCa** ▶ **1**

■ **Moving all ToruCa in a folder:**
 5 **1** **3**

■ **Copying ToruCa to another folder:**
Highlight ToruCa ▶ **5** **2**

3 Select the folder to move/copy the cards to

4 Select Yes

INFORMATION

- In the view screen, press **3**.
- Even if protected ToruCa is copied, copy destination ToruCa will not be protected.

Creating/deleting folders

Creating a folder

- You can create up to 20 folders in addition to the **ToruCa** folder.
- You cannot change the folder name or sort order of the **ToruCa** folder.

1 **6** **3** **1** ▶ **2**

■ **Changing the folder name:** Highlight a folder on the folder list ▶ **4**

■ **Changing the order of folders:** Highlight a folder on the folder list ▶ ▶ **6** or **7**

2 Enter the folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶ Press

Deleting a folder

- Deleting a folder also deletes the ToruCa in the folder. If the folder has any protected ToruCa, however, the folder cannot be deleted. Delete the folder after releasing the protection.
- You cannot delete the **ToruCa** folder.

1 **6** **3** **1** ▶ **Highlight a folder** ▶ **3**

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select Yes

Moving/copying ToruCa into a folder

1 **6** **3** **1** ▶ **Select a folder**

2 Highlight ToruCa ▶ **5** **1** **1**

Checking the information of the saved ToruCa

1 **6** **3** **1** ▶ **Press** **5**

Information such as the number of ToruCa saved in FOMA terminal and the percentage of the used area to the total capacity is displayed.

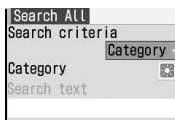
■ **Checking the number of ToruCa in a folder:** Select the folder on the folder list ▶ **6** **1**

Searching for ToruCa

1 **6** **3** **1** ▶ **1**

- To search a folder: Select the folder on the folder list ▶ **2**

2 Select Search criteria field ▶ **1** **to** **3**



- When you select **Category**, select the **Category** field and select the category mark.
- If you select **Title** or **Index**, select the **Search text** field and enter the title or index (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for a title and up to 15 one-byte or 7 two-byte characters for an index).
- You can make a search by entering only a part of a title or index. Two-byte characters can be distinguished from one-byte characters, but the cases of alphabets are ignored.
- You cannot search the data with the obtained date or time.

3 Press

Sorting ToruCa

Sort

You can change the sorting order of the ToruCa list temporarily. Ending the display returns to the order **By date**.

- You can select the order by date, category, title, or index.

Default By date

1  **6** **3** **1** ▶ **Select a folder**

2  **6** **2** ▶ **Press any of **1** to **4****

INFORMATION

- In the sorting order by title or index, cards may not be sorted in the order of Japanese syllabary if the titles or indexes have both two-byte and one-byte characters.
- When you select the order **By category**, it is sorted by the category mark, which shows the type of ToruCa.

Protecting ToruCa

- Maximum number of items that can be protected
➡ P38
- Unread ToruCa cannot be protected.
- The items can neither be all protected nor all canceled while displaying searched results.

1  **6** **3** **1** ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight ToruCa** ▶ **Press**  **4** **1**
ToruCa is protected and the mark changes from  to .

• To cancel: Highlight ToruCa ▶  **4** **4**

■ **Protecting multiple cards:**  **4** **2** ▶
Select ToruCa ▶ 

■ **Protecting all:**  **4** **3**

■ **Canceling protection of multiple cards:**
 **4** **5** ▶ **Select ToruCa** ▶ 

■ **Canceling all:**  **4** **6**

INFORMATION

- In the view screen, press  **7**.
- If the number of protected cards reaches the maximum number of protected cards before all data are protected, the cards dated later are protected up to the limit.

Deleting ToruCa

- Protected ToruCa cannot be deleted. Cancel protection first and then delete it.

1  **6** **3** **1** ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight ToruCa** ▶  **3** **1**

■ **Deleting multiple cards:**  **3** **2** ▶
Select ToruCa ▶ 

■ **Deleting all ToruCa in a folder:**  **3** **3** ▶
Enter the terminal security code

3 **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

- In the view screen, press  **8**.

Specifying whether to obtain ToruCa

ToruCa Setting

Specify whether to obtain ToruCa from a reader/writer and the actions for obtaining ToruCa.

- The settings in this function are reflected to Light Alert Setting (➡ P148) and Adjust Volume (➡ P68).

Default **ToruCa receive, Light alert: ON**
Light color: Sky
Receive alert volume: Level4

1  **6** **3** **2**

2 **Select each item to set**

ToruCa receive :

Specify whether to obtain ToruCa.

Light alert :

Specify whether to make the Enter key flash.

- If you set this to **OFF**, you cannot set the lighting color.

Light color :

Set the lighting color of the Enter key.

Receive alert volume :

Set the volume of the sound that you hear when you obtain ToruCa.

- Adjusting the volume ➡ P69

3 **Press** 

Preventing use of IC card functions

IC Card Lock

IC Card Lock disables use of the IC card by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer. It also disables acquisition of ToruCa and download of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αpli.

- The setting is retained even if the power is turned off.
- IC Card Lock cannot be set when All Lock is active. To set both IC Card Lock and All Lock, first set IC Card Lock and then set All Lock.
- Setting Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) automatically sets IC Card Lock. However, icon for showing that IC Card Lock is on is not displayed.

Default OFF

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select Yes

IC Card Lock is set and  appears on the standby display.

Canceling

- When **Voice +SecurityCode** is set as the procedure for canceling IC Card Lock, and voice keyword for authentication is recorded, voiceprint authentication is needed for canceling IC Card Lock.
- For voiceprint authentication, please take the following precautions:
 - Hold the terminal in the same way as when you are recording. (In the same way as you speak over the phone, hold the terminal beside your face, or 5cm away from the front of your face.)
 - A voice is hard to be recognized in the cases that circumference is noisy.
 - A voice is hard to be recognized when using the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch(optional), etc.

1 (for over a second)

After about 2 seconds, a beep is heard and recording starts.

- When **Security code** is set for the procedure to cancel IC Card Lock, go to Step 3.

2 Say the authentication keyword within 5 seconds

When the keyword is authenticated, the terminal security code entry screen appears.

- To stop the authentication: 



- When there is a noise around, **Please try again to verify voiceprint in quiet place.** is displayed. Press  and say the keyword again.
- If the keyword was not authenticated, the message appears. Press  and say the keyword again.
- Pressing  for over a second, without voiceprint authentication operation, displays the terminal security code entry screen.

3 Enter the terminal security code

INFORMATION

- You can also set/cancel in shortcut operations.
 (Menu)    or (Menu)      ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶  or 
- When **Voice +SecurityCode** is set as the procedure for canceling IC Card Lock, voiceprint authentication is needed before entering the terminal security code.
- Depending on words you registered or conditions where you recorded, voiced data may be certified by the neighboring sounds or the similar words. It may happen easily, when you registered a particularly short word or recorded at a noisy place.
- When you fail voiceprint authentication 5 times consecutively, the voiceprint authentication stops.

Menu 83133

Enabling to cancel by voice and the terminal security code

IC Card Lock Setting

Set the authentication operation that is necessary for canceling IC Card Lock

- Only one voice recording for about 0.5 to 2 seconds can be made.
- Please take the following precautions when recording:
 - Record at as quiet a place as possible with little neighboring noise.
 - It is recommended to register words of 5 to 10 syllables. In addition, please avoid the words that you do not usually use, because pronunciation does not maintain the same.

- Talk by one of following methods, holding your FOMA terminal at about 5 cm distance.
Accuracy of voice recognition is improved when you talk holding your FOMA terminal beside your face just like you talk normally.
 - In the same way as you speak over the phone, open the FOMA terminal and hold it beside your face
 - Hold it in the front of your face
- Speak as clearly as possible. Please do not register in a low or a loud voice.
- Be careful not to cover the microphone with your finger.
- Please note that voice data could be certified by a voice of another person, if the word with any sounds of サ (sa) line (such as シャ (sha), シュ (shu), ショ (sho)) are used.
- It may become hard to be certified if the following words are used:
 - With some prolonged sounds(ー) such as “セーター” (sweater)
 - With some geminate consonants(っ) such as “とっちゃって” (tocchatte)
- Please do not make the sound that is unrelated to the voice data, such as clearing your throat, “Uh...”, or tongue-clicking. In addition, please do not blow your breath to a microphone.
- Be careful not to make the silence part while you are recording. Talking too slowly may be considered as a silence part, and may not be recorded correctly.

Default Security code

1  **6 4 4**

2 Enter the terminal security code

3 Select **Cancel method field** ▶ **2**

- To set the authentication operation to the terminal security code input only: **1** ▶ Go to Step 7

4 Select **Record in Voice data field** ▶ 

- When the voice data is already recorded, after selecting **Record**, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite.

5 

After about 2 seconds, a beep is heard and recording starts.



- When there is a noise around, **Please try again to record in quiet place.** is displayed. Press  and retry.

6 Say the keyword within 5 seconds ▶ 
▶ Say the keyword again within 5 seconds



- Record the keyword twice. It is registered when the first and second recording match.
- To stop the recording: 

- A confirmation screen appears in following cases. Press  to retry from Step 5, and change the volume of voice or the keyword.
 - When a voice is small
 - When keyword is short/long
 - When there are few syllables
 - When there is the noise around
 - When the first and second keyword did not match

7 Press 

INFORMATION

- Since the voice of a person will change by age or other reasons, using the same keyword for long term may become hard to match to the recorded voice data. In that case, please register the voice data again
- Voiceprint authentication makes no warranty of complete certification. For any damage or loss, which the user shall sustain by having been used by a third party or misauthentication of voiceprint, NTT DoCoMo assumes no responsibility.

Menu 83132

Setting IC Card Lock automatically Timed Lock

You can set to lock IC card automatically after the specified time (1 to 90 minutes) is past.

Default OFF

1  **6 4 3**

Next

2 Select *Timed Lock* field ▶ 1



- To cancel: 2 ▶
Go to Step 4

3 Select *Time to lock (min)* field ▶ 1 to 7

4 Press ⏏

INFORMATION

- Even if *ON* is set, IC card will not be locked automatically when i-α ppli is running. The setting is made after i-α ppli ends.

Full Browser

Viewing Internet web pages designed for PC	Full Browser 304
Setting Full Browser	Browser Setting 308

Viewing Internet web pages designed for PC

Full Browser

You can view Internet web pages designed for PCs on FOMA terminal.

- Some web pages may not be downloaded or displayed properly.
- Packet communication fee is required for usage of Full Browser. Full Browser is not supported by the Pake-Houdai service.

1 Select the viewing method

- For the first time after you purchased FOMA terminal, enter the URL to view a web page.
- If Access Setting of Full Browser is set to **No**, the access setting screen appears. If Access Setting of Full Browser is set to **Yes**, Full Browser appears. For Access Setting 

■ Viewing the home page:

- Your FOMA terminal is connected to the web page registered as a home page. No home page is registered by default. For registering a home page 
- If the home page is not registered yet, press  to go to the home page setting screen.

■ Selecting URL from Bookmark: Select a folder Select a bookmark

- No bookmark is registered by default. For registering a bookmark 
- Operations available from the folder list or bookmark list are the same as those for i-mode bookmarks. For details of operation 

■ Entering the URL of a web page to view: Enter URL (up to 512 one-byte characters)

- Enter a URL in the same manner as for i-mode. For details of operation 

■ Displaying web pages using URL history: Select URL

- URL History contains last 20 URLs you connected to.
- Operations available from the URL history list are the same as those from the URL history list of i-mode. For details of operation 

■ Reconnecting to the last page displayed (Last Visited URL):

- Some pages may not be displayed. Or a different page from the last visited one may be displayed.

2 when you finish viewing Internet web pages Select Yes

INFORMATION

- You can also display the Internet web page by registering a bookmark of Full Browser to i-mode Shortcut. For details of operation 
- Some pages may take some time to appear.
- The following functions are not supported.
 - Viewing Flash movies
 - Viewing PDF data
 - Plug-in
 - Playing sound
 - Saving screen memo
 - Phone To
- To stop displaying the page, press  or  while downloading the data.

Viewing web pages by Full Browser

Full Browser screen

The Full Browser screen is available in two modes: the mobile mode and the PC mode. In the mobile mode, the layout of a page is adjusted to the width of the FOMA terminal screen. Scroll up and down to see the hiding part of the page. In the PC mode, a web page is displayed without being adjusted to the screen size. To view the entire page, scroll both vertically and horizontally. The default is the mobile mode.

Mobile mode



PC mode



① Page title

-  appears before the title while the data is being downloaded.
- If the page has no title, the URL is shown.

② Display mode icon

 : Mobile mode  : PC mode

- Displaying a page divided into frames 
- Multi-window display 

■ Switching between the mobile mode and the PC mode

- You cannot change the modes while downloading the data.

①

- Each time you press the key, the mode switches.
- The setting is saved even after Full Browser ends.

■ Scrolling

- In the mobile mode, use the following keys for scrolling:

: Scroll up and down or highlighting an item (hold down for over a second for high-speed scroll)

: Page up and down

: Page up

: Page down

- In the PC mode, use the following keys for scrolling:

: Scroll up and down or highlight an item (hold down for over a second for high-speed scroll)

: Scroll right and left or highlight an item (hold down for over a second for high-speed scroll)

to : Scrolling pages in the direction of the key pressed

■ Showing the previous or next page

- In the mobile mode:
- In the PC mode:

■ View position indicator

When a page is displayed or the screen is scrolled, a bar that indicates the current position of the page appears for a second.

- To display the indicator manually:
- To set the view position color:
- To set not to display the view position:

■ Reloading the data

■ Switching the character encode

- Each time you press the key, the character encode is switched in the following order: SJIS → EUC → JIS → UTF8.
- Pressing the key 4 times returns to the original encode.
- Setting auto switch:
- Characters may not be displayed correctly even if you change character encodes.
- Changing the character encode while characters are displayed correctly may cause them not to be displayed correctly.

■ Playing animation from the beginning

■ Showing the URL of a page

- You can copy the URL. Follow the procedure in "Copying the URL". ➡P211

■ Showing the URL of a linked page

1 Highlight the link

- To copy the displayed URL: Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Copying the URL". ➡P211

■ Sending the URL via mail

The i-mode Mail composition screen is displayed with the URL of the current page in the message text.

■ Viewing another page

- To display the home page:
- To select URL from Bookmark: Select a folder Select a bookmark
- To enter the URL of a page to view: Enter URL (up to 512 one-byte characters)
- To view web pages using URL history: Select URL

■ Showing HELP

INFORMATION

- The following icons may appear instead of images.
 - : While data is being downloaded or when Image Display is set not to display images
 - : When the image data is invalid, cannot be found or cannot be received because of being outside of the service area
 - : When the image cannot be displayed because of incorrect URL
- You cannot use submenus while downloading data.
- Procedures to select links or use entry fields is the same as on the i-mode site screen. However, you cannot select a numbered item with dial keys.
- The font size on the Full Browser screen conforms to the setting of *i-mode view* of Font Size Setting. The size of the displayed characters, however, depends on the page settings. Note that the font size of some pages may not be changed even if you change the font size setting.
- Some pages may be connected to the network automatically. A confirmation screen appears asking whether to connect to the network for communication.
- Full Browser can display TLS/SSL pages. TLS/SSL is a safer data communication method that uses certification/encryption technology to protect privacy.
 - During TLS/SSL communication, appears on the screen.

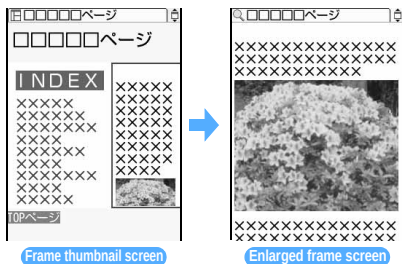
- To display the page certificate, press **[Menu]** while a TLS/SSL page is displayed and select **Display → View certificate**.
- When you close a TLS/SSL page, a confirmation screen appears.

Displaying a page divided into frames

The frame thumbnail screen appears first. When you select a frame, the enlarged frame screen appears allowing scrolling and selecting items.

- A page divided into many frames may not be displayed. In the multi-window mode, the number of frames that can be displayed is fewer than the standard mode.

1 Select a frame in the frame thumbnail screen



- To return to the frame thumbnail screen: **[Ch/Off]**
- The following icons are shown while a frame-divided page is displayed:

- : Thumbnail
- 🔍 : Enlarged frame

A green **[Ch/Off]** appears while data is being downloaded for the frame thumbnail screen or for the current frame on the enlarged frame screen. A gray **[Ch/Off]** is displayed while data is being downloaded for another frame on the enlarged frame screen.

- The screen automatically returns to the frame thumbnail display in some cases such as selecting a link.

INFORMATION

- All the page content may not be displayed depending on the frame composition.
- On the frame thumbnail screen, the following operations are unavailable:
 - Scrolling
 - Showing link destination
 - Saving images
 - Searching
 - View position indication/setting
- The frame which needs certificate is shown in yellow, and the frame in which a trouble is detected by the scan function is shown in red.

Viewing multiple windows

You can open multiple windows at a time to read multiple pages and view the pages by switching windows.

- Up to 5 windows can be open. However, depending on the number of frames or the page content, you cannot open 5 windows at a time.
- Multiple pages cannot be displayed on the same screen at the same time.

Example Displaying the link destination on a separate window

1 Highlight a link on the Full Browser screen

▶ Press **[Tab]** **[1]** **[5]**

The link destination page is displayed on a new window. The previous page remains in the rear window.

The title field changes to show the tab of each window.



Tab of each window
White: Current window
Gray: Rear window

- To display the home page: **[Tab]** **[1]** **[1]**
 - To display web pages using Bookmark, URL entry field or URL history: **[Tab]** **[1]** ▶ **[2]** to **[4]**
 - For the subsequent steps, follow the procedure in "Viewing Internet web pages designed for PC".
- P304

- In the multi-window mode, a confirmation screen for the operation on the rear window may appear. The rear window's tab blinks while the rear window's confirmation screen is displayed.

■ **Switching windows:** **[Tab]** **[3]** ▶ **Select a window**

■ **Closing a window:** **Show the window to close** ▶ **[Ch/Off]** ▶ **Select Yes**

- If any data is being downloaded, stop downloading by pressing **[Menu]** or **[Ch/Off]** and then press **[Ch/Off]**.
- When only one window is open, Full Browser ends.

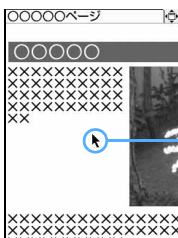
INFORMATION

- Some links will open a new window automatically.
- In the multi-window mode, switching the display mode of a window changes the display mode of all the open windows as well.

Displaying in the pointer mode

You can use the pointer in the same manner as PC for scrolling and selecting items.

1 Press **[#]** on the Full Browser screen



The pointer appears.

- Pressing the key again returns to the standard mode.

- Use **[F5]** to move the pointer. Holding it down for over a second moves the pointer faster. You can also move the pointer by pressing the key at an angle.
- When the pointer reached at an end of the screen, the screen scrolls up, down, right or left automatically.
- Highlight a link, entry field or button by the pointer and press **[Enter]** to select. **Select** is displayed in the middle of the guide row when selection is available.
- Showing the previous or next page: **[Left Arrow]** / **[Right Arrow]**
- You cannot select a guide row or submenu.
- The pointer does not appear on the search screen or image selecting screen.
- The pointer's move may be limited depending on the frame.
- The setting is saved even after Full Browser ends.

Switching from i-mode to Full Browser

If Internet websites cannot be displayed in i-mode, you can switch to Full Browser to view them.

- Some web pages, however, may not be downloaded or displayed properly.

1 Connect Internet websites via i-mode

2 **[Menu]** **[3]** **[3]** ▶ Select **Yes**

- If Access Setting of Full Browser is set to **No**, the access setting screen appears. If Access Setting of Full Browser is set to **Yes**, Full Browser appears. For Access Setting **▶P309**
- If you save the settings or press **[Alt/Enter]** with Access Setting set to **No**, the i-mode screen does not reappear.

Various operations in the Full Browser screen

Registering in Bookmark

- Maximum number of URLs that can be registered **▶P38**
- You cannot register URLs longer than 512 one-byte characters in Bookmark.
- Some pages may not be registered in Bookmark.

1 **[Menu]** **[2]** **[1]** on the Full Browser screen ▶ Select the folder to save URL

- For the subsequent steps, follow Step 2 in "Registering in the bookmark" of i-mode. **▶P205**

Saving images in FOMA terminal

- Images in GIF and JPEG format can be saved. However, images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.
- Image files larger than 300 Kbytes cannot be saved.
- Even if a image file is of valid format and size, it may not be saved depending on pages.
- Background images cannot be saved. Any other data than images cannot be downloaded.

1 **[Menu]** **[5]** on the Full Browser screen ▶ Select an image

- For the subsequent steps, follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Downloading images from sites". **▶P208**

Searching for a character string in the page

- Searching is unavailable during data downloading.
- Some pages may not be searched.

1 **[F5]** on the Full Browser screen

The screen switches to the search screen and the character string entry field appears at the bottom of the screen. **[Search Icon]** appears left to the display mode icon.

2 Enters a character string (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters)

Searching is executed and the words matched to the entered character string is highlighted.

- To highlight the next matched word: **[Next Arrow]**
- To highlight the previous matched word: **[Previous Arrow]**
- To end searching: **[Enter]**

- **Setting the detailed conditions:** on the search screen ▶ **Select items and set**
 - To search for a completely matched one-byte character string, set the search method to *Exact match*. For example, in case of entering "cat", when selecting *Partial match*, "cats" is also highlighted, but with *Exact match*, "cats" is not highlighted.
 - To distinguish between upper/lower case, select *Yes* in *Case-sensitive*.
 - The setting is saved even after Full Browser ends.

INFORMATION

- The search results sometimes overlap the character string entry field. To check the entry field content, press .

Uploading images

You can upload images of FOMA terminal to the website supporting image uploading.

- Images in GIF and JPEG format can be uploaded. The image file size must be up to 80 Kbytes. If the image file contains character string or more than one image are to be uploaded, the total size is up to 100 Kbytes.
- You cannot upload images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from FOMA terminal (excluding images with file restriction set at your terminal). Any other data than images and character strings cannot be uploaded.
- The uploading method varies depending on web pages.

1 Select the **View** button on the page for uploading the image

- The selection screen appears if the miniSD memory card is inserted. To upload images from FOMA terminal, select *Phone memory*. To upload images from the miniSD memory card, select *miniSD card* and then *My picture* or *Other image*.
- The **View** button appears when images can be uploaded from FOMA terminal. If you view the same page by PC, you will see a different button in place of **View**.

■ **Changing a selected file:** Select **View** button ▶ **Select Change**

■ **Canceling a selected file:** Select **View** button ▶ **Select Cancel**

2 Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Setting Full Browser

Browser Setting

- The following i-mode settings are also valid for Full Browser
 - Connection Timeout Setting
 - Host selection
 - Certificate Setting
 - Display Light Setting

Menu 2941

Setting a home page

Home URL

Default not registered

1

2 Enter a URL (up to 512 one-byte characters)
▶ Press

INFORMATION

- You can also set a home page by pressing while a web page to be set as a home page is displayed and selecting *Set as home URL* and *Yes*. You cannot register URL longer than 512 one-byte characters.

Menu 2942

Setting cookies

Cookie Setting/Deleting

Cookie is the mechanism for temporarily saving the data about a user (the user name, etc.) in FOMA terminal when the user accesses Internet websites and sending the saved data to the same website when the user accesses again. Cookie is used, for example, to automatically display the user-specific page.

- Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of enabling cookies.
- If cookies are disabled, some web pages will not be displayed properly or cannot be used.

Default Valid

1

2 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Cookie :

When you set this to **Valid**, cookies are always enabled. When setting **Valid(notify)**, a confirmation screen appears before transmission. When you set **Cookie** to **Invalid**, cookies are always disabled.

Notify :

Select when to display the confirmation screen from among **Sending**, **Receiving**, and **Sending/receiving**, when **Valid(notify)** is set.

- **Deleting all cookies saved:**  **Enter the terminal security code**  **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

- When you change the UIM with another, *Cookie* is set to **Invalid**.
- When you change *Cookie* from **Invalid** to **Valid** or **Valid(notify)**, the terminal security code may be required. A confirmation screen may appear asking whether to delete saved cookies.
- You cannot display saved cookies or delete each of them.

Menu 2943

Setting script

Script Setting

Make setting of JavaScript of the Internet web pages.

- JavaScript is a program running on the Internet web pages.
- If you set **Script Setting** to **Invalid**, some web pages may not be displayed correctly.

 **Script Setting:** **Valid**
Window Open Guard: **Invalid**

1    

2 **Select each item to set**  **Press** 

Script Setting :

Set whether to enable JavaScript.

Window Open Guard :

Specify whether to open a new window in response to a request from a JavaScript program. When Window Open Guard is set to **Invalid**, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to open a new window. Selecting **Yes** on that screen opens a new window. When it is set to **Valid**, a new window does not open.

INFORMATION

- Also you can change the **Window open guard** setting by pressing  on the Full Browser screen and selecting **Display**  **Window open guard**  **Yes**.
- With Window Open Guard set to **Valid**, when JavaScript requires to open a new window on the Full Browser screen and Window Open Guard works,  appears in the position of the display mode icon.

Menu 2944

Setting the display mode

Display Mode Setting

Select a display mode (the mobile mode or PC mode) in which Full Browser opens.

 **Mobile mode**

1      **Press**  or 

Menu 2945

Setting whether to display images

Image Display

 **Image, Animation:** **Display**

1    

2 **Select each item to set**  **Press** 

Image :

Specifies whether to display images or animation.

- When **Not display** is set, animation cannot be set.

Animation :

Specifies whether to play animation.

When **Not display** is set, the first frame of animation is displayed.

INFORMATION

- You can also make this setting by pressing  on the Full Browser screen and selecting **Display**  **Image settings**.

Menu 2946

Setting whether to use Full Browser

Access Setting

 **No**

1    

2 **Select Yes or No**  **Press** 

- If you select **Display**, notes are displayed.
Please read the notes before you select **Yes**.

INFORMATION

- When you change the UIM with another, Access Setting is set to **No**.

Setting Referer

Referer Setting

You can set whether to send "Referer" (the link source information to show the page from which you accessed the linked page) when you select a link to view the link destination page.

- Select **Send**, **Notify** or **Unsend**. Selecting **Notify** displays a confirmation screen before sending Referer.
- Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Referer.

Default Send

1     ► Press any of  to 

Hiding the guide row from the Full Browser screen

Screen View Setting

Hide the guide row from the Full Browser screen and shows the page content on the full screen.

- On the full screen, you can perform operations in the same manner as the standard screen.

Default With menu icon view

1    

2 Press 

- To show the guide row: 

Displaying/Editing/Managing Data/Playing Music

Making full use of images

Displaying images	My Picture	312
Editing still images		314
Setting the operating conditions of images	Settings (My Picture)	318
Saving the still image in the Data Center	Data Security Service	319

Making full use of video/i-motion

Playing video/i-motion	i-motion	320
Editing video/i-motion		322
Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion	Settings (i-motion)	326
Moving video/i-motion to the miniSD memory card	Movable Contents	326

Making full use of Chara-den

Chara-den		327
Displaying Chara-den	Chara-den	327
Recording Chara-den	Record Chara-den	328
Setting the operating conditions of Chara-den	Settings (Chara-den)	330

Making full use of melodies

Playing melodies	Melody	330
Setting the operating conditions of melodies	Settings (Melody)	331

Making full use of the miniSD memory card

miniSD memory card		331
Inserting/removing the miniSD memory card		335
Checking free space in the miniSD memory card		335
Exchanging the data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card		336
Displaying data in the miniSD memory card		338
Managing the miniSD memory card		341
Using the miniSD memory card from PC	USB Mode Setting	342

Managing various data

Using the album		343
Checking/editing detail information of the data	View/Edit Detail Info	344
Deleting data		346
Sorting data	Sort	346

Making full use of infrared communication

About infrared communication		347
Sending data by infrared communication	Send Ir Data	347
Receiving data by infrared communication	Receive Ir Data	349
Activating infrared communication mode	Infrared Communication Mode	351
Using the infrared remote control function		351
Setting operations for data transfer	Data Transfer Setting	351

Making full use of Sound Recorder

Recording sound with Sound Recorder	Sound Recorder	352

Making full use of PDF compatible viewer

Displaying the PDF data	My Document	354
Utilizing bookmarks or marks		357
Saving the image of the page	Capture Screen	358
Setting the operating conditions of PDF compatible viewer	Settings (My Document)	359

Listening to music

How to play music		359
Utilizing Music Player	Music Player	359

Displaying images

My Picture

You can display images saved in **Image** (My Picture) in Data Box in FOMA terminal.

1 Select a folder

The following images are stored in each folder:

Camera :

Still images shot by Camera or Chara-den and still images captured from video/i-motion or PDF data

i-mode :

Images downloaded from a site, i-mode Mail or i-a ppli

Deco-Mail picture :

Images preinstalled by default for Deco-mail and images downloaded from sites or read by Bar Code Reader

Item :

Frame images preinstalled by default and frame images/stamp images downloaded from sites

Preinstalled :

Images preinstalled by default

Data transfer :

Images read by Bar Code Reader, images moved/copied from miniSD memory cards and images received via data communications

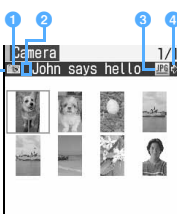
Album :

Images moved from other folders

- Not displayed by default. To create P343
- You can enter any album name in creating.
- To switch to the folder list display of the miniSD memory card: press or
- Using the miniSD memory card P338

2 Highlight an image

Thumbnail display



Display name and icons of the data at cursor

Title display

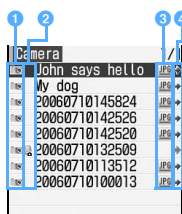


Image list

1 Originated

: Preinstalled : i-mode

: Camera : Item
 : Data transfer : Chara-den

2 Type of image

No icon: Still image

: Created animation

: Animation/Flash movie

3 File format

: GIF image : JPEG image

: SWF (Flash movie)

No icon: Created animation

4 File restriction

(in blue) : Without file restriction

(in gray) : With file restriction

- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
- Images with the UIM operation restriction function set are displayed with in the thumbnail display.
- Display name and other items can be modified. P344

■ Sending mail with images attached:

Highlight an image

The mail composition screen is displayed with the selected image attached.

- When the file size of still image is under 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to paste in the text field. Select **Yes** to paste in the mail message and select **No** to attach to mail.
- Depending on the image size or file size of the still image, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA) or save it to Data Box. P235
- Images that can be attached to mail P234

3 Press



The image is displayed.

Display name

Comment

- Press to display the previous or next image.
- Animation, Created animation and Flash movies are replayed automatically when displaying. During playback, the following operations are enabled:

-  : Pause/replay
-   : Retry (replay from the beginning)
-  : Slow-down playback (only in stop for playing Created animation)
-  : Full-screen display

■ Displaying images at the same magnification: to scroll

- It is available for only the image that the size exceeds 240 x 400.
- Animation, Created animation and Flash movies cannot be displayed at the same magnification.
- Terminating displaying at the same magnification: 

■ Displaying the image using full-screen display:

The display name and guide row disappears and the image is displayed in the entire screen.

- Press  to display the previous or next image.
- The image smaller than the screen is not enlarged.
- In case the auto scroll setting during full-screen display is on in Settings, when the image of the JPEG format is larger than the screen, the image is displayed by magnification to fit either vertically or horizontally and scrolled automatically.
 - Press  during the auto scroll to suspend/restart. The scrolling cannot be performed again after finishing the operation.
- When the vertical and horizontal sizes of the image have about the same ratio as that of the screen, the entire image is displayed and not scrolled.
- Even when the vertical or horizontal size is smaller than that of the screen, the image is not enlarged.

Viewing a slide show

The images in the folder can be displayed with switching automatically.

- The speed of switching images or the order depends on *Settings*.

1

2 Highlight a folder ▶ Press

Slideshow is started.

- The folder list returns after displaying all the images in the folder.

- Created animation is not displayed.
- Sound effects of an image are not played.
- To quit halfway: 
- Images cannot be switched by pressing keys.

Setting images to the standby display or phonebook data

1 Select a folder

2 Highlight an image ▶

3 Select an item

■ Setting to the standby display: Select Yes

- The display size of the still image may be selected depending on the image size.
 - ▶ P137
- If the i-appli standby display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it continuously.
- Setting may be unavailable depending on images.

■ Adding to the phonebook:

- Registering entries to the phonebook ▶ P107

■ Updating and registering to the registered phonebook: Select phonebook data

- If an image or video/i-motion has already been set, the image is replaced by the selected image.

■ Setting as call image: or

■ Setting as videophone call image, substitute image or on-hold image: to

- Images whose size exceeds 176 x 144 and images unavailable for output from FOMA terminal can be set only as call image.

■ Setting as outgoing/incoming message image or message retrieval Image: to

- The outgoing/incoming image is also displayed even when Message R/F or SMS is sent or received.
- Flash movies cannot be set as the message retrieval image.

■ Setting to the menu icon: or to or

The selected image is set as a menu icon of *Customized 1* or *Customized 2* of tile display.

- Created animation, Flash movies and item images cannot be set as a menu icon.

Creating animation

You can create animation by selecting still images (up to 6) in the same folder.

- Animation, Created animation, Flash movies and still images with a size of more than 640 x 480 cannot be saved to Created animation.
 - Still images saved in Created animation cannot be displayed or edited respectively.
 - Still images shot continuously by the camera are saved as Created animation.
- Canceling the setting returns to each still image.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2

- To cancel the setting: highlight the Created animation ▶   

3 Select images



The number is displayed on the image in the order of selection.

- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
- To cancel all the selections: 

4 ▶ Enter a display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two- byte) ▶ Press

In the image list,  and the display name are displayed. In the thumbnail display, the first cartoon panel is displayed.

INFORMATION

- When still images shot continuously are canceled, the number such as “-1” and “-2” is appended at the end of the file name.

Editing still images

You can edit still images saved in **Image** (My Picture). The editing items and the maximum editable image size are as follows:

Editing items	Maximum editable image size (dot)*1
Change size	1728 x 2304 (240 x 400 or 352 x 288 for zoom in/out)
Clip	1728 x 2304 (The still image of 1728 x 2304 cannot be clipped specifying the range.)
Brightness/Tone	240 x 400 or 352 x 288
Effects	240 x 400
Reverse/Rotate	480 x 640
Frames	240 x 400 or 352 x 288
Paste stamp	240 x 400 or 352 x 288
Paste text	240 x 400 or 352 x 288
Cut	240 x 400
Size limitation	1728 x 2304
Adjust	240 x 400 or 352 x 288

*1 When the image cannot be edited because the size of it is too large, it can be reduced to the editable size using **Change size**.

- The following images cannot be edited:
 - Animation, Created animation, Flash movies, item images and images in the **Preinstalled** folder
 - Still images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from FOMA terminal (excluding still images with file restriction set with your terminal)
 - Still images with either the vertical or horizontal size is under 8 dots
- Editing of **Brightness/Tone** or **Effects** may display the image smaller. The image size is not influenced. Save as it is. The size of saved images is correct.

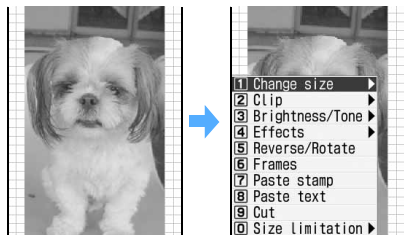
1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a still image ▶

The still image edit screen appears.

- Adjustment ◀P318

3



Still image edit screen

Edit menu screen

4 Select an editing item ▶ Edit the still image

 : Change size ◀P315

 : Clip ◀P315

- 3** : *Brightness/Tone* ➡P316
- 4** : *Effects* ➡P316
- 5** : *Reverse/Rotate* ➡P316
- 6** : *Frames* ➡P317
- 7** : *Paste stamp* ➡P317
- 8** : *Paste text* ➡P317
- 9** : *Cut* ➡P318
- 0** : *Size limitation* ➡P318

5 after editing ▶ Select Save

Edited still image is saved as a new still image in the same folder.

- Select *As frame/stamp* to save as an image for frame or stamp. Images that can be available as frame/stamp ➡P345

INFORMATION

- After editing, the file size of still images may become larger.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, you cannot save it. Save the image after deleting unnecessary images first.
- Areas in a still image edited which are transparent on FOMA terminal are displayed as white when viewed on a PC.
- Larger still images than display area are reduced. However, images are displayed at same magnification in the case of *Paste stamp*, *Paste text*, *Cut* and *Zoom in/out* of *Change size*.

Changing the size

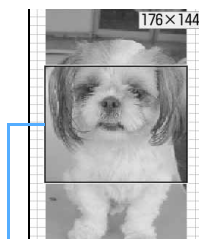
- Changing the size of still image may deteriorate the image quality.

1 on the edit menu screen

2 Change the image size

- Changing it to the specified size: to

If the horizontal to vertical ratio of specified size and still image is same, the size is changed and the still image edit screen reappears. If the horizontal to vertical ratio differs, a size frame is displayed. Press / to adjust the position of the size frame, and press to change the area encompassed by the size frame to the specified size.



Size frame

- Putting the whole still image in the specified size by ignoring the aspect ratio (*Stretch*):
- Putting the entire still image in the specified size by maintaining the aspect ratio (*Fit*):

■ Zooming in/out:

- ① ▶ to zoom in/out



You can zoom in/out by 5% with horizontal and vertical ratio held. The current image size and the rate of zoom in/out are displayed on the upper right of the screen.

- Press to zoom out by 20% or press to zoom in by 20%.
- The portrait still image can be zoomed in up to 288 x 352 and the landscape still image can be zoomed in up to 352 x 288 (up to the limit of the either).
- Images can be reduced up to 8 dots in either of horizontal or vertical.

- ②

The still image edit screen reappears.

Clipping images to desired sizes

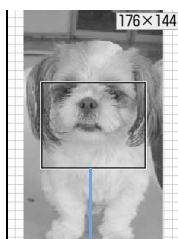
You can clip a part of the still image by specifying the size or range.

- When the original still image is less than 16 x 16, clipping is unavailable.

1 on the edit menu screen

2 Clip the still image

- **Clipping the image to the specified size:**
 ① [1] to [9] ► to adjust the clipping position



Clipping frame

- Switching the vertical/horizontal of the clipping frame: [⏮] [⏭]
- Changing the clipping size: [E]
- Specifying the clipping range: [Menu]

② [⏮]

The still image is clipped into the selected size and the still image edit screen reappears.

- **Specifying the range and clipping:**
 ① [1] ► to adjust the position of [⏮]



Range specification frame

The position of upper left of the range specification frame is set and [⏮] is displayed on the lower right of the frame.

② [⏮] to adjust the position of [⏮] ► [⏮]

The clipping range is set and the range specification frame is displayed in solid line.

- Press [⏮] instead of [⏮] to change the position of the upper left again.
- [⏮] after pressing [⏮] to move the range specification frame.

③ [⏮]

The still image is clipped into the specified range and the still image edit screen reappears.

- **Adjusting the brightness:**
 ① [1] ► to adjust the brightness



- Maximizing: [⏮]
- Minimizing: [Menu]

② [⏮]

The still image edit screen reappears.

- **Changing the tone to monotone or sepia:**
 [2] or [3]

The tone is modified and the still image edit screen reappears.

Applying special effects

1 [4] on the edit menu screen

2 Select the type of effect

The effect is applied to the still image and the still image edit screen reappears.

- Soften** : Softens the image.
- Spherical** : Swells the still image spherically from the center.
- Emboss** : Turns leaden color and emphasizes concavity and convexity.
- Spiral** : Makes the still image look as if it is spiraling out from the center.
- Shiny** : Attaches a mark as glistening.
- Mosaic** : Attaches a mosaic.

Reversing/rotating

1 [5] on the edit menu screen

2 Reverse/rotate the still image

- [⏮] : Reverse up and down
- [⏮] : Reverse left and right
- [⏮] : Rotate 90 degrees to the left
- [⏮] : Rotate 90 degrees to the right

- You can rotate by 90 degrees when rotating the Speed Selector.

3 Press [⏮]

The still image edit screen reappears.

Changing brightness and tone

1 [3] on the edit menu screen

2 Change the brightness and tone

Overlaying a frame

- Frames set by default ➡ P424

1 [6] on the edit menu screen

The same size frames as the still image being edited are listed.

- Images set as frame option in Edit Detail Info are displayed even if their size differs from that of the still image edited.

2 Select a frame

3 Check the still image ▶ Press [OK]



The still image edit screen reappears.

- Switching frames: [Frame]
- Rotating a frame 180 degrees: [Rotate]

Pasting stamps

- Stamps set by default ➡ P425

1 [7] on the edit menu screen

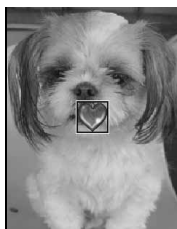
The smaller size stamps than the still image being edited are listed.

- Images set as stamp option in Edit Detail Info and stamps preset by default are displayed even if their size is larger than that of still image edited.

2 Select a stamp

The selected stamp is displayed in the center of the screen.

3 [Move] to move the stamp ▶ Press [OK]



A beep sound is heard and the stamp is pasted.

- You can paste stamp in another location continuously.

- Deleting all the pasted stamps: [Menu]
- The volume of a beep sound depends on Listen Volume.

4 Press [OK]

The still image edit screen reappears.

Pasting characters

Paste Text

1 [B] on the edit menu screen

2 Select each item to set

Text : Enters the text (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters).

Font type : Sets the text type.

Font size : Sets the text size.

Font color : Sets the text color.

Font border color :

Sets the text bordering color.

Background color :

Sets the text background color.

Paste method :

If **By block** is set, text is pasted at the same time. If **By character** is set, text can be pasted on a different position by character.

3 [OK]

The text (in case of **By character** set for **Paste method**, the first character) is displayed in the center of the screen.

4 [Move] to move the text ▶ Press [OK]



A beep sound is heard and text is pasted.

- You can paste text in another location continuously.

- When **By character** is set for **Paste method**, each pressing of [Move] pastes each character. When the last character is pasted, the first character appears.

- Deleting all the pasted text: [Menu]
- The volume of a beep sound depends on Listen Volume.

5 Press [OK]

The still image edit screen reappears.

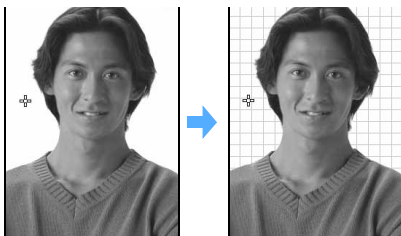
Cutting a desired section out

You can select a color and cut the section of the similar color.

1 on the edit menu screen

2 to place to the color to cut and

The section with a similar color as the color at  is cut out.



• You can cut another area continuously.

3 Press

The still image edit screen reappears.

Limiting file size for saving

You can limit the file size to a size below 9,000 bytes for *Msg attach:Small* and a size below 500 Kbytes for *Msg attach:Large* for saving.

1 on the edit menu screen ► Select a size

The image is saved as a new image with a size below the specified size in the same folder.

• Still images with a size larger than 240 x 400 or 352 x 288 cannot be set as *Msg attach:Small*.

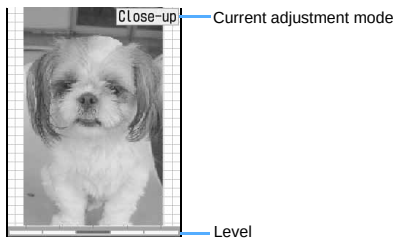
Adjusting brightness and tone balance

• Adjusting may not have much effect depending on the still image.

1 on the still image edit screen

The still image adjustment mode is activated.

2 to switch the adjustment mode



Close-up : Makes appropriate adjustment for images such as still objects and plants.

Near view : Makes appropriate adjustment for the background.

Distant view : Gives vivid brightness and contrast to a landscape image.

Beautiful skin : Gives an effect to make the skin look white and smooth on a portrait image.

Tanned : Gives an effect to make the skin look tanned on a portrait image.

Pale : Gives an effect to make the skin look pale on a portrait image.

Drunk : Gives an effect to make the skin look ruddy on a portrait image.

• The adjustment mode can also be selected by pressing  and  to .

3 to adjust the level

• Maximizing : 

• Minimizing : 

• The brightness and color tone change depending on the level.

4 Press

The still image edit screen reappears.

Setting the operating conditions of images

Settings (My Picture)

Default View format: Display 16 icons
 Display title: Yes
 Display number: Yes Display comments: Yes
 Scale up image: No Sound effect: Yes
 Auto scroll mode: No
 Slide show speed: Normal
 Slide show random: No

1 ►

2 Select each item to set

View format :

The thumbnails appear when setting to **Display 16 icons**, and the title display appears when setting to **List view**.

Display title :

Sets whether to show a display name on the image display screen.

Display number :

Sets whether to display the number of images on the image display screen.

Display comments :

Sets whether to display comments on the image display screen.

Scale up image :

Sets whether to scale up an image smaller than the display area by maintaining its aspect ratio when displaying it.

- Even when set to **Yes**, the image is not scaled up in case of the full-screen display.

Sound effect :

Sets whether to play effect sounds set for images when an image is displayed.

Auto scroll mode :

Sets whether the auto scroll is enabled when  is pressed on the image display screen.

Slide show speed :

Selects the switching speed of slide show among **Fast**, **Normal** or **Slow**.

Slide show random :

Sets whether to display images randomly in slide show.

3 Press

INFORMATION

- In the image list and image display screen, press  and then select **Settings**.

Saving the still image in the Data Center

Data Security Service

You can save still images in the Data Center using Data Security Service.

- This service is a pay service and requires a subscription. Please refer to "i-mode User's Manual" for the details.

Saving the still image

- The still image that exceeds 100 Kbytes cannot be saved.
- Still images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from FOMA terminal (excluding still images with file restriction set with your terminal) cannot be saved.
- Created animation, Flash movies, item images, or the image in the **Preinstalled** folder cannot be saved.

1 ► Select a folder

2 ► Select a still image ►

- Up to 10 data can be selected.

3 Select Yes ► Enter the terminal security code

Selected still images are saved at the Data Center.

When saving is completed, the execution result is displayed.

- The execution result disappears in about 5 seconds and the image list returns. Press  to return to the list immediately.

INFORMATION

- In case you have not subscribed to Data Security Service, a screen for indicating that appears.

Restoring the still image

Save still images saved in the Data Center from the sites of the Data Center to FOMA terminal. Please refer to "i-mode User's Manual" for the details.

Confirming the communication log

You can confirm the log of communicating with the Data Center.

- The log is recorded up to 30. When exceeding 30 logs, the oldest one will be deleted.

1 ► Select a synchronization log

Playing video/i-motion

i-motion

You can play video/i-motion saved in **i-motion** of Data Box in FOMA terminal.

- Video/i-motion files (MP4 files and ASF files) with an image size from 48 x 48 to 320 x 240 can be played.

1 Select a folder

The following video/i-motion files are stored in each folder:

Camera :

Videos recorded with Movie Camera or Chara-den and sounds recorded with Sound Recorder and movie memos

i-mode :

i-motion downloaded from sites or i-motion Mail, i-motion compatible with Movable Contents moved from the miniSD memory card

Preinstalled :

Videos preinstalled by default

Data transfer :

Video/i-motion files moved/copied from the miniSD memory card (excluding the i-motion compatible with Movable Contents) or received by data communication

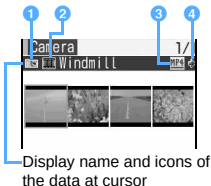
Album :

Videos/i-motion files moved from other folders

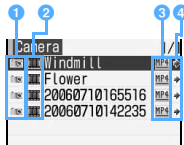
- Not displayed by default. To create P343
- You can enter any name of album in creating.
- To switch to the folder list of the miniSD memory card: or
- Handling the miniSD memory card P338

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file

Thumbnail display



Title display



Video/i-motion list

1 Originated

: Preinstalled	: i-mode
: Camera	: Data transfer
: Chara-den	: Videophone

2 Replay restriction

- : No restriction
- : Restriction on the number of times
- : Restriction on expiration
- : Restriction on period

3 File types

: MP4	: MP4 with bookmark
: ASF ^{*1}	: ASF with bookmark ^{*1}

^{*1} Only the files saved in the miniSD memory card can be replayed.

4 File restriction

- (in blue) : Without file restriction
- (in gray) : With file restriction

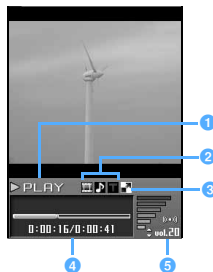
- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
- Sounds recorded with Sound Recorder or video/i-motion only with sound (i-motion without image such as singer's vocals) is displayed as and video/i-motion with the UIM operation restriction function set is displayed as in the thumbnail display.
- Display name and other items can be modified. P344

Sending mail with video/i-motion attached (i-motion Mail): Highlight a video/i-motion file

The mail composition screen with the video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail P234

3 Press



The video/i-motion is played.

1 Playing status

- : in play
- : in stop
- : in pause

2 File types

: only image	: only sound
: only text	: image + sound
: image + text	: sound + text
: image + sound + text	

3 Enlargement/reduction

: enlarged : reduced
No icon :

Displayed at the same magnification

- Whether to enlarge or not can be set in Settings.

4 Playing duration :

Indicates the current playing time/full duration in numeric and bar.

5 Play volume :

Indicates the current volume.

- In case **Size adjustment** is set to **Normal** in Settings, a confirmation message appears when trying to replay the video reduced. Press .

- The following operations are available while playing video/i-motion:

: Pause/replay, Play from the beginning (after stopping)

: Adjust volume : Stop

: Play at fast speed

: Rewind and play

: Return to the video/i-motion list

■ Setting a bookmark:

In case of setting a bookmark, when playing a video/i-motion set with a bookmark from the list, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to play from the bookmark position. When selecting **Yes**, playing is started from a bookmark position and when selecting **No**, playing is started from the beginning.

- In case of playing it by pressing while in pause on the play screen, playing is started from the beginning even when a bookmark is set.

- The number of the bookmark to be set is only one in all the video/i-motion of FOMA terminal, and all the video/i-motion of the miniSD memory card. If a bookmark is already set, it is discarded and the new bookmark is set.

- You cannot set in i-motion whose replay restriction is set. In addition, when playing from the phonebook registration screen, mail composition screen, setting screen for sound and display, a bookmark cannot be set and playing from a bookmark cannot be performed.

① During playback, at the position to set a bookmark ▶ Select Yes

- Playing continuously:
- To cancel the bookmark: Stop the playback and

■ Playing horizontally:

- Each time you press, playing horizontally and vertically size of the image are switched.
- For video/i-motion with the ticker, switching is unavailable.
- Video/i-motion with an image size of 320 x 240 is enlarged to fit to the full width of the screen by pressing while playing horizontally (Play wide). The top and bottom parts exceeding the screen are not displayed. Press again to restore the normal replay.

INFORMATION

- When saving video/i-motion, acquisition of thumbnail images may not be available due to the effect of other functions. Such video/i-motion is displayed as in thumbnail display.

When the replay restriction is set

A confirmation screen is displayed before playback starts. Replay restriction types and contents to check are as follows:

■ Restriction on the number of times

Status	Description
Playback counts remain	<i>Available to replay x (x/all) time(s). Play?</i> is displayed. To play, select Yes ; to stop, select No .
Maximum number of plays reached	<i>This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?</i> is displayed. To delete, select Yes ; to cancel, select No .

■ Restriction on expiration

Status	Description
Within expiration	<i>Available to replay until year/month/date hour: minutes. Play?</i> is displayed. To play, select Yes ; to stop, select No .
After expiration	<i>Replay period has expired. Delete?</i> is displayed. To delete, select Yes ; to cancel, select No .

■ Restriction on period

Status	Description
Within period	<i>Available to replay from year/month/date hour: minutes to year/month/date hour: minutes. Play?</i> is displayed. To play, select Yes ; to stop, select No .
Before period	<i>Replay period has not yet started.</i> is displayed. Press to return to the video/i-motion list.
After period	<i>Replay period has expired. Delete?</i> is displayed. To delete, select Yes ; to cancel, select No .

- You can check remaining playback counts, replay expiration and playback period in View Detail Info.
- Even if you change the date and time, expiration time and period of restriction cannot be changed.
- In case the date and time is set with the automatic time correction set to off, the date and time may be reset if the battery pack is removed or not charged for a while with the battery exhausted. If this happens, i-motion with a replay restriction on expiration or period cannot be played.

Setting video/i-motion to the standby display or phonebook data

- Video/i-motion without an image, i-motion whose replay restriction is set and i-motion whose image size is beyond 320 x 240 cannot be set as the standby display.
- Video/i-motion can be set for the phonebook, Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) or incoming image when the image size is 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF). However, only the video/i-motion with only image can be set for the phonebook or incoming image.
- The video/i-motion for which **Available** is set for ring alert and receive display settings in detail information can be set as Movie ringtone and incoming image. However, the setting is unavailable for the following video/i-motion:
 - Video/i-motion files sent back to your terminal after transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal using infrared communication or the data link software
 - Video/i-motion files except for i-motion compatible with Movable Contents copied/moved to FOMA terminal from the miniSD memory card (including the case where files are copied/moved to your terminal again after saved in the miniSD memory card)
- Video/i-motion with sound only can be set for the PushTalk ring alert.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶

3 Select each item to set

- **Setting to the standby display:**  ▶ **Select Yes**

- If zooming is available for the video/i-motion, select **Yes(Same size)** to maintain the image size or select **Yes(Large size)** to enlarge it to the screen size.

- If the i-appli standby display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it continuously.
- Playing the video/i-motion set as the standby display ▶ P137

■ **Adding to the phonebook:**

- Registering entries to the phonebook ▶ P107

■ **Updating and registering to the registered phonebook:** ▶ **Select the other party**

- If an image or video/i-motion has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.

■ **Setting as Movie ringtone (ring alert):**

▶  to 

■ **Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail):**

①  ▶  or 

② **Select the other party from the phonebook**

③ **Check the content** ▶ 

- If any alert has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.

■ **Setting as incoming image (voice call, videophone call):** ▶ or

- If an incoming image has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.

INFORMATION

- Some video/i-motion files may not be set as the standby display and other items.

Editing video/i-motion

You can edit video/i-motion saved in *i-motion*.

- The following video/i-motion can be edited:
 - The video shot with your terminal
 - The video/i-motion without file restriction or replay restriction except the video shot with your terminal
- Video/i-motion files registered by default cannot be edited. In addition, some video/i-motion such as the video in ASF format cannot be edited depending on the file format.

Clipping a still image

Capture

You can specify any position while playing video/i-motion and clip as a still image (Capture).

- Tickers are not displayed in the captured still image.
- The size of the still image is the same as that of displayed video/i-motion.
- Images cannot be captured correctly while playing horizontally.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Select a video/i-motion file

The selected video/i-motion is played.

3 at a desired position to capture

- Retrying the capturing: ▶ Select Yes

4 Check the image ▶ Press



The still image is captured and saved in the **Camera** folder of **Image** (My Picture).

- Capturing continuously: ▶ Repeat Step 3 to 4

■ Sending mail with the captured still image attached:

The captured still image is saved in the **Camera** folder in **Image** (My Picture) and the mail composition screen with the still image attached is displayed.

- If the file size of still image is below 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to paste in the text field. Select **Yes** to paste in the mail message and select **No** to attach to mail.

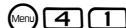
Clipping a part of video/i-motion

Custom Edit

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning to the desired position.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶



The custom edit mode is activated and is displayed above the playing duration.

- When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion, a screen indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select **Yes** to activate the custom edit mode. In this case, tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

3 (start position) ▶ Press at the position ending the clipping (end position)



Current file size/Maximum file size

- Press to retry the operation after pressing (start position). Press to cancel clipping.
- If you have played until the end without pressing (end position), clipping is terminated automatically. In this case, the end position is set before the end of file a little.
- In case the size of video/i-motion file exceeds 490 Kbytes, clipping ends automatically when reaching 490 Kbytes regardless of the limit size.

■ Setting the limit of clipping size:

- This setting is available only when the original file size is larger than 290 Kbytes.

① in the screen before pressing (start position)

② Select **Msg attachment S (290 Kbytes)**, **Msg attachment L (490 Kbytes)** or **No settings (the size of the original file)**

- When the file size during clipping has reached the set clipping size, clipping ends automatically.
- When the original size of file exceeds 490 Kbytes, **No settings** is not available.

4 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶ Press

The clipped video/i-motion is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

■ Playing video/i-motion:

■ Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:



The clipped video/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen with the video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail
P234

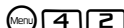
Clipping by specifying the file size Edit by Size

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning up to the specified file size.

- The file size which you can specify is from 10 to 490 Kbytes. However, the maximum size varies depending on the video/i-motion.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶



- When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion, a screen indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select **Yes** to activate the edit by size mode. In this case, tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

3 Enter the size to clip

■ Settings to the size that can be attached to mail:

- This setting is available only when the original file size is larger than 290 Kbytes.



② Select **Msg attachment S (290 Kbytes)** or **Msg attachment L (490 Kbytes)**

- When **Msg attachment S** is selected, the clip size is set to "290". When **Msg attachment L** is selected, the size is set to "490".

4 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶ Press

The clipped video/i-motion is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

■ Playing video/i-motion:

■ Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:



The clipped video/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen with the video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail
P234

Inserting tickers

[Edit Ticker](#)

- The number of tickers inserted differs depending on video/i-motion (up to 10).
- The contents of tickers already inserted cannot be changed. In case of inserting a new ticker, tickers already inserted are all deleted.
- Video/i-motion with inserted tickers cannot be set for Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion).
- When the size of video/i-motion file exceeds 490 Kbytes (495 Kbytes for the file with tickers), this operation is not available.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶



- If tickers are already inserted, a confirmation screen asking whether to delete and edit tickers is displayed. If **Yes** is selected, all tickers inserted already are deleted.

■ Deleting tickers: ▶ Select

Yes

All tickers inserted are deleted. Go to Step 9.

3 Select each item to set

Time interval to show :

Set to **User specified** to specify a desired position to insert the ticker.

Specify the number of tickers when setting to **Regular interval**. Tickers of the number specified are inserted at regular intervals within video/i-motion replay duration.

Tickers :

Enters the number of tickers (1 to 10) when setting **Time interval to show** to **Regular interval**.

4

- When **Time interval to show** is set to **User specified**, a confirmation message appears and is displayed above the playing duration.
- If **Regular interval** has been set for **Time interval to show**, go to Step 7.

5 to start the replay at the ticker insertion position



Playing is not interrupted. Each time you press , the inserting position of tickers is set.

- When replay is started, the first inserting position is set at the beginning.

- When playback of a video/i-motion file ends or you have set up to 9 tickers, the settings are automatically ended.

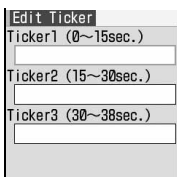
- Ending the insertion position setting halfway:



- To display one ticker from the beginning to the end:  to start the replay 

6 Select Yes

7 Select the ticker entry field Enter characters (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters)



■ Decorating tickers:

- 1 Highlight a ticker  
- 2 Select each item to set

Ticker 1 to 10 :

Displays characters entered on the ticker edit screen. You can enter characters.

Font color :

Sets the text color. When it is set to **Default**, white is set.

- The font color has no effect on pictograms.

Background color :

Sets the background color of tickers. When it is set to **Default**, black is set.

Scroll :

Sets a text scrolling.

- Setting **Scroll in** gradually bring characters into view.
- Setting **Scroll out** gradually sends characters out of view.
- Setting **Scroll in & out** brings into view characters and sends them out of view.
- When setting to **None**, characters cannot be scrolled.

Scroll direction :

Sets the scroll direction when set to other than **None**.

Word alignment :

Sets the display position of characters.

Font size :

Sets the size of characters.

Under line :

Sets whether to underline the characters.

Blink :

Sets whether to blink the characters.



8

- In case that the file size of video/i-motion without ticker is 300 Kbytes or less, if the file size of video/i-motion with ticker exceeds 300 Kbytes, a message appears meaning that the **Msg attachment S** size has been exceeded. Press .

9 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) Press



The video/i-motion with tickers is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

■ Replaying the video/i-motion:

■ Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:



The video/i-motion with tickers is saved and the mail composition screen with video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail
 P234

Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion

Settings (i-motion)

- The contents of the setting of **Repeat play**, **Volume** and **Surround** is also reflected for Player Setting of Music Player.
- The contents of this setting is also reflected on **Display Light Time (i-motion playing)** in Display Light Setting ●P144.

Default View thumbnails: Yes
Size adjustment: Normal
Repeat play: ON Backlight: Always on
Volume: Level20 Surround: OFF



2 Select each item to set

View thumbnails :

The thumbnails appear when setting to **Yes**, and the title display appears when setting to **No**.

Size adjustment :

If **Zoom** is set, video/i-motion is enlarged/reduced and displayed with aspect ratio of the image held in accordance with display area when the display area and the size of video/i-motion to play are unsuitable. Setting **Normal** does not zoom in/out. However, when video/i-motion with a size larger than the display area is played, it is reduced to fit the area by maintaining the aspect ratio.

Repeat play :

Sets whether to repeat play while playing an album or video/i-motion in the miniSD memory card is replayed continuously.

Backlight :

When **Always on** is set, the display light is always on while displaying the video/i-motion list and playing. When set to **Terminal settings**, it depends on **Display Light Time (Normal use)** in Display Light Setting.

Volume :

Sets the sound volume during play.

Surround :

Sets whether to enable the surround effects during play.

3 Press [Menu]

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, press [Menu] and select **Settings**.

Moving video/i-motion to the miniSD memory card

Movable Contents

i-motion compatible with Movable Contents can be moved from FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card among the copyrighted i-motion downloaded from the sites.

- i-motion without permission of a data provider cannot be moved. Availability for moving can be confirmed in **Detail info**. ●P344
- Never remove the miniSD memory card or turn off the power while moving i-motion. All the movable contents data in the miniSD memory card may be unavailable.

Moving i-motion compatible with Movable Contents in FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

- Moved i-motion file is saved in the Home folder of i-motion compatible with Movable Contents. To replay ●P339

1 [Circle with dot] [2] ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight an i-motion file ▶ [Menu] [5] [4] [1] ▶ Select Yes

■ Moving selected items :

① [Menu] [5] [4] [2] ▶ Select an i-motion file

- Each pressing [Menu] switches Thumbnail display and Title display.

② [Menu] ▶ Select Yes

■ Moving all: [Menu] [5] [4] [3] ▶ Select Yes

INFORMATION

- In case i-motion is moved to a new folder created (●P339), it may not be confirmed in another FOMA terminal.
- In case of moving selected items/all, i-motion files compatible with Movable Contents downloaded from sites are saved in the Home folder of i-motion compatible with Movable Contents and video/i-motion files other than those are saved in the **Movie** folder or the **Other movie** folder in **Data Box** respectively.

Moving i-motion compatible with Movable Contents in the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal

- Playing is unavailable without inserting the same UIM used when downloaded from the sites or moved from FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card. In addition, some i-motion files cannot be played in case of different models.

- Some i-motion data cannot be moved to FOMA terminal.
- Moved i-motion files are saved in the *i-mode* folder of *i-motion* in **Data Box**.
- The data compatible with Movable Contents saved in the miniSD memory card via 902i series cannot be moved.



The folder list of i-motion compatible with Movable Contents is displayed.

2 Select a folder

3 Highlight i-motion data



■ **Moving selected items:**     
Select i-motion data 

■ **Moving all data of i-motion in the folder:**
     Enter the terminal security code

4 Select Yes

Chara-den

Chara-den is a character to display on the other party's screen instead of your self image when you use the videophone. By pressing dial keys during a videophone call, you can move the character and make it express a feeling casually. In addition, you can set Chara-den to the standby display and have Chara-den make specific actions on standby or for missed calls. The displayed still image and video of Chara-den can be shot and saved.

- Some Chara-den can move their mouths in time with the sounds from the microphone.
- Chara-den can be downloaded from sites and stored.
- Action of Chara-den consists of **Action** (whole acts) and **Action of Parts** (partial acts). Some Chara-den have only either or no action.



Action: 喜ぶ(Joy)



Action of parts:
足 ジャンプ(Jump)

Menu 54

Displaying Chara-den

Chara-den

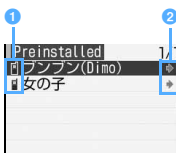
- Chara-den set by default 

1 Select a folder

The following Chara-den is saved in each folder:

-  **i-mode :**
Chara-den downloaded from sites
-  **Preinstalled :**
Chara-den preinstalled by default
-  **Folder :**
Chara-den moved from other folders
 - Not displayed by default. To create 
 - You can enter any name of folder in creating.

2 Highlight a Chara-den image



Chara-den list

1 Originated

-  : i-mode
-  : Preinstalled

2 File restriction

 (in gray): With file restriction

- Display name and other items can be modified. 

■ Making a videophone call using Chara-den:

- 1 Highlight a Chara-den image** 
 - Phone number can be entered from the phonebook by pressing .
 - Press  to set the conditions and make a videophone call. 
 - Operating procedure of the videophone 
 - Using Chara-den while making a videophone call 

■ Setting Chara-den to the videophone substitute image: Highlight a Chara-den image

- You can also set by holding down **[E]** for over a second in the Chara-den display screen.

■ Setting Chara-den to the standby display:

- ① **Highlight a Chara-den image** ▶ **[Menu]** **[4]**
- ② **Set the type of action and the interval for action** ▶ **[E]**
 - For the contents of the setting, follow Step ② to ③ in "Setting action of Chara-den". ◀P137
- ③ **Select Yes(Same size) or Yes(Large size)**
 - If the i-α ppli standby display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it continuously.

3 Press **[E]**



The Chara-den image is displayed.

Action mode

- [ACTION]** : Action
- [PARTS]** : Action of parts

- Pressing a dial key performs action in accordance with the number.
- Stopping the action: **[0]**

■ Switching between large size and same size display: **[E]** for large size and **[Q]** for same size

■ Switching Chara-den images:

- ① **[Menu]** **[9]** **[1]** ▶ **Select a folder**
- ② **Select a Chara-den image**

■ Displaying the action list: **[E]**

The action list for the current action mode is displayed.

- Selecting an action activates the Chara-den.
- Highlight an action and press **[Menu]** to confirm the details.

■ Switching between Action and Action of Parts: **[E]** (for over a second)

- Each time you hold down, **Action** and **Action of Parts** are switched.

INFORMATION

- Chara-den cannot be edited or saved by attaching mail or data transfer out of FOMA terminal.

Recording Chara-den

Record Chara-den

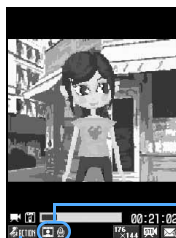
- Still images and videos shot are saved in the same file format as still images and videos shot with the camera. Image file saving format ◀P174

1 **[E]** **[4]** ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight a Chara-den image** ▶ **[E]**

The Chara-den recording screen appears.

3 **[E]** to switch the recording types



- You can also switch by pressing **[1]** to **[4]** after pressing **[Menu]** **[3]**.

Recording type

Action mode

[E] **[V]** **Video + Voice :**

Records Chara-den with sounds from the microphone. For Chara-den that reacts with sounds from the microphone, the mouth in the image moves in time with the sounds.

[E] **[V]** **Only video (w/ mic) :**

Records only the image. The microphone is only valid for Chara-den that reacts with the sounds and moves its mouth in time with the sounds from the microphone. Sounds are not recorded.

[E] **[V]** **Only video (w/o mic) :**

Records only the image. Microphone becomes invalid.

[E] **[S]** **Still image :**

Shoots still images

- Icon definitions of other than recording types or action modes ◀P173
- The size of images or the size restrictions of still images cannot be changed.
- The memory to save, quality or size restrictions of video can be changed in Still Image Setting/ Video Setting of Record Chara-den.

■ Switching Chara-den images: **[Menu]** **[1]** **[1]**

- ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a Chara-den image**

4 Execute an action to shoot ▶ Press

In case of shooting still images, the shutter sound is heard and the still image is saved. In case of recording videos, the shutter sound is heard and the shooting is started. Recording is stopped by pressing  or if the size of video file exceeds the limit and the video is saved after the shutter sound is heard.

- The still image/video recorded is saved in the **Camera** folder of **Image** (My Picture) or **i-motion** when FOMA terminal is selected as the memory to save and in case the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, it is saved in the **My picture** folder or **Movie** folder of the miniSD memory card.
- Press  during recording video to pause. Press  to restart recording.
- Actions can be executed during recording the video as well.

■ When **Auto save** is set to **No** in Still Image Setting or Video Setting:

A confirmation screen appears. The following operations are available on the confirmation screen:

-  : Save the still image/video
-  : Cancel (Delete the still image/video without saving)
-  : Switch the memory to save
-  : Compose mail
-  : Replay (only video)

■ Checking the saved still image/video immediately: ▶ Select the still image/video

- After checking, press  twice to return to the Chara-den recording screen.
- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, press , select the folder and select the still image/video. Press  3 times to return to the Chara-den recording screen.

INFORMATION

- For the notice for recording, refer to INFORMATION of "Shooting still images with Camera" (P179) and INFORMATION of "Recording videos with Movie Camera" (P183).
- Chara-den that reacts with the sounds from the microphone may not make motions correctly depending on the volume of the sounds from the microphone.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number, delete unnecessary image/video files following the instruction on the screen.

Setting the operation of still image/video recording

Still Image Setting/Video Setting

Default

- **Still Image Setting**
Quality: Standard Shutter sound: Shutter sound1
Rec.File Restriction: File unrestricted
Auto save: Yes Save to: Terminal
Display size: Large
Set lighting: Terminal settings
- **Video Setting**
Quality: STD (Standard)
Size restriction: Msg attach:Small
Shutter sound: Shutter sound1
Rec.File Restriction: File unrestricted
Auto save: Yes Save to: Terminal
Display size: Large Set lighting: Terminal settings

1 4 on the Chara-den recording screen

2 Select each item to set

Quality (Still Image Setting) :

Sets the quality of still images to shoot.
Higher quality requires a larger size of still image files.

Quality (Video Setting) :

Sets the quality of video to shoot. Higher quality requires a larger size of video files.

Size restriction (Video Setting only) :

Sets the size restrictions of the video to record. When the size of video file exceeds the limit while recording, recording is automatically stopped.

Shutter sound :

Selects the shutter sound from shutter sounds 1 to 5.
• Selected sound is played.

Rec.File Restriction :

When you send still images/videos to the other party's mobile phone via mail attachment, you can set whether to restrict sending the still images/videos to other mobile phones from the received party's mobile phone.
• Downloaded Chara-den with **File restricted** preset cannot be set to **File unrestricted**.

Auto save :

When **Auto save** is set to **Yes**, the shot still image/video is automatically saved in the specified destination. When setting **No**, a confirmation screen is displayed after recording.

Save to :

Sets the memory to save.

Display size :

Specifies whether to enlarge Chara-den or to display in the same size.
• The setting takes effect the next time the recording screen is displayed.

Set lighting :

When **Always on** is set, the display light is always on while recording Chara-den. If you set **Terminal settings**, it depends on **Display Light Time (Normal use)** in Display Light Setting. ●P144

3

INFORMATION

- If a still image/video is taken from the Chara-den for which file restriction is set in **Rec.File Restriction** of detail information (except for the case with **Rec.File Restriction** set with your terminal), this still image/video cannot be edited, forwarded or attached to mail.
- If a still image/video is taken from the Chara-den for which file restriction is set in **Rec.File Restriction** of detail information (except for the case with **Rec.File Restriction** set with your terminal), this still image/video cannot be saved in the miniSD memory card. Even when setting the memory to save to **miniSD**, it is changed to **Terminal**.

Setting the operating conditions of Chara-den

Settings (Chara-den)

Default Display size: Large
Set lighting: Terminal settings

1

2 Select each item to set

Display size :

Specifies whether to enlarge Chara-den or to display in the same size.

Set lighting :

When **Always on** is set, the display light is always on while displaying the Chara-den list or Chara-den. If you set **Terminal settings**, it depends on **Display Light Time (Normal use)** in Display Light Setting. ●P144

3 Press



Menu 53

Playing melodies

Melody

Play melodies saved in **Melody** of Data Box in FOMA terminal.

1



Select a folder

The following melodies are saved in each folder:

i-mode :

Melodies downloaded from sites or i-mode Mail

Preinstalled :

Melodies preinstalled in FOMA terminal

Mail attach melody :

Melodies for attaching to mail, which are preset by default

Data transfer :

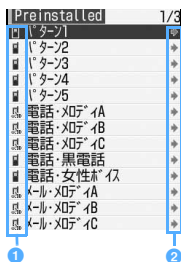
Melodies read by Bar Code Reader, melodies moved/copied from the miniSD memory card or melodies received via data communication

Album :

Melodies moved from other folders

- Not displayed by default. To create ●P343
- You can enter any album name in creating.
- To switch to the folder list of the miniSD memory card: (RE)
- Handling the miniSD memory card ●P338

2 Highlight a melody



Melody list

1 Originated

- i-mode
- i-mode + 3D sound supported
- Data transfer
- Data transfer + 3D sound supported
- Preinstalled
- Preinstalled + 3D sound supported
- 3D sound ●P132

2 File restriction

- (in blue) : Without file restriction
- (in gray) : With file restriction

- Display name and other items can be modified. ●P344

Sending mail with melodies attached:

Highlight a melody

The mail composition screen with the melody attached is displayed.

- If the receiver is other than FOMA D701i, D701iWM, D702i, D851iWM, D901i, D901iS, D902i or D902iS, the received melody may not be correctly played.

- Melodies that can be attached to mail ➡P234

3 Press



The melody is played.

- The following operations are available while playing a melody:

- ➡: Adjust volume
- ⏮: Play the previous/next melody
- ⏮/⏭: Return to the melody list

Setting melodies for ring alert

- Melodies in the *Mail attach melody* folder cannot be set as the ring alert.

1 Select a folder

2 Highlight a melody

3 Select the type of sound to set

- Setting as ring alert for voice call, mail, chat mail, Message R/F, videophone or PushTalk:  to 

- Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail):
①  or  ➡ Select the other party from the phonebook

② Check the content

- If a ring alert has already been set, the ring alert is replaced by the selected melody.

Setting the operating conditions of melodies

Settings (Melody)

- Default** Volume: Level 3
Light pattern: Sync melody
Light color: Rainbow
Vibrate: OFF
Play position: Play all
Play background: Standard
Stereo/3D sound: ON

1

2 Select each item to set

Volume :

Sets the volume in playing melodies.

Light pattern :

Sets the lighting pattern of the Enter key in playing melodies. When *Sync melody* or *OFF* is set, *Light color* cannot be set.

Light color :

Sets the color of the Enter key in playing melodies.

Vibrate :

Sets the vibrator pattern in playing melodies.

Play position :

Specifies whether to play the whole (*Play all*) or part of the melody (*Play portion*) in playing melodies.

Play background :

Sets the image to be displayed on the screen for playing melodies. To set an image in *Image* (My Picture), set to *Select* and select an image.

Stereo/3D sound :

Set to *ON* to play melody with broadening stereophony. Set to *OFF* for monophonic replay.

- 3D sound ➡P132

3 Press

INFORMATION

- In the melody list and melody play screen, press  and select *Settings*.
- When *Sync melody* is set for lighting pattern or vibrator, the lighting or vibrator may not function for some melodies.
- Even if *Play portion* is set for play position, partial playing may not be performed for some melodies.

miniSD memory card

You can save data such as shot still images, videos or melodies in the miniSD memory card or make backup of data such as the phonebook entries or schedules. In addition, video files and sound data created with external devices (PC, etc.) can be saved in the miniSD memory card for playing on FOMA terminal (➡P359, P445) or the data of the miniSD memory card can be operated from a PC (➡P342).

- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.

- Unformatted miniSD memory cards must be formatted with FOMA terminal before they can be used. The operation of the miniSD memory card whose format is stopped is not guaranteed.

◆P341

- The miniSD memory card formatted by such as a PC may not operate in FOMA terminal correctly (formatting may be unavailable).
- Images, video/i-motion files or melodies in the miniSD memory card cannot be set for the standby display, ring alert or incoming image, etc. In addition, video/i-motion in the miniSD memory card cannot be set as the standby display or Movie ringtone.
- i-motion compatible with Movable Contents can be saved in the miniSD memory card among the copyrighted i-motion downloaded from sites. However, it cannot be saved without the permission of the provider of data. Saved i-motion cannot be used without the same UIM as that used when saved. And some i-motions may not be used for different models.
- Some i-αppli data can be saved in the miniSD memory card.
- D902iS support commercial miniSD memory cards of up to 2 Gbytes (as of May, 2006). Perform the following procedure to see the latest information on operation such as the manufacturer or capacity of the miniSD memory card that the operation is confirmed.
 - From FOMA terminal:

iMenu → メニューリスト (Menu List) → ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → **My D-style** → **D902iS** クイックマニュアル (D902iS Quick Reference Manual) (as of May 2006)

- From PC:

Mitsubishi Electric Corporation's website at <http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d902is/> → **FAQ** → **miniSD** メモリーカード (miniSD memory card)

The information described in the above sites or web pages is the result of confirming the operation, but it does not mean that all operations are guaranteed.

- To connect a PC with FOMA terminal, the FOMA USB cable (optional) is required.

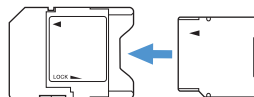
Usage precautions of the miniSD memory card

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card, switch off or apply impact while saving or deleting data, checking usage status or formatting. The data may be corrupted.

- Subjecting FOMA terminal with the miniSD memory card to strong impact such as dropping may cause the miniSD memory card to pop out.
- Do not attach labels or stickers on the miniSD memory card.
- Do not attach the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal if the card is damaged, soiled on the surface or deformed. It may cause failure.
- While data is being copied, moved, deleted, or when the miniSD memory card is being formatted or information is being updated,  is indicated at the upper part of the screen and the terminal is in the data transfer mode (same condition as out of service area). FOMA terminal will not be available to make phone calls, i-mode connection or data communication. Also, you cannot switch to other functions by pressing .
- The miniSD memory card cannot be used while All Lock or PIM Lock is on.
- In the miniSD memory card in which the data has been written and protected with other devices such as a PC, the data cannot be saved, deleted and formatted.
- Data saved from other devices into the miniSD memory card may not be displayed or played on FOMA terminal. Also, the data saved in the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- Depending on the miniSD memory card you are using, the saved video may be distorted.
- It is recommended that the data saved in the miniSD memory card be separately backed up for storage. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased or changed data.

Using with devices supporting the SD memory card

The miniSD memory card adapter allows you to use miniSD memory cards with devices which support the SD memory card.

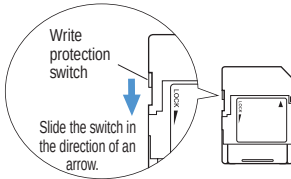


Insert a miniSD memory card into a miniSD memory card adapter.

- To remove the card, pull it out.

■ Preventing erroneous deletion

When you use the miniSD memory card with a miniSD memory card adapter, the write protection switch on the adapter will allow you to prevent erroneous deletion of data on the card.



- Slide the write protection switch to the “LOCK” side.
- Use something with a fine tip to slide the switch.
- Be careful not to give damage to the miniSD memory card.

miniSD memory card folder structure

■ Displaying on FOMA terminal

The folder structure is as shown below. Saving destinations are classified by the type of data.

Folder structure		Maximum allowable number of saved items*1
Data Box	My picture *2	9,999 items
	Other image *2	9,999 items
	Movie *3	4,095 items
	Other movie *3	9,999 items
	Movie *4	64,000 items*5
	Melody	9,999 items
PIM	Phonebook	9,999 items in total
	Schedule	
	Received message	
	Unsent message	
	Sent message	
	Note	
	Bookmark	
	My document	999 items
ToruCa		999 items
i-appli data *6		64,000 items*5

*1 Maximum data items which can be saved in the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal regardless of the capacity of the miniSD memory card.

*2 Still images shot with the camera, still images in JPEG format (DCF standard) and images in GIF format are saved in **My picture**. Still images in JPEG format (DCF non-standard) and Animation GIF are saved in **Other image**. (DCF is an abbreviation of Design rule for Camera File system and it is a standard for file systems.)

*3 Video/i-motion with images or tickers is saved in **Movie** and video/i-motion with sound only is saved in **Other movie**.

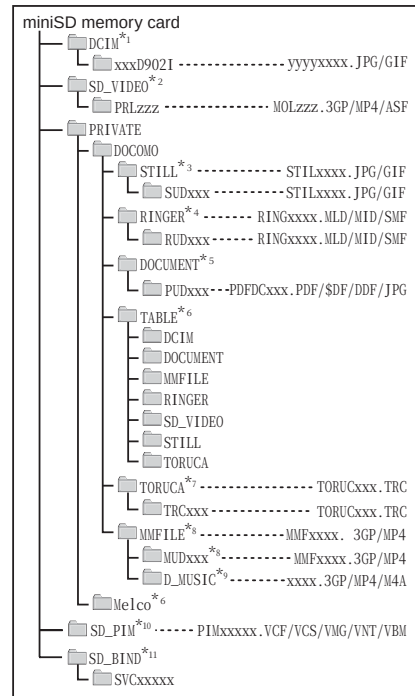
*4 i-motion compatible with Movable Contents is saved. Switch from the **Movie** folder to display. How to display P339

*5 The total number of **Movie** and **i-appli data**

*6 Saving data is executed via i-appli. Confirming and deleting the information can be executed from the folder of the miniSD memory card. P287

■ Inserting to and displaying on a PC

When data is moved/copied to the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal or still images or videos shot with the camera are saved directly to the miniSD memory card, the folder compatible with the file is automatically created in the miniSD memory card. When the contents of the miniSD memory card are displayed on a PC, etc., the structure of the folders and files is as follows. When saving data in the miniSD memory card from a PC, etc., save in the specified folder with the following file format and file name. If data is saved in the wrong folder or different file format, the data cannot be recognized on FOMA terminal.



*1 Shot images, still images in JPEG format (DCF standard) and images in GIF format are saved.

- In case the still images in JPEG format cannot be displayed after saving in this folder even though the information is updated, change the file name into the format of STILLxxxx.JPG (0001 to 9999 for xxxxx) and save in the folder of **PRIVATE** → **DOCOMO** → **STILL**. Then they may be displayed.

- *2 Video/i-motion are saved. Files with extension of 3GP or MP4 are treated as MP4 format.
 - *3 Still images in JPEG format (DCF non-standard) and Animation GIF are saved (the **Other image** folder when displayed in FOMA terminal).
 - *4 Melodies in MFI and SMF formats are saved.
 - *5 PDF data are saved. Supports the long file name format up to 64 one-byte characters including the extension as well. However, when saving from FOMA terminal, the file name may be changed to PDFDCxxx (in case the file name duplicates, etc.). An extension of \$DF means PDF data that failed to be downloaded. When the rest of the data has been downloaded and saved, the extension is changed to PDF. The extension of DDF means the files managing the information of i-mode bookmarks or marks, and JPG means data for thumbnail display. The file name without extension is as same as that of corresponding PDF data.
 - *6 Files for management are placed in the folders. Never delete or rename a file in this folder. FOMA terminal cannot correctly display data.
 - *7 ToruCa is saved.
 - *8 Video/i-motion with sound only is saved directly under MMFILE and MUDxxx (the **Other movie** folder when displayed in FOMA terminal).
 - *9 Music data is saved for replaying on Music Player. An optional folder can be created under the **D_MUSIC** folder. The file name (xxxx) of music data is optional. The number of characters for the file name is up to 256 bytes (256 characters in one-byte) including the path name and the extension.
 - *10 The phonebook, schedule, received mail, sent mail, unsent mail, notes and bookmarks are saved.
 - *11 The data of i-motion compatible with Movable Contents downloaded from sites or the i-appli data is saved. The file is encoded, so it cannot be viewed via PC. Never delete or rename for the file or folder in this folder. The data cannot be used correctly via FOMA terminal.
- The rule of folder name and file name is as follows (Characters are all one-byte.):
 - 100 to 999 are placed in xxx of xxxD9021.
 - A to Z (capital letter), 0 to 9 and _ (underbar) are placed in yyyy of yyyyxxxx and 0001 to 9999 are placed in xxxx.
 - A hexadecimal value of 001 to FFF in zzz of PRLzzz and MOLzzz (In hexadecimal notation, one digit is represented with one of 16 alphanumeric characters from 0 to 9 and A to F.)
 - 0001 to 9999 are placed in xxxx of STILxxxx, RINGxxxx and MMFxxxx.
 - 001 to 999 are placed in xxx of SUDxxx, RUDxxx, PUDxxx, TRCxxx, PDFDCxxx, TORUCxxx and MUDxxx.
 - 00001 to 65535 are placed in xxxxx of PIMxxxxx or SVCxxxxx.

INFORMATION

- On FOMA terminal, to use data of Data Box (except for the i-motion compatible with Movable Contents), PIM, My document and ToruCa copied to the miniSD memory card with a PC, etc., update of the miniSD memory card is required on FOMA terminal.
- If you change or delete the folder name in the miniSD memory card on a PC, etc., FOMA terminal cannot correctly display data.
- Even if an image larger than 1728 x 2304 in horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) size is saved in the miniSD memory card, it cannot be displayed on FOMA terminal.

Images/videos/melodies/PDF data/ToruCa available in the miniSD memory card

The value of file size restrictions or availability for each data format is as follows.

For details on mail attachment ➡P234

■ Images and video/i-motion

Upper row: file size Lower row: image size

Operation Data (Extension)	Copy/move to the miniSD memory card	Copy/move to FOMA terminal
Image in JPEG format (JPG)	Unlimited	500 Kbytes
	Unlimited	1728 x 2304
Image in GIF format (GIF)	Unlimited	500 Kbytes
	Unlimited	480 x 640
Video/i-motion in MP4 format (MP4, 3GP)	Unlimited	500 Kbytes
	Unlimited	Unlimited
Video/i-motion in ASF format (ASF)	Not supported	Not supported
	Not supported	Not supported

Operation Data (Extension)	Mail attachment	Contents display
Image in JPEG format (JPG)	500 Kbytes*1	2.6 Mbytes
	Unlimited	1728 x 2304
Image in GIF format (GIF)	10,000 bytes	2.6 Mbytes
	Unlimited	480 x 640
Video/i-motion in MP4 format (MP4, 3GP)	500 Kbytes	Unlimited
	176 x 144, 128 x 96	48 x 48 to 320 x 240*2
Video/i-motion in ASF format (ASF)	Not supported	Unlimited
	Not supported	176 x 144, 320 x 240

- *1 In case of exceeding 500 Kbytes, it is attached after converting into the data below 500Kbytes.
- *2 Even if video/i-motion data exceed the playable image size, in case the sound format is playable or a ticker that can be displayed exists in the data, the sound or ticker is replayed.

■ Other data

Value: file size

Operation Data (Extension)	Copy/move to the miniSD memory card	Copy/move to FOMA terminal
Melody in MFi format (MLD)	Unlimited	100 Kbytes
Melody in SMF format (MID, SMF)	Unlimited	100 Kbytes
PDF data (PDF)	Unlimited	2 Mbytes*1
ToruCa (TRC)	321 bytes*2	1,024 bytes

Operation Data (Extension)	Mail attachment	Contents display
Melody in MFi format (MLD)	Not supported	100 Kbytes
Melody in SMF format (MID, SMF)	10,000 bytes	100 Kbytes
PDF data (PDF)	Not supported	Unlimited
ToruCa (TRC)	321 bytes*2	1,024 bytes

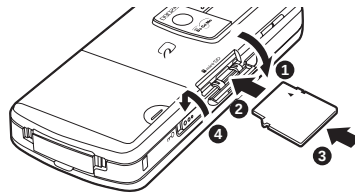
*1 Even when the file size displayed in the detail information exceeds 2M bytes, copying/moving is available in case the file size excluding the data of i-mode bookmarks or marks is within 2M bytes.

*2 It may vary depending on ToruCa.

Inserting/removing the miniSD memory card

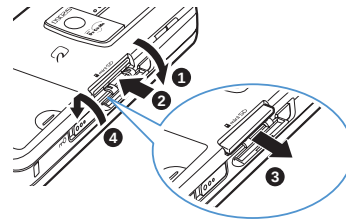
- Turn the power off before inserting/removing the miniSD memory card.
- In the miniSD memory card slot, do not insert anything other than the miniSD memory card.
- Do not touch metal contacts with your finger when you insert or remove the miniSD memory card.
- Insert the miniSD memory card correctly into FOMA terminal. You cannot perform operation such as copying data or making backup if you have not the miniSD memory card inserted correctly.
- Note that the miniSD memory card may pop out of the slot occasionally when you insert/remove it.
- Do not attach the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal if the card is damaged, soiled on the surface or deformed. It may cause failure.

Inserting the miniSD memory card



- 1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover
- 2 Insert slowly the miniSD memory card into the slot with its printed surface upward
- 3 Insert the miniSD memory card until it clicks
- 4 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover

Removing the miniSD memory card



- 1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover
- 2 Push the miniSD memory card lightly, and leave your finger
The miniSD memory card pops out a bit.
- 3 Remove the miniSD memory card slowly
Pull it straight out.
- 4 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover

Checking free space in the miniSD memory card

Check free space in the miniSD memory card before copying or making backup of data.

1 Press

miniSD Card	
1 Data Box	
2 PIM	
3 My document	
4 ToruCa	
5 plli data	
Used	20,432 KB
Free	9,408 KB
Total	29,840 KB

The rate of used area to full capacity

Used :

The current used area is indicated.

Free :

The current free space is indicated.

Total :

Full capacity of the miniSD memory card attached to FOMA terminal is indicated.

INFORMATION

- If the used area is not “0 KB” with no data (including music data for Music Player) saved, format the miniSD memory card.
- The miniSD memory card capacity actually available is smaller than the capacity specified on the miniSD memory card.
- If free capacity of the miniSD memory card is insufficient, data may not be saved. Save data after deleting unnecessary data or attaching another miniSD memory card.

Exchanging the data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card

You can copy/move data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card and back up FOMA terminal data into the miniSD memory card. Data type and operation contents exchangeable are as follows:

Data type		Contents of operation
Data Box	Image	One item, Selected
	Video/i-motion	Items, All items (copy)
	Melody	One item, Selected items, All items (move)
PDF data		
ToruCa		
PIM	Phonebook*1	One item (copy), Backup, Recovery
	Schedule	
	Mail	
	Bookmark (i-mode/Full Browser)	
	Note	

- *1 In case of backing up/recovering, it is available for the PushTalk phonebook. The PushTalk phonebook cannot be copied by copying single data item.
- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.
 - To move i-motion compatible with Movable Contents downloaded from sites between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card. ◀P326
 - i-appli data cannot be copied/moved.

Copying/moving data from FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

- Data prohibited from outputting from FOMA terminal cannot be copied/moved. Note that the data whose file restriction is set to **File restricted** with the same terminal and data in the **Data transfer** folder are excluded.

- Created animation, Flash movies or item images cannot be copied/moved.
- PDF data downloaded partially cannot be copied/moved.
- PIM data can be copied, but cannot be moved.
- UIM phonebook cannot be copied.
- Copying/moving may be unavailable depending on ToruCa.
- Protected ToruCa cannot be moved.
- When copying/moving ToruCa, it is saved as the state before obtaining ToruCa (details). Return to FOMA terminal to obtain ToruCa (details) again.

Example When copying/moving images to the miniSD memory card

- 1 ➡ **Select a folder**
- 2 **Highlight an image** ➡ ➡ or
- 3
 - **Copying/moving selected items:**
 - ① ➡ **Select images**
 - Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
 - ②
 - **Coping/moving all items:**
- 4 **Select Yes**

Images are copied/moved in the miniSD memory card.

 - To cancel copying/moving:

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list or ToruCa list, press and select **Move/Copy** → **Move to miniSD** or **Copy to miniSD** → **One item, Selected items** or **All items**.
- In the phonebook list, press and select **Data backup** → **Copy to miniSD card**.
- In the schedule day view screen, press and select **IrDA /miniSD** → **Copy to miniSD card**.
- In the received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list, press and select **Move/Copy** → **Copy to miniSD** → **One item**.
- In the bookmark list, press and select **Move/Copy** → **Copy to miniSD** → **Copy one item**.
- In the list of notes, press and select **miniSD card** → **Copy to miniSD card**.
- When images, video/i-motion or melodies set as the standby display or ring alert, etc. are moved to the miniSD memory card, each setting returns to the default. When images, video/i-motion or melodies set to the phonebook data are moved, the operation follows the settings of Sound Setting or Mail/Call Image Setting.

- When copying or moving the image, video/i-motion, melody, ToruCa on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, a file name will be automatically changed to the name for management. In case of the PDF data, the file name may be changed to the name for management depending on the data.
- If images are copied/moved to the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal, the file size displayed on the miniSD memory card may be larger than that displayed on FOMA terminal. In this case, the file size displayed on the miniSD memory card is the actual size.
- When the phonebook data is copied, images saved in the phonebook data are also copied. However, in case of displaying the phonebook data in the miniSD memory card, the images are not displayed. When returning the data to FOMA terminal, the images are displayed.
- Even if the phonebook data is copied, the saved videos are not copied.
- In case attached files (except video/i-motion) exceed 10,000 bytes, the attached files are not copied.
- Even when sent mail or unsent mail is copied, the attached video/i-motion file is not copied.
- The member list or image saved in the schedule is not copied.
- Some data of images, video/i-motion or melodies saved on D902iS may not be displayed or replayed on other FOMA terminals because of the difference in the data size limit.
- The setting of data protection is not copied on the miniSD memory card.
- In case still images are copied/moved to the miniSD memory card, they are saved in *My picture* and *Other image* in **Data Box** respectively depending on the format of still images. Still images other than those shot with FOMA terminal may be saved in *My picture*.
- In case video/i-motion files are copied/moved to the miniSD memory card, video/i-motion files with images or tickers are saved in *Movie* in **Data Box** and video/i-motion files with sound only are saved in *Other movie* in **Data Box**. In addition, i-motion compatible with Movable Contents downloaded from sites is saved in Home folder of i-motion compatible with Movable Contents.

Copying/moving data from the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal

- Maximum number of saved items in FOMA terminal ➡ P38

Copying/moving data in Data Box/PDF data/ToruCa to FOMA terminal

1   

2 Select the type of the data

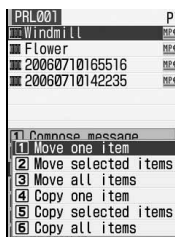
- Copying/moving data in Data Box:  ➡  to 
- Copying/moving PDF data: 

■ Copying/moving ToruCa data:

3 Select a folder

4 Highlight the data for data in Data Box and for PDF data and ToruCa

5 or



■ Copying/moving selected items:

-   or  ➡ Select data
-  

■ Copying/moving all items: or

6 Select Yes

Data is copied/moved to Data Box (each **Data transfer** folder in *Image* (My Picture), *i-motion*, *Melody* and *My Documents*) in FOMA terminal or the **ToruCa** folder in the ToruCa list.

- To cancel copying/moving: 

INFORMATION

- If you search the data and display the list screen, copying/moving all items cannot be performed.

Copying PIM data into FOMA terminal

- Backup data (data with , , ,  or ) cannot be copied. Perform recovery to restore the data to FOMA terminal.

1     ➡  to 

2 Highlight the data    ➡

Select Yes

- In case of single data of bookmark,  appears for i-mode bookmark and  appears for Full Browser bookmark.

Backing up data saved in FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

Make a backup of each PIM data in FOMA terminal into the miniSD memory card at once.

1 to

2

3 Enter the terminal security code Select

Yes

The selected PIM data is backed up to the miniSD memory card as one data item integrated.

- To cancel the backup:
 - The backup data will be discarded.

INFORMATION

- Operation is available from the phonebook list, schedule list, mail list, Bookmark list or notes list as well.
 - In Phonebook list, press and select **Data backup** → **Backup to miniSD**.
 - In the schedule day view screen, press and select **IrDA/miniSD** → **Backup to miniSD**.
 - In the received mail list, sent mail list, unsent mail list or bookmark list, press and select **Move/Copy** → **Copy to miniSD** → **Backup**.
 - In the list of notes, press and select **miniSD card** → **Backup to miniSD**.
- When the phonebook is backed up, the PushTalk phonebook is backed up as well.
- When operating from the bookmark list in the miniSD memory card, both i-mode bookmarks and Full Browser bookmarks are backed up. In case of operating from the bookmark list of i-mode or Full Browser, i-mode bookmarks only or Full Browser bookmarks only are backed up respectively.

Restoring backup data in the miniSD memory card

There are 2 ways of the recovery: recovery by adding and overwritten recovery.

- If recovery by adding is performed, the data will be saved as the data other than the one saved in FOMA terminal.
- Note that when overwritten and restored, the current data saved in FOMA terminal are deleted and overwritten by the restored data.

1 to

2 Highlight the backup data or

: Phonebook : Schedule
 : Received mail, unsent mail or sent mail
 : Note : Bookmark

- When the phonebook is recovered by adding, a member of the PushTalk phonebook is recovered without being registered in a group. A group name is not recovered.

- The sorting order of the phonebook group restored may be different from the order when it was backed up.
- If overwritten recovery is performed for the bookmark, both i-mode bookmarks and Full Browser bookmarks are overwritten. Note that in case only the either data exists, the both bookmarks are overwritten as well and the original data in FOMA terminal are deleted.

3 Enter the terminal security code Select

Yes

- To cancel the recovery:
 - Backup data processed before canceling are restored in FOMA terminal.

Displaying data in the miniSD memory card

- If data in the miniSD memory card is changed or deleted by PCs, etc., the data in the miniSD memory card is not displayed properly on FOMA terminal. In such a case, update the miniSD memory card information. P341
- To display the i-appli data P287

Displaying data in Data Box/PDF data/ToruCa

1

2 Select the type of the data

- Displaying data in Data Box: to
- Displaying PDF data:
- Displaying ToruCa:

3 Select a folder

- Switching to the folder list of FOMA terminal:

4 Highlight the data

- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched (excluding melodies and ToruCa).
- Sending mail with data attached (excluding PDF data): Highlight data
- Displaying the detail information (excluding ToruCa): Highlight data for data in Data Box and for PDF data

■ Deleting one item:

- ① **Highlight data** ► for data in Data Box and for PDF data/ToruCa
- ② **Select Yes**

■ Deleting selected items:

- ① for data in Data Box and for PDF data/ToruCa
- ② **Highlight the data**
- ③ ► **Select Yes**

■ Deleting all items:

- ① for data in Data Box and for PDF data/ToruCa
- ② **Enter the terminal security code** ► **Select Yes**

■ Jumping to the specified page: ► Enter the page number

- When no page number is entered, the first page is displayed.

■ Searching for data in the miniSD memory card (excluding ToruCa):

- ① for data in Data Box and for PDF data
- ② **Enter the date** ►

■ Continuously playing video/i-motion (only video/i-motion):

Video/i-motion in a folder is replayed continuously. You can make the following operations during continuous play:

- : Pause/replay : Adjust volume
- /: Play the previous or next video/i-motion title
- : Stop
- : Return to the video/i-motion list

■ Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion: ► Select each item to set ►

- For settings ◀P326

5 ► Confirm data

- Refer to the following pages for operating procedure of video/i-motion, melody, PDF data or ToruCa.
 - Video/i-motion ◀P320
 - Melodies ◀P331 • PDF data ◀P355
 - ToruCa ◀P297 (Details cannot be obtained.)
- The following operations are available while the image is displayed:
 - : Display the detail information
 - : Full-screen display (the auto scroll is unavailable.)
 - : Switch display/hide the file name
 - : Compose mail

Playing i-motion compatible with Movable Contents

The i-motion compatible with Movable Contents saved in the miniSD memory card can be played.

- Playing is unavailable without inserting the same UIM used when downloaded from the sites or moved from FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card. In addition, some i-motion files cannot be played in case of different models.
- In case the i-appli using the miniSD memory card is set to the standby display, the i-motion compatible with Movable Contents saved in the miniSD memory card may not be able to be played or moved.

1 ►

The title of the screen is changed to **Movie** and the folder list of i-motion compatible with Movable Contents is displayed.

- (Red) : Initial folder (for Home folder)
- (Yellow) : Regular folder (for Home folder)

- When i-motion compatible with Movable Contents is moved to the miniSD memory card or saved from the sites for the first time, the **初期フォルダ**(initial folder) is created automatically. The folder name of the **初期フォルダ**(initial folder) can be changed.
- Switching between the folder list of i-motion compatible with Movable Contents and the **Movie** folder list:

2 Select a folder**3 Select i-motion data**

i-motion is played.

- Switching between Thumbnail display and Title display:
- Displaying the detailed information of i-motion: Highlight i-motion data ►

Creating a folder

- Folders can be created up to 65,535 items.

1 on the folder list

- Creating a folder in the folder: on the data list in the folder

■ Changing the folder name : Highlight a folder ►

- Changing a folder name in the folder: Highlight a folder ►

2 Enter a folder name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte character) ► Press

Setting Home folder

Home folder becomes the destination to save in case of moving i-motion compatible with Movable Contents from FOMA terminal or when saving directly from sites. When the Home folder is not set, the 初期フォルダ(initial folder) is set as the Home folder.

1 Highlight a folder on the folder list or the data list in the folder ▶

2 Select Yes

Home folder is set and the icon changes to or .

Deleting a folder

- When deleting a folder, the data in the folder are also deleted.
- When deleting the folder set as Home folder, the initial folder becomes the Home folder.
- When highlighting the initial folder and deleting the folder, only the folder and data in the initial folder are deleted. The initial folder is not deleted.

1 Highlight a folder on the folder list ▶

- Deleting a folder in the folder: Highlight a folder
▶

2 Select Yes

- In case an invalid file (not displayed in the list) exists in the folder, i-motion compatible with Movable Contents in the folder is deleted, but the folder remains without being deleted. In this case, retry to delete after removing the invalid file via PC, etc.

Moving i-motion to the folder

- The data compatible with Movable Contents saved in the miniSD memory card via 902i series cannot be moved.

1 Highlight i-motion file on the data list in the folder ▶

- Moving selected items: ▶
Select i-motion data ▶

- Moving all items of i-motion in the folder:

2 Highlight a folder to move/copy to ▶

- Displaying the folder in the folder: Select a folder

3 Select Yes

Deleting i-motion

1 Highlight i-motion data in the data list within the folder ▶

- Deleting selected items: ▶
Select i-motion data ▶

- Deleting all data of i-motion in the folder:
 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

2 Select Yes

Displaying the PIM data

1

2 to

3 Highlight data

- , , , or is displayed for the backup data.
- In case of single data of bookmark, appears for i-mode bookmark and appears for Full Browser bookmark.

- Deleting one item:

- ① Highlight data ▶
- ② Select Yes

- Deleting selected items:

- ① ▶ Select data
- ② ▶ Select Yes

- Deleting all:

- ①
- ② Enter the terminal security code ▶
Select Yes

- Jumping to the specified page: ▶

Enter the page number

- When no page number is entered, the first page is displayed.

- Searching for data in the miniSD memory card:

- ①
- ② Enter the date ▶

4 ▶ Confirm data

- For the display, refer to the following pages:

- Phonebook
- Schedule
- Mail
- Bookmark
- Notes

- When selecting one PIM data item, the detail of selected data is displayed.
- When selecting backup data, all the data contained in backup data are listed as title.

INFORMATION

- You cannot make a call or send mail from the detail screen of the phonebook, schedule or notes saved in the miniSD memory card. And in the mail detail screen, replying, forwarding, editing and protecting cannot be executed.
 - The images saved in the phonebook data are not displayed. Returning to FOMA terminal allows to display.
 - The PushTalk phonebook entries included in the backup data of the phonebook are not displayed. Restoring is available.
 - Schedules saved in the miniSD memory card do not sound an alarm on the set date and time.
 - Highlight the mail address in the mail view screen, press **[3][1]** to register the mail address to the phonebook, or press **[3][2]** to register the mail address to the phonebook by updating. Also, highlight the image, melody or ToruCa attached and press **[4][1]** to display/play, or press **[4][2]** to check the title.
- However, images or video/i-motion beyond 10,000 bytes and the number of items cannot be displayed.

Managing the miniSD memory card

Formatting the miniSD memory card Format

Format a miniSD memory card when you delete all the data (including the music data for Music Player) saved in the miniSD memory card or when a new miniSD memory card is used in FOMA terminal.

1 **[6][5]**

2 Select the format method

Quick format :

Only the data management area in the miniSD memory card is formatted. Performing the minimum necessary processing is a method to shorten the format period. The saved data are all deleted. Use this method only when the miniSD memory card has been formatted and has no problem.

Regular format :

Both the data management and data areas in the miniSD memory card are formatted. This method is used to format a new miniSD memory card.

3 Enter the terminal security code Select

Yes

- To suspend formatting:

Updating the miniSD memory card information

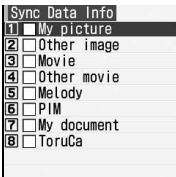
Sync Data Info

If the data is no longer correctly displayed on FOMA terminal because data in the miniSD memory card are changed, added or deleted using the other devices, update information in the miniSD memory card.

- If information update is performed, the display name of data is changed as follows:
 - In case of the data in **My picture** or **Other image**, the display name is changed to the same as the file name.
 - In case of the data in **Movie**, **Other movie**, **Melody** or **My document**, the display name is changed to the same as the title name. When the data has no title, it is changed to the file name.
 - The data within **ToruCa** is changed to the same name as the title name. However, in case the data has no title name, it is changed to 無題 (Untitled).

1 **[6][5]**

2 Select an item



3 Select Yes

- To cancel Sync Data Info:

INFORMATION

- If available capacity becomes less than required for creating management information in FOMA terminal when data is saved in a miniSD memory card with other devices, data saved in the miniSD memory card may be no longer correctly displayed on FOMA terminal.
- In case the video/i-motion containing only the sound is saved in **Movie**, it will not be displayed after updating the information. It is recommended to move it to FOMA terminal before updating information or save in the folder for **Other movie** (¥PRIVATE¥DOCOMO¥MMFILE) in the miniSD memory card after renaming via PC, etc. ➡P333
- **Movie** ➡ and **i-appli** data cannot be updated.
- When there are many data items saved on the miniSD memory card, updating information will take some time.

Checking the miniSD memory card

Scan Card

You can check the data saved in the miniSD memory card and restore it if there is any problem.

- The data may not be restored depending on the condition of the miniSD memory card.



2 Select Yes

Using the miniSD memory card from PC

USB Mode Setting

Set USB Mode Setting to *miniSD mode* and connect FOMA terminal to PC with the FOMA USB cable (optional). Then you can operate the data of the miniSD memory card inserted in FOMA terminal from PC.

- OS supporting the miniSD memory card is Windows XP and 2000 only.
- Connect FOMA terminal to PC when the power is on.
- In case of executing data communication by connecting FOMA terminal to PC, set this to *Communication mode*.

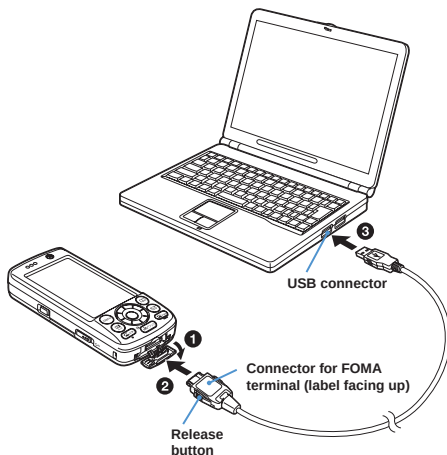
Default **Communication mode**



2  Select Yes

- To set *Communication mode*:  Select Yes

3 Connect FOMA terminal to PC



- 1 Open the cap on the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal
- 2 Insert one end of the FOMA USB cable into the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal until it clicks
- 3 Insert the other end of the FOMA USB cable into the PC USB connector

■ Removing FOMA USB cable:

Press release buttons on both sides of the connector for FOMA terminal and pull it out even. Remove carefully as forcing it may be the cause of damage. Pull out the connector for PC.

INFORMATION

- *miniSD mode* may not be set if the PC is set to start data communication automatically when FOMA terminal is connected.
- *miniSD mode* cannot be set during a call, PushTalk, or i-mode. Also, when the miniSD memory card is being operated from a PC, the mode may not be set to *Communication mode*.
- During *miniSD mode*, communication such as phone call or i-mode cannot be used.
- USB Mode Setting is switched automatically to *Communication mode* from *miniSD mode* in about 90 seconds after the last access to the miniSD memory card without connecting FOMA terminal to a PC.
- Click  on the PC task tray and click *USB 大容量記憶装置デバイスードライブ(E:)*1 を安全に取り外します* (Release safely the USB large memory device-Drive E:)*1 to quit operation of the miniSD memory card and remove the FOMA USB cable.

*1 The character to be assigned to a drive varies by the system of PC.

- Never remove the FOMA USB cable during the data transmission with the miniSD memory card. It can cause the malfunction or loss of data.
- If you format the miniSD memory card attached to FOMA terminal from a PC, using on FOMA terminal may be disabled. It is advisable to format the miniSD memory card on FOMA terminal.
- During *miniSD mode*, the Enter key flashes.
- When pressing the key of FOMA terminal other than  during *miniSD mode*, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to switch to *Communication mode*.
- Even when FOMA terminal is connected with PC, USB Mode Setting can be changed.
- The miniSD memory card folder structure during operation from a PC. ●P333

Using the album

You can create albums (folders) in *Image* (My Picture), *i-motion*, *Melody*, *Chara-den* or *My Documents* in Data Box in FOMA terminal and sort out the data. The album data in *i-motion* and *Melody* can be replayed at one time.

- In *Chara-den* and *My Documents*, the album is referred to as folder.
- The fixed folder registered by default cannot be renamed or deleted.

Creating albums

- Up to 100 albums in *Image* (My Picture) and up to 10 albums respectively in *i-motion*, *Melody*, *Chara-den* or *My Documents* can be created.
- No album is set by default.

Example Creating the album in *Image* (My Picture)

- 1  
- 2  
 - **Changing the album name: Highlight the album**  
 - **Deleting albums:**
When deleting the album, the data in the album are also deleted.
 - ① **Highlight the album**  
 - When data is saved in the album to delete, enter the terminal security code.
 - ② **Select Yes**
- 3 **Enter the album name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)** 

INFORMATION

- In the folder list of *i-motion*/*Melody*, press  and select *Create album*, *Rename album* or *Delete album*.
- In the folder list of *Chara-den*/*My Documents*, press  and select the *Create folder*, *Rename folder* or *Delete folder*.

Moving/copying data to the album

Moving data to the album

You can move data in the fixed folder to an album or move it from album to album.

- Data can be moved from each folder of *Image* (My Picture) to *Deco-Mail picture*.

- Data saved in the *Preinstalled* folder or *Mail attach melody* folder cannot be moved.

Example Moving data in *Image* (My Picture)

- 1   **Select a folder**
- 2 **Highlight data**    
 - **Moving selected items:**
 - ①     **Select data**
 - Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
 - ② 
 - **Moving all the data in folder:**
   
- 3 **Select the destination album**  **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

- In the video/*i-motion* list or melody list, press  and select *Move/Copy* → *Move to album* → *One item*, *Selected items* or *All items*.
- In the image display screen, press  and select *Move/Copy* → *Move to album*.
- In the melody play screen, press  and select *Move/Copy* → *Move to album* → *One item* or *All items*.
- In the Chara-den list, press  and select *Move* → *One item*, *Selected items* or *All items*.
- In the Chara-den display screen, press  and select *Move*.
- In the PDF data list, press  and select *Move/Copy* → *Move to folder* → *One item*, *Selected items* or *All items*.

Returning album data to the fixed folder

- The operation of returning to the fixed folder cannot be performed in *Chara-den*.

Example Returning album data in *Image* (My Picture) to the fixed folder

- 1   **Select an album**
- 2 **Highlight data**    
 - **Returning selected items:**
 - ①     **Select data**
 - Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
 - ② 
 - **Returning all the data in the album:**
   
- 3 **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, press and select **Move/Copy** → **Return to folder** → **One item**, **Selected items** or **All items**.
- In the melody list or PDF data list, press and select **Move/Copy** → **Restore to folder** → **One item**, **Selected items** or **All items**.
- In the image display screen, press and select **Move/Copy** → **Return to folder**.
- In the melody play screen, press and select **Move/Copy** → **Restore to folder** → **One item** or **All items**.
- Preinstalled images registered in the **Deco-Mail picture** folder are moved to the **i-mode** folder by returning data to the fixed folder.

Copying data

- The following data cannot be copied:
 - Created animation, **Item** images, images in the **Preinstalled** folder in **Image** (My Picture)
 - Video/i-motion whose replay restriction is set or video/i-motion downloaded from sites or mails which can be set as the ring alert
 - Melody, Chara-den
 - Data set to **File restricted** in file restriction
- Note that the data whose file restriction is set to **File restricted** with FOMA terminal and data in the **Data transfer** folder are excluded.

Example Copying data in **Image** (My Picture)

1 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight data** ▶ Press

The copied data are saved in the same folder as the original data.

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, PDF data list or image display screen, press and select **Move/Copy** → **Copy**.
- If data copied in the album is returned to the fixed folder, it moves to the same fixed folder as the original data.

Playing the entire album data

You can play i-motion or melody data in an album continuously.

- The fixed folder data registered by default cannot be played.
- i-motion for which replay restrictions are set cannot be played.

1 for **i-motion**, or for **Melody**

2 **Highlight an album** ▶

- The following operations are available while the video/i-motion album is played:
 - : Pause/replay
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Play the previous or next data item
 - : Stop
 - : Return to the folder list
- The following operations are available while the melody album is played:
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Play the previous/next melody
 - : Return to the folder list

Checking/editing detail information of the data

[View/Edit Detail Info](#)

Check the detail information of data. The contents of some information can be changed.

Checking detail information

Example Displaying the image detail information

1 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight an image** ▶ Press

- Press or to scroll by screen.
- Press to change a part of detail information.

INFORMATION

- In the image display screen, video/i-motion list, Chara-den list, Chara-den display screen, melody list, melody play screen or PDF data list, press and select **Detail info** → **View**.
- In the video/i-motion play screen, press and select **Detail information**.
- In the chara-den recording screen, press and select **View detail info**.

Changing detail information

Example Changing the image detail information

1 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight an image** ▶

3 **Select each item to set** ▶ Press

INFORMATION

- In the image display screen, video/i-motion list, Chara-den list, Chara-den display screen, melody list, melody play screen or PDF data list, press  and select **Detail info** → **Edit**.
- For video/i-motion, Chara-den and melody, selecting **Back to original** returns the display name to the original title preset.

Displayed items and their availability

- Depending on the data, some items cannot be changed even when shown as changeable in the list.

●: Changeable ○: Displayed only —: Not displayed

Displayed item	Image	Video/i-motion	Chara-den	Melody	PDF data
Display name	●	●	●	●	●
Title (Original)/Original title	—	○	○	○	—
File name	●	●	○	●	○
Type	○	—	—	—	—
File restriction	●	●	○	●	○
Rec. file restriction	—	—	○	—	—
Creator	—	●	—	—	—
Copyright	—	●	—	—	—
Description	—	●	—	—	—
Format/File format	○	○	—	○	○
Sound	—	○	—	—	—
Display size	○	○	○	—	—
File size	○	○	○	○	○
Playing time	—	—	—	○	—
Saved date & time	○	○	○	○	○
Use as frame	●	—	—	—	—
Use as stamp	●	—	—	—	—
Comment	●	—	●	—	—
Ring alert	—	○	—	—	—
Receive display	—	○	—	—	—
Moved to miniSD card (Move to phone)	—	○	—	—	—
Replay restriction	—	○	—	—	—
Originated	○	○	○	○	○
Transfer for repair	○	—	—	○	○

Descriptions of displayed items

Display name :

Title to be displayed on FOMA terminal (Up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available except for melody, and up to 50 one- or 25 two-byte characters are available for melody when changing).

Title(Original)/Original title :

Original title preset in data

File name :

File name displayed when attaching data to mail (up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, ".", "-", or "_" are available when changing).

- "." cannot be used for the first character of the file name.

Type : Type of image

File restriction :

When you send data to the other party's mobile phone via mail attachment, you can set whether to restrict sending data to other mobile phones from the received party's mobile phone.

- i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, etc. cannot be changed.

Rec. file restriction :

Whether or not to set file restriction for the still image/video shot with Record Chara-den

Creator :

Creator's name (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

- The name registered in Own Number appears in **Creator** when you have recorded video using your FOMA terminal. If the name is not registered in Own Number, **Creator** is not set.

Copyright :

The name of the author and the release date of the production (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

Description :

Description of video/i-motion (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

Format/File format :

File type ("---" for Flash movie)

Sound :

Sound data type

Display size :

Display size of data (dot) (not displayed for Flash movie)

File size : The file size of data

Playing time :

Playing time of data

Saved date & time :

Date and time when data was saved

Use as frame :

Classification whether the image can be pasted as frame image

- Images larger than 240 x 400 or 352 x 288, merged with item images, Animation, Created animation or Flash movie cannot be set.

Use as stamp :

Classification whether the image can be pasted as stamp image

- Images larger than 240 x 400, merged with item images, Animation, Created animation or Flash movie cannot be set.

Comment :

Description of data (Up to 100 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

Ring alert :

Classification whether the video/i-motion can be set to ring alert

Receive display :

Classification whether the video/i-motion can be set to incoming image

Moved to miniSD card (Move to phone) :

Classification whether the video/i-motion can be moved to the miniSD memory card

- In case of the i-motion compatible with Movable Contents in the miniSD memory card, **Move to phone** is displayed and the classification is displayed whether to move to FOMA terminal.

Replay restriction :

Replay restrictions on video/i-motion

Originated :

Origination of data

Transfer for repair :

Classification whether your data can be moved at a DoCoMo's designated repair office when your FOMA terminal is repaired

- Please note that DoCoMo will assume no responsibility for the data loss in case your data cannot be moved or is lost or modified.

INFORMATION

- Even if **Yes** is set for **Use as frame** or **Use as stamp** in the image detail information, images are saved in the original folder and are not displayed in the **Item** folder.
- Detail information stored in the miniSD memory card may differ from the information displayed on FOMA terminal.
- **Ring alert** is always set to available for the video recorded with the recording type of **Video + Voice** set with your FOMA terminal, the sound recorded via Sound Recorder or the video/sound clipped from the same video/sound. However, for the video with the display size of 320 x 240 or the video/sound with an inserted ticker, **Ring alert** is not set to available.

Deleting data

- The data saved in the **Preinstalled** folder of **Image** (My Picture), **i-motion**, **Melody** or **My Documents** or in the **Mail attach melody** folder cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting data in **Image** (My Picture)

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight the data

■ Deleting selected items:

- ▶ **Select the data**
 - Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
-

■ Deleting all the data in a folder:

- ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

3 Select Yes

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, melody list, Chara-den list or PDF data list, press and select **Delete** → **One item**, **Selected items** or **All items**.
- In the image display screen or Chara-den display screen, press and select **Delete**.
- In the melody play screen, press and select **Delete** → **One item** or **All items**.
- If data set for the standby display or ring alert are deleted, each setting returns to the default. When data set to the phonebook are deleted, the operation follows the settings of Sound Setting or Mail/Call Image Setting.
- If you delete Created animation, the original images composing Created animation are also deleted.
- In the case where Chara-den, Deco-mail picture or Frame registered by default has been deleted, you can download it from the i-mode site "My D-style". ➡P426

Sorting data

Sort

You can change the order of data of the list screen.

Default **Sort criteria:** Saved date & time
Order: Descending

Example Sorting data in **Image** (My Picture)

1 ▶ Select a folder

2

3 Select each item to set ▶ Press

Sort criteria : Sets the sorting method.

Order : Sets the sorting order of data.

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, melody list, Chara-den list or PDF data list, press and select **Sort**.
- If one-byte and two-byte characters are mixed in the display name, the sorted result may not correspond to Japanese syllabary.

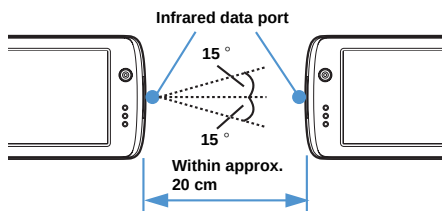
About infrared communication

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs provided with an infrared communication function. Also, by using the i-appli compatible with infrared communication, you can link to devices having an infrared communication function.

- Infrared communication is not available while All Lock, PIM Lock or Self Mode is on.
- Infrared communication and USB connection cannot be performed at the same time.
- Data prohibited from outputting from FOMA terminal cannot be sent/received. Note that the data whose file restriction is set to **File restricted** with the same terminal and data in the **Data transfer** folder are excluded.
- During infrared communication,  and  are displayed on the top of the screen, and the terminal is in data transfer mode (the same status as outside the service area), so phone calls, i-mode connection and data communication are disabled. Also, you cannot switch to other functions by pressing .
- The infrared communication function of FOMA terminal conforms to IrMC 1.1.
- Even if the terminal of the other party conforms to IrMC 1.1, some data may not be sent/received depending on the data type.
- The data including pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to other than i-mode terminals. Even when sending to i-mode terminals, the data including pictogram 2 may not be displayed correctly depending on receiving terminals.

Using infrared communication

The maximum communication range is approximately 20 cm and the angle is within 15 degrees from the center. Keep FOMA terminal pointing at the remote device's infrared data port and do not move it until all the data have been sent or received.



- Infrared communication may not be performed properly in areas of direct sunlight or directly under fluorescent lights.

Notes in receiving the data from the other FOMA terminal via infrared communication

- The folder name that was set by the other terminal may not be taken over even if you receive all items of mail data.
- If you receive mail, usual mail may be stored in the folder for the Message i-appli in **Inbox**, **Outbox** or **Unsent messages**.
- With reception of all items of bookmark data, the data you will receive covers the entire of the folder created by the other terminal.
- Bookmarks received from the terminal other than D902iS may be stored in the top folder.
- Images, video/i-motion or melodies received from the terminal other than D902iS may be saved as notes.

Notes on sending the data in D902iS to the other FOMA terminal via infrared communication

- The receiver may not save images, video/i-motion or melodies because of the difference in the data size limit.

Sending data by infrared communication

Send Ir Data

You can send data by selecting each item to send one at a time or by sending all items of the specified function data at once. The following data are available for sending:

Data type	Remarks
Phonebook*1	• Phonebook data for which Secret Attribute is set can be sent by sending one item only when Secret Mode is on. • PushTalk phonebook and Own Number data are also sent when sending all is performed. • Sending one item is unavailable for the PushTalk phonebook. • Phonebook data cannot be sent when Keypad Dial Lock is on. • In case Ph.book image sending is ON for Data Transfer Setting when sending all, you can set whether to send still images saved in the phonebook data together. • Images saved in the phonebook data may not be received depending on the recipient. • The sorting order of the group may not be reflected on the recipient.

Data type	Remarks
Schedule*1	- Schedule data for which Secret Attribute is set can be sent by sending one item only when Secret Mode is on. - Date and Time Setting is required.
Received mail*1 Sent mail*1 Unsent mail*1	Attached data in the text (link items that activate i-a ppli) are deleted. In addition, among the attached files, video/i-motion, files prohibited from outputting from FOMA terminal or still images beyond 10,000 bytes are deleted.
Note*1	_____
Bookmark (i-mode/Full Browser)*1	- Folder settings may not be reflected depending on the recipient. - When sending all, bookmarks are sent from the end of the list.
Image	- A display name of up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted. - Created animation, Flash movies or item images cannot be sent. - Data of over 500 KB cannot be sent.
Video/ i-motion	A display name of up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted.
Melody	A title of up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters can be sent.
PDF data	PDF data which is over 512 KB*2 or downloaded partially cannot be sent.
ToruCa	- Data is sent as the state before obtaining ToruCa (details). ToruCa (details) can be obtained again with the destination terminal. - In case the size exceeds 321 bytes, ToruCa cannot be sent (it may vary depending on ToruCa). - Some ToruCa may not be able to be sent.
Own Number	Images may not be received depending on the recipient.

*1 Sending all is enabled.

*2 Even when the file size displayed in the detail information exceeds 512 Kbytes, sending is available in case the file size excluding the data of i-mode bookmarks or marks is within 512 Kbytes.

- Data may not be transferred correctly when communication is performed with the terminals other than D902IS or the infrared communication devices. Items that cannot be saved by the receiver side are discarded.

Sending single data item

Example Sending a phonebook entry

1 Make FOMA terminal of the other party ready to receive

2 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight the phonebook data to send ▶    

3 Select Yes

- To cancel Send Ir Data: 

INFORMATION

- In the received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list, press  and select **Send Ir data** → **Selected item**.
- In the bookmark list or the list of notes, press  and select **Send Ir data** → **Send**.
- In the image list, video/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list or ToruCa list, press  and select **Send Ir data**.
- In the day view screen of the schedule, press  and select **IrDA/miniSD** → **Send Ir data**.
- In the details screen of Own Number, press  and select **Send own number**.

Sending all data items

You can send all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note and bookmark via infrared communication.

- To send all the data, the same authentication password must be entered both by the sender and receiver. Decide a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

1 Make FOMA terminal of the other party ready to receive

2    

3 Select the data type ▶ Enter the terminal security code

4 Enter the 4-digit authentication password

The entered authentication password is masked with " * ".

5 Select Yes

- To cancel Send Ir Data: 

INFORMATION

- In the phonebook list, bookmark list, received mail list, sent mail list, unsent mail list or the list of notes, press  and select **Send Ir data** → **Send all**.
- In the folder list of the bookmark, received mail, sent mail or unsent mail, press  and select **Send all Ir data**.

- In the calendar screen or day view screen for schedule, press and select **IrDA/miniSD** → **Send all Ir data**.
- When all the data items are sent, the order of data may change in receiver's side.
- When pressing **6** **2** **1** and selecting **Bookmarks**, both the i-mode bookmark and Full Browser bookmark are sent all. In case of operating from the bookmark list of i-mode or Full Browser, the i-mode bookmark or Full Browser bookmark is sent all respectively.

Receiving data by infrared communication

Receive Ir Data

You can receive data by selecting each item to receive one at a time or by receiving all items of the specified function data at once. Received data are saved directly in FOMA terminal, or are saved in FOMA terminal after the data are saved temporarily in **INBOX** of Receive Ir Data and checked. The following data are available for receiving:

Data type	Storage after receiving
Phonebook*1	Phonebook
Schedule*1	Scheduler
Received mail*1	Inbox
Sent mail*1	Outbox
Unsent mail*1	Unsent messages
Note*1	Notepad
Bookmark (i-mode/Full Browser)*1	i-mode Bookmark/Full Browser Bookmark
Image	Data transfer folder of Image (My Picture)
Video/i-motion	Data transfer folder of i-motion
Melody	Data transfer folder of Melody
PDF data	Data transfer folder of My Documents
ToruCa	ToruCa folder of ToruCa list
Own Number	Phonebook

*1 Receiving all is enabled.

- Received data are saved in order as follows:
 - Phonebook data and Own Number data are saved in the smallest free phonebook No.
 - Schedules and mails are saved in order of date/time.
 - Notes are saved in order of reception.
 - Bookmarks, images, video/i-motion, melodies, PDF data and ToruCa are added in the top of the list.
- If you receive all phonebook items, Own Number data except your phone number is overwritten.
- If you receive all phonebook items, in case received data includes the data of the PushTalk phonebook, it is saved in the PushTalk phonebook.

- Phonebook data cannot be received when Keypad Dial Lock is set.
- Date and Time Setting is required for receiving a schedule.
- When invalid characters are included in the received data, they are replaced by blank spaces or cut away.

Receiving single data item

- You cannot receive data that exceed 512 Kbytes.

1 **6** **2** **2** **1**

The receive method selection screen appears.

2 **1** or **2**

Confirm & save :

Received data are saved temporarily in **INBOX**. Cannot be selected if **INBOX** has no free space. After receiving is finished, the **INBOX** data list appears.

Save :

Received data is saved in FOMA terminal. After receiving is finished, the receive method selection screen reappears without displaying **INBOX**.

3 **Select Yes**

Receiving standby condition is activated.

4 **Send single data item on the sender side**

When **Confirm & save** is selected in Step 2, **INBOX** screen appears after receiving data. For saving method of data, refer to the procedure from Step 2 of "Saving received data". When **Save** is selected, the receive method selection screen reappears after receiving data.

- To cancel Receive Ir Data:

Receiving all data items

You can receive all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note and bookmark via infrared communication.

- To receive all the data, the same authentication password must be entered both by the receiver and sender. Decide a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

1 **6** **2** **2** **2**

The all receive method selection screen is displayed.

2 or

Confirm & save :

Received data are saved temporarily in **INBOX**. Cannot be selected if **INBOX** has no free space. After receiving the data, the **INBOX** data list is displayed. **Add** or **Overwrite** can be selected when saving from **INBOX**.

Overwrite :

Received data is overwritten and saved in FOMA terminal. After receiving is finished, the all receive method selection screen reappears without displaying **INBOX**.

- Note that the original data in FOMA terminal are all deleted by overwriting and replaced by new data.
- If you select **Confirm & save**, go to Step 4.

3 Select Yes ▶ Enter the terminal security code

4 Enter the 4-digit authentication password

- The entered authentication password is masked with “ * ”.

5 Select Yes

Receiving standby condition is activated.

6 Send all the data on the sender side

When selecting **Confirm & save** in Step 2, **INBOX** screen appears after receiving is finished.

For saving method of data, refer to the procedure from Step 2 of “Saving received data”.

When selecting **Overwrite**, the all receive method selection screen reappears after reception.

- To cancel Receive Ir Data: 

INFORMATION

- Receiving time differs depending on the type or number of received data. It may take time to receive the data of large capacity or a large number.
- For precautions of saving data, refer to INFORMATION in “Saving received data”.

Saving received data

You can save data stored in **INBOX** temporarily to FOMA terminal.

- If **Confirm & save** is selected when receiving a single data item, or **Confirm & save** is selected when receiving all the data items, **INBOX** screen appears automatically after finishing receiving.
- The data saved in FOMA terminal are deleted from **INBOX**.

1

2 Select the data

 /  : Single item/multiple items of phonebook data

 /  /  :

Single item of i-mode bookmark data/
Full Browser bookmark data/multiple
items of bookmark data

 /  : Single item/multiple items of mail data

 /  : Single item/multiple items of schedule data

 /  : Single item/multiple items of notes

 : Image

 : Video/i-motion

 : Melody

 : PDF data

 : ToruCa

■ Deleting one item: Highlight the data ▶

  ▶ Select Yes

■ Deleting all items: ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select Yes

3 Select Yes

■ When selecting multiple items:

① Enter the terminal security code

② Select **Add to add data**, or select

Overwrite to overwrite data

- Note that the original data in FOMA terminal are all deleted by selecting **Overwrite** and replaced by new data.

INFORMATION

- Depending on the size of data to save, the maximum number of items that can be saved/registered in FOMA terminal may be fewer.
- ToDo data (a list function data to manage business) cannot be saved on D902iS. When receiving all items of ToDo data and schedule data at once from the model other than D902iS, only the schedule data is saved. Note that when all items of only ToDo data are received, all the schedule data registered in D902iS are deleted if you select to overwrite the received data.
- When the data received all at once are saved by overwriting, the protected data in FOMA terminal are also deleted.
- When multiple items of phonebook data are added, a member of the PushTalk phonebook is saved without being registered in a group. A group name is not registered.
- When multiple items of bookmark data are saved by overwriting, both of i-mode bookmark and Full Browser bookmark are overwritten. In case either of bookmark data of i-mode or Full Browser only exists, both are overwritten as well. Please note that the original data in FOMA terminal are deleted.

- Mail data received from the device that can save mail by the folder may be saved in the Message i-α ppli folder. To check the saved mail data, select the Message i-α ppli folder in which the data is saved and press .

Activating infrared communication mode

Infrared Communication Mode

Activate i-α ppli by receiving the data to start i-α ppli via infrared communication device having the function of starting i-α ppli.

- It is necessary to download the specified software from sites, etc. beforehand.
- In case i-α ppli is set not to start with the i-α ppli To function via an external device, i-α ppli cannot be activated.

1 **Select Yes**
Receiving standby condition is activated.

2 Receive the data to start i-α ppli via infrared communication device

i-α ppli is activated.

- To cancel receiving data:

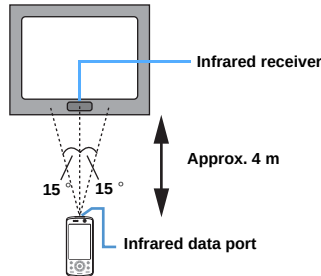
Using the infrared remote control function

FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller by downloading the i-α ppli for infrared remote control.

- Download the i-α ppli suited for the individual device.
- If the preset i-α ppli Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) is activated, FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller for TV, etc.
- This function is unavailable during Self Mode is on or infrared communication is executed.
- Communication may be influenced by the model of the supported device used and ambient luminance.
- Some equipment cannot be operated even if it is compatible with infrared remote control.

Remote control operation

Perform remote control operation with the infrared data port of FOMA terminal pointed at the infrared receiver of the supported device used (operating procedure differs depending on i-α ppli). Angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and the distance is approximately 4 m at the maximum. However, the angle and distance allowed for the operation differs depending on the type of devices to operate and the level of brightness in the environment.



Setting operations for data transfer

Data Transfer Setting

Set operations for data transfer by infrared communication and USB connection.

Default End alert: OFF Auto Authentication: OFF
Ph. book image sending: ON

1

2 Select each item to set

End alert :

Specifies whether to sound a communication end tone at the end of communication.

Auto Authentication :

Specifies whether to automatically exchange authentication codes with the other party while connecting to USB.

- To set ON, enter the terminal security code and the 4 to 8-digit authentication codes for a mobile phone terminal (FOMA terminal) and for PC (the other party), and then press .

Ph. book image sending :

Specifies whether to send images saved in the phonebook along with the all phonebook data when sending all data items.

3 Press

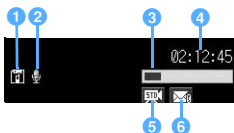
Recording sound with Sound Recorder

Sound Recorder

Sound can be recorded using Sound Recorder. Recorded sound can be saved in the miniSD memory card as well as playing on FOMA terminal and can be attached to i-mode Mail to send.

- Recorded sound is saved as video/i-motion without image.
- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.

Reading the recording screen



1 Save to

Indicates the memory to save. P185

: FOMA terminal

: miniSD memory card

2 Type

Indicates to record sound.

3 Indicator

<For during standby for recording>

Indicates the usage rate of the storage area in the memory to save.

- The miniSD memory card storage area usage rate may not become 0 even when no recorded sounds have been saved.

<For during recording/pause>

Indicates the rate of the recorded sound size to the file size set in size restrictions (or the allowable saving size when *None* is set).

4 Counter

<For during standby for recording>

Indicates the approximate maximum recording time of sounds that can be saved in FOMA terminal or the miniSD memory card in the current settings.

<For during recording/pause>

Indicates the approximate elapsed/remaining time (duration until the recording stops).

5 Quality

Indicates the quality of the sound. P354

6 Size restrictions

Indicates the size restriction value of the file.

P354

File name/File format

The date and time recorded is attached to the file name, display name and the title of the sound file automatically.

(Example) In case of 12:34:56 on July 10, 2006.

→ 20060710123456

The file format is as follows:

Item	Contents
File format	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method	AMR
Extension	3gp

INFORMATION

- After recording, the file name and display name can be changed. P344
- In case the date and time of FOMA terminal is not set, the file name, display name and the title are shown as "-----".

Recording time of sound

The sound recording time varies depending on the setting of quality and size restrictions.

- Quality and size restrictions can be set in Recording Setting. P183

■ Recording time of sound (For D902iS terminal)

When saving in D902iS, recording time for one operation (estimates) and the total recording time (estimates) are shown below:

Max. recording time	Quality	File size restrictions	
		Msg attach: Small	Msg attach: Large
For one operation	STD	4 min.	7 min.
	HQ	3 min.	5 min.
Total	STD	161 min.	161 min.
	HQ	106 min.	106 min.

■ Recording time of sound (For miniSD memory card)

Total recording time that can be stored in the miniSD memory card (estimates) are shown below in case of 16 MB/32 MB of the capacity:

Capacity	Quality	File size restrictions		
		Msg attach: Small	Msg attach: Large	None
16 MB	STD	224 min.	224 min.	225 min.
	HQ	148 min.	147 min.	148 min.
32 MB	STD	479 min.	480 min.	481 min.
	HQ	315 min.	315 min.	316 min.

- Recording time of *Msg attach S* and *Msg attach L* for one operation is the same as that for saving in D902iS.
- In case of None, recording up to the total is available for one operation.

Recording the sound

- Record the sound in as quiet a place as possible with no or little noise.
- Even when *silent* is set for the ring alert volume, Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is active and so on, the recording confirmation sound (shutter sound) is heard. Also, the volume of the recording confirmation sound (shutter sound) cannot be changed.
- The Enter key lights in blue when Sound Recorder is being activated. When recording, the compact light flashes in red and the Enter key flashes with changing the color. When pausing, the compact light lights in red and the Enter key lights in green. The setting not to light/flash is unavailable and the lighting pattern/lighting color cannot be changed.

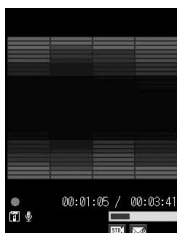
1



Recording screen

Sound Recorder is activated.

2 or



Recording is started after the shutter sound is heard.  appears at the bottom of the screen.

- The sound is recorded from the microphone.
- Press  to pause recording.  switches to  and the compact light is lit in red and the Enter key is lit in green then. Recording is resumed by pressing  or .

3 or

The shutter sound is heard and recording is finished. A confirmation screen for the recorded sound is displayed.

- When *Auto save* in Recording Setting is set to **Yes**, the recorded sound is saved and the recording screen reappears. Operations from Step 4 are not required.
- If the file size exceeds the limit, recording ends automatically and only the sound recorded up to that point can be saved.
- If  is pressed to end the recording during pause, the sound recorded up to that point can be saved.

4 Confirm the recorded sound

- To save the sound immediately: Go to Step 5
- To record again without saving: 
- To replay the sound: 

When *Auto Play* in Recording Setting is set to **Yes**, the recorded sound is played automatically.

■ Sending mail with the recorded sound attached:

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the recorded sound. Select **Yes** to save the recorded sound in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed.

- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the recorded sound is saved in FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the recorded sound exceeds 500 Kbytes, the sound cannot be attached.

■ Changing the title: ▶ Enter the title (up to 31 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶

- The changed title is valid after saving the sound.

■ Inserting a ticker: ▶ Select **Yes**

The recorded sound is saved in FOMA terminal and the ticker setting screen is displayed. Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Inserting tickers". ●P324

- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, tickers cannot be inserted.

- **Switching the memory to save between FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card:**



- If the file size of the recorded sound exceeds 500 Kbytes, the destination to save cannot be switched.
- After saving the sound, the memory to save returns to the setting before switching.

- **Displaying the saved sounds in the list:**



- When displaying the sounds in the miniSD memory card in the list, select a folder.

5 Press or

The recorded sound is saved in the **Camera** folder of **i-motion**.

- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the sound is saved in the **Other movie** folder of the miniSD memory card.
- To confirm the saved sound immediately, press and select the sound.
 - In case **Save to** is set to **miniSD**, press to select a folder and select a sound.

INFORMATION

- Sound Recorder is activated by pressing on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen and selecting **Switch mode** → **Sound recorder** as well.
- For the usage precaution for Sound Recorder, refer to INFORMATION in "Recording videos with Movie Camera". ◀P183
- For the procedure of playing the recorded sound, follow steps in "Playing video/i-motion". ◀P320

Setting the sound quality

1 on the recording screen to highlight the quality icon (,)

- You can also press to highlight.

2 to switch icons ▶ Press

Standard : The sound quality is standard.

High quality : The sound quality is enhanced, but the available recording time becomes shorter.

- You can also set by pressing to switch icons and pressing .

Restricting the file size

1 on the recording screen to highlight the icon (, ,) of size restrictions

- You can also press to highlight.

2 to switch icons ▶ Press

Msg attachment (S)*1 :

Restricts the file size below 290 Kbytes. Being attached to i-mode Mail, data of this file size can be sent to the terminal unsupporting large capacity message.

Msg attachment (L)*1 :

Restricts the file size below 490 Kbytes. Data of this file size can be sent to the terminal which supports large capacity message.

None :

No restriction for the file size. When the destination to save sound is set to **Phone** in Recording Setting, selection cannot be made.

- You can also set by pressing to switch icons and pressing .

*1 When selecting the icon, **Msg attach S** or **Msg attach L** is shown on the screen.

Menu 55

Displaying the PDF data

My Document

Displays PDF data saved in **My Documents** of Data Box in FOMA terminal. Also, PDF data downloaded from i-mode or Internet web site(s) can be displayed. Various operations are available such as magnifying/reducing, searching for the character strings, displaying link and capturing screen while displaying PDF data.

- To download PDF data ◀P209
- 辞典機能(Dictionaryes) and 珍さんの釣り物語 (Chin-san's Fishing) are preset in the **Preinstalled** folder by default.

1 ▶ Select a folder

The following PDF data are stored in each folder:

i-mode :

PDF data downloaded from sites

Preinstalled :

PDF data preinstalled by default

Data transfer :

PDF data moved/copied from the miniSD memory card or received by the data communication

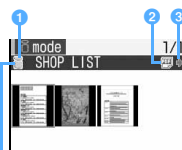
Folder :

PDF data moved from another folder

- Not displayed by default. To create ◀P343
- You can enter any name of folder in creating.
- To switch to the folder list of the miniSD memory card: Handling the miniSD memory card ◀P338

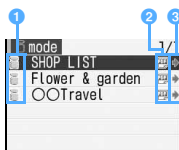
2 Highlight the PDF data

Thumbnail display



Display name of data at the cursor and icon

Title display



PDF data list

1 Originated

- : Preinstalled
- : i-mode
- : Data transfer

2 File type

- : PDF data downloaded completely
- : PDF data downloaded partially
 - The part of data not obtained can be downloaded.
- : PDF data that failed to be downloaded in case the communication is disconnected in the process, etc.
- (in gray) : PDF data set with UIM operation restriction function

3 File restriction

- (in blue) : Without file restriction
- (in gray) : With file restriction

- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
- In case images in PDF data cannot be shown in thumbnail display, the following icons appear in thumbnail display:

- : PDF data which has no thumbnail images or never displayed
- : PDF data downloaded partially
- : PDF data that is unsuccessful in being downloaded.
- (in gray): PDF data set with UIM operation restriction function
- Display name can be changed.

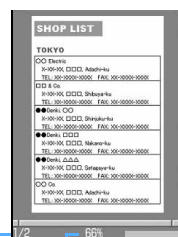
3 Press

PDF data is displayed.

Hide info



Display info



Display magnification
Page No./total number of pages

PDF display screen

- Each time you press , the display switches between **Display info** and **Hide info**.

- The following operations are available while displaying the PDF data:

- : Scroll (hold down for over a second for high-speed scroll)
- : Previous page
- : Next page
- : HELP
- : Zoom out
- : Fit page
- : Zoom In
- : First page
- : Search
- : Last page
- : Right 90 degrees
- : Display link
- : Capture Screen
- : Document information
- : Display/extinguish the toolbar

- Rotating the Speed Selector to right enlarges and rotating to left reduces.
- It may take some time to display depending on PDF data.
- In case a style that is not compatible with PDF compatible viewer or complicated design is contained in PDF data, the data may not be displayed correctly.
- In case a password is set for PDF data, enter the password and .
- When selecting the PDF data (with a file type of) which failed to be download, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download the rest of the data. If you select **Yes**, downloading starts.

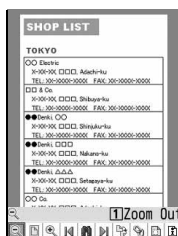
- To download the rest of PDF data (with a file type of ) which was partially downloaded, press   while displaying the PDF data. When the operation to require to download the data is executed such as displaying a page not downloaded, a confirmation screen appears when you try to display the page. Select **Yes** to download (After selecting **Yes** once, the subsequent pages are downloaded without being asked by the confirmation screen).
- The rest of the data may not be downloaded depending on the PDF data.

■ Terminating the display: ▶ Select **Yes**

- In case of having changed the PDF data, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save or not. Select **Yes** and press  to save. The original PDF data is overwritten.
- When having changed the PDF data, saving is available by   on the PDF display screen as well.

Operations while displaying PDF data

■ Using the toolbar



① 

The toolbar and the guidance are displayed.

②  to highlight the icon ▶ 

-  : Zoom out  : Fit page ◀P356
-  : Zoom In  : First page
-  : Search ◀P357  : Last page
-  : Right 90 degrees
-  : Display link ◀P357
-  : Capture Screen ◀P358
-  : Document information ◀P357

- Keypads of  to  and  are assigned for each icon from the left. Icons can be selected also by pressing the relevant keypad.
- While the toolbar guidance is displayed, pressing  hides the guidance and the operation of scrolling PDF data, etc. is available. Press  to select the toolbar again.
- Hide the toolbar: 
In case the guidance is displayed, hide the guidance by  and then press .

■ Switching the view types

View types can be selected among **Fit page**, **Actual size** and **Fit width**.

- ①   
- ②  to 

■ Changing the settings of display information

Set the display information when **Display info** is set.

- ①   
- ② Select each item to set ▶ 

Display properties :

Sets whether to display the page No./total number of pages and display magnification.

Scroll bar :

Sets whether to display the scroll bar.
• Scrolling is available even when **No** is set.

■ Changing the settings of view types or display information in activating PDF data

- ①  
- ② Select each item to set ▶ 

View types :

Select from **Fit page**, **Actual size** or **Fit width**.

Display info :

Select from **Yes** or **No**.

Display properties, Scroll bar :

The settings are the same as those of "Changing the settings of display information".
• Selecting is available when **Display info** is set.

■ Enlarging/reducing the display

- ①    ▶ Enter the magnification (2 to 1000%)

■ Switching the page layout

- ①    ▶  or 

- You can select from **Single page** (each page is displayed) and **Continuous-facing** (2 page-spread is displayed).
- The setting is not available for PDF data containing only one page or downloaded partially.

■ Switching pages

Page to display	Operation
Previous page	 or   
Next page	 or   
Specified page	   ▶ Enter the page No.
First page	 or   
Last page	 or   

■ Rotating the display

① to

- The rotation of 90 degrees to right/left and 180 degrees is available.
- To display the previous page by scrolling, press and press to display the next page regardless of the direction of the page.

■ Search for the character strings

- When all of the PDF data is not downloaded, searching is executed only in the displayed page.

①

② **Select the entry field for the character string** **Enter the string (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)**

- To search a partially matched phrase, select **No** in **Whole words only Search**. For example, in case of entering "cat", when selecting **No**, "cats" is also searched, but when selecting **Yes**, "cats" cannot be searched.
- When not distinguishing upper/lower case, select **No** in **Case-sensitive**.

③

Searching is executed and the word matching to entered character strings is highlighted.

- Highlighting the next matched phrase:
- Highlighting the previous matched phrase:

- Ending the search:

- Displaying **HELP**:

■ Using the link

To move the page using link items in PDF data, switch the link display to on. When the link display is on, you can make a voice call/videophone call, compose i-mode mail or connect sites by using links of the telephone number, mail address or URL in data.

- While the link display is on, the operation of scrolling or moving the page is not available. Operate after displaying the part containing the link item to use.

①

② **Select the link item**

- The operation in case of selecting the phone number, mail address or URL is the same as for Phone to (AV Phone To), Mail To or Web To from sites.
- Press to terminate the link display.

■ Displaying the document information

The title, name of the author and file size, etc. can be displayed.

①

■ Displaying HELP

You can confirm the key operation.

- ① **either on the PDF display screen or search result screen**

INFORMATION

- PDF data saved in the miniSD memory card via PC, etc. can be displayed on FOMA terminal as well.
- For details about the storage and file name of PDF data in the miniSD memory card P333
- To display PDF data in the miniSD memory card P338

Utilizing bookmarks or marks

The page can be displayed quickly by selecting bookmarks or marks. There are three kinds of bookmarks or marks as follows:

Kind	Description
Bookmark	These are preset bookmarks and cannot be added, changed or deleted. There are PDF data not preset.
i-mode bookmark	Can be added later. The description of the page as the bookmark information can be registered, so it can be used as contents or notes, etc.
Mark	Can be added later in the PDF data as i-mode bookmarks. The information cannot be registered. The page number is displayed on the list screen.

- In the i-mode bookmark, the position and the current display status (magnification, the direction of rotation) are also registered. In marks, the position is registered only.
- i-mode bookmarks or marks may be preset depending on PDF data.
- i-mode bookmarks or marks can be registered up to 10 items for each (preset i-mode bookmarks and marks are included). However, registering may be unavailable up to the maximum number depending on PDF data.

Utilizing bookmarks

1 **on the PDF data display screen** **Select a bookmark**

Utilizing i-mode bookmarks

Registering i-mode bookmarks

- 1 **Display the page to register i-mode bookmark** ▶    
- 2 **Enter the information of i-mode bookmark (up to 128 one-byte or 64 two-byte characters)** ▶ Press 

Displaying i-mode bookmarks

- 1     **on the PDF data display screen** ▶ **Select the i-mode bookmark**
The registered bookmark position in the corresponding page is indicated with the same state (magnification, the direction of rotation) as when you registered.

■ Editing:

- ① **Highlight the i-mode bookmark** ▶
 
- ② **Enter the i-mode bookmark information** ▶


■ Deleting one item:

- ① **Highlight the i-mode bookmark** ▶
  
- ② **Select Yes**

■ Deleting selected items:

- ①    ▶ **Select i-mode bookmarks**
- ②  ▶ **Select Yes**

■ Deleting all items:

- ①   
- ② **Enter the terminal security code** ▶
Select Yes

INFORMATION

- Multiple i-mode bookmarks can be deleted also by pressing  and selecting **Bookmark/Mark** → **i-mode bkmrk/Mark** → **Del i-mode bookmark** on the PDF data display screen.
- If PDF data is moved to PC and so on via the miniSD memory card, etc., i-mode bookmarks may be deleted.

Utilizing marks

Registering marks

- 1 **Display the page to register a mark** ▶
Press    
A mark is registered and displayed in the center of the current display range.

Displaying marks

- 1     **on the PDF data display screen** ▶ **Select the mark**

The registered mark position in the corresponding page is indicated.

■ Deleting one item:

- ① **Highlight the mark** ▶  
- ② **Select Yes**

■ Deleting selected items:

- ①   ▶ **Select marks**
- ②  ▶ **Select Yes**

■ Deleting all items:

- ①  
- ② **Enter the terminal security code** ▶
Select Yes

INFORMATION

- Multiple marks can be deleted also by pressing  and selecting **Bookmark/Mark** → **i-mode bkmrk/Mark** → **Delete mark** on the PDF data display screen.
- If PDF data is moved to PC and so on via the miniSD memory card, etc., marks may be deleted.

Saving the image of the page

Capture Screen

The content on the current screen is saved as an image of JPEG format.

- Capture Screen may not be available depending on the PDF data.
- Availability of saved images for output from FOMA terminal depends on the settings of the original PDF data.
- The size of an image captured depends on the size of the screen on which PDF data is displayed.

- 1 **Press**   **on the PDF data display screen**

The contents displayed on the screen are saved in the **Camera** folder of **Image** (My Picture).

Setting the operating conditions of PDF compatible viewer

Settings (My Document)

Select the display format for the PDF data list. The thumbnail display appear when setting to **Display 16 icons**, and the title display appears when setting to **List view**.

Default Display 16 icons

1  Press  or 

INFORMATION

- In the PDF data list, press  and select **Setting**.

How to play music

To play music on FOMA terminal, there are two ways of playing on Music Player or playing as i-motion from Data Box or the miniSD memory card as shown below:

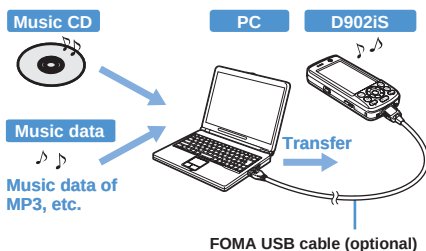
- Playing via Music Player
You can play music in CD or music data of MP3, etc. on FOMA terminal after transferring it from PC to the miniSD memory card.
 - Playing as i-motion
You can play i-motion with only sound downloaded via i-mode which is saved in FOMA terminal from **i-motion** of Data Box in FOMA terminal. If you save it to the miniSD memory card, playing is available from the miniSD memory card as well.
- The following is the explanation for playing on Music Player.
- How to play i-motion from Data Box P320
 - How to play i-motion via the miniSD memory card P338

Utilizing Music Player

Music Player

You can play music in CD or music data of MP3, etc. on Music Player in FOMA terminal after transferring it to the miniSD memory card from PC. The following is an explanation for playing the music data transferred to the miniSD memory card using audio software of BeatJam 2006 for D902iS (hereinafter referred to as BeatJam) contained in the attached CD-ROM.

- The followings are required to play music on Music Player:
 - MiniSD memory card
If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores. For the information and usage precautions of the miniSD memory card P331
Unformatted miniSD memory cards must be formatted with FOMA terminal before using. P341
 - FOMA USB cable (optional)
Connect FOMA terminal to PC.



Transferring music data to the miniSD memory card

The music data is transferred via BeatJam from PC.

■ BeatJam operating environment

Item	Required environment
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 2000 or XP*1
CPU / Memory	CPU: Intel Pentium III 450 MHz or more Memory: at least 128 MB
Hard disc capacity	180 MB or more
Monitor	Resolution: 1024 x 768 or more, with High Color or more
Sound	Sound card required

*1 Only available to system administrators.

To set administrator privileges on a PC, refer to the manual for the PC or consult with the manufacturer of that PC or with Microsoft Corporation.

■ Music file formats that can be transferred

Format that can be transferred

AAC / MP3



Format after transferring

AAC

- Can be recorded or played in other music data format on Beat Jam, but only the format shown above can be transferred and played on D902iS.

■ Estimated length (time) of music file that can be saved

The followings are the total time of the music data that can be saved in the miniSD memory card in case of 16 Mbytes and 32 Mbytes (estimates):

Capacity	Bit rate (kbps)		
	32	128	320
16MB	55 min.	15 min.	5 min.
32MB	115min.	30 min.	10 min.

■ BeatJam Instruction Manual

For details on precautions and operating procedures when installing and setting up BeatJam, refer to the BeatJam Instruction Manual contained in the attached CD-ROM (PDF format). Adobe Acrobat Reader (version 5.0 or later recommended) is required in order to read it. If Adobe Acrobat Reader is not installed in your PC, download the most recent version from Adobe Systems Incorporated website (separate communication fees are required). Access the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for more detailed information. The Instruction Manual can be accessed in the following ways:

① Insert the included CD-ROM disk into a PC

② Click on *BeatJam 2006 for D902iS*

③ Click on *BeatJam の使い方 (Using BeatJam)*

- After installing BeatJam, select スタート (Start) → プログラム (Programs) or すべてのプログラム (All Programs) → *BeatJam* → *BeatJam のマニュアル (BeatJam Manual)*.

■ Contact information for BeatJam

Justsystem Support website

<http://support.justsystem.co.jp/>

Access the URL above for more detailed information on the available support service from Justsystem. A FAQ regarding products, etc., is also available on that site.

Justsystem Corporation

Justsystem Support Center

Phone: Tokyo: 03-5412-3980

Osaka: 06-6886-7160

Hours*1: Weekdays 10:00 to 19:00, Weekends and holidays 10:00 to 17:00

*1 Excluding special non-business days such as the New Years holidays.

- User Registration will be required before making an inquiry. For information on your User Registration, refer to the “BeatJam サポートガイド” (BeatJam Support Guide).

Installing BeatJam

1 Insert the included CD-ROM disk into a PC

- Once the CD-ROM disk is inserted into the PC, the ソフトウェアのセットアップ (Software setup) window should automatically appear on the PC's monitor. If that window does not appear, refer to the “Readme” file (text format) inside the root folder on the CD-ROM.

2 Click on *BeatJam 2006 for D902iS*

3 Click on *BeatJam のセットアップ (Setup BeatJam)* ▶ Follow the instructions to install the software

- Once BeatJam has been completely installed, you will need to restart the PC.

Preparing the music files

Prepare the music files using one of the following procedures. For details on the operation procedures of BeatJam, refer to the BeatJam Instruction Manual.

- Insert a music CD into a PC.
- Register MP3 or other music files in your BeatJam library.

Transferring the music files to the miniSD memory card

Connect FOMA terminal to PC after setting FOMA terminal to the miniSD mode and transfer the music data via BeatJam.

- Calls and i-mode communication, etc., will not be possible while the FOMA terminal is in the miniSD mode.
- Be conscious of the battery level when transferring music files. If the battery runs out during transfer, the miniSD memory card may be damaged and/or the data not transferred properly. There is a possibility of the battery running out when transferring a large volume of music data, so it is best to transfer such data over multiple operations.

- 1 Insert the miniSD memory card in FOMA terminal **☛P335**
- 2 Switch the USB Mode Setting to *miniSD mode* on FOMA terminal and connect FOMA terminal to PC **☛P342**

3 Transfer the desired music files to the miniSD memory card via BeatJam

- For details, refer to the BeatJam Instruction Manual.

4 Perform the operation to remove hardware on your PC and disconnect the FOMA USB cable

- If you do not disconnect the FOMA USB cable after performing the operation to remove hardware on the PC, the computer or computer environment may be damaged.
- Depending upon the OS and current settings in your PC, the operation to remove hardware (the connected FOMA terminal) may differ.
- When removing the connector for FOMA terminal of FOMA USB cable, never fail to pull it out even pressing release buttons. Remove carefully as forcing it may be the cause of damage.
- After about 90 seconds, the USB Mode Setting of FOMA terminal will automatically switch back to *Communication mode*. To manually switch to *Communication mode*, press any key other than **[OK]** and then select **Yes**.

INFORMATION

- During transfer of music files, do not disconnect the FOMA USB cable or change USB Mode Setting in FOMA terminal from *miniSD mode* to *Communication mode*, etc., as the data may become damaged or FOMA terminal or PC may be damaged.

Playing music on Music Player

Play the music data transferred to the miniSD memory card.

- Only files saved with the extension of “mp4”, “3gp” or “m4a” can be played.
- By default, when starting Music Player, the folder/ file under the top folder (*PRIVATE* → *DOCOMO* → *MMFILE* → *D_MUSIC* folder of the miniSD memory card) is listed.

In case the top folder has no data, you cannot start.

1 **[Menu]** **[9]**

Music Player is activated and the list of music data and the folder is displayed.

■ Moving to another folder: Select a folder

- To move to the upper-level folder: **[ch/2UP]**
- To move to the top folder: **[Menu]** **[5]** **[1]**
- To move to the Home folder (displayed when activating): **[Menu]** **[5]** **[2]**

■ Changing the Home folder (displayed when activating):

- Setting is available only for the top folder and the lower-level folder under it (not required to be directly under).

① Select a folder and display the list of folders in it

② **[Menu]** **[6]** **[▶]** Select Yes

■ Terminating Music Player: **[ch/2UP]** on the top folder

2 Select music data



The selected music data is played.

Music data being played, No. / numbers of music, Volume, Playing duration

- [▶]** : Regular play
- [⬇]** : Mark priority on
- [▶]** : Intro play

- [Top]** : Top folder
- [Home]** : Home folder
- [Folder]** : Regular folder

- When playback of the selected music data is finished, the next music data in the folder is replayed.

- During playback, the following operations are enabled:
 - : Stop (Press again to replay from the interrupted position)
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Play the previous/next music data
 - : Stop playback and move to the upper-level folder/Terminate Music Player when pressing on the top folder
- The music data can be displayed and listed up to 99 items.

■ Playing the selected music data only:

You can play only music data which are marked in advance.

① Highlight the music data

appears in the selected music data.

- Each press switches between marked and unmarked.
- To select all/cancel all: (for over a second)
- Moving to another folder cancels the mark.
- Operation is available during playback.

② after marking

- Each press switches between **ON/OFF** for **Mark priority**. Set to **ON** when replaying only the marked music data and set to **OFF** when replaying all the music data in the folder. **OFF** is displayed on the guide row when setting to **ON**.

③

The marked music data are played.

■ Playing the intro: 1

Each music data stored in the folder is played for 7 seconds in order from the top.

- Press while playing the intro to switch to the normal play mode.

■ Playing in shuffle mode: during playing or suspending

The sorting order of music data in the folder is switched in a random order.

- Return to the previous order: 4 1

■ Playing the music files using the flat type stereo earphone set (optional), etc.:

If the flat type stereo earphone set is connected to the terminal when playing music data, you can operate Music Player with the switch of the earphone set.

- To operate with the switch, it is required to set to **Music player** for Headset Key Control.

●P387

Operation	Procedure
Activate Music Player	Press for over a second
Play/Stop/Select a folder	Press once
Select the next music data or folder*1	Press twice in a row
Select the previous music data or folder*1	Press for over a second
Move to the upper-level folder/ Terminate Music Player	Press 3 times in a row*2

*1 The previous/next music data is replayed during playing.

*2 Music Player is terminated when pressing on the top folder.

INFORMATION

- Playback continues even if another function is performed with the Multitask function. However, replaying may be suspended depending on the executed functions.
- In the following cases, playing pauses and after displaying the reception screen for a call/communication or mail or sounding an alarm clock or schedule alarm, playback resumes:
 - Voice call/ videophone call/PushTalk call is received
 - Mail is received (In case Display Priority is set to **Show message**)
 - The date and time set in Alarm Clock or the schedule arrives
- Video/i-motion with image or ticker is not played.

Setting the operating conditions of Music Player

Player Setting

- The settings of this function are also reflected on Settings of i-motion.

Default Volume: Level20 Repeat play: ON
Surround: OFF

1 9 7

2 Select each item to set

Volume :

Sets the volume for playing music data.

Repeat play :

Sets whether to return to the first music data to play after playing the last music data in the folder.

Surround :

Specifies whether to enable the surround effects when playing the music data.

3 Press

Other Convenient Functions

Multiaccess	Multiaccess	364
Multitask	Multitask	365
Having an edit screen displayed when FOMA terminal is opened	Edit by Slide	366
Turning power on/off automatically at the specified time	Auto Power ON/OFF	367
Alerting with alarms after the specified time period has passed	Timer	367
Ringing the alarm clock at the set time	Alarm Clock	368
Setting to turn power on automatically at the time specified for the alarm	Alarm Auto Power ON	369
Managing schedules	Scheduler	370
Registering often-used functions	Custom Menu	376
Registering your own name and mail address	Own Number	379
Recording the voice and image	Voice Memo/Movie Memo	380
Checking the call duration and the call cost	Call Duration/Call Cost	381
Resetting the call cost automatically	Reset Call Cost	382
Setting to notify the limit of call cost	Call Cost Limit	383
Using Calculator	Calculator	383
Composing notes	Notepad	384
Using electronic dictionaries		385
Using the earphone/microphone set with switch	Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch	386
Determining a service provider	NW Search Method	388
Reducing the start-up time after power-on	Quick Start-up	388
Checking current settings of functions	Confirm Settings	388
Resetting functions	Reset	389
Deleting registered data collectively	Delete All Data	389

Multiaccess

Multiaccess

Multiaccess is a function that 3 functions (the voice call, packet communication, SMS) can be used at the same time.

- The icons for the functions in progress are displayed on the task bar.
- The following functions can be used simultaneously:
 - Voice call: 1 line
 - i-mode, i-appli, i-mode Mail or packet communication with PC connected: 1 line
 - SMS: 1 line
- Multiaccess combinations P439

INFORMATION

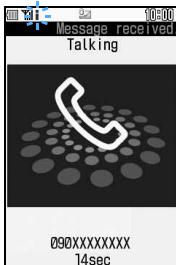
- During Multiaccess you are charged separately for each communication.

Operations available during Multiaccess

You can receive i-mode Mail, SMS or voice call, or execute the other communication without interrupting the communication being connected.

Receiving i-mode Mail during a voice call

1 Receive mail during a voice call



While receiving,  and  blinks at the top of the display, and when receiving is finished,  blinks and  appears.

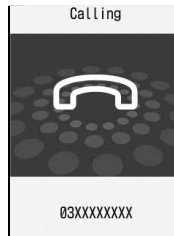
-  stops blinking automatically.

Receiving a voice call during i-mode

You can receive a voice call with a site being displayed.

- Similarly, you can receive a voice call during packet communication with a PC connected.

1 A voice call is received during i-mode



- The screen displayed when a voice call is received depends on Priority Comm Mode.

2 Press

- The talking screen and the site screen can be switched using Multitask. P366
- To quit displaying the site:  in the site screen ▶ Select **Yes**
- To end the call:  in the talking screen

Connecting i-mode during a voice call

1 during a voice call

New Task menu appears.

- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, the site screen can be viewed while talking.

2 Press



New Task menu



- The talking screen and the site screen can be switched using Multitask. P366
- To quit displaying the site:  in the site screen ▶ Select **Yes**
- To end the call:  in the talking screen

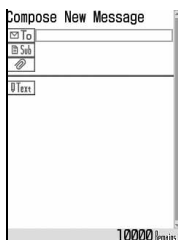
Sending i-mode Mail during a voice call

1 during a voice call

New Task menu appears.

- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, you can compose mail while talking.

2 Press



When transmission of i-mode Mail is completed, the talking screen returns.

- The talking screen and the mail composition screen can be switched using Multitask. **•P366**
- To quit mail composition:  in the mail composition screen
- To end the call:  in the talking screen

Performing packet communication during a voice call

1 Send data from a PC while talking

- This action starts packet communication.
- The screen displayed when packet communication is executed depends on Priority Comm Mode.
- To end the call:  in the talking screen

Making a voice call during i-mode communication

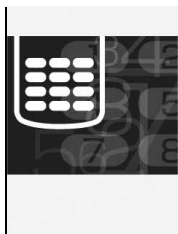
You can make a voice call with a site being displayed.

- Similarly, you can make a voice call during packet communication with a PC connected.

1 during i-mode communication

New Task menu appears.

2 Enter the phone number ▶ Press



- Select **Phonebook & Logs** from **New Task** menu to call from the phonebook, received call history or redial data.

- The talking screen and the site screen can be switched using Multitask. **•P366**
- To quit displaying the site:  in the site screen ▶ Select **Yes**
- To end the call:  in the talking screen

Multitask

Multitask

Multitask allows you to execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen.

- The icons for the functions in progress are displayed on the task bar.
- The number of functions that can be performed simultaneously is up to 2. However, the function of Dial Callout, Own Number or Silent mode ON/OFF can be activated even when 2 other functions are already active.
- Some functions may be restricted or unable to start simultaneously with one another. Multitask combinations **•P441**

Executing a new function

Example Displaying/registering a schedule during a voice call

1 during a voice call

New Task menu appears.

- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, the schedule screen can be viewed while talking.

2



3 View/Register a schedule

- To quit the schedule:  in the schedule screen
- To end the call:  in the talking screen

INFORMATION

- If many functions are executed at once, for example, a mail arrives while video or animation is being played or Camera is operated, the image displayed on the screen may not appear smoothly or the sound may be disrupted during play.
- If you press  in the first level menu of newly activated function, Own Number is displayed. However, it may not be displayed depending on the current function or condition.

Switching functions to operate

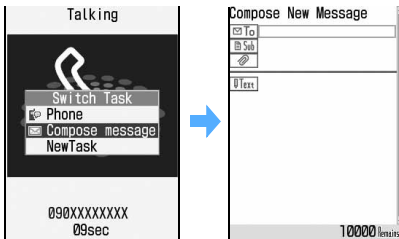
Pressing  while you are using multiple functions, **Switch Task** menu appears, which allows you to switch screens and perform your desired operation.

Example Switching to the mail composition screen during Multitask of a voice call and i-mode mail composition

1 during a voice call

Switch Task menu appears.

2 Select **Compose message**



Switch Task menu

- To return to the talking screen:  ► Select **Phone** from **Switch Task** menu
- You can start a new function by pressing  in **Switch Task** menu to display **New Task** menu. Press  again to return to **Switch Task** menu.

INFORMATION

- Screens cannot be switched if the combination of the two functions is defined as not selectable in Multitask combinations. ◀P441
- The item names displayed in **Switch Task** menu may differ from the menu item names as shown below.
 - **Dial input** (phone number input)
 - **AV comm.** (videophone using the external device)
 - **i-mode** (iMenu, Bookmark, URL entry, URL History, Last Visited URL, Screen Memo, i-channel)
 - **Mail** (list screen or detail screen of i-mode Mail, SMS)
 - **Compose message** (i-mode Mail composition screen, SMS composition screen)
 - **Receive message** (reception screen for i-mode Mail and Message R/F)
 - **Check new message** (Check i-mode Message, Check SMS)
 - **PDF Viewer** (PDF data display screen)
 - **PPP data comm.** (packet communication connected to a PC)

Quitting all running operations

You can quit all functions running in Multitask at a time.

1 during Multitask ► Select **Yes**

Having an edit screen displayed when FOMA terminal is opened

Edit by Slide

If you set this function to **ON**, you can automatically display the mail composition screen, schedule edit screen and other screens when you open your FOMA terminal.

Default **ON** (all)

1

2 Select the item ► or

- Setting **ON** makes the following actions for each item:

Inbox :

Display the quick reply message selection screen when opening FOMA terminal from the received mail list screen or the received mail view screen.

- Display the mail composition screen for reply when a quick reply message is not registered or Quick Reply Setting is set to **OFF**.

Outbox :

Display the mail composition screen for editing by opening FOMA terminal when the sent mail list/view screen is displayed.

Unsent message :

Display the mail composition screen for editing by opening FOMA terminal when the unsent mail list is displayed.

Chat mail :

Display the screen where you can enter the message by opening FOMA terminal when the chat mail screen is displayed.

Schedule :

Display the schedule registration screen by opening FOMA terminal when the calendar screen/day view screen is displayed.

Notepad :

Display the notepad edit screen by opening FOMA terminal when the notepad list screen or the notepad view screen is displayed.

3 Press

INFORMATION

- If **Schedule** is set to **ON**, the edit screen is displayed by opening FOMA terminal when the schedule details screen is displayed.

Turning power on/off automatically at the specified time

Auto Power ON/OFF

- Auto Power ON cannot be set to operate at the same time as Auto Power OFF.

Default Auto power ON: OFF Auto power OFF: OFF

Example Setting Auto Power ON

1

■ **Setting Auto Power OFF:**

2 Select each item to set

Auto power ON :

Set or cancel Auto Power ON.

- When set to **OFF**, **Time** or **Repeat** cannot be selected.

Time :

Set the time to automatically turn the power on.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.

Repeat :

Set Auto Power ON to repeat.

- When set to **OFF**, FOMA terminal is turned on only once at the set time and the Auto Power ON setting is canceled.

3 Press

INFORMATION

- If the Auto Power OFF is set to **ON** at the same time with the time for schedule or Alarm Clock, Auto Power OFF is made after finishing the operation of Alarm Clock or the schedule. If a snooze operation follows the alarm clock sound, Auto Power OFF takes place after the snooze operation ends. If the time set by Auto Power OFF comes while Timer is operating, the power is turned off after the end of Timer countdown.
- Even if Auto Power OFF is set to **ON**, when the specified time arrives while FOMA terminal is in any mode except standby, the power is not turned off. The power is turned off after the running function completes each job. However, if the specified time arrives while the terminal security code entry screen is displayed following the standby display or the PIN1 code or PIN2 code entry screen is displayed when FOMA terminal is turned on, the power is turned off.
- Set Auto Power ON to **OFF** in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.

Alerting with alarms after the specified time period has passed

Timer

When the specified time period has passed, FOMA terminal alerts you with alarm sound, vibration and flashing of the Enter key.

1 Enter time period

- Enter the period from 1 to 60 minutes. For 1 to 9 minutes, do not enter the preceding 0.

2 Press

The countdown screen of Timer appears and countdown starts.

- Countdown can also be started by pressing

.

- Countdown continues even if a call or PushTalk call arrives or is pressed to start another function during countdown.

- If you press or during countdown, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to stop countdown. Countdown continues even while the confirmation screen is displayed.

After the specified time has passed

1 The alarm sounds



The alarm (アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)) sounds at the volume set for the call alert volume, and the Enter key flashes. If the vibrator is set for incoming calls in Vibrator Setting, it operates according to the setting.

2 Press to stop the alarm

The standby display reappears.

- The alarm stops when a minute has passed without any operation or any key or button other than is pressed. To return to the standby display, press .

Alarm indication while another function is being used

Function	Alarm indication
During a call or PushTalk call	A warning tone sounds. The Enter key does not flash and the vibrator does not vibrate. In case of a PushTalk call, the floor acquisition is released to disable you to talk.
On-hold	The above operation takes place after the end of the on-hold state.
During data transfer*1, while a call or PushTalk call is ringing or being dialed, received or terminated	The alarm is issued after the end of the left-mentioned operation. If the schedule data is received via data communication when the scheduled date and times comes, the schedule does not operate.

*1. Receiving/sending for packet communication is excluded.

Ringing the alarm clock at the set time

Alarm Clock

This function announces at the specified time with the alarm clock sound, lighting or flashing of the Enter key or the vibration.

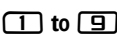
- Up to 9 alarms can be set.

Default not set

Setting the alarm clock time and sound

- When Alarm Clock is on, the default settings are as follows; **Time:** 00:00, **Repeat:** None, **Alarm sound:** Terminal setting, **Volume:** Terminal setting, **Vibrate alert:** Terminal setting, **Light pattern:** Terminal setting, **Light color:** Terminal setting.

1  7 3

2 

-  is displayed on left of a title while setting an alarm.

■ **Canceling:** Highlight the title from the alarm list 

- To set the canceled alarm again: Highlight a title from the alarm clock list 

3 Select each item to set

[others] [Set alarm] [Set >]	
Time	00:00
Repeat	None
Day/Week	
Su Mo Tu We Th Fr Sa	
Title	目覚まし

Time :

Enter the time to set an alarm.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.

Repeat :

Select the repeat setting.

- If **None** is set, the alarm is activated only once.
- If **Every day** is set, the alarm is activated everyday.
- If you select **Day of week**, select the **Day/Week** to select the days of the week and press .

Title :

Up to 14 one-byte or 7 two-byte characters can be entered.

- The titles are set to 目覚まし 1 to 目覚まし 9 by default. If the title field is not entered, the alarm cannot be set.

4 to switch to Set sound screen ▶ Select and set each item

[Alarm] [Set sound] [Set >]	
Alarm sound	Terminal setting
Volume	Terminal setting

Alarm sound :

Set the alarm clock sound to be issued at the specified time.

- When **i-motion** or **Melody** is selected, select a video/i-motion file or a melody. Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion 
- If you select **Terminal setting**, the alarm sound conforms to the setting of Sound Setting.

Volume :

Select the volume.

- For details of operation when **Set** is selected 
- If you select **Terminal setting**, the alarm volume conforms to the setting of Adjust Volume.

5 to switch to Set others screen ▶ Select and set each item

[Sound] [Set others] [Set >]	
Vibrate alert	Terminal setting
Light pattern	Terminal setting
Light color	Terminal setting

Vibrate alert :

Select the vibration used at the set time.

- If you select **Select**, select a vibrator type.
- If you select **Terminal setting**, the vibration conforms to the setting of Vibrator Setting.

Light pattern :

Set the lighting pattern of the Enter key for the set time.

- When you select **Select**, select a lighting pattern. When **Sync melody** or **OFF** is set, **Light color** cannot be set.
- If you select **Terminal setting**, the lighting pattern conforms to the setting of Light Alert Setting.

Light color :

Set the color of the Enter key for the set time.

- When you select **Select**, select a light color.
- If you select **Terminal setting**, the lighting pattern conforms to the setting of Light Alert Setting.

6 Press

In the standby screen,  or  (when a schedule alarm is also set) is displayed.

INFORMATION

- If **Sync melody** is set for the lighting pattern, the Enter key may not light or flash depending on the melodies.
- If you delete the data specified as a alarm clock sound, **Terminal setting** is assumed.

When the set time comes

1 The alarm clock rings



The alarm clock operates according to the settings. If video/i-motion is set for the alarm clock, it is displayed.

2 Press to stop the alarm

The screen before the alarm clock sound reappears.

- When a minute has passed without any operation or any key or button other than  is pressed, the alarm clock sound stops and the snooze operation starts. The snooze operation repeats 1-minute ringing and 4-minute interval for 30 minutes. During an interval of snooze operation, **スヌーズ中 Snooze** is displayed on the screen (if video/i-motion is set, the first image is displayed). When you press , the snooze operation terminates and the screen returns to the display before the alarm clock rang.
- If a call or PushTalk call arrives while the alarm clock is ringing, the snooze operation starts.

- If more than one 目覚まし (alarm) is set for the same time, the one with the lowest item number in the Alarm list takes effect.
- For alarm indication while another function is being used 

Alarm clock does not ring at the set time

- When power is off, neither the power is turned on nor the alarm clock rings. To enable the alarm clock while the power is off, set Alarm Auto Power ON to **ON**.
- When All Lock or PIM Lock is activated, the alarm clock does not ring.
- When a Chara-den image is displayed at the set time, the alarm may sound a few seconds later.
- When an alarm clock and a schedule alarm are set for the same date and time, the alarm clock operates first, followed by the snooze operation and then the schedule alarm is issued. Even after the schedule alarm operation is finished, the snooze operation of the alarm clock is continued.

Setting to turn power on automatically at the time specified for the alarm

Alarm Auto Power ON

Set to automatically turn the power on and issue an alarm or alarm clock sound if the power is off at the date and time specified by Scheduler or Alarm Clock.

 **Default** 

1    

2 Press 

- To set not to turn the power on automatically:



INFORMATION

- Set this function to **OFF** in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.
- If Alarm Auto Power ON and PIN1 Code ON/OFF have been set to **ON**, the power is turned on and the alarm sounds before displaying the PIN1 code entry screen when the set date and time for an alarm or schedule arrives. When pressing  to stop the alarm, the PIN1 code entry screen appears. At this time, the default melody sounds as the alarm or alarm clock sound even when the downloaded melody or i-motion is set for the alarm or alarm clock sound. The default melody is アラーム・メロディ (Alarm: melody) for the alarm and アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm: female voice) for the schedule alarm.

Managing schedules

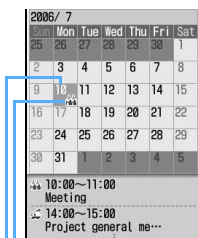
Scheduler

Save various schedules. You will be notified of it with the display and/or alarm sound at the set time.

Displaying the calendar

The calendar screen allows displaying schedules.

1 Hold down for over a second



Item icon
Cursor

The calendar screen appears.

The date is displayed in pink for the current day, blue for Saturday, and red for Sunday and national holidays. (The displayed color depends on the setting of Color Scheme).

Schedule of the day (If there are more than 3 items, ":" is displayed for the 3th and later)

- For a day with multiple schedules set, the item icon for the plan schedule planned for the earliest hour is indicated. Even if the time of the item set at the earliest time of the day is passed, the item icon set next is not displayed.
-  to move the date. Pressing  displays the day view screen.
- Pressing  displays the previous month and  displays the next month.
- The calendar appears as set when quit last time.

■ Specifying a particular day to display:

- 1    in the calendar screen
 - 2 Enter the year, month, and day
 - Enter the last 2 digits of the year. For single-digit months and days, precede the digit with 0.
 - To return today:   
 - In **Day View** screen, press   .
- Pressing    restores the current date display.

INFORMATION

- When *Use at stand-by disp of Set speed selector* is set to **Scheduler**, you can also display the calendar by rotating Speed Selector in standby.

- The national holidays on the calendar are based on the Law Concerning National Holidays and a law that revises part of the Old Age People's Welfare Law (law no. 59, June 22 in 2001) (as of May 2006). However, the Vernal Equinox and Autumnal Equinox may be different because the correct date is announced by an official gazette on February 1 of the previous year. The above law was in force on January in 2003. So, keep in mind that Marine day and Respect for the Aged day are not displayed on the date as before they are revised.
- The calendar can display dates between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2060.

Setting display style for the calendar

Calendar View Mode

Default Scroll mode: Monthly mode
Display mode: Normal mode

1 (for over a second)

2 Select each item to set

Scroll mode :

Set the calendar display mode when you move between dates by pressing .

- Set **Monthly mode** to switch the display every month.
- Set to **Slide mode** to scroll the screen for each week.

Display mode :

Sets the beginning of the week (leftmost position).

- Set **Normal mode** to be Sunday.
- Set **Business mode** to be Monday.

3 Press

Setting days off

Day Off Setting

You can set days off from the office or school. They can be set by specifying the date or day of the week.

- When setting days off by specifying dates, up to 30 items can be registered.

Example Setting days off by specifying dates

1 (for over a second)

2 Highlight the date to set to a day off Press

The color of the date specified as a day off changes.

- To set a day off to be repeated yearly:

■ Canceling: Highlight the day to cancel day off setting

- To cancel all:    

■ Setting days off by specifying the day of week:

①

② to to select the day of the week to set to days off

- By default, Sundays are set to days off.
- **Reset** is indicated in the guide row when a day of the week other than Sunday is selected or the selection of Sunday is canceled. Pressing restores the default setting.

③

- If you register the calendar display without selecting days off, it returns to the default state.

Setting national holidays

Holiday Setting

Holidays can be changed and up to 5 new entries can be registered.

1 (for over a second)

2

3

■ **Changing:** Select the holiday ► Go to Step 4

■ **Deleting:** Highlight the holiday ► ► Select Yes

- You cannot delete holidays set by default.

4 Select each item to set

Holiday :

Enter the holiday name (up to 22 one-byte or 11 two-byte characters).

- You cannot change the holiday name set by default.

Mark on calendar :

Specify whether to display the set holiday.

- If you select **OFF**, you cannot set the date.

Date :

Enter a date to set as a holiday. For a month and day from 1 to 9, precede the digit with 0.

- To change the date of holiday set by default, select **Change** and enter the date.

5 Press

Saving the schedule

You can save multiple schedules for the same day.

- Up to 300 items can be recorded.

1 (for over a second)

2 Highlight the date whose schedule you want to save ►

- In the day view screen, also press .
- When **Schedule** is set to **ON** in Edit by Slide, open FOMA terminal after highlighting the date from the calendar screen or displaying the day view screen to display **Main(New)** screen.

3 Select each item to set

(Item icon) :

Select the icon.

- The selected icon is indicated in the schedule heading.

Schedule (Description input column) :

The description equivalent for the selected icon is displayed. Change the description as required (up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters).

- The entered description is not changed by changing the icon after changing the description.

All day :

Set whether to set the schedule to **All day** without specifying the time.

- If **ON** is set, the time and date display of the schedule is marked with **AllDay** on the day view screen. If **All day** is set for the long-term schedule, the date is followed by **AllDay**.

Start time :

Enter a start date and time for the schedule.

- Enter the last 2 digits of the year. For single-digit months and days, precede the digit with 0.
- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.
- You can set dates up to December 31, 2060.
- You cannot set the time if you set **All day**.

End time :

- Enter an end date and time for the schedule.
- The input method of the date and time is the same as that of the start time.
- If you set this later than the start date,  is displayed at the upper right of the date set on the calendar screen. Also,  appears under the item icon on the day view and schedule details screens (Long-term schedule).

Note :

Enter schedule details (up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters).

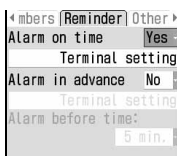
4 to switch to **Select members screen**

5 **Select <Select member list> ▶ Select members to register**

- Up to 5 members can be registered. You can make a call or PushTalk call, and also can send mail.
- The first phone number, mail address, URL in the phonebook data is registered.

■ **Deleting: Highlight the member** ▶ 

6 to switch to **Reminder screen** ▶ **Select and set each item**



Alarm on time (Schedule alarm) :

Set whether to sound an alarm.

- If you select **Yes** and then *i-motion* or *Melody* in the alarm selection field, select a video/ i-motion file or a melody for the alarm. Playing and checking a melody or video/ i-motion 
- If you select **Yes** and **Terminal setting**, the alarm conforms to the setting of Sound Setting.

Alarm in advance :

Set whether to sound an alarm prior to the scheduled start time.

- The alarm selection method is the same as for **Alarm on time**.
- If **No** is selected, **Alarm before time** cannot be set.

Alarm before time :

Set how many minutes before the scheduled start time you want the alarm to sound.

7 to switch to **Other settings screen** ▶ **Select and set each item**



Repeat :

Set the details of the repeating schedule.

- When you set a 31st day or February 29 in a leap year as the schedule starting date and **Every month** or **Every year** is selected in the repeat setting, the schedule repeating date becomes the last day of the same year/month without the specified date (that is, 30th or February 28).
- If **None** is selected, the schedule alarm is activated only once.
- If **Day of week** is selected, select **Day/Week** field. And select a day of the week when the alarm is sounded, then press .
- When you set a repeat,  is displayed at the upper right of the date set on the calendar screen. However, the item icon appears only on the first repeating date on the calendar. Also,  appears under the item icon on the day view and schedule details screens (Repeat schedule).

Image :

Set the image to be displayed on the schedule alarm screen.

- When you select **Yes**, select **Image**, and then select an image. Flash movies cannot be set for images.
- If **No** is select, the default image is displayed.

8 **Press**

- When a schedule set with an alarm or advance alarm is saved,  or  (when Alarm Clock is also set) is indicated in the standby display.

Registering a schedule in the standby display

You can add a schedule by simple key operation from the standby display without showing the calendar screen.

1 **Enter the date and time (8 digits) to register schedule** ▶

The schedule entry screen is displayed.

Example: For 3 p.m. on July 10: Enter "07101500"

- If you enter only hour and minute in 4 digits, the current date is assumed. However, if you enter hour and minute earlier than the current time, the next day is assumed.

2 Save the schedule

INFORMATION

- You cannot set long term schedule and repeat schedule at the same time.
 - You can change the schedule alarm screen by the following procedure. The last settings take effect.
 - Select a video/i-motion on the Set alarm screen*1.
 - If a video/i-motion is set as a schedule reminder of Sound Setting, select **Terminal setting** on the Set alarm screen*1.
 - Select an image on the **Other settings** screen*2.
 - *1 If you perform this setting when an image has already been set on the **Other settings** screen, **Image** is switched to **No**.
 - *2 If you perform this setting when a video/i-motion has already been set for **Alarm on time** or **Alarm in advance**, it is switched to **Melody** (default).
 - If you delete the data specified as a schedule alarm or alarm in advance, **Terminal setting** is assumed.
 - It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of the contents of Scheduler.
- Schedules can be saved using the miniSD memory card (P336). Data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) can be used to send and save the data to the PC.

When the set time comes

1 The alarm sounds



Schedule alarm screen

The schedule alarm operates according to the settings. If an image or video/i-motion is set for the schedule alarm, it is displayed. If Created animation is set for the image, the first frame is displayed.

2 Press to stop the alarm

The screen before the alarm reappears.

- The alarm stops when a minute has passed without any operation or any key or button other than  is pressed. The schedule alarm screen depends on the setting as follows. To return to the display before the alarm, press .

Setting	Display
Image	Set image
video/i-motion	First frame

- When multiple schedules are set for the same date/time, you can check other schedules by  after stopping the alarm.
- For alarm indication while another function is being used P368
- The schedule does not operate when Privacy Mode is on (**Schedule** is set to **Authorized access**). When Secret Attribute is set, you need to set Secret Mode to enable the schedule. If the schedule alarm is not issued at the set date/time in any cases other than the above, see "Alarm clock does not ring at the set time". P369

INFORMATION

- The alarm sounds at the volume set by **Schedule reminder**.
- If light alert or vibrator is set as a schedule reminder, lighting and vibration occur according to the settings.
- An alarm in advance, when set, sounds before the schedule start time.
- When you set schedule alarm with **All day**, the alarm operates at 00:00 on the set date.

Setting defaults for the schedule alarm

Reminder Option

Set the defaults for the schedule alarm of a new schedule to be added.

- If you change the defaults, it may not affect the settings of the registered schedules.

Default all Alarm:Yes

1 Hold down for over a second



2 Select each item to set

Set by scheduler :

Set the default values of the schedule alarm for registering schedules from the calendar screen.

Set by quick-schedule :

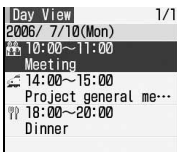
Set the default of the schedule alarm for registering schedules from the calendar screen.

3 Press

Checking saved schedule data

You can add, change and delete the schedules from the displayed screen.

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule



Day view screen

■ Displaying schedules for the specific item only (Display mode by item):

① (for over a second)

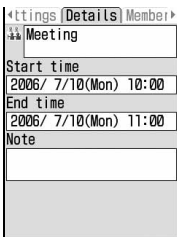
②

- To show all items:   
- In the day view screen, press   . To restore the all items display, press   .

③ Select an item icon

The selected item icon appears on the upper right of the calendar screen and the day view screen. Only the schedules for which the icon is set are displayed.

2 Select the schedule to check



Details screen

■ Changing:

① in the schedule details screen

- When **Schedule** is set to **ON** in Edit by Slide, open FOMA terminal in each details screen for schedule to display the edit screen.
- In the day view screen, highlight a schedule and then press  .

② Change the schedule data ▶

③ Select Yes

- Pressing  in the day view screen switches dates.

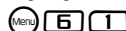
Copying/Pasting schedules

You can copy a schedule and paste it elsewhere to use it as a schedule for another date.

- When a long-term or repeat schedule is copied and pasted, the entire schedule is pasted in all the corresponding days.
- The copied schedule is memorized until Scheduler is ended and can be pasted on another date any number of times. However, only one item can be memorized and copying new schedule overwrites the retained item.

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

2 Highlight the schedule to copy ▶



3

4 Highlight the date to paste the schedule to ▶ Press

- In the day view screen, press   .

Composing mail from schedules

Schedules can be sent as an i-mode Mail message.

- The number of schedule items that can be sent depends on the screen operated.

○: Available ×: Unavailable

Sending type	Send selected item	Send selected day/ Send all*1
Screen		
Calendar screen	×	○
Day view screen	○	○
Details screen	○	×

*1 Sends all saved schedules (including past schedules).

- Schedules are entered to a mail message in the Date To format. ▶P385
- If schedule data exceeds the mail message capacity, the excessive part will be deleted.
- When schedules are displayed in the display mode by type, only the displayed items are inserted in the mail text.
- To send schedules for which Secret Attribute is set, set Secret Mode on.

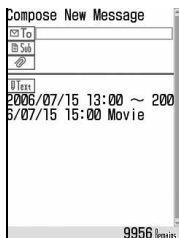
Example Sending a schedule from the day view screen

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

INFORMATION

- If the displayed schedule contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.

2 Highlight the schedule ▶ Press



- To send all schedules registered for the selected day by mail:
- To send all saved schedules at once:
- On the calendar screen, press and then press or .
- On the schedule details screen, press .

Searching mail from schedules

You can search mail sent and received on the day you select by using the schedule.

Example Searching received mail from the calendar screen

1 (for over a second) ▶ Highlight the date of which mail you want to search

2 Press



- To display sent mail:
- In the day view screen, press to display received mail. To display sent mail, press .
- How to view received/sent mail ➡ P246
- To cancel mail search:

Deleting schedules

- The number of schedule items that can be deleted depends on the screen operated.

○: Available ×: Unavailable

Deleting type Screen	Selected item	One day/ Before date/ Delete all
Calendar screen	×	○
Day view screen	○	○
Details screen	○	×

- If the long-term or repeat schedule is deleted, the schedule is deleted from all the days that include a long-term or repeat schedule in addition to the current day. Even when **Before date** is selected, if a long-term schedule includes the day before, all days of the schedule after the selected date are also deleted.

Example Deleting the schedule from the day view screen

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

2

3 to

- When **One day** or **Before date** is selected if the long-term schedule including the selected date is registered, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the long-term schedule too.

■ To delete all: ▶ Enter terminal security code

- If you delete the schedules without setting to Secret Mode, schedules with Secret Attribute set will not be deleted.

4 Select Yes

INFORMATION

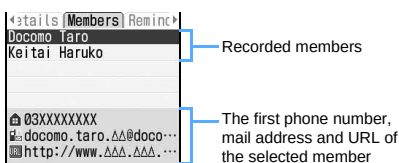
- On the calendar screen, press , select **Delete** and then select **One day**, **Before date** or **Delete all**.
- On the details screen, press and select **Delete entry**.

Using member lists

Make calls, PushTalk calls or compose i-mode Mail by selecting a member from the member list recorded in a schedule. Site display is also available from the registered URL in the phonebook data of the member.

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

2 Select the schedule to use to display the member list screen



- For members with Secret Attribute set, the name and detail information are masked with “*” unless Secret Mode is set. When Privacy Mode is activated (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), the name and detail information of all members are also masked with “*”.

3 Use the Phonebook data

■ Making a voice/videophone call: Highlight a member for a voice call, or for a videophone call

- You can make a call or a PushTalk call by setting the conditions. 

■ Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight a member

The selected mail address of the member is set for the receiver and the schedule is saved in the message in the Date To format.

- Press    to send i-mode Mail to all the members.

■ Displaying a site: Highlight a member



INFORMATION

- To use the second or subsequent phone number and mail address registered in the phonebook data, select a member from the member list screen to display the phonebook details screen. You can make a call, PushTalk call or compose i-mode Mail by highlighting the phone number or mail address. Note that, if i-mode Mail is composed from the phonebook details screen, the schedule is not entered in the message and the Date To function cannot be used.
- When you press  on the member list screen, or open FOMA terminal if *Schedule* is set to *ON* in Edit by Slide, the member selection screen appears enabling you to add or delete members.

Protecting secret schedules

Secret Attribute

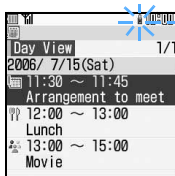
Once Secret Attribute is set, data can be displayed only in Secret Mode.

- Secret Attribute cannot be set when Secret Mode is not set.

1 Activate Secret Mode

2 (for over a second) on the standby display Select the date of the schedule

3 Highlight the schedule to set Press



 blinks when Secret Attribute is set for the selected schedule.

- To cancel: Highlight the schedule with Secret Attribute set  
- To set or cancel on the schedule details screen, press  .

INFORMATION

- The alarm or alarm in advance of the schedule to which Secret Attribute is set cannot be displayed if Secret Mode is not set.
- Secret Attribute is automatically set for schedules made while Secret Mode is on.

Checking the number of registered schedule items

Check No. of Items

1 Hold down for over a second



INFORMATION

- The number of registered items includes the one that is set by Secret Attribute.

Menu 8222

Registering often-used functions

Custom Menu

In addition to the normal menu displayed by default by pressing , you can create your original menu (Custom Menu) by registering the functions you often use and the phonebook data of the person you frequently reach. It allows quick access and making a call easily.

Reading a template

- The 4 types of preset templates are provided.
- When a template is read, all custom menu items are replaced.
- After reading a template, you can add, delete or replace menu items.

1

- When **Custom** is set for **Default MENU** of Menu Setting, press  on the standby display.

2 to

Standard :

Alarm Clock, Dictionaries, Speed Selector Setting, Receive Display, Style Theme, Open Answer, Edit by Slide, Change Security Code, Caller ID Notification

Data/Security :

My Picture, i-motion, My Document, Privacy Mode Setting, Key Lock Setting, IC card list, IC Card Lock, IC Card Lock Setting, Only View

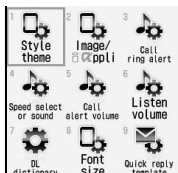
User-data related :

Bookmark, Screen Memo, Phonebook Search, Scheduler, Alarm Clock, Notepad, Save Word, Save Phrase, miniSD card

Customize :

Style Theme, Standby Display Setting, Call Ring Alert, Speed Selector Sound, Call Alert Volume, Listen Volume, Download Dictionary, Font Size Setting, Quick Reply Template

3 Enter the terminal security code Select Yes



A template is read and set in the custom menu.

- When all menu items in the custom menu have been deleted, the template is read after the terminal security code is entered.

Creating the custom menu

Use the template to create your custom menu.

- Up to 9 menu items can be registered in a single level of Custom Menu.

1 Read a template sample

- When you newly register all menu items, delete all the existing items in the custom menu before adding new items. To delete all P379

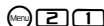
2 Add menu items

- 9 menu items have already been registered in the template.

- When you attempt to overwrite a group, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite. Selecting **Yes** deletes all menu items in the group.

■ Registering people:

① Highlight a menu item to overwrite



- To add an item:   

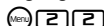
② Select the person to register



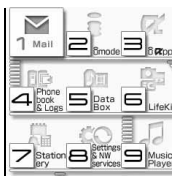
- When the phonebook data with no image or the phonebook data that contains Flash movie or video/i-motion is registered in the custom menu, a pre-registered icon is displayed on the menu screen.

■ Registering functions:

① Highlight a menu item to overwrite

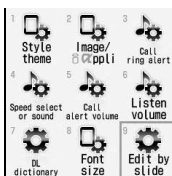


- To add an item:   



- The screen for selecting functions is displayed in the format of the normal menu set in Menu Setting (the sample screen is in the tile display format). However, when the normal menu is set to **Animation**, the list is displayed.

② Highlight the menu item to register



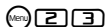
Edit by slide is stored

- A menu item without submenus that does not have a lower level can be registered by pressing a key corresponding to the item number or by selecting the menu item.

■ Registering groups:

Create group folders to save phonebook entries and functions grouped by purpose.

① Highlight a menu item to overwrite ►



- To add an item:

② Enter a group name (up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters) ►

■ Registering in a group:

① Select a group

- When items are already registered in the group, the menu items in the group are displayed. Highlight an item to overwrite or add a new item.

② Select Phonebook entry, Function or Group ► Enter an item

- The item is added to the group and all the menu items in that group are displayed.
- On the third level menu, you cannot create a group.

③ Add other menu items

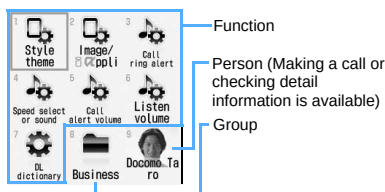
Using the custom menu

You can execute functions registered in the custom menu, and also make a call to a person registered in it.

1

- When *Custom* is set for *Default MENU* of Menu Setting, press on the standby display.

2 Select the menu item



- To select a function or person from a group: Select the group ► Select the functions and people in the group

■ Executing a function: Select the function

- When the submenu exists for the selected function, the submenu items are displayed.

■ Making a call: Highlight the person ► for a voice call, or for a videophone call

- When two or more phone numbers are registered, select a phone number.

- When selecting a person and pressing , you can make a call or a PushTalk call by setting the conditions. ●P58

If you have two or more phone numbers, select a person and then press . When selecting a phone number that you use, the handling can be made similarly.

■ Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight the person ►

- When two or more mail addresses are stored, highlight a mail address and press or . When no mail address has been stored, the receiver field is left blank.

■ Composing SMS: Highlight the person ► (for over a second)

- When two or more phone numbers are stored, highlight a phone number and press or . When no phone number has been stored, the receiver field is left blank.

To execute registered functions quickly

A function registered in the first level of the custom menu can be started by holding down the corresponding dial key (to) for over a second on the standby display. However, when the menu item is a person or group or a menu that has submenus, the function is not activated.

INFORMATION

- Shortcut operations are also available while the custom menu is displayed. Shortcut operations depend on the setting of custom menu shortcut of Menu Setting.
- If Secret Attribute is set for a person in the phonebook, the name of the person is displayed as “* * *” unless Secret Mode is set. is displayed.
- Persons cannot be selected when PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*). The icon changes to and the name of the person is displayed as “* * *”.
- When Secret Attribute is set together with PIM Lock (or Privacy Mode when Phonebook & Logs are set to *Authorized access*), the phone operations and icon display are the same as for PIM Lock (or Privacy Mode).

Editing the custom menu

On the custom menu you can rearrange or delete menu items or change icon design and group names.

1

- When *Custom* is set for *Default MENU* of Menu Setting, press on the standby display.

2 Highlight a menu item ▶ Perform each operation

- To edit menu items in a group: Select a group ▶ Perform the individual operation
- Replacing menu items:** (Menu) **[4]** ▶ **Select the destination item** ▶ **Select Yes**
- Changing icons:** (Menu) **[5]** ▶ **Select an icon**
 - To restore the icon: (Menu) **[5]** ▶ (□)
- Changing group names:** (Menu) **[6]** ▶ **Enter the group name** ▶ (□)
- Deleting menu items:** (Menu) **[3]** ▶ **Select Yes**
 - When the group is deleted, menu items in the group are also deleted.

Deleting all items in the custom menu

Delete all the menu items in the custom menu. This operation is performed to create a new custom menu.

- (Menu) (□)
 - When **Custom** is set for **Default MENU** of Menu Setting, press (Menu) on the standby display.
- (Menu) **[7]** **[2]** ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Select Yes**
 - Pressing (□) displays the item selection screen.

Menu 48

Registering your own name and mail address

Own Number

Default My phone number: subscribed phone number
Other than that: not recorded

- (Menu) (□)

Own number
Name
My phone number
090XXXXXXXX
Mail address

- My phone number** shows the phone number of the UIM inserted in FOMA terminal.

2 (□)

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select each item to set

Edit own number	1/2
[Name]	
[Reading]	
[Select/Shoot image]	
090XXXXXXXX	
[Phone number]	
[Mail address]	
[Birthday]	
[Note]	
[Postal Code/Address]	
[Company name]	

- Press (◀▶) to switch pages.

- The setting procedure for each item is the same as Step 3 of "Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook". ➡P108
Note that phonebook No. and groups cannot be set.
- The subscribing terminal phone number (**My phone number**) is displayed in the first phone number location. It cannot be changed.

4 Press (□)

INFORMATION

- Changing the mail address in Own Number does not change your i-mode Mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode Mail address does not change the mail address in Own Number. For details on how to check and change an i-mode Mail address, refer to "i-mode User's Manual".
- Your phone number (**My phone number**) is registered in the UIM. If you enter other items, they will be registered on FOMA terminal.

Displaying Own Number details

1 (Menu) (□)

2 (□) ▶ Enter the terminal security code

Own info	
Keitai Ha...	
Keitai Han...	
Mobile phone	
090XXXXXXXX	

- Each time you press (◀▶), the screen changed in the following order: **Ph num1 to 5** → **Adrs1 to 5** → **Birthday** → **Note** → **Postal Code/Address** → **Company name** → **Job Title** → **URL**. When pressing (◀▶), this sequence is switched reversely.

- If Caller ID Setting is enabled for registered phone numbers,  appears next to the title.
- On the submenu of the Own Number details screen, the following operations can be performed as with the details screen for the phonebook:
 - Mail/URL access  P113
 - Call Option (excluding making calls to Own Number)  P58
 - Copy items  P119
 - Caller ID Setting  P121
 - Videophone Rate Setting  P122
 - Mail address exchange  P119
 - User information  P117
 - View Preference  P118

■ **Editing registered data:**    **Edit registered data and press** 

■ **Resetting registered data:**    **Select Yes**

Recording the voice and image

Voice Memo/Movie Memo

Your voice can be recorded in standby as talking note (Standby Voice Memo) or the other party's voice and image can be recorded during a voice or videophone call (Talking Voice Memo/Movie Memo).

- Talking Voice Memo and Standby Voice Memo/Movie Memo can be recorded up to 30 seconds long for each message and up to 4 messages in total.
- Movie Memo can be recorded for up to 30 seconds per message.
- The recorded voice or image of Talking Voice Memo or Movie Memo may be disrupted if the signal conditions are poor.
- Guidance messages such as out-of-service area notice or number change information cannot be recorded.

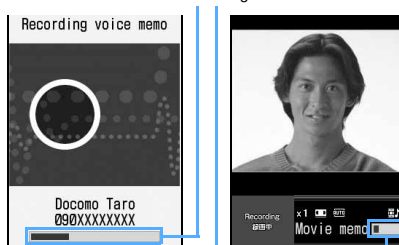
Recording voice or image of the other party while talking

Only the voice of the other party is recorded during a voice call. During a videophone call, the voice and image of the other party is recorded.

1 Hold down for over a second during a call

Recording starts.

An indication of the allowable recording time



Voice Memo during a voice call

Movie Memo during a videophone call

- While recording Movie Memo, image with **Recording 録画中** is sent to the other party.
- Each time you press  while recording Movie Memo, indication is switched between the allowable recording time and the call duration.
- When the remaining time reaches 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of message recording is approaching. A long beep is also heard at the end of the recording (this sound is not heard at the beginning of the recording). However, these beeps are not recorded.
- To stop recording:  (for over a second)
- Movie memos are saved in the **Camera** folder of **i-motion**.
How to replay the movie memos or i-motion  P320
- Action when you close your FOMA terminal while recording a talking voice/movie memo  P65

Menu 473

Recording your own voice during standby

1 Press

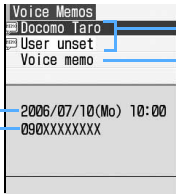
After about 3 seconds, a beep is heard and recording starts.

- When the remaining time becomes 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching. A long beep is heard at the end of the recording. This beep is not recorded.
- To cancel recording: , , or 

Playing voice memos

1

The voice memo list shows both talking and standby voice memos.



- Talking Voice Memo
 - The phone number, the name (When the phone number is saved in the phonebook) or the reason for no caller ID.
- Standby Voice Memo

Phone number of the other party (**Voice memo** is displayed for Standby Voice Memo)
Date and time of recording (If the date and time have not been set, no date and time are recorded)

2 Select a voice memo



The voice memo is played.

- To stop playback: 
- To adjust the volume: 
- To switch between on and off of speakerphone: 

An indication of the playing time

3 Select Yes or No

- When you select **Yes**, the voice memo you have heard is deleted.

■ Deleting a voice memo from the voice memo list: Highlight the voice memo ►

  **Select Yes**

To delete all:   **Select Yes**

■ Saving phone number in the phonebook from the voice memo list:

① Highlight a talking voice memo to save

►  

To add the number to the registered phonebook data: Highlight a talking voice memo to save ►  

②   **Save the name and mail address** ►P107, P110

To add the data to the registered phonebook data:   **Select a party** ► Edit phonebook entries ►P118

INFORMATION

- Maintain the contents of voice/movie memos in some other form (e.g. written copy). Recorded data may be lost due to failure, repair, change to new model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- You can make calls by using Talking Voice Memo. Highlight a party in the voice memo list and press  to make a voice call and  to make a videophone call. From the submenu **Call option**, you can specify several conditions and make a call. However, you cannot make a PushTalk call. ►P58

Checking the call duration and the call cost

Call Duration/Call Cost

The call duration and the call cost of the last and total of voice/videophone call can be checked.

- The duration includes the voice call, videophone call and 64K data communication, and the both of incoming and outgoing are counted for each.
- The call cost data is counted only for outgoing. However, when calling the toll-free party or the directory assistance service (104), "0 YEN" or "***** YEN" is displayed.
- The call cost is stored in the UIM, so stored total cost is displayed (starting from December in 2004) when using the current UIM to FOMA terminal you newly purchased.
 - For FOMA terminals released before 901i series, call cost data is stored in the UIM, but cannot be displayed.
- The displayed call duration and call cost can be reset.
- The displayed call duration and call cost are estimates and may be different from the actual. Note that the call cost does not include consumption tax.

Checking the call duration

1 Press

- If the total duration of calls was reset in the past, the duration of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Last call :

The duration of the last voice/videophone call or of the last data communication

Total voice calls :

The total duration of voice calls made

Total videophone calls :

The total duration of videophone calls made

Total data sessions :

The total duration of data communication established

Reset:day&time(Voice) :

The last date and time when **Total voice calls** was reset

Reset:day&time(VP) :

The last date and time when **Total videophone calls** was reset

Reset:day&time(Data) :

The last date and time when **Total data sessions** was reset

■ Resetting the total calls duration:

- ① Press  on **Call Duration screen** ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**
- ②  to  ▶ **Select Yes**
 - To return to the call duration screen: 

Checking the call cost

1 Press

- If the total cost of calls was reset in the past, the cost of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Last call cost: Voice :

The cost of the last voice call

Last call cost: VP :

The cost of the last videophone call

Last call cost: Data :

The cost of the last data communication

Total calls cost :

The total cost of voice/videophone call and data communication

Reset: day & time :

The last date and time when **Total calls cost** was reset

■ Resetting the total call cost: on **Call Cost screen** ▶ **Enter PIN2 code** ▶ **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

- The fee for sending Chaku-moji is not included.
- No last charge information appears as "***** YEN".
- When you switch from the voice call to the videophone during a call, the last call cost shows the total amount of them. During the operation to switch, no call cost is required.
- When the last or total duration of voice/videophone call or data communication exceeds 9,999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting is restarted from 0 second.

- When FOMA terminal is turned off, the last call duration is stored, but the last call cost is displayed as "***** YEN".
- The duration of receiving a call and ringing time cannot be counted.
- The call duration and call cost is not counted for i-mode communication, packet communication, and PushTalk communication. For details of those usage fees, see "i-mode User's Manual" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

Resetting the call cost automatically

Reset Call Cost

Total call cost is set to zero automatically on the 1st day of each month.

 **Default** 

1

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶

- To cancel: 

3 Enter the PIN2 code

INFORMATION

- Even if the setting is **ON**, the setting is canceled when the UIM different from the one used during the setting is inserted and then turn the power on. It doesn't return to the previous setting even if the UIM used when setting it is inserted again.
- When the setting is **ON**, the call cost will be reset if you change the date and time to the next month in Date and Time Setting.
- When the setting is **ON**, if the terminal is not turned on or if you talking on the terminal at 0 o'clock of the first day of the month, a reset will take place when you turn the power on or end the call.
- If the setting is **ON**, the PIN2 code is required when you turn the power on.

Setting to notify the limit of call cost

Call Cost Limit

Set the maximum limit of call cost and, when the total call cost exceeds the set amount, it is notified with an alarm or icon.

- The amount shown in Call Cost Limit is only an estimate and should not be regarded as the actual amount for billing.

Default Alert: OFF

1     

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select and set each item

Alert :

Set whether to notify when the total call cost exceeds the set amount.

- If **OFF** is set, the items below cannot be set.

Limit :

Set the maximum amount of call cost (10 - 100,000 yen. 10 yen unit).

Alert method :

Select the alarm with icon, or the icon only.

Alert sound :

Select an alarm sound from the melody list when **Sound + icon display** is selected in **Alert method**.

- Playing and checking a melody ♣P129

Alert time :

Specify how many seconds alarm sound should ring (1 - 60 sec.). Available when **Sound + icon display** is selected in **Alert method**.

3 Press 

INFORMATION

- If the call cost exceeds the maximum limit while talking or during communication,  is displayed at the top of the display.
- When **Sound + icon display** is set for **Alert method**, the alarm sounds and message informing that the call cost exceeds the maximum limit is displayed on the standby display after a call/communication. In the general silent mode, a message appears but the alarm does not sound. In the personalized silent mode, the alarm sounds according to the ring alert volume set for Customize Silent Mode. If the call cost exceeds the limit during a call or communication at 00 o'clock the first day of the month when Reset Call Cost is set to **ON**, neither the alarm sounds nor the message.
- The alarm sounds at the volume set for the call alert volume.

- If any key is pressed or other function is started while an alarm is sounding, the alarm sound stops. If Key Lock is temporarily canceled, closing FOMA terminal also stops the alarm.
- Even if the UIM is replaced after Call Cost Limit is set to **ON**, the setting is stored.

Removing the icon of alert

Hide Call Cost Icon

1      ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select Yes

Using Calculator

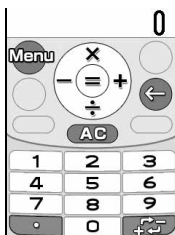
Calculator

You can perform addition, subtraction, multiplication and division (+, -, ×, ÷) on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 8 digits can be entered.
- You can use Calculator from the entry fields for schedules and notes, and paste the result of a calculation into the entry field of the original screen. ♣P409

1   

2 Make a calculation



Calculate using the dial keys ( to ) and  (+, -, ×, ÷).

- To delete the last digit entered: 
- To enter a decimal point: 
- To switch the displayed value between the positive and negative: 

3 Press 

The calculation result is displayed.

- Pressing  deletes the calculation result.

■ Copying the calculation result:

- To paste the copied value:  
- Only one number can be saved. Copying a new number overwrites the saved number. The copied number is saved until FOMA terminal is turned off.

- A copied number can be pasted in the entry field of notes, the mail composition screen, etc. any number of times. You can also copy up to the first 8 one-byte digits of a number in the entry field of notes, the mail composition screen, etc. and paste them on the calculator screen.
- You cannot enter additional digits after the number pasted on the calculator.

INFORMATION

- An error is generated and "E" is displayed when division by 0 is attempted or the integral part of the calculation result exceeds 8 digits. To cancel, press **[AC/ON]**. When the number including a decimal point exceeds 8 digits, any decimals that do not fit in the display are rounded up or rounded down.

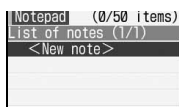
Composing notes

Notepad

- Notes can be recorded up to 50 items.

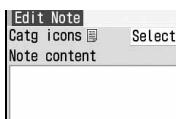
1 **[Menu]** **[7]** **[2]**

2 **Select <New note>**



- When **Notepad** is set to **ON** in Edit by Slide, highlighting **<New note>** and opening FOMA terminal displays the notepad edit screen.

3 **Enter the note data in Note content field (up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters)**

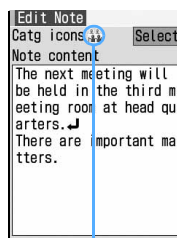


- **Inputting values calculated with Calculator:** **[Menu]** **[4]** **[5]** in the character entry screen ► **Make a calculation** ► **[OK]**

4 **Select *Select* in Catg icons field ► Select an icon**



Name of category icon



Selected icon

5 **Press [F2]**

- Notes without any content cannot be recorded.

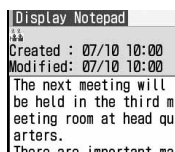
INFORMATION

- Maintain the contents of notes in some other form (e.g. written copy). Notes can be saved using the miniSD memory card (P336). Data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) can be used to send and save the data to the PC.

Checking notes

1 **[Menu]** **[7]** **[2]**

2 **Select a note to check**



- If the note data contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.
- Pressing **[F2]** allows you to edit the note.
- The creation date and time and last edit date and time of a note are automatically registered in **Created** and **Modified** respectively.
- When **Notepad** is set to **ON** in Edit by Slide, open FOMA terminal to display the notepad edit screen.

- **Deleting the note:** **[Menu]** **[1]** ► **Select Yes**

- **Composing mail from the note:** **[Menu]** **[2]**

INFORMATION

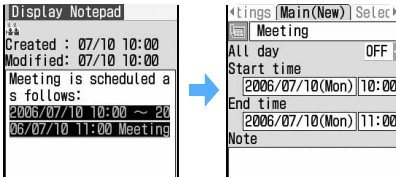
- To delete 1 note from the notepad list screen, highlight the note to delete, press **[Menu]**, and select **Delete note**. To delete all items, press **[Menu]**, select **Delete all** and enter the terminal security code.
- To compose mail from the notepad list screen, highlight the note to use for message text, press **[Menu]** and select **Compose message**.

Saving schedules from notes

Date To

The text of the Date To format in the note can be added to Scheduler as a schedule only by selecting it. When a message text contains a Date To format description, for example, copy the text to Notepad and select the Date To format string. This will add a new schedule to Scheduler.

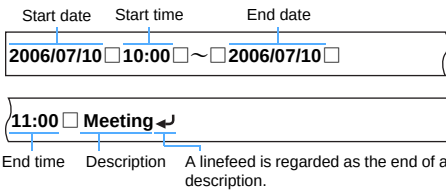
- 1 **[Menu]** **[7]** **[2]** ▶ Select the note written in Date To format
- 2 Select the description written in Date To format ▶ Save it as schedule



Date To format

Date To is effective when the entry of note has a string in the format below. All items are requisite.

Example



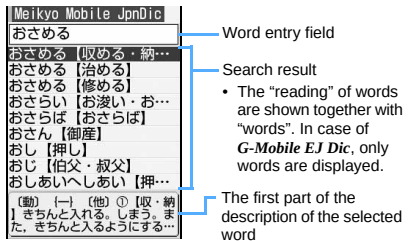
- □ represents half-sized space. It is not actually displayed.
- Only one-byte characters can be used for date and time. The description can contain up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters. Any character exceeding the maximum number is deleted.
- The year is based on the Christian era and the time is in the 24-hour format. For a month and day from 1 to 9 or an hour and minute from 0 to 9, the preceding 0 can be omitted.

Using electronic dictionaries

- The following electronic dictionaries are stored:
 - Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary
 - G-Mobile Japanese-English Dictionary
 - G-Mobile English-Japanese Dictionary
- You can select a word to search for from the search record (a list of words previously searched for). Up to 20 words can be saved in the search record. When you search for more than 20 words, the words exceeding this number will overwrite older words.
- For legends, see 辞典機能 (Dictionaries) stored in the **Preinstalled** folder of My Document. ▶ P354

Example Looking up “修める (cultivate)” in **Meikyo Mobile JpnDic**

- 1 **[Menu]** **[7]** **[5]**
 - 2 Select **Meikyo Mobile JpnDic**
 - 3 Select the entry field ▶ enter “おさめる”
- The search result is displayed.



- Up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters can be entered.
- To enter another word to search for while highlighting a word from the search result, press **[Enter]**.
- A long word may be shown incompletely due to layout limitation.
- Some words may not be searched for correctly.

■ Searching using Search record:

① **[Menu]** **[1]**

② Select a word



- If there are more than one page in the search record, you can change pages with **[Left Arrow]**.
- To delete one word: Highlight a word ▶ **[Menu]** **[1]** ▶ Select **Yes**
- To delete two or more words: **[Menu]** **[2]** ▶ Select a word ▶ **[Enter]** ▶ Select **Yes**

Next

385

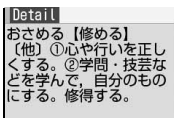
- To delete all words: Enter the terminal security code Select Yes

- **Searching other dictionaries:** Select another dictionary Search

4 Select “おさめる【修める】”

- To change pages, press .

5 Check detail information



- To return to the search screen:
- To show the detail information of the previous and next words:

■ Copying:

①

② Select a start position of the copying range Select an end position

- Press to select all the text.
- Press to cancel the start position for selecting a new position.
- After specifying the start position, pressing or moves the cursor to the beginning or end of the text.

INFORMATION

- To search another dictionary in the detail screen, press and select **Search other dict.**

Using the earphone/microphone set with switch

Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch

By connecting the optional flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (including the stereo earphone set with flat switch) to the earphone/microphone jack, it is possible to make or receive calls simply by pressing the switch. Alternatively, the switch can be used for operating Music Player.

- It is not possible to make a videophone call or PushTalk call by pressing the switch of the flat type earphone/microphone set.
- Use the earphone jack converter adapter P001 (optional) for the existing earphone/microphone.

Connecting the earphone/microphone set with switch

To connect the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch to FOMA terminal, open the cover of the earphone/microphone jack and insert the connection plug of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch.

- Do not wrap the cord of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch around FOMA terminal. Reception level of radio waves may deteriorate.
- When the cord of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch nears the antenna, a noise may be emitted.
- Insert the plug firmly. If it is not inserted completely, there may be audio disruption.

Making voice calls by pressing the switch

By registering a phone number to the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Key Control, it is possible to make a voice call to that number only by pressing the switch on the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch.

- To make a call using a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch, **Control function** must be set to **Headset quick-dial** in Headset Key Control.

1 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear 2 short beeps

A voice call will be made to the first registered phone number of the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Key Control.

- If more than one phone number has been registered, the first phone number will be dialed.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end a call

INFORMATION

- If Secret Attribute has been set for the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Key Control, Secret Mode must be activated before operating.
- Even if Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you cannot make another call during a call by entering the number of a third party and pressing the switch. Be aware that pressing the switch will terminate the first call.
- While transferring or copying data between FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card, you cannot make calls by pressing the switch.

Receiving calls by pressing the switch

1 When an incoming call is received, hold down the switch for over a second until you hear 2 short beeps

- The ring tone is emitted from the point set by Alert Preference.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end a call

INFORMATION

- When you receive a videophone call, your self image will be sent.
- Operations when FOMA terminal is closed during a call made with a flat type earphone/microphone with switch connected ●P65
- When Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you can receive a voice call during a call by holding down the switch for over a second.

Setting the earphone/microphone switch operation

Headset Key Control

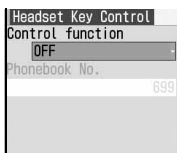
Set the number you call using a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch by selecting the phonebook No. of FOMA terminal. You can also set the headset switch such that it activates Music Player when held down for over a second.

- Operation of Music Player ●P362

Default OFF

1

2 Select Control function field



- To activate Music Player:  ► Go to Step 5
- To cancel:  ► Go to Step 5

3 Select Phonebook No. field

4 Select the receiver

5 Press

INFORMATION

- When the phonebook data of the Phonebook No. set by this function is deleted or overwritten in other data, or the Phonebook No. is changed, this setting is canceled.

Answering a call automatically with the earphone/microphone connected

Auto Answer

When using a flat type earphone/microphone with switch, this sets whether to receive an incoming call automatically.

When a voice or videophone call is automatically received, the voice of the other party is heard from the connected earphone/microphone.

- If an incoming call is received during another call, this function is not activated.
- This function does not work in Public mode (Driving mode).
- Receiving PushTalk call automatically ●P103

Default OFF

1

2 Select Auto answering field

- To cancel:  ► Go to Step 4

3 Select Delayed time(Sec) field ► Enter the time (0 to 120 sec) before answering automatically

4 Press

INFORMATION

- When a videophone call has been answered by Auto Answer, the substitute image set in Image Setting is sent and a videophone call is automatically started.
- When this function and Answer Machine, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service are set simultaneously, the set ringing time determines which function will be used.
- The same time period cannot be set for both the delayed time of Auto Answer and the response time of Answer Machine.
- When the setting of *Delayed time(Sec)* is within the time set by Mute Ring Time Setting, Auto Answer does not answer a call coming from a party not saved in the phonebook.

Hearing the ring tone only through the earphone

Alert Preference

When connecting a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch, you can set to hear the ring tone only through the earphone.

Default Headset + speaker

1     

2 Press 

- To hear the ring tone both through the earphone and the speaker: 

INFORMATION

- When a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch is not connected, the ring tone sounds through the speaker regardless of this setting.
- Even when you set to **Headset only**, you will also hear the ring tone through the speaker when 20 seconds pass without answering a call or PushTalk call.

Determining a service provider

NW Search Method

This function allows you to select a FOMA service provider. Select whether to set the service provider manually or using automatic search. Determine a service provider when you select **Manual select**.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

Default Auto select NW

1    

2 Select each item to set

Search method :

- Sets how to retrieve a network.
- If you select **Auto select NW**, you cannot set **Manual select**.

Manual select :

- Determines a service provider.
- A service provider other than DoCoMo cannot be selected for manual selection (as of May 2006).

3 Press 

Reducing the start-up time after power-on

Quick Start-up

Default ON

1    

2 Press 

- To cancel: 

INFORMATION

- Even when you set to **ON**, it takes the normal time to start up in the following cases.
 - When the remaining battery level is 2 or lower
 - When the battery pack is replaced
 - When 24 hours passes after the power was turned off
- It may also take the normal time to start up after you turn the power off with any other screen than the standby display or while  is being displayed after power-on.

Checking current settings of functions

Confirm Settings

- During PIM Lock, the specific setting of the item being locked is displayed as "---".

1    

2  to confirm the settings

Confirm Settings	
*sh Sound/Vibrator Di	
Listen Volume	Level4
Call Alert Volume	Level4
Mail/Msg Alert Volume	Level4
Alarm Sound Volume	Level4
Reminder Volume	Level4
Effect Sound Volume	Level4
Set sound: phone	Level4

- Press  to switch between pages.

Resetting functions

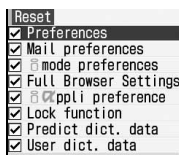
Reset

This resets functions to their default settings.

- For the functions to be returned to the default settings by resetting, see “Menu list”. The following functions and data, though not mentioned in “Menu list”, are also reset to the default settings:
 - When basic settings are selected:
 - Silent mode, Public mode (Driving mode), Call cost icon, History of face marks, History of symbols and pictograms
 - When Full Browser is selected:
 - Cookie information, Pointer mode, View position setting, Search setting
 - When predictive text data is selected:
 - Data recorded using the input prediction function

1    

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select the item



3  ▶ Select Yes

INFORMATION

- If you reset i-mode Setting, i-channel information will not be displayed in a ticker in the standby display. When this happens, if the i-channel information is automatically updated or if you press  to display the channel list, the latest information is received and you can display it in a ticker on the standby display.

Deleting registered data collectively

Delete All Data

Deletes the saved data and returns the settings of the functions to the default.

- Protected data are also deleted.
- Delete All Data should be done with battery fully charged. If the battery power is not enough, the data may not be deleted collectively.
- The following data preinstalled by default are deleted:
 - i-appli other than 電子マネー「Edy」、ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」 and 「DCMX」クレジットアプリ
 - Chara-den
 - Images in *Deco-Mail picture* and *Item* folders in Data Box
- The following data saved or registered are deleted:
 - Chaku-moji message (including sent message log)
 - Mail template • Mail group • Bookmark
 - Entered URL • URL history • Screen memo
 - Last visited URL
 - i-channel (Received info)
 - i-appli • i-appli display history
 - Phonebook data (including the PushTalk phonebook)
 - Phonebook communication log of Data Security Service
 - Received call history
 - Redial data • Voice memo
 - Data read by Bar Code Reader
 - ToruCa • Notepad • Call duration
 - Saved word/fixed phrase
 - Registered USSD
 - Recorded answering message
 - Own Number data (except for *My phone number*)
 - Search record of dictionaries
 - Created folders/albums
 - Message R/F • i-mode Mail
 - Chat mail • SMS message
 - Recorded message (including the greeting)
 - Data in folders other than the *Preinstalled* and *Mail attach melody* folders in Data Box
 - Downloaded dictionaries
 - Schedule
 - Sound data with IC Card Lock on

- The functions to be returned to the default by Reset*1 and the following functions return to the default:
 - Sort Criteria
 - Answer Machine
 - Settings made in the chat mail screen
 - Camera
 - Movie Camera
 - Sound Recorder
 - Terminal security code
 - Privacy Mode Setting
 - Data and Time Setting
 - External Device setting
 - Reset call cost
 - Arrival call act
 - Menu Setting
 - Changed folder name
 - Custom Menu
 - i-mode Shortcut for bookmark
 - Settings made in the i-α ppli software list screen
 - Settings made in the phonebook screen
 - **Sync setting** of Data Center
 - Settings made with Scheduler
 - Operation settings of *Image/i-motion/Melody/Chara-den/My Document*
 - Data exchange settings by infrared communication
 - Player setting of Music Player
 - Alarm
 - Update of software (Reserved update)
- *1 SMS settings other than **SMS report request** and the settings in Certificate Setting other than CA Certificate 1 to 9 will not return to the default.

1 ► Enter the terminal security code ► Select Yes

Data are deleted collectively during restart.

INFORMATION

- The following data will not be deleted. The default settings cannot be restored either.
 - Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-α ppli and related data
 - The data saved, registered or set in the UIM or the miniSD memory card
 - Data communication setting set via a PC
- If there are the data of large capacity, about 1 minute may be required to restart. Be careful not to turn off the power before completing the operation.
- If you perform Delete All Data, i-channel information will not be displayed in a ticker in the standby display. If the i-channel information is automatically updated or if you press  to display the channel list, the latest information is received and you can display it in a ticker on the standby display.
- If the data or i-α ppli preinstalled by default are deleted, they can be downloaded from i-mode site "My D-style" (☛P426). Packet communication fee is required separately to download.

Network Services

Network services available using FOMA terminal	Network Service	392
Using Voice Mail Service	Voice Mail	392
Using Call Waiting Service	Call Waiting	393
Using Call Forwarding Service	Call Forwarding	394
Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Nuisance Call Blocking	394
Using Caller ID Request Service	Caller ID Request	395
Using Dual Network Service	Dual Network	395
Switching languages for the guidance	English Guidance	395
Using Service Dialing Number	Service Dialing Number	396
Setting actions to receive incoming calls during a call		396
Setting Remote Control	Remote Control	396
Using Multi Number	Multi Number	397
Registering new network services	Added Service (Register USSD)	398

In this manual, the description of each network service is explained by the operation procedure using the menu of FOMA terminal. For details, see “Network Services User’s Guide”. For Multi Number, see “Multi Number User’s Guide”.

Network services available using FOMA terminal

Network Service

This manual shows an only overview of each network service.

Service	Application	Monthly fee	Page
Voice Mail Service	Required	Charged	P392
Call Waiting Service	Required	Charged	P393
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free	P394
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Required	Free	P394
Caller ID Request Service	Not required	Free	P395
Dual Network Service	Required	Charged	P395
English Guidance Service	Not required	Free	P395
Multi Number	Required	Charged	P397
Public mode (Driving mode)	Not required	Free	P73
Public mode (power off)	Not required	Free	P74

- In this manual, the description of each network service is explained by the operation procedure using the menu of FOMA terminal. For details, see "Network Services User's Guide". For Multi Number, see "Multi Number User's Guide".
- When new network services are provided by DoCoMo, you can register them in the menu. P398

Using Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail

Voice Mail Service stores voice messages when you are in an area where there is no signal, turn off your terminal, or cannot answer a call (as of May 2006, Voice Mail Service on the videophone has not been provided yet).

- Unanswered calls are transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center. The incoming voice messages are notified by the icon indicated on the standby display.
- Voice messages are saved for 72 hours.

- When Voice Mail Service is activated, ring tone sounds to alert you to incoming calls. You can receive the call while the ring alert sounds. The ring alert duration (ringing time) can be changed. Note that if you set the ringing time to 0 second, the received call history will not be recorded.
- You can forward incoming voice calls and videophone calls to the Voice Mail Service Center manually. P64, P84

Basic flow of Voice Mail Service

- Step 1** : Activate the service
- Step 2** : The caller records a voice message
- Step 3** : Play back the voice message

Operation procedure

1

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	▶ Select Yes ▶ Select Yes ▶ Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)
Set ring time	▶ Select Yes ▶ Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)
Deactivate	▶ Select Yes
Check setting	▶ Select Yes
Play messages	When a new voice message arrives, (with the number of messages) is displayed on the standby display. ▶ Select Yes ▶ Follow the voice prompts
Voice Mail setting	▶ Select Yes ▶ Follow the voice prompts
Check messages	▶ Select Yes When a new voice message arrives, (with the number of messages) is displayed on the standby display.
Tone/Vibration message notification	You can set an alert tone to sound when the caller left a new voice message, or when the number of voice messages has increased at the time you perform Check messages . Default Voice Mail alert: ON Notification melody: メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B) ▶ Select Voice Mail alert field ▶ • To disable the alert tone: ▶ Go to Step ④ Select Notification melody field ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a melody Press

Item	Operation procedure
Notify missed call; Activate	When FOMA terminal is turned on or within the service area, this function notifies you of the calls received with FOMA terminal turned off or outside the service area using SMS. 3 1 ▶ Select Yes ▶ Select Yes/No Yes: Notifies only the incoming calls with caller ID. No: Notifies all incoming calls.
Notify missed call; Deactivate	3 2 ▶ Select Yes
Notify missed call; Check setting	3 3 ▶ Select Yes
Hide Voice Mail icon	4 ▶ Select Yes The icon that indicates the number of voice messages disappears.

INFORMATION

- From the screen of **Check setting**, you can change the setting by the submenu.
 - 1**: Activate Voice Mail Service
 - 2**: Deactivate Voice Mail Service
 - 3**: Set the ringing time of Voice Mail Service
 - New voice messages can be played quickly from the standby display. P37
 - The number of messages displayed shows the number of new voice messages provided by guidance when the messages are played, which does not include the number of saved voice messages.
 - Dial 1412 to use Voice Mail Service on the videophone.*1
 - The 32K videophone call is not supported by Voice Mail Service.
 - When connecting to the Voice Mail Service Center during Chara-den, switch to Send DTMF by selecting from the submenu to operate this service.*1 P83
 - When a new message is kept by videophone call, you are informed it by SMS.*1
- *1 As of May 2006, this service has not been provided yet.

Using Call Waiting Service

Call Waiting

When a third party calls you while you are on the phone, this service notifies you with the call waiting ring alert. This allows you to place your current call on hold and then answer the other call.

1 **8** **9** **2**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	1 ▶ Select Yes
Deactivate	2 ▶ Select Yes
Check setting	3 ▶ Select Yes

Putting the current call on hold to answer an incoming call:

- 1 during a call
- The current call is put on hold and the second call can be answered.
- Multi connecting** appears on the screen.
 - To switch the other parties:
 - You can put your current call on hold by pressing . Press again to release the hold.
 - To end the call on hold: **1** during Call Waiting (multi-connection)

2 Press when you finish talking to the other party

- The call is ended and the ring alert sounds.
- To resume talks with the other party on hold:

Answering an incoming call after finishing the current call

- 1 during a call
- A ring tone sounds to indicate there is an incoming call.

- 2 Press
- You can receive a new call.

Holding the current call and making another call

- 1 Enter the phone number during a call
- You can select the other party's phone number from the received call history by pressing , from the redial data by pressing , or from the phonebook by pressing instead of entering the phone number.
- 2
- Your current call is automatically put on hold and you can begin talking to the other party you called.
- Multi connecting** appears on the screen.
 - To switch the other parties:

- When **Hold** is displayed in the guide row, you can put your current call on hold by pressing . Press again to release the hold.
- To end the call on hold: **1** during Call Waiting (multi-connection)

3 Press when you finish talking to the other party you called

- The call is ended and the ring alert sounds.
- To resume talks with the other party on hold:

INFORMATION

- During multi-connection, you cannot receive another incoming call. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed calls on the received call history.

Using Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding

Call Forwarding Service automatically forwards incoming calls to your home or office when you are in an area where there is no signal, turn off your terminal, or cannot answer the call.

- When Call Forwarding Service is activated, ring tone sounds to alert you to incoming calls. You can receive the call while the ring alert sounds. The ring alert duration (ringing time) can be changed. Note that if you set the ringing time to 0 second, the received call history will not be recorded.
- You can forward incoming calls manually. P64

Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service

- Step 1** : Set the forwarding destination phone number
- Step 2** : Activate Call Forwarding Service
- Step 3** : Calls come in to your FOMA terminal
- Step 4** : Unanswered calls are automatically forwarded to the previously specified destination

Operation procedure

1 **8** **9** **3**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	1 ▶ Select Yes ▶ Select Yes ▶ Enter the forwarding destination phone number (up to 26 digits) ▶ ▶ Select Yes ▶ Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec) • Before selecting the entry field for a phone number, you can set the phone number from the phonebook by pressing , from the redial data by pressing , or from the received call history by pressing .
Deactivate	2 ▶ Select Yes
Register The Forwarding Number	3 ▶ Enter the forwarding destination number ▶ ▶ Select Yes
Setting if forwarding number busy	4 ▶ Select Yes • To cancel the setting: Select No
Check setting	5 ▶ Select Yes

Setting the guidance or not

1 **1** **4** **2** **9** ▶ Follow the voice prompts

Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service

Nuisance Call Blocking

You can set FOMA terminal to automatically reject nuisance calls. After registering a phone number of the nuisance caller, subsequent calls from the registered phone number are rejected, letting the caller hear the guidance informing it.

- When there is an incoming PushTalk call from a phone number registered in the nuisance call list, the guidance is not played and the call is disconnected.

1 **8** **9** **9** **4**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Register the caller	The phone number of the latest call response is registered in the nuisance call list. The phone numbers you did not answer such as missed calls cannot be registered. [1] ▶ Select Yes
Register selected No.	[2] ▶ Select Yes ▶ Enter the phone number to reject (up to 22 digits) ▶ [Ⓜ] ▶ Select Yes Before selecting the entry field for a phone number, you can set the phone number from the phonebook by pressing [Ⓜ], from the redial data by pressing [Ⓜ], or from the received call history by pressing [Ⓜ].
Delete all entries	[3] ▶ Select Yes
Delete last entry	The last registered phone number is deleted. [4] ▶ Select Yes
Check the number of entries	[5] ▶ Select Yes

Using Caller ID Request Service

Caller ID Request

For an incoming call without the caller ID, this service plays a guidance requesting the caller to notify the caller ID. This helps you to avoid troubles by nuisance calls, etc.

- When there is an incoming PushTalk call, the guidance is not played and the call is disconnected.

1 **[Menu] [8] [9] [6]**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	[1] ▶ Select Yes
Deactivate	[2] ▶ Select Yes
Check setting	[3] ▶ Select Yes

Using Dual Network Service

Dual Network

Allows you to use the mova terminal with the phone number of FOMA terminal. With this function, even in a location outside the FOMA service area, you can make or receive voice calls using the mova terminal if you are inside the mova service area.

- FOMA terminal and mova terminal cannot be used simultaneously.
- Perform operation to switch Dual Network Service from FOMA terminal or mova terminal which is not available.

Activating mova terminal

1 Dial "1540" on the mova terminal

2 Follow the voice prompts

Activating FOMA terminal

Switch Dual Network Service that is being used by the mova terminal to FOMA terminal.

1 **[Menu] [8] [9] [9] [6]**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Dual Network Switching	[1] ▶ Select Yes ▶ Enter the network security code
Check setting	[2] ▶ Select Yes

Switching languages for the guidance

English Guidance

This service allows you and other parties to hear guidances for network services in English, such as the guidance for making/receiving calls.

- Guidances in Japanese and English are provided.
- While the caller is using this service, the caller's settings will take priority over the receiver's.

1 **[Menu] [8] [9] [9] [5]**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Guidance setting	① ► Select Yes ② or Japanese: Sets the guidance for you to hear at the time of calling to Japanese. English: Sets the guidance for you to hear at the time of calling to English. ③ Select Yes ► to Japanese: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese. Japanese+English: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese followed by English. English+Japanese: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to English followed by Japanese.
Check setting	► Select Yes

Using Service Dialing Number

Service Dialing Number

Calls are made to the DoCoMo for Repairs or the DoCoMo for General Inquiries.

- The item numbers for the DoCoMo for Repairs and DoCoMo for General Inquiries may differ or not appear depending on the UIM types. ●P40

1

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
ドコモ故障問合せ (DoCoMo for Repairs)	► Select Yes A call is made to the DoCoMo for Repairs.
ドコモ総合案内・受付 (DoCoMo for General Inquiries)	► Select Yes A call is made to the DoCoMo Information Center.

Setting actions to receive incoming calls during a call

During a voice call or 64K data communication, you can use Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, etc. to handle an incoming call.

1

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Arrival call act Default Answer	Set how incoming calls are handled while talking. ► to Answer: You can respond an incoming call received during a call or 64K data communication, or forward it to the Voice Mail Service Center or to the forwarding destination registered in Call Forwarding Service. Voice Mail: Incoming calls received during a call or 64K data communication are handled by Voice Mail Service. Call Forwarding: Incoming calls received during a call or 64K data communication are forwarded. Call Rejection: Incoming calls received during a call or 64K data communication are rejected.
Set arrival act; Activate	Activate the response method selected by Arrival call act . ► Select Yes
Set arrival act; Deactivate	► Select Yes
Set arrival act; Check setting	► Select Yes

INFORMATION

- Even if **Arrival call act** is set to any of the above, calls will be recorded in the received call history.

Setting Remote Control

Remote Control

You can access such services as Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone general subscriber phones, payphones, or DoCoMo mobile phones.

1     

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	 ► Select Yes
Deactivate	 ► Select Yes
Check setting	 ► Select Yes

Using Multi Number

Multi Number

Up to 2 additional numbers (*Additional No1* and *Additional No2*) can be used besides *Basic Number*.

1     

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Set Multi Number	You can set a number for making calls by switching multi-numbers in this setting.  ►  to  ► Select Yes
Check setting	 ► Select Yes
Number Setting  Basic Number: 基本契約番号/ my phone number Additional No1: 付加番号 1 / Not recorded Additional No2: 付加番号 2 / Not recorded Multi number call: Disable	Set the phone number subscribed to Multi Number.   ► Select each item to set Name: Setting is available for each <i>Additional No1/Additional No2</i> (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters). For <i>Basic Number</i> , the name set in Own Number is displayed. Phone number: Set the subscribed phone number in <i>Additional No1/Additional No2</i> . Multi number call: If set to <i>Enable</i> , you can make a call by selecting the number to be notified to the receiver in Call Option.  Press 
Incoming calls melody setting  OFF	Set the ring alert etc. for each additional number.   ►  or  ► Select each item to set Individual setting: Select whether to set the incoming call setting individually. • When <i>OFF</i> is set, the following items cannot be set. Ring alert, Show image: Setting procedure ► P70  Press 

Making calls by selecting the number to notify the other party

When making a call, you can select the number of which you notify the other party in Call Option.

1 Enter a phone number ►

- To make a call from the redial data:  ► Highlight a party from the redial data ►  
- To make a call from the received call history:  ► Highlight a party from the received call history ►  

2 Select *Multi-No* field ► Select the number to notify the other party



- When *Unspecified* is selected, number set in *Set Multi Number* is used.
- When *Multi number call* is set to *Disable* in *Number Setting*, multi-numbers cannot be selected.

3 ► Select Yes

INFORMATION

- If you pull out the UIM or replace it by another UIM, the settings for Multi Number saved in FOMA terminal (name, phone number, etc.) may be deleted. In such a case, register them again.
- On the screen during the call receiving/dialing, the names corresponding to the multi-numbers (*Basic Number/Additional No1/Additional No2*) are displayed. However, if a call is made following the setting of *Set Multi Number*, such as a call without specifying the multi-number in Call Option, the name corresponding to the multi-number is not displayed.
- In the redial data, the names corresponding to the multi numbers notified during the dialing are displayed.
- In the received call history, the names corresponding to the received multi-numbers are displayed.
- When making a call from the redial data and received call history, the multi-number corresponding to the name which was used for the dialed/received call will be used for the new call if the name is displayed. If not, the multi-number specified in *Set Multi Number* will be used.

Registering new network services

Added Service (Register USSD)

When a new network service is provided by DoCoMo, you can use the service by registering it in the menu.

1    

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Register USSD	■ Registering:  ► Highlight the number to record/change the service ►  ► Select USSD code field ► Enter the USSD code ► Select Name field ► Enter the service name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ►  ► - Up to 10 services can be registered. - Enter the service code provided by DoCoMo in the <i>USSD code</i> field. The service code is a code used to make the settings for network services. It is registered as the USSD code in FOMA terminal. ■ Using the services:  ►  to ,  The registered code is transmitted to the Service Center. ■ Deleting the registered services:  ► Highlight a service ►   (To delete all services:   ► Select Yes
Record reply message	Register the message corresponding to the code that will be returned from the Service Center when an added service is executed. This message is displayed when the recorded code is returned as a reply. ■ Registering:  ►  to ,  ► Select USSD code field ► Enter the USSD code ► Select Reply message field ► Enter the message (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ►  ► Up to 10 messages can be registered. ■ Deleting the registered messages:  ► Highlight a service ►   (To delete all messages:   ► Select Yes

Data Communication

Data communication	400
Flow of setup for data communication	402
AT command	402

For data communication, see the PDF version of “Manual for Data Communication” in CD-ROM provided for details. To see the PDF version of “Manual for Data Communication”, Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you can download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated Web site. (Communication fee are separately required for downloading.) For details, see the Adobe Systems Incorporated Web site.

Data communication

The data communication modes available from FOMA terminal and hints on use are explained.

- FOMA terminal does not support the Remote Wakeup.
- FOMA terminal does not support fax communication.
- When connecting FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA "sigmarion II" or "musea" for data communication, make sure to update "sigmarion II" or "musea". For details on update, visit the DoCoMo website.

Supported communication modes

FOMA terminal supports 3 communication modes: packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer.

These communications become available by installing the related software onto a PC from the attached CD-ROM, connecting FOMA terminal to the PC and making required settings.

■ Packet communication

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which make it suitable for high-speed exchange of relatively small amounts of data such as sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.

High-speed packet communication provides a maximum reception speed of 384 kbps and a maximum transmission speed of 64 kbps by using access points that support packet communication on FOMA, such as DoCoMo's "mopera U / mopera" Internet connection service. These are offered by Best-effort connection which allows transmission speed to vary with the environment and the rate of congestion.

Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges.

■ 64K data communication

The 64K data communications allow data transfer/reception at stabled communication rate of 64 kbps. Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which make it

suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents. You need to use access points that support FOMA 64K data communication such as DoCoMo's "mopera U / mopera" Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps access points.

Note that communicating for long time will require high charges.

■ Data transfer

It is the mode of non-charged communication in which data are transferred/exchanged via FOMA USB cable (optional). Various data including the phonebook, incoming/outgoing mail and bookmarks are sent/received.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charge

When using the Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter called provider) is generally required. This charge is paid directly to the provider, and is separate from the FOMA service charge. For more information on usage charges, contact your provider.

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera.

The mopera U service requires subscription and a monthly fee. It allows you to use broadband Internet connection and international roaming services. There is also a plan that requires a monthly fee only when you use the service. The mopera service allows you to access the Internet without subscription and monthly fee. You can make a connection with Internet immediately.

For details on charges, etc., visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the dialup connection (provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64 kbps data communication or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps data communication.

- You cannot connect to access points of PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS or DoPa.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connections require user authentication (ID and password) before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password before connection. Your ID and password will be assigned by the network administrator such as the provider or in-house LAN, etc. For more information, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication when using PC browser

To authenticate FirstPass (user certificate), you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. For details, see "FirstPassManual" in the CD-ROM.

To view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you need to download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website (Communication fee is separately required for downloading). For details, see the Adobe Systems Incorporated website.

■ Operating environment for the FirstPass PC software

Item	Requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98SE, Me, 2000 or XP
Memory requirements*1	Windows 98SE, Me or 2000: 32MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard disk capacity*1	10 MB or more free disk space
Browser	Microsoft® Internet Explorer 5.5 and later version For Windows XP, Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6.0 and later version

*1 May vary with the PC system configurations.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- The PCs which may use a FOMA USB cable (optional).
- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.

- 64K data communication requires an access point that supports FOMA 64 kbps or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps data communication.

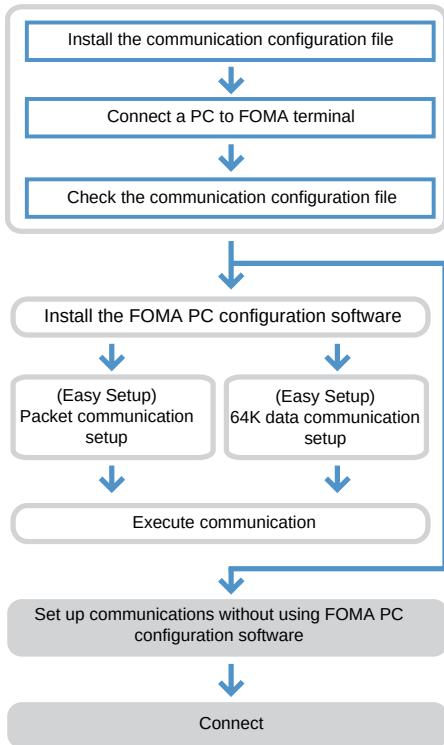
However, even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy, or the signal quality is poor.

Glossary of data communication

- Administrator privilege
A user level that provides complete access to all OS functions in Windows XP and 2000. There must be at least 1 user that has administrator privileges for each PC. A user that has no administrator privileges is not normally allowed to install/uninstall drivers and software.
- APN (Access Point Name)
String to identify a provider, etc. to connect by packet communication. The APN for mopera U is "mopera.net" and mopera is "mopera.ne.jp".
- cid (Context Identifier)
The registration number when writing packet communication dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal. 10 numbers from 1 to 10 are available for FOMA terminal.
By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid1, and "mopera.net" in cid3.
- W-TCP
A TCP parameter designed to fully utilize TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communications in a FOMA network. This communication setting is essential to enable full use of FOMA terminal capability.

Flow of setup for data communication

The setup work needed to connect FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication is as follows:



Communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC from the attached CD-ROM, before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication.

FOMA PC configuration software

When the FOMA PC configuration software (found on the CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for data communication via connection between FOMA terminal and PC can be made from the PC by simple operation.

Checking operating environment

Use the communication configuration file and the FOMA PC configuration software in the following operating environments:

Item	Requirements
PC*1	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98, Me, 2000 or XP
Memory requirements	Windows 98, Me: 32MB or more Windows 2000: 64MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or more free disk space

*1 USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) is required.

INFORMATION

- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed in an environment other than that described above or by upgrading the OS and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for operation under such conditions.

AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC.

FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

For details of AT command, see "Manual for Data Communication" in CD-ROM provided.

Character Entry

Entering characters	404
Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method	5-touch Input Method 405
Registering fixed phrases	Save Phrase 409
Copying/cutting and pasting characters	Copy Character 410
Entering characters using codes	KUTEN Code Input 410
Registering frequently used words	Save Word 410
Using the downloaded dictionary	Download Dictionary 412
Entering characters using Slot Input Method	Slot Input Method 412
Setting input method	Input Method Setting 413

Entering characters

FOMA terminal has many functions such as phonebook and i-mode Mail that require entering characters.

- There are "5-touch Input Method" and "Slot Input Method" for entering characters.
In 5-touch Input Method, several characters are assigned to each key and at each press, the character switches. ◀P427
In Slot Input Method, select characters from the upper and lower slots on the input board. ◀P412
- The character types which can be entered varies by each method:

○: Available ×: Unavailable —: No character

Input method Character type	5-touch Input Method		Slot Input Method	
	One-byte	Two-byte	One-byte	Two-byte
Hiragana/kanji	—	○	—	○
Katakana	○	○	○	×
Alphabets	○	○	○	×
Numeric	○	○	○	×
Symbols	○	○	○	○
Pictograms	—	○	—	○

- There are 2 character types: one-byte characters and two-byte characters. 1 two-byte character, 1 two-byte blank or line feed is counted as 2 one-byte characters. For one-byte characters, voiced sound and semi-voiced sound characters are also counted as 1 character.
- Use KUTEN Code Input to enter characters whose readings you do not know.
- JIS level 1 and level 2 characters can be entered.
- Complex characters may be displayed in a changed or simplified form.
- In this manual, to enter characters including the operation of pressing Ⓜ is referred to as "enter".

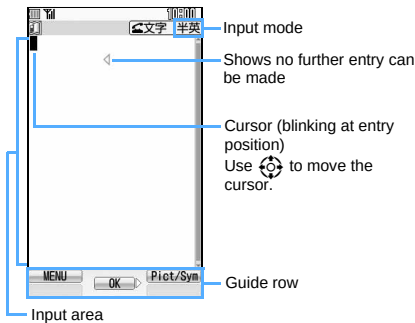
Character entry screen

There are 2 types of character entry methods: "full-screen entry" and "in-line entry".

- Some entry fields may only be able to use either character entry method.
- When pasted characters or fixed phrases are entered exceedingly, they are truncated and fit to the input characters limit.

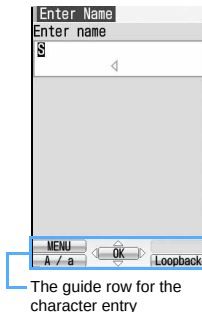
Full-screen entry

Highlight the entry field and press Ⓜ to display the full-screen entry area.



In-line entry

Highlight the entry field and press [0] to [9], [X] and [#] to enable character entry directly. In hiragana or two-byte katakana mode, the character is fixed by pressing Ⓜ.



Character entry screen submenu

Press Ⓜ on the character entry screen. The following operations are enabled. However, the submenu is not displayed before the character is fixed.

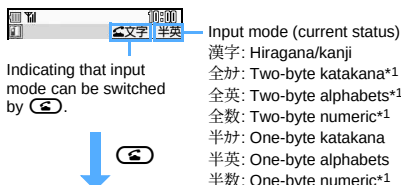
- Copy characters ◀P410
- Cut characters ◀P410
- Paste copied/cut characters ◀P410
- Save words ◀P410
- Save fixed phrases ◀P409
- Set the input method ◀P413
- Quote Phonebook data, Own Number data, result of calculation with Calculator or data read by Bar Code Reader (Items displayed varies by the entry field) ◀P408
- Enter pictograms and symbols ◀P408
- Enter face marks and fixed phrases ◀P407
- Enter KUTEN code ◀P410

- End character edit entry (displayed only when characters are entered in Slot Input Method)

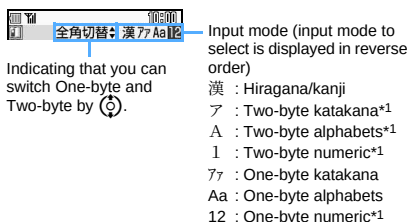
Changing input modes

Pressing  switches the input mode as follows:

- The available input modes are different depending on the character entry screen.



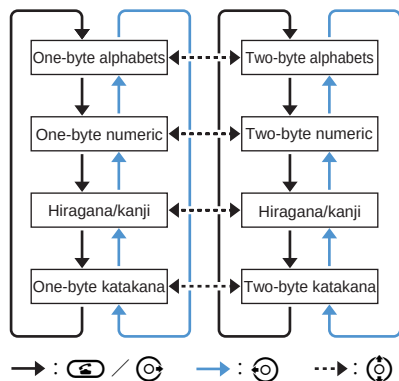
Indicating that input mode can be switched by .



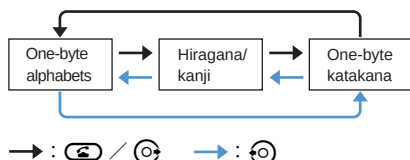
Indicating that you can switch One-byte and Two-byte by (○).

*1 Switching cannot be made in Slot Input Method.

- **全かな** is displayed for input mode when only hiragana can be entered.
- After pressing **☞**, the input mode switches as shown below by the following operations:



- In Slot Input, the mode switches as follows:



Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method

5-touch Input Method

Entering characters

Kana/Kanji Conversion

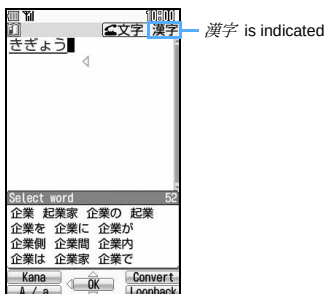
Example Entering “企業” in the phonebook

1 Highlight *Enter name* field ▶

The character entry screen is displayed.

- In English display, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press  repeatedly to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.

2 Enter “きぎょう”



“き” → Press **2** twice.

Press  to move the cursor 1 position to the right. (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by the automatic cursor function.)

“き” → Press **2** twice ▶ *****

“よ” → Press 3 times

“ ㄅ ” → Press **1** 3 times

- Press **()** to delete the entry when you have pressed a wrong key.
- To enter “^u” and “^o”: Enter the character **()**. For example, after entering “^hぼ”, each pressing of **()** changes the character to: ^hぼ→^oぼ→^uぼ. For characters that do not accept “^u” or “^o”, it is entered as two-byte characters.
- To change upper/lower case, press **()**.

■ **Returning to the previous character:**

Pressing  immediately after entering a character brings back to the previous character. The character appears in the reverse order of character switching every time  is pressed. (e.g. $\cdots \rightarrow 1 \rightarrow \text{お} \rightarrow \text{え} \rightarrow \text{う} \rightarrow \text{い} \rightarrow \text{あ} \rightarrow 1 \rightarrow \cdots$) However, when voiced or semi-voiced sounds are entered or upper and lower cases are changed, you cannot switch characters.

■ Fixing hiragana without conversion:

Go to Step 4 after entering the hiragana.

■ Converting to katakana or alphanumeric:

Pressing  displays the list of conversion options in katakana (two-byte/one-byte), alphabets or numeric characters (two-byte/one-byte). Highlight a conversion option and go to Step 4.

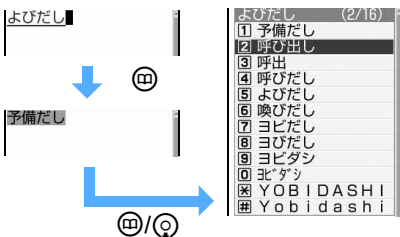
3



-  also converts text to kana/kanji when predict conversion options are not displayed. Predict conversion  P407
- Press  to restore the entry before conversion.

■ Displaying the list of conversion options:

When pressing  fails to display the desired character, a list of conversion options is displayed by pressing  or  again. If the list of conversion options has some pages, you can switch to the next page and the previous page by pressing  and , respectively. Select a conversion option by  and press , or press the key for the number of each option.



4

The characters are fixed.

- When **Input prediction** of Input Method Setting is **ON**, select 閉じる (Close).

■ Inserting characters:

Move the cursor to the insertion point by  and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

■ Deleting characters:

- When the cursor is inside an entered character string (Example: ドコモ太郎)
 - Press  to delete a character at the cursor position.

- Press  for over a second to delete the character at the cursor position and all following characters.
- When the cursor is at the end of an entered character string (Example: ドコモ太郎)
 - Press  to delete the character at the left of the cursor position.
 - Press  for over a second to delete all entered characters.

■ Entering line feed:

Move the cursor to the location to enter a line feed and press .

- Some entry fields may not permit a line feed.

5 Press

Character entry is exited.

- To leave the space as a blank, delete all characters and press , or press  when the text was newly entered.
- When you edit the entered contents of the character entry field, to return to the screen before editing, delete all characters and press  and select **Yes**.

INFORMATION

- In the following input modes, when the specified time elapses without pressing any key in inputting, the automatic cursor function will automatically move the cursor to the right. You cannot only change the time setting for move, but also disable the automatic cursor function.  P413
 - One-byte/two-byte alphabets
 - Hiragana/kanji
 - One-byte/two-byte katakana
- You can perform the following operations after the automatic cursor function has moved the cursor to the right.
 -  : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound
 -  : Switch between upper/lower cases
 -  : Return to the previous character

Block conversion of multiple clauses

The characters can be converted as a block to simplify text entry.

- Up to 24 two-byte characters can be converted.

Example Entering “動物園に行こう。”

1 Enter characters ▶

どうぶつえんにいこう。 → 動物園に行こう。

■ **Fix all characters:**

動物園に行こう。

■ **Fix converted portion:**

動物園に行こう。

■ **Change conversion range:**

動物園新居校。

When pressing

Entering characters using input prediction function

The input prediction function is to display a list of predict conversion options that match the initial part of the reading when characters are entered.

This function automatically registers previously entered characters as predict dictionary data; you can easily enter the same characters next time, quickly by entering only the first part.

- The following words and character strings are displayed as options:
 - Standard words
 - Words entered by kana/kanji conversion
 - Character string converted and entered by Download Dictionary.
 - Character strings registered by Save Word
- Only the hiragana/kanji mode can be used in predict conversion. However, predict conversion is not available during in-line entry and when entering with Slot Input Method.
- You can also set not to display the predict conversion options. ➡P413

1 Enter characters

A list of predict conversion options is displayed.

あ

Select word 66

あなた あ の ある 明日
アメリカ あまり あるいは
朝 あれ あと 頭 あまりに
相手 ああ アジア 足 あたし

- The more characters are entered, the less the number of predict conversion options are available.

2 ▶ to highlight an option ▶

あ

ありがとう

Select word 1/66

あなた あ の ある 明日
アメリカ あまり あるいは
朝 あれ あと 頭 あまりに
相手 ああ アジア 足 あたし

Select word 0/47

はい ござい ございます
。 ? ! ね 、 ~ ~ ~
.. 御座います !! ?
!! と です ねん ねんけど

- While the predict conversion option is highlighted, the following operations are enabled:

- / : Switches to the previous/next page
- : Enables Kana/Kanji Conversion (Predict conversion options disappear)

3 Select 閉じる

The predict conversion options vanish.

Resetting the predict dictionary data

Resetting the predict dictionary data which is registered as the predict conversion options.

1 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select Yes

Entering face marks/fixed phrases

Enter face marks, previously registered sentences, or pictogram words.

Example Entering face marks

1 on the character entry screen ▶ Select Pict/Symbol/Smiley ▶

- To enter fixed phrases: ▶ Select **Phrase/ Kuten/Quote** ▶

2 to

- For fixed phrases: to

Smiley Type

1 挨拶・返事
2 笑う・うれしい
3 照れる・怒る
4 泣く・悲しい
5 驚き
6 疑問・焦り
7 その他
8 すべて

- You can select by pressing when input history for face marks is available.
- When a fixed phrase has been created, you can select by pressing .

3 Press **[1]** to **[0]**, **[*]** or **[#]**



- Press **[↔]** to switch pages.
- To check details:
Highlight a fixed phrase **[↔]**

- For input history of face marks, up to 18 items can be displayed. When the number of items exceeds the maximum number, the oldest one will be deleted.

INFORMATION

- Face marks can be entered by entering the readings in kana/kanji mode. **☛P429**
- Mail using face marks may become deformed, look different or cannot be correctly displayed depending on the size of the display, number of displayed characters, or the fonts of the other terminal.
- List of fixed phrases **☛P428**

Entering pictograms and symbols

1 **[↔]** on the character entry screen

List of pictogram 1 is displayed.



- To enter Pictogram 2, press **[↔]**. To return to Pictogram 1, press **[↔]** again.

Input history area (displayed only on the first pages of pictogram 1 and 2, or one-byte and two-byte symbols.)

- To enter one-byte symbols, press **[Menu]**. Pressing **[Menu]** again switches to two-byte symbols. Only available symbols are listed.
- Press **[↔]** or **[↔]** to switch multiple pages.
- To exit entering from the list: **[ch/2UP]**
- Up to 10 pictograms or symbols can be displayed at the input history area. When the characters exceed the maximum number, the oldest one will be deleted.

2 Select pictograms/symbols

INFORMATION

- You can also enter by pressing **[Menu]** and selecting **Pict/Symbol/Smiley→Pictgrm** or **Symbol** on the character entry screen.
At this time, the continuous input area appears above the input history area, by pressing **[↔]** and up to 10 pictograms can be entered and up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte symbols can be entered continuously. Press **[↔]** to fix the characters. Also, When the left element in the following brackets is selected, the right element is also automatically selected: e.g. selecting "{ " also selects " } ".
() [] {} 「」 () [] { } < > 《 》 「 」 『 』 【 】
- A part of symbols can be converted by entering readings in kana/kanji mode.

Readings	Symbols you can enter
ぎりしあ	Greek characters
ろしあ	Latin characters
すうじ	① to ㊾, I to X
けいせん	Ruled line symbols
きごう	Two-byte symbols other than above

- Pictogram can be converted by entering readings in kana/kanji mode. **☛P432**
- Pictograms and symbols entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication.
- Pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to another party using a non i-mode terminal.
- Pictogram 2 used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some phone terminals.

Quoting data to enter characters

You can enter characters by quoting phonebook data, Own Number information, the result of calculation with Calculator or text information of the data scanned with Bar Code Reader.

- On the character entry screen in which you cannot quote data, operation cannot be made since menu items are displayed in a light color, or not displayed.

Quoting phonebook data

- Switch the character entry screen to full-screen entry.
- The phonebook data is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of the phonebook.

- 1 **[Menu]** on the character entry screen **▶**
Select Phrase/Kuten/Quote **▶** **[3]** **▶**
Select phonebook data

2 Select the entry



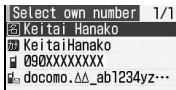
- When the contents are too long, they may be displayed shortly. To check, highlight the content and press . It can be quoted by pressing .

Quoting Own Number data

- The Own Number data is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of Own Number.

1 on the character entry screen ▶ Select Phrase/Kuten/Quote ▶

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select the Own Number information



- When the contents are too long, they may be displayed shortly. To check, highlight the content and press . It can be quoted by pressing .

Quoting a result calculated with Calculator

- The result can be quoted only on the character entry screen of Scheduler and Notepad.

1 on the character entry screen ▶ Select Phrase/Kuten/Quote ▶

2 Make calculation ▶ Press

Quoting data scanned with Bar Code Reader

- The data can be quoted on the URL entry screen or the character entry screen displayed during i-mode or Full Browser.

1 on the character entry screen ▶ Select Phrase/Kuten/Quote ▶

Camera starts with the macro mode.

2 Scan JAN code or QR code

3 Press

The string of the scanned data is entered.

Registering fixed phrases

Save Phrase

Fixed phrases are registered in **My phrase**.

- Up to 50 phrases can be saved.

1

2 Select <New phrase>

The fixed phrase edit screen appears.

- To edit the registered fixed phrase: Select a fixed phrase to edit.
- To check the registered fixed phrase: Highlight a fixed phrase on the list ▶ . You can edit by pressing .

- Deleting fixed phrases:** Highlight a fixed phrase to delete ▶ ▶ Select Yes

3 Select Message field ▶ Enter the fixed phrase (up to 128 one-byte or 64 two-byte characters)

4 Press

- When you edit a registered fixed phrase, a confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** to overwrite or **No** to cancel the operation.

Registering during character entry

Select entered characters and register as a fixed phrase.

1 on the character entry screen ▶ Select Save word/phrase ▶

2 Place the cursor at the start point ▶

- To select the whole sentence: ▶ Go to Step 4
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for mail message: ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Place the cursor at the end point ▶

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the fixed phrase edit screen.

- To select from the start point to the beginning:
- To select from the start point to the end:

4 Press

INFORMATION

- When you perform the above procedure without entering any characters, the fixed phrase edit screen appears immediately.
- When 50 fixed phrases have already been registered, the list of registered fixed phrases is displayed. To register a new item, you must either delete a phrase from this list or edit a registered phrase.
- If a character string selected above contains blank spaces, it is processed as follows:
 - Blank spaces only:
Cannot be registered as a fixed phrase
 - Blank spaces before and after a character string:
Only character string is valid
 - Blank spaces between characters:
Blank spaces are also valid

Copying/cutting and pasting characters

Copy Character

Characters copied or cut from a character entry screen are pasted elsewhere. They can also be pasted into another character entry screen.

- Copied and cut characters are retained until FOMA terminal is turned off and you can paste them in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be retained. When you cut or copy a new item, it overwrites the previously saved item.

Copying/cutting characters

Example Copying characters

- 1**  **1** on the character entry screen
 - To cut the characters:  **2**
 - On the entry screen for mail message, press  and select *Copy/Cut*.
- 2** **Place the cursor at the start point**  
 - To select the whole sentence:  
 - To select whole sentence on the entry screen for mail message: 
- 3** **Place the cursor at the end point**  **Press** 

The characters in the selected range are copied.

 - To select from the start point to the beginning:  
 - To select from the start point to the end:  

Pasting characters

- When the pasted phrase exceeds the number of characters permitted in the edited sentence, a message appears indicating that all characters will not be able to be pasted. When you select **Yes**, the allowable number of characters is pasted.

- 1** **Place the cursor at the location to paste on the character entry screen**  **Press**  **3**

- On the entry screen for mail message, press  and select *Paste*.

INFORMATION

- When the type of the copied/cut characters does not match with the character type used in the destination field, pasting is disabled. For example, hiragana or kanji cannot be pasted into the mail address field (one-byte alphanumeric).
- When a character string containing a line feed is pasted into an entry screen that cannot contain any line feeds, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

Entering characters using codes

KUTEN Code Input

Characters, numbers and symbols on the KUTEN code list are entered using 4-digit code.

Example Entering “携” (code number 2340)

- 1**  **on the character entry screen**  **Select *Phrase/Kuten/Quote***  **2**
- 2** **Enter the 4-digit code (2 3 4 0 in this case)**
 - The available code range is 0101 to 8406.
 - Entry of codes without characters, numbers and symbols is invalid.

Registering frequently used words

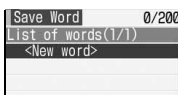
Save Word

Using registered readings makes it easy to convert characters.

- Up to 200 words can be saved.

- 1**  **8 8 1 1**

2 Select <New word>

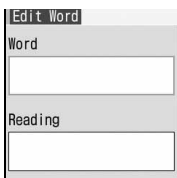


- To edit the registered word: Select a word to edit
- To check the registered word: Highlight a word You can edit it by pressing .

■ Deleting words:

- ① Highlight a word to delete
- ② Select *Delete*
 - To delete all: Select *Delete all*.

3 Select *Word* field Enter the word to register (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)



- The following character types can be registered:
 - One-byte/two-byte alphabets
 - Hiragana/kanji
 - One-byte/two-byte katakana
 - One-byte/two-byte numeric
 - One-byte/two-byte symbol
 - Pictogram

4 Select *Reading* field Enter the reading (up to 8 two-byte characters)

- You can enter only hiragana.

5 Press

- A confirmation screen is displayed when editing registered words. Select *Overwrite* to replace the original word. To register a new word, keeping original word intact, select *New*.

Registering during character entry

You can select entered characters and register them as a word.

1 on the character entry screen Select *Save word/phrase*

2 Place the cursor at the start point

- To select the whole sentence: Go to Step 4
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for mail message: Go to Step 4

3 Place the cursor at the end point

The characters in the selected range is displayed on *Word* field.

- To select from the start point to the beginning:
- To select from the start point to the end:

4 Enter the reading Press

INFORMATION

- When you perform the above procedure without entering any characters, the word edit screen appears immediately.
- When you save the character string containing a line feed during character entry, a line feed is replaced by a blank.
- Readings that contain characters other than hiragana, prolonged sound, voiced or semi-voiced sound characters cannot be registered.
- When the following characters are the initial part of the reading, it cannot be registered.
を, ん, あ, い, う, え, お, つ, や, ゆ, よ, わ, “—” (prolonged sound), “^” (voiced sound), “°” (semi-voiced sound)
- Blank spaces can be entered for reading, but deleted after registered.
- When the same word is already registered in the combination of a word and reading, the word cannot be registered.
- Up to 5 words with the same reading can be registered. To register additional words, change the reading of new words.
- When 200 words have already been registered, the list of registered words is displayed. To register a new item, you must either delete a word from this list or edit a registered word.

Using the downloaded dictionary

Download Dictionary

Make the dictionaries downloaded from i-mode site, etc., available to use for conversion.

- Up to 5 dictionaries can be used.
- Downloading procedure for dictionaries ◀P210

1 ► Select the dictionary to use

 is indicated to the dictionary which you can use.

■ Displaying the information of the downloaded dictionary:

    ► Highlight the dictionary
► 

■ Deleting the downloaded dictionary:

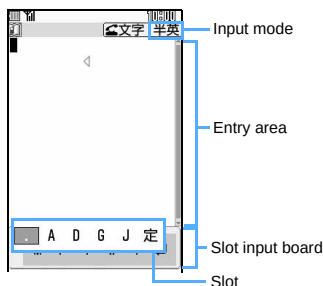
    ► Highlight the dictionary
►  ► Select **Yes**

Entering characters using Slot Input Method

Slot Input Method

You use  to select characters displayed on the slot input board (upper/lower input bar).

- Slot Input Method must be set up before using this function.
- The predict conversion function cannot be used in Slot Input Method.
- List of input slots and character assignments
◀P427



- Even when **Use Slot input** is set, **Use 5-touch** input screen will appear during in-line entry.
- When you are using the slot input board and want to use the entry area (for deleting characters, moving the cursor, etc.), press . Press  again to use the slot input board.

Example Entering “企業” in the phonebook

1 Select **Enter name field** ► Enter “きぎょう”

- In English display, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press  to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.



- “き” → → → →
- “ぎ” → → → 4 times →
- “よ” → → → twice → → twice →
- “う” → → 4 times → → twice →

- To switch upper slot/lower slot:
 - To fix the characters as hiragana:
- New characters can be added. To exit the character entry, go to Step 3.

2

The characters are converted.



- Characters are converted in the same way as in 5-touch Input Method.
- To return converted characters to the state they had before conversion and continue entering characters, press

3

The characters are fixed.

- New characters can be added.

4 ▶ Press

Character entry is exited.

- You can also perform the same operation by selecting ▶ **Exit**.

Setting input method

Input Method Setting

Default Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON
Auto cursor: Normal

1

2 Select each item to set

Input method :

Specifies **Use 5-touch** or **Use Slot input**.

- When **Slot** is set, items below are disabled.

Input prediction :

Specifies whether to display predictive conversion options.

Auto cursor :

Sets the time period before the cursor automatically moves to the right.

- Setting **OFF** disables automatic movement.
- Setting **Slow** moves the cursor in about 1.5 seconds.
- Setting **Normal** moves the cursor in about 1 second.
- Setting **Fast** moves the cursor in about 0.5 seconds.

3 Press

Changing the setting during character entry

- The changes cannot be made before characters are fixed.
- Only the automatic cursor function can be changed during in-line entry.

1  on the character entry screen ► **Select**
Set input method

2 Press any of  to 

- To switch between *Use 5-touch* and *Use Slot input*: 
- To switch between *Prediction ON* and *Prediction OFF*: 
- To set the time period before the cursor automatically moves:  ►  to 

Appendix/Data Interchange/Troubleshooting

Menu list	416
Data set by default	422
List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method)	427
List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method)	427
List of fixed phrases	428
List of face marks	429
List of symbols	432
List of pictograms	432
KUTEN code input list	435
Combination of operations during Multiaccess	439
Combination of functions during Multitask	441
Services available for FOMA terminal	444
Options and related devices	444

Data Interchange using external devices

About the data link software	444
Playing video data downloaded from the external devices on FOMA terminal	445
Playing video data recorded with FOMA terminal on a PC	446

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting	446
Example of Error messages	Error Message 449
Warranty and After-Sales Service	456
Updating software	Software Update 457
Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data	Virus Scan Function 461
Main specification	463
SAR certification information	464

Menu list

- The menu differs depending on the menu display style (Menu Setting).
 - One-byte and two-byte characters shown on the display may differ from those below.
- : When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by performing Reset.

1 Mail

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Inbox	—————	P246
2 Compose message	—————	P228
3 Chat mail	—————	P261
4 Unsent messages	—————	P246
5 Outbox	—————	P246
6 Check new message		
1 i-mode message	—————	P241
2 SMS	—————	P266
3 Receive option	—————	P241
4 Message retrieval	selected (all)	P257
7 SMS		
1 Compose SMS	—————	P264
2 Received SMS	—————	P267
3 Sent SMS	—————	P267
4 SMS settings	Font type: Japanese SMS report request: Not request Keep in SMS center: 3 days SMSC: DoCoMo Address: 81903101652 Type of Number: international	P266
8 Read templates	—————	P237
9 Mail settings		
1 Mail alert	Ring alert: Melody/ メール・メロディ A (Mail, melody A) Light alert: Glimmer/Aqua Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P260
2 Chat mail alert	Alert setting: Customize Ring alert: Melody/ メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B) Light alert: Glimmer/ Lavender Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P264
3 Sort criteria	ON (all)	P255
4 Signature	Auto add: ON Edit signature: not registered	P256
5 Reply setting		
1 Reply format	Quote: Yes Quote characters: >	P258
2 Activate quick reply	ON	P258
3 Quick reply template	OKです。(OK) NGです。(No good) ありがとう！(Thank you!) ごめんなさい！(Sorry!) 後ほど連絡します。 (Get in touch later.)	P258

Menu item	Default	Page
9 Mail settings		
6 Mail group	—————	P257
7 Display settings		
1 Display priority	Show message	P260
2 Receive option	OFF	P257
3 Incoming msg attach	Image/Melody/ToruCa	P259
4 Attachment auto-play	Auto play	P259
5 Message list	Display 2 rows	P258
6 Only view	OFF	P259

2 i-mode

Menu item	Default	Page
1 iMenu	—————	P200
2 Bookmark	—————	P205
3 Go to location		
1 Enter URL	—————	P204
2 URL history	—————	P205
3 Last visited URL	—————	P202
4 Screen memo	—————	P207
5 i-mode message	—————	P241
6 Message R&F		
1 Message R	—————	P215
2 Message F	—————	P215
3 Message settings		
1 Auto-display	MessageR preferred	P215
2 Message retrieval	selected (all)	P257
3 Attachment auto-play	Auto play	P259
4 Message alert	Ring alert: Melody/ メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C) Light alert: Glimmer/Lemon Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P215
7 i-Channel		
1 i-Channel list	—————	P291
2 Ticker setting	Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Normal	P292
8 i-mode settings		
1 i-mode shortcuts	Not recorded	P206
2 Connection timeout	60 seconds	P212
3 Display light	Terminal setting	P213
4 i-mode arv. act: PT	PushTalk preferred	P104

Menu item	Default	Page
8 i-mode settings		
5 Certificate		
1 Set certificate*1	all valid	P217
2 Certificate download	_____	P217
3 Certificate host	DoCoMo	P218
6 Image & Effect	Image, Animation: Display Use phone information: Yes Sound effect setting: ON	P213
7 i-motion	Auto replay setting: Auto Play ON i-motion type setting: Normal type	P221
8 Host selection	i-mode(UIM)	P212
9 Full Browser		
1 Home	_____	P304
2 Bookmark	_____	
3 Got to location	_____	
1 Enter URL	_____	
2 URL history	_____	
3 Last visited URL	_____	
4 Browser settings		
1 Home URL	not registered	P308
2 Cookie set/delete	Valid	P308
3 Script setting	Script Setting: Valid Window Open Guard: Invalid	P309
4 Display mode setting	Mobile mode	P309
5 Image display	Image, Animation: Display	P309
6 Access setting	No	P309
7 Referer setting	Send	P310
8 Screen view setting	With menu icon view	P310

3 i-appli

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Software list	_____	P273
2 i-appli settings		
1 Sort software	By download time	P286
2 Auto start	ON	P282
3 Software info disp.	OFF	P272
4 Display light	Terminal setting	P275
5 Vibrate effect	ON	P275
6 i-appli shortcuts	Not recorded	P282
3 Display history	_____	P274 P283 P284

4 Phonebook & Logs

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Phonebook	Show all names	P112
2 Phonebook new entry	_____	P107

Menu item	Default	Page
3 Phonebook(UIM) new entry	_____	P110
4 PushTalk phonebook	_____	P99
5 Received calls	_____	P66
6 Redial	_____	P56
7 Ans. machine/Voice memo		
1 Answer machine	Deactivate	P75
2 Recorded messages	_____	P78
3 Record voice memo	_____	P380
4 Voice memos	_____	P381
8 Own number	My phone number: subscribed phone number Other than that: not recorded	P48, P379

5 Data Box

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Image	_____	P312
2 i-motion	_____	P320
3 Melody	_____	P330
4 Chara-den	_____	P327
5 My Documents	_____	P354

6 LifeKit

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Bar code reader	_____	P192
2 Data exchange		
1 Send all Ir data	_____	P348
2 Receive Ir data	_____	P349
3 Exchange settings	End alert: OFF Auto Authentication: OFF Ph.book image sending: ON	P351
4 USB mode settings	Communication mode	P342
3 ToruCa		
1 ToruCa list	_____	P297
2 ToruCa settings	ToruCa receive, Light alert: ON Light color: Sky Receive alert volume: Level4	P299
4 IC card		
1 IC card content	_____	P295
2 Lock/Unlock	OFF	P300
3 Timed lock	OFF	P301
4 IC card lock setting	Security code	P300
5 miniSD card	_____	P338
6 Camera	_____	P176
7 Movie camera	_____	P181
8 Sound recorder	_____	P352
9 Data Center		
1 Access Data Center	_____	P125
2 Synchronization log	_____	P125
3 Sync setting	OFF	P126

*1 Certificates saved in the UIM are also reset to the default (all valid) by performing Reset.

7 Stationery

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Scheduler	—————	P370
2 Notepad	—————	P384
3 Alarm clock	not set	P368
4 Calculator	—————	P383
5 Dictionaries	—————	P385

8 Settings & NW services

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Alerts & Sounds		
1 Set sound		
1 Call ring alert		
1 Call ring alert	Melody/Vivaldism	P128
2 V.phone ring alert	Melody/電話・メロディ A (Phone, melody A)	
3 P-Talk ring alert	Melody/電話・メロディ B (Phone, melody B)	
4 Anonymous caller	Disable settings (all)	
2 Mail/Msg ring alert		
1 Mail ring alert	Melody/メール・メロディ A (Mail, melody A)	P128
2 Chat M ring alert	Melody/メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)	
3 Msg R ring alert	Melody/メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C)	
4 Msg F ring alert	Melody/メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C)	
3 Alarm sound		
1 Alarm clock sound	Melody/アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)	P130
2 Schedule reminder	Alarm on time: Melody/アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm, female voice) Alarm in advance: Melody/パターン4 (Pattern 4)	
4 Operation sound		
1 Keypad sound	Keypad sound1	P130
2 Speed selector sound	Selector sound1	
3 Shutter sound	Shutter sound1	P131
4 Movie camera sound	Shutter sound1	
5 Lens cover sound	Open cover sound: Open cover sound1 Close cover sound: Close cover sound1	P131
6 Slide sound	Open slide: Melody/スライド・オープン音1 (Slide opening sound1) Close slide: Melody/スライド・クローズ音1 (Slide closing sound1)	P131
5 Charge alert	ON	P134
6 Call session		
1 Status message	Standard	P72
2 On-hold tone	保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)	P72
3 Quality alarm	High alarm	P134
4 Reconnect alarm	High alarm	P61
5 Low Battery alert	ON	P45

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Alerts & Sounds		
2 Adjust volume		
1 Call alert volume	Level 4	P69
2 Mail/Msg alert vol.	Level 4	P69
3 Listen volume	Level 4	P69
4 Alarm volume		
1 Alarm clock sound	Level 4	P69
2 Schedule reminder	Level 4	P69
5 i-appli effect sound	Level 4	P69
6 ToruCa receive alert	Level 4	P69
3 Vibrate alert/effect		
1 Call vibrate alert		
1 Call vibrate alert	OFF	P133
2 V.phone vibrate alert	OFF	
3 P-Talk vibrate alert	OFF	
2 Mail/Msg vibrate alert		
1 Mail vibrate alert	OFF	P133
2 Chat M vibrate alert	OFF	
3 Msg R vibrate alert	OFF	
4 Msg F vibrate alert	OFF	
3 Alarm vibrate		
1 Alarm clock	OFF	P133
2 Schedule reminder	OFF	
4 i-appli effect	ON	P133
4 Silent mode	General	P135
5 Set mute ring time	OFF	P167
2 Display		
1 Stand-by display		
1 Image/i-appli	use Style Theme setting	P136
2 Clock format	use Style Theme setting	P151
3 Battery icon	use Style Theme setting	P147
4 Info/calendar layout	Pattern 4 (Set Area1, Set Area2: not registered Set Area3: Key guidance)	P139
5 i-Channel ticker	Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Normal	P292
2 Menu preference		
1 Menu setting*2	Normal: use Style Theme setting Custom: Tile display Type of animation: use Style Theme setting Icon display effect: OFF Default MENU: Normal Active shortcut: Custom	P146
2 Customize shortcut	Standard	P376

*2 If Reset is performed, **Normal**, **Type of animation** and **Type of tile icons**; **Customized 1**, **Customized 2** return to the default settings.

Menu item	Default	Page
[2] Display		
[3] Color & Action image		
[1] Color scheme	use Style Theme setting	P146
[2] Mail/Call image		
[1] Outgoing call	Display image: Default	P142
[2] Incoming call	Standard image	P142
[3] Videophone dialing	Display image: Default	P142
[4] Videophone receiving	Standard image	P142
[5] Contact image	ON	P143
[6] Anonymous caller	Disable settings (all)	P166
[7] Outgoing message	Display image: Default	P144
[8] Incoming message	Display image: Default	P144
[9] Message retrieval	Display image: Default	P144
[3] Receive display	Caller's phone number: Display Caller's name: Standard Receive mail/message: Display	P144
[4] Videophone image	Substitute image: Default Chara-den Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default	P91
[4] Display light		
[1] Display light time	Normal use: 10 sec AC adapter connected, i-mode session: Terminal setting Camera session, Movie camera session, i-motion playing: Always on i-α ppli active: Terminal setting	P144
[2] Light area	Display + Key	P145
[3] Brightness	Normal	P145
[5] Light alert		
[1] Light alert	Incoming Videophone: Flash/Lime Incoming call: Flash/Sky Incoming Mail: Glimmer/Aqua Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F: Glimmer/Lemon Incoming Chat Mail: Glimmer/Lavender Incoming PushTalk: Flash/Peach ToruCa receive: ON/Sky	P148
[2] Call session light	OFF	P148
[3] IC card light	ON/Sky	P148

Menu item	Default	Page
[2] Display		
[5] Light alert		
[4] Speed selector/Other	Speed selector: ON/Green-Blue-Red:Mix Alarm clock, Schedule: Flash/Coral Play melody: Sync melody Open slide, Close slide: Glimmer/Turquoise	P148
[6] Indicator light	OFF	P149
[7] Font & Language		
[1] Font Size	Standard (all)	P150
[2] Select language	Japanese	P46
[8] Style theme	use the color of FOMA terminal	P152
[3] Security & Locks		
[1] Locks		
[1] All lock	not set	P158
[2] PIM lock	OFF	P160
[3] IC card lock		
[1] Lock/Unlock	OFF	P300
[2] Timed lock	OFF	P301
[3] IC card lock setting	Security code	P300
[2] Secret mode	not set	P165
[3] Keypad dial lock	OFF	P161
[4] UIM	PIN code, PIN2 code: 0000 PIN code ON/OFF: OFF	P156
[5] Change security code	0000	P155
[6] Privacy mode	Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My picture, i-motion, Schedule, i-α ppli: Show all Auto start: OFF	P162
[7] Scanning function		
[1] Update	_____	P462
[2] Set auto-update	_____	P462
[3] Set scan	ON	P461
[4] Version	_____	P463
[8] Key lock setting	OFF when slide open	P164
[4] Info. & Reset		
[1] Call duration	_____	P381
[2] Confirm	_____	P388
[3] Battery level	_____	P45
[4] Call cost		
[1] Last call cost	_____	P382
[2] Call cost limit	Alert: OFF	P383
[3] Hide call cost icon	_____	P383
[4] Reset call cost	OFF	P382
[5] Reset	_____	P389
[6] Delete all data	_____	P389
[5] Clock		
[1] Date & time*3	Auto time adjust: ON Offset: +, 00h00m	P47
[2] Auto power ON	OFF	P367
[3] Auto power OFF	OFF	P367
[4] Clock display format	use Style Theme setting	P151
[5] Alarm auto power ON	OFF	P369

*3 Date and time remain unchanged after performing Reset.

Menu item	Default	Page
[6] Call & Answer		
[1] Outgoing call	Display image: Default	P142
[2] Call alert	Ring alert: Melody/ Vivaldism Show image: Standard image Vibrate alert: OFF Light alert: Flash/Sky	P70
[3] Anonymous caller	Disable settings (all)	P166
[4] Any key answer	ON	P65
[5] Headset		
[1] Alert preference	Headset + speaker	P388
[2] Auto answer	OFF	P387
[3] Headset key control	OFF	P387
[6] Reject/Accept call		
[1] Specified caller	Cancel settings	P165
[2] Unregistered caller	OFF	P168
[7] Make/Receive call		
[1] Priority comm mode	No Set Up	P70
[2] Prefix dialing	009130010	P60
[3] Int'l Dial Setting		
[1] Auto Assist Setting	Auto assist ON	P59
[2] IDD Prefix Setting	Name: World Call Prefix: 009130010	P59
[4] Sub address	ON	P60
[5] Open answer	OFF	P65
[8] Call session		
[1] Noise reduction	ON	P61
[2] Close settings	Continue	P65
[9] Self mode	OFF	P160
[7] Videophone & PushTalk		
[1] Videophone		
[1] V.phone dialing img.	Display image: Default	P142
[2] Videophone alert	Ring alert: Melody/電話・メロディ A(Phone, melody A) Show image: Standard image Vibrate alert: OFF Light alert: Flash/Lime	P70
[3] Operation	Auto redial as voice: OFF Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size: Large Visual preference: Normal Display light: Always on (normal) Speakerphone: ON	P90
[4] DataSession arv. act	V.phone priority	P93
[5] Image setting	Substitute image: Default Chara-den Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default	P91
[6] External device	Terminal	P94

Menu item	Default	Page
[7] Videophone & PushTalk		
[1] Videophone		
[7] Notify switchable mode		
[1] Indication ON	active	P93
[2] Indication OFF	—————	P93
[3] Service status	—————	P93
[2] PushTalk (PT)		
[1] PushTalk alert	Ring alert: Melody/電話・メロディ B(Phone, melody B) Vibrate alert: OFF Light alert: Flash/Peach	P70
[2] PushTalk ring time	30 sec	P103
[3] Notify PTcaller ID	Hide caller ID	P102
[4] PushTalk auto answer	OFF	P103
[5] PushTalk arv. act	Call Rejection	P103
[6] Setting when folded	Continue	P104
[7] i-mode arv. act:PT	PushTalk preferred	P104
[8] Others		
[1] Save word/Phrase		
[1] Save word	—————	P410
[2] Save phrase	—————	P409
[2] DL dictionary	—————	P412
[3] Reset prediction	—————	P407
[4] Text input method	Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON Auto cursor: Normal	P413
[5] NW search method	Auto select NW	P388
[6] Software update	—————	P458
[7] Quick start-up	ON	P388
[8] Edit by slide	ON (all)	P366
[9] Set speed selector	Speed selector: ON Direction: Clockwise Use at stand-by disp: Menu	P28
[9] NW Services		
[1] Voice Mail		
[1] Voice Mail service		
[1] Activate	—————	P392
[2] Set ring time	—————	
[3] Deactivate	—————	
[4] Check setting	—————	
[5] Play messages	—————	
[6] Voice Mail setting	—————	
[7] Check messages	—————	
[2] Tone/Vibration message notification	Voice Mail alert: ON Notification melody: メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)	
[3] Notify missed call		
[1] Activate	—————	
[2] Deactivate	—————	
[3] Check setting	—————	

Menu item		Default	Page
9 NW Services			
1 Voice Mail			
4 Hide Voice Mail icon	_____		P392
2 Call waiting			
1 Activate	_____		P393
2 Deactive	_____		
3 Check setting	_____		
3 Call forwarding			
1 Activate	_____		P394
2 Deactivate	_____		
3 Register The Forwarding Number	_____		
4 Setting if forwarding number busy	_____		
5 Check setting	_____		
4 Chaku-moji			
1 Create message	_____		P54
2 Message display setting	Only with Caller ID		P55
5 Caller ID notification			
1 Activate/ Deactivate	_____		P48
2 Check setting	_____		P48
6 Caller ID request			
1 Activate	_____		P395
2 Deactivate	_____		
3 Check setting	_____		
7 Set arrival act			
1 Activate	_____		P396
2 Deactivate	_____		
3 Check setting	_____		
8 Arrival call act	Answer		
9 Others			
1 Register USSD	_____		P398
2 Record reply message	_____		
3 Remote control			
1 Activate	_____		P397
2 Deactivate	_____		
3 Check setting	_____		
4 Nuisance call barring			
1 Register the caller	_____		P395
2 Register selected No	_____		
3 Delete all entries	_____		
4 Delete last entry	_____		
5 Check the number of entries	_____		

Menu item	Default	Page
9 NW Services		
9 Others		
5 English guidance		
1 Guidance setting	_____	P396
2 Check setting	_____	
6 Dual network		
1 Dual Network Switching	_____	P395
2 Check setting	_____	
7 Service Dialing Number		
1 ドコモ故障問合せ	_____	P396
2 ドコモ 総合案内・受付	_____	
8 Multi number		
1 Set Multi Number	_____	P397
2 Check setting	_____	
3 Number Setting	Basic Number: 基本契約番号 (Basic Number)/my phone number Additional No1: 付加番号1 (Additional Number 1)/ Not recorded Additional No2: 付加番号2 (Additional Number 2)/ Not recorded Multi number call: Disable	
4 Incoming calls melody setting	OFF	

9 Music Player

Menu item	Default	Page
Music Player	_____	P361

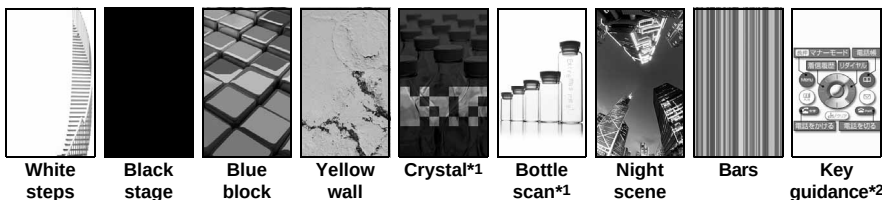
0 Own number

Menu item	Default	Page
Own number	My phone number: subscribed phone number Other than that: not recorded	P48, P379

Data set by default

Image/i-motion for the standby display

■ Image



■ i-motion



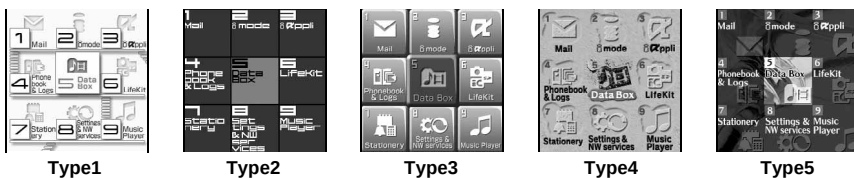
*1 It is Flash movie. The display changes with time.

*2 If *Style* is set to *Digital 1* or *Digital 3* and *Clock layout* is set to *Top* in Clock Display Format, the clock does not overlap with the key guidance.

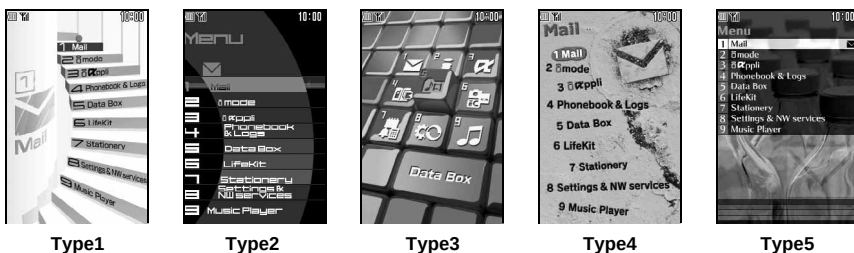
*3 It can also be set to Movie ringtone.

Normal menu

■ Tile display



■ Animation



Appendix/Data Interchange/Troubleshooting

Data set by default

誕生日おめでとう
(Happy birthday)



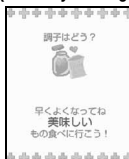
久しぶり
(Long time no see)



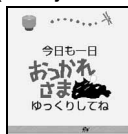
頑張って
(Cheer up)



調子はどう？
(How are you doing?)



おつかれさま
(Good job today)



ラッキー！
(Lucky!)



幸せ気分
(I'm happy)



好きです・・・
(I love you)



お願い
(Please!)



急いですが！
(I'm in a hurry!)



電話します
(I'll call you)



お茶しよ～
(Let's have tea)



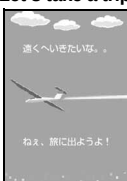
OK!



遊びにいこう
(Let's go!)



旅にでようよ
(Let's take a trip)



いってらっしゃい
(Bye!)



おはよ！
(Good morning!)



おやすみ
(Good night)



反省してます
(Sorry)



さみしい
(I miss you)



ちょっと怒ったよ
(I'm angry)



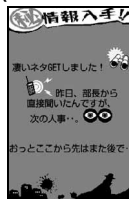
忙しい忙しい
(So busy)



飲みたい気分
(I want to drink)

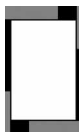


マル秘情報
(Secret information)

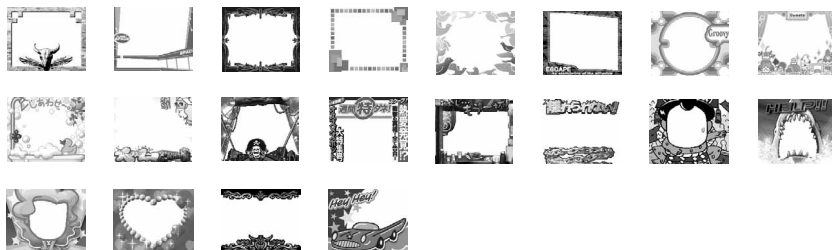
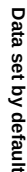


Frame

- If preinstalled images are deleted, they can be downloaded from the i-mode site "My D-style". ●P426
- Size for standby (240 x 400)



Appendix/Data Interchange/Troubleshooting



- You can download Chara-den from the i-mode site “My D-style”, if you have deleted them.

1 嬉しい (Glad)	4 ラブラブ (Love)	7 着ぐるみ (Dressed in a costume)
2 ごめんなさい (Sorry)	5 病気 (Sick)	8 拾ってください (Please pick up.)
3 びっくり (Surprised)	6 酔っぱらい (Drunken)	9 成金 (An upstart)

■ 女の子(Girl)



Action

1 喜ぶ (Joy)	5 泣く (Weep)	9 さよなら (Goodbye)	#4 あきれる (Amazed)
2 ガッツポーズ (Victory pose)	6 ダメ (Refuse)	#1 悩む (Worried)	
3 愛情 (Affection)	7 挨拶 (Greeting)	#2 称える (Praise)	
4 怒る (Angry)	8 うなずく (Nod)	#3 お願い (Do me a favor)	

Action of parts

11 頭 右を向く (ループ) (Turn the head right (loop))	16 頭 上下に振る (Shake the head up and down)	24 胴体 前に傾く (ループ) (Tilt the body forward (loop))
12 頭 左を向く (ループ) (Turn the head left (loop))	17 頭 回転する (Turn around the head)	31 右手 挙げる (ループ) (Right hand up (loop))
13 頭 上を向く (ループ) (Turn the head up (loop))	21 胴体 右を向く (ループ) (Turn the body right (loop))	41 左手 挙げる (ループ) (Left hand up (loop))
14 頭 下を向く (ループ) (Turn the head down (loop))	22 胴体 左を向く (ループ) (Turn the body left (loop))	51 足 しゃがむ (ループ) (Squat on heels (loop))
15 頭 左右に振る (Shake the head right and left)	23 胴体 後ろを向く (ループ) (Turn around the body (loop))	52 足 ジャンプ (Jump)

How to access i-mode site "My D-style"

To access "My D-style", select **iMenu** → **3** メニューリスト (Menu list) → ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) (as of May 2006).

● Scanning QR code shown right with Bar Code Reader allows to connect to "My D-style".



QR code for website access

List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method)

Key	Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)*1	Katakana mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Alphabet mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Numeric mode (one-byte/two-byte)*3
[1]	あ い う え お 1	ア イ ウ エ オ 1	. / @ ~*2 _ : _ [¥] ^ ' { } 1	1
[2]	か き く け こ 2	カ キ ク ケ コ 2	a b c 2	2
[3]	さ し す せ そ 3	サ シ ス セ ソ 3	d e f 3	3
[4]	た ち つ て と 4	タ チ ツ テ ト 4	g h i 4	4
[5]	な に ぬ ね の 5	ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ 5	j k l 5	5
[6]	は ひ ふ へ ほ 6	ハ ヒ フ ヘ ホ 6	m n o 6	6
[7]	ま み む め も 7	マ ミ ム メ モ 7	p q r s 7	7
[8]	や ゆ よ 8	ヤ ュ ヨ 8	t u v 8	8
[9]	ら り る れ ろ 9	ラ リ ル レ ロ 9	w x y z 9	9
[0]	わ を ん ー、。 * ? ! 「 」 □ 0	ワ フ ァ ン ー、。 * ? ! 「 」 □ 0	! " # \$ % & ' () * + ; , < = > ? □ 0	0 +*4
[*]			The following character strings can be entered only in one-byte alphabet mode: @docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm	* P*4
[#]*5	Line feed	Line feed	Line feed	# T*4

□: Indicates blank space. : Press (☺) after entering a character to switch between upper and lower cases.

*1 Numeric characters other than those entered in the two-byte numeric mode are entered as one-byte characters.

*2 This character is entered as “~” in the one-byte alphabet mode.

3 In numeric mode, “”, “#”, “P”, “T” and “+” can only be entered in the entry field that supports them.

*4 Hold down the relevant key for over a second to enter the character.

*5 Line feed may not be possible depending on the entry field.

List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method)

Input slot	Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)	Input slot	Katakana mode (one-byte)	Input slot	Alphanumeric mode (one-byte)
Upper slot	あ あいうえおあいうえお 1	ア アイウエオアイウエオ 1	Upper slot	.	/ @ ~ _ : _ [¥] ^ ' { } 1
	か かきくけこ 2	カ カキクケコ 2		A	ABC abc 2
	さ さしすせそ 3	サ サシスセソ 3		D	DEF def 3
	た たちつてと 4	タ タチツテト 4		G	GHI ghi 4
	な なにぬねの 5	ナ ナニヌネノ 5		J	JKL jkl 5
Lower slot	は はひふへほ 6	ハ ハヒフヘホ 6	Lower slot	定	@docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm
	ま まみむめも 7	マ マミムメモ 7		M	MNO mno 6
	や やゆよ 8	ヤ ヤユヨ 8		P	PQR Spqrs 7
	ら らりるれろ 9	ラ ラリルレロ 9		T	TUV tuv 8
	わ ををんー、。？！「」 □ 0	ワ ワヲンー、。？！「」 □ 0		W	WXYZ wxyz 9
	Line feed	Line feed			! * # \$ % & ' () * + , ; < = > ? □ 0 Line feed

□: Indicates two-byte space in hiragana/kanji mode and one-byte space in katakana, alphanumeric mode.

- “*” and “°” are switched with every press of (☺) in hiragana/kanji mode.
- Numeric characters are displayed as one-byte characters.

List of fixed phrases

■ Common (20 items)

おはよう	おやすみ
おはよー！今日も一日がんばりましょう。	昨日は、とっても楽しかったです。どうもありがとう。
連絡下さい。	今から電話してもいいですか？
ごめんなさい、遅れます。	今日は〇〇の日です。早く帰って来てね。
〇〇まで迎えに来て！お願いします。	〇〇について知っている人は〇〇までに〇〇に教えて下さい。
もう少し待ってて！	
いってらっしゃい。	留守電にメッセージをお願いします。
〇〇で待ってます。	ただいま電話にすることができません。メールでご用件をお知らせ下さい。
集合時間は〇〇、集合場所は〇〇です。	
今日は外で食べて帰ります。ご飯はいりません。	メールありがとう。
〇〇の写真送ります。	最近の〇〇の写真です。

■ Pleasure (20 items)

今なにしてるの？電話かメールを下さい。	どこか、遊びに行こーよ！
電話ちょうだい！電話番号は〇〇です。	おくれちゃう、ゴメン！
どこにいるの？	集合！
時間だよーん！！	トラブル発生！！
会いたい！	大好き！
みんなで飲みませんか？〇〇に〇〇。	今日〇〇に、〇〇へ行きませんか？
〇〇の待ち合わせ時間と場所、決めようよ。	〇〇に行かない？
〇〇のメンバー募集！詳しくは〇〇まで連絡下さい。	
今度みんなで〇〇へ行きましょう。〇〇までで、都合の良い日を教えてください。	
今度みんなで〇〇へ行きましょう。いいところがありましたら、お知らせ下さい。	
〇〇しませんか？日時：〇〇、場所：〇〇。出欠をご連絡下さい。	
メッセージ下さい！！	〇〇の時の写真だよ。

■ Business (20 items)

本日の〇〇会議は、〇〇となりました。	本日の〇〇訪問は、〇〇となりました。
〇〇へ直行します。	〇〇へ直帰します。
電車遅延のため、〇〇遅れます。	至急TEL下さい。
予定変更！TEL下さい。	待ち合わせ変更！場所：〇〇、時間：〇〇
〇〇頃まで、携帯電話の電源を切ります。	振込口座：〇〇銀行〇〇支店、口座番号〇〇、名義人名〇〇です。
〇〇の件、よろしく願い致します。	
今日、一杯どうですか？連絡下さい。	FAX確認願います。
次の指示を待て。	変更します。
延期します。	中止します。
〇〇での写真送ります。	今わかりません。
あとで連絡します。	

■ Answer (20 items)

Thank you!	Good!	OKです。	NGです。
いいよ。	行きます。	了解。	ダメ！
ごめんネ・・・	スミマセン、無理です。	本当？	おまかせっ！！
関係ないね！	うらやましー。	お疲れさま。	反対。
賛成。	待ってました！	それは残念。	写真届きました。

■ Others (20 items)

またねー！	今どこ？	お誕生日おめでとう。	おめでとう。
まじでー！？	まかせなさい！！	キャンセル。	いってきます。
頑張って！	ありがとう！	www.	.ne.jp
.co.jp	.or.jp	.ac.jp	.net
.com	.org	.html	http://

■ Pictogram words (20 items)

Pictogram words	Meaning	Pictogram words	Meaning	Pictogram words	Meaning
👋	ハロー！/またね (Hello! / See you.)	💪	ごきげん(High spirits)	☺	ピース(Peace)
🎵	るんるん (Cheerful)	😞	落ち込む (Depressed)	😵	どうしよう (At a loss)
😡	ぶんぶん(Huff)	😡	怒ってるぞ(Fury)	🌀	メロメロ (Crazy about)
😱	パニック(Panic)	😴	寝ます(Sleep)	💋	チュッ！(Kissing)
💕	ラブラブ(Love)	💨	ダッシュ(Dash)	🤔	えっ何？(What?)
📷	写真を撮る (Take a picture)	🍀	がんばれ！ (Good luck!)	👤	独りぼっち(Alone)
🎤	カラオケ(Karaoke)	⚽	サッカー(Soccer)		

• Pictogram words are not displayed by entering the meaning.

■ My phrase (up to 50 items)

• The registered fixed phrases are displayed.

List of face marks

Entering one of the following readings in hiragana/kanji mode allows to convert it. Entering “かお” or “かおもじ” also allows converting for face marks shown as .

■ 挨拶・返事(Greetings/Answer)

Face mark	Readings
(^-^)/^^	ばい あいさつ
(^ ^)/^	ばいばい あいさつ
(^-^)/~	ばいばい あいさつ
ヱ(^-^)^ byebye!!	ばいばい あいさつ
(^^)/	おーい じゃあ どーも よろしく あいさつ
(^-^)/	おーい じゃあ どーも よろしく あいさつ
(^^)/^^~	ばいばい あいさつ
(^-^)/	おーい あいさつ
((//^-//))f°	にこっ あいさつ
~('-'*)	やあ あいさつ
(*^-)/	ちわっ あいさつ
ヱ('ω`='ω`)/	おはよう あいさつ
(o^-')b	ぐっ ぐー へんじ
(≥ω≤)b	ぐっ ぐー へんじ
(・∀・)n	はい へんじ
('~*)ok	おっけー へんじ

Face mark	Readings
(`_')ゞ了解!	りょうかい へんじ
(o_')ノ	やあ あいさつ
(=°ω°)ノ	やあ あいさつ

■ 笑う・うれしい(Smile/Glad)

Face mark	Readings
(^-^)	にこっ わらう
(^-^)^	にこっ うれしい
(^o^)	うほほ にこっ わーい うれしい
o(^o^o)	うきうき うれしい
(o^-^o)	にこっ うれしい
(*^-*)	にこっ うれしい
(・∀・)	きたー にこっ わらう
ヱ(^▽^)/	わーい うれしい
^('^-')ノ	わーい うれしい
(*^▽^*)	にこっ うれしい
(☆▽☆)	きらーん うれしい

Face mark	Readings
(^^)v	やったね びーす にこっ ぶい うれしい
(=〰=)	にこっ うれしい
(' ∨ ')	にこっ うれしい
(≥ ∨ ≤)	うれしい
:)	にこっ すまいる わらう
V(^0^)	びーす うれしい
(^o^)/チツ	ちゅつ にこっ わらう
((o(^-^o))	わくわく うれしい
(^^)	にこっ わらう
v(^o^)	いいい ぶい びーす うれしい
(^_^)v	やったね びーす にこっ ぶい うれしい
(^・^)	にこっ わらう
(^0^)	わーい わらう
(^0^)/	おーい はーい わらう
(^0^)v	やったね びーす にこっ ぶい わらう
)^o^(	ほっぺがおちる わらう
\(^o^)/	わーい わらう
:~)	にこっ すまいる わらう
\(≥▽≤)/	きゃー うれしい
d(^o^)=b	ぐー うれしい
ε=ε(*~▽~)/	きゃー うれしい
(@^0^@)	うれしい
(' 艹 ')	むふふ うれしい

■ 照れる・怒る(Shy/Angry)

Face mark	Readings
(^^Σ	ぼりぼり てれる
f(^_^)	てへ てれる
(#.^.#)	にこっ ぼっ てれる
(*^.^*)	えへっ てれる
((//▽//))	てれ てれる
(*'-')	てへっ てれる
(=° ω° =)	てへっ てれる
(*´ 旦 `*)	こまる てれ てれる
:p	てへっ てれる
('▽')	うふふ てれる
\(*´ 旦 `´)/	こら ごるあ ごるあ おこる
o~_)=○☆	ばんち おこる
(ノ-")ノ~└┬┘	ちゃぶだい おこる
(~_#)	こらっ おこる
:-)	ふまん おこる
Ψ(`◇´)Ψ	こら おこる

Face mark	Readings
(ノ`△´)ノ	こらっ おこる
(●`ε´●)	ぶんぶん むかつ おこる

■ 泣く・悲しい(Cry/Sorrow)

Face mark	Readings
(>_<)	あいだ いたい いてー ひえー なく
(T^T)	うるうる なく
(T_T)	しくしく なく
(/_;)	しくしく なく
(+_+)	びくっ かなしい
(x_x;)	がっくり かなしい
(/_・_)	くすん なく
(つ 旦 `)	ぐすん なく
○ ￣ _	がっくし かなしい
(´・ω´)	しょぼん かなしい
(;0;)	しくしく なく
(>_<)	なく
(;_;)	しくしく なく
(T-T)	なき うるうる なく
(TOT)	なき うるうる なく
(/_・o)	いたい なく
:<	なく かなしい
(;´ 旦 ⊥)	なき ぐすん なく
°・(ノ 旦 `)°・	えーん なく

■ 驚き(Surprised)

Face mark	Readings
(*~*)	びくっ おどろき
(..?)	めがてん おどろき
(..;)	めがてん おどろき
(°-°)	うーん おどろき
(@_@)	びくっ おどろき
(--;)	ぎくっ おどろき
(-☆)	きらーん おどろき
(□□;)!!	がーん おどろき
(° 0° ;)	ぼかーん おどろき
Σ(□□)!	びっくり がーん ぎく おどろき
(□◇~;)	えっ おどろき
\(° □° ;)/	えっ おどろき
(;° □°)	えっ おどろき
((((° 旦°))))	がくがく おどろき
(=.=;)	ぎくっ てつや おどろき
(..;)	めがてん おどろき
(°0°)	ぎくっ ぎょ おどろき
(°0°;	ぎくっ ぎょ おどろき
(@_@。	びくっ ぎょっ おどろき

Face mark	Readings
(° □°)	ぼかーん おどろき
(° _°)	うーん おどろき
(°・°;)	めがてん おどろき
(° _°)	めがてん おどろき
(°・°;)	めがてん おどろき
(°・°)	めがてん おどろき
(° 0°)/	おおー びっくり おどろき
(° 0°;;)	ぎくっ おどろき
Σ(° □°;)	がーん おどろき

■ 疑問・焦り (Question/Impatient)

Face mark	Readings
(^^;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(?_?)	なぜ ぎもん
(-_-;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
W(° 0°)=W	ばたばた ぎもん
σ(° _°;)?	えっ ぎもん
(;▽_▽)ジ-	じー ぎもん
0(><);(><)0	あたふた あせり
(° □° ; ≡ ; ° □°)	あたふた あせり
^^;	ぎくっ あせり
(^^;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(° _°;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(° _°;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(° _°;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(¥ ¥;)	ぎくっ あせ ぎもん
(*_*)	びくっ あせり
° _°;	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(?_?;	ぎくっ なぜ ぎもん
E = ⌈(° _°)⌋	にげる あせり
(° ▽° ;)	ぎくっ あせ えっ あせり
((○(>_<)○))	じたばた あせり
(;° 0°)	ぎくっ あせ あせり

■ その他(Others)

Face mark	Readings
(~▽~@) ♪ ♪ ♪	うたう
(°◇°) s	りょうかい おっけー らじゃ
m(_ _)m	ぺこり
_(. _.)_	ぺこり
<(_ _)>	ありがと おねがい ごめん ぺこり
≡≡≡∧(*--)/	いそぐ にげる
(° _°;))))))コソコソ...	こそこそ
p(° ^°)q	がんばれ ふぁいと
;)	ういんく

Face mark	Readings
(° _°)	ういんく
(° ▽°)イイ	いい
(° ^°)	かんしゃ ありがとう
!(° ^°)!	びんぼーん
∧(° ^°)	よしよし おい
(*≧≦*)	ぶっ
(σ・▽・)σ	げつつ
(° _°)	にやり
(° ▽°)つ	どうぞ
(° ^°)_旦~	どうぞ おちゃ
(㊤ □°)㊤	きて かもん おいで
♪~(° ε°)	くちぶえ
(° _°)y-~~	たばこ
(°・ω・°)	しゃきーん
⊂(° ▽°)⊃	せーふ
(-.-;)y-~~~	いっぶく
(-°-)y-°°°	いっぶく
(° ~°)	うまい たべる
(° ^°)	おねがい
(° ^°)人(° ^°)	かんばい なかま たっち
(i _i) \ (° _°)	よしよし
(° ▽°)σ)~0~	つんつん
~~(m ° □°)m	たすけて
~~(m ° ▽°)m	いひひ
φ(° _°)XEXE	めもめも かきかき
(° ▽°)] モシシ	もしもし
(° □°)	あーん
⌈(° ▽°;) ⌋	やれやれ
(° ^°;)	はぁ ためいき
(; _ _)=3	ためいき
(-°-;)	うーん
(° ^°)	ふふん じまん
(° ^°)	よだれ
(° ^°+°)フ	ふっ
(° ~°)	ほへー
(° 0~)	ほへー
(p _°)	むしめがね
(- _°)	じとっ
(- _°)	じとっ
(- _°)凸	ちちち
(. .)	どれどれ
[壁] _°)	ちらっ
(+°+)	いたい
(- _°)zzz	ねてる ねる
(_ _).00	ねむい

Face mark	Readings
(´ _ > `)	ふーん
(UoU)	ねむい
(^ (I) ^)	くま
U^I^U	いぬ

Face mark	Readings
ホ イツ(- _) /	ぼい
＼ (° ▽、 °) /	よだれ
> °)))) ≡	さかな

List of symbols

[illegible]

□: Indicates blank space (one-byte/two-byte).

- Some symbols above may look different from the displayed ones.

List of pictograms

Entering one of the following readings in hiragana/kanji mode allows to convert it.

- Entering “えもじ” also allows converting for Pictogram 1.
- Entering “えもじに” also allows converting for Pictogram 2.
- Pictograms used in mail may not be displayed correctly when sent to another party using a non i-mode terminal.
- Pictogram 2 used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some other terminals.

Pictogram 1

Pictogram	Readings
	はーと
	はーと
	しゅれん はーと
	はーと
	うれしい にこ かお
	おこる いかり むか かお
	がっかり かなしい かお
	かなしい かお
	ふらふら かお
	いぬ どうぶつ
	ねこ どうぶつ

Pictogram	Readings
	はれ てんき たいよう
	くもり てんき くも
	あめ てんき かさ
	ゆき てんき
	かみなり てんき
	たいふう てんき うずまき
	きり てんき
	こさめ てんき かさ
	るんるん おんぷ おながく
	むーど おんぷ おながく
	おんせん ふる おふう
	かわいい はな

Pictogram	Readings
	きすまーく きす くち
	びかびか きらきら
	ひらめき でんきゅう びかびか
	むか いかり おこる
	ばんち て ぐる
	ばくだん
zzz	ねむい ねむり すいみん ねる
!	びっくり
!?	びっくり はてな
!!	びっくり

Pictogram	Readings
	どん しょうげき
	あせ
	あせ
	だっしゅ
	ちょうおん
	ちょうおん
	けってい おーけー おっけー
	みぎうえ みぎななめうえ やじるし
	みぎした みぎななめした やじるし
	ひだりうえ ひだりなな めうえ やじるし
	ひだりした ひだりなな めした やじるし
	ぐっど やじるし
	ばっど やじるし
	め
	みみ
	ぐー て
	ちょき ぶい びーす て
	ばー て
	あし
	はーと とらんぶ
	すべーど とらんぶ
	だいや とらんぶ
	くらぶ くらーばー とらんぶ
	でんしゃ のりもの てつどう
	ちかてつ のりもの
	しんかんせん のりもの
	くるま のりもの じどうしゃ
	くるま のりもの じどうしゃ
	ばす くるま のりもの
	ふね のりもの
	ひこうき のりもの くうこう
	りぞーと よっと のりもの
	くりすます つりー
	いえ じたく
	びる かいしゃ
	ゆうびんきょく ゆうびん
	びょういん
	ぎんこう

Pictogram	Readings
	えーていーえむ ぎんこう
	ほてる
	こんびにえんすすとあ こんびに
	がそりんすたんど がそりん がすすた がそすた
	ちゅうしゃじょう ばーきんぐ ばーく
	しんごう
	といれ
	れすとらん しょくじ ごはん
	きっさてん こーひー かっぶ かふえ
	ばー かくてる さけ
	びーる さけ
	ふぁーすとふーど はんばーがー
	ぶていっく くつ ひーる
	びょういん はさみ とこや
	からおけ まいく
	えいが
	ゆうえんち もくば
	おんがく へっどほん
	あーと
	えんげき
	いべんと
	ちけっと きっぶ
	すばーつ しゃつ
	やきゅう すばーつ ばーる
	ごるふ すばーつ
	てにす すばーつ
	さっかー すばーつ ばーる
	すきー すばーつ
	ばすけっとばーる ばすけ ばすけっと すばーつ
	もーたーすばーつ ふらっぐ はた すばーつ
	ぼけっとべる ぼけべる
	きつえん たばこ
	きんえん たばこ
	かめら
	かばん ばつぐ
	ほん
	りぼん
	ぶれぜんと

Pictogram	Readings
	ばーすでー ろうそく たんじょうび
	でんわ
	でんわ けいたいでんわ けいたい けーたい
	めーる
	めも
	てれび
	げーむ
	しーでいー おんがく
	くつ すにーかー
	めがね
	くるまいす
	おひつじぎ せいざ
	おうしぎ せいざ
	ふたござ せいざ
	かにざ せいざ
	ししぎ せいざ
	おとめざ せいざ
	てんびんざ せいざ
	さそりぎ せいざ
	いてぎ せいざ
	やぎぎ せいざ
	みずがめぎ せいざ
	うおぎ せいざ
	しんげつ つき
	つき
	はんげつ つき
	みかづき つき
	まんげつ つき
	でんわ けいたいでんわ けいたい けーたい
	めーる
	ふあつくす
	あいもーど
	あいもーど
	どこも
	どこも
	ゆうりょう えん おかね かね
	むりょう ふりー
	あいでいー
	ばすわーど かぎ ろっく
	りたーん えんたー
	くりあ
	さーち むしめがね
	にゅー

Pictogram	Readings
	いちじょうほう はた ふらっぐ
	ふりーだいやる
	しゃーぶだいやる
	もばきゅー
	いち すうじ
	に すうじ
	さん すうじ
	よん し すうじ

Pictogram	Readings
	ご すうじ
	ろく すうじ
	なな しち すうじ
	はち すうじ
	きゅー きゅう く すうじ
	ぜろ れい すうじ
	かちんこ えいが
	ふくろ

Pictogram	Readings
	ぺん
	ひとかけ ひと
	いす
	よる つき
	すーん
	おん
	えんど おわり
	とけい じかん

Pictogram 2

Pictogram	Readings
	じてんしゃ のりもの
	れんち こうぐ しゅうり
	ばそこん びーしー
	えんぴつ
	くりっぷ
	さゆう やじるし
	じょうげ やじるし
	りさいくる
	えぬじー
	まるひ ひみつ
	きんし
	くうしつ くうせき くうしゃ あき
	ごうかく
	まんしつ まんせき まんしゃ まん
	きけん けいこく びつくり
	こびーらいと しー
	とれーどまーく ていーえむ
	れじすたーどとれーど まーく あーる
	あいあぶり
	あいあぶり
	どるぶくろ おかね かね
	うでどけい とけい じかん
	すなどけい とけい
	おにぎり おむすび
	しょーとけーき けーき

Pictogram	Readings
	ばん
	どんぶり らーめん
	ゆのみ おちゃ
	とっくり にほんしゅ さけ
	わいんぐらす わいん さけ
	ばなな くだもの
	りんご くだもの
	さくらんぼ くだもの
	くろーばー よつば は はつば
	ちゅーりっぷ はな
	め は はつば
	もみじ は はつば
	さくら はな
	かたつむり どうぶつ
	ひよこ とり どうぶつ
	ぺんぎん どうぶつ
	さかな どうぶつ
	うま どうぶつ
	ぶた どうぶつ
	ていーしゃつ しゃつ
	じーんず じーばん ずぼん
	けしょう くちべに
	ゆびわ りんぐ
	おうかん
	ちゃべる べる あらーむ
	どあ とびら
	がっこう

Pictogram	Readings
	なみ うみ
	ふじさん やま
	すのぼ すのーぼーど
	はしる ひと だっしゅ
	うーん かお
	ほっ にこ かお
	あせ かお
	あせ かお
	むっ むか かお
	ぼけ かお
	はーと かお
	あっかんペー ペー かお
	ういんく かお
	うれしい にこ かお
	がまん かお
	ねこ どうぶつ かお
	えーん かなしい なく かお
	なみだ かなしい なく かお
	うまい おいしい かお
	うっしっし うれしい かお
	げっそり さげび かお
	おーけー ぐっど て おっけー
	らぶれたー てがみ めーる
	さいふ おかね かね

KUTEN code input list

- Some of the following may look different from the displayed ones.

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code										1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code										0	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	083	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	207	廣	雁	頑	頑	頑	頑	頑	頑	頑	頑
011	イ	エ	オ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	サ	シ	130	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	207	企	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
012	イ	エ	オ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	サ	シ	131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	208	希	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
013	イ	エ	オ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	サ	シ	132	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	209	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
014	イ	エ	オ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	サ	シ	133	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	210	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
015	イ	エ	オ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	サ	シ	134	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	211	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
016	イ	エ	オ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	サ	シ	135	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	212	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
017	イ	エ	オ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	サ	シ	136	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	213	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
018	イ	エ	オ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	サ	シ	137	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	214	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
019	イ	エ	オ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	サ	シ	138	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	215	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
020	イ	エ	オ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	サ	シ	139	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	216	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
021	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	160	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	217	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
022	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	161	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	218	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
023	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	162	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	219	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
024	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	163	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	220	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
025	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	164	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	221	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
026	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	165	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	222	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
027	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	166	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	223	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
028	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	167	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	224	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
029	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	168	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	225	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
030	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	169	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	226	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
031	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	170	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	227	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
032	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	171	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	228	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
033	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	172	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	229	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
034	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	173	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	230	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
035	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	174	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	231	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
036	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	175	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	232	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
037	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	176	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	233	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
038	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	177	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	234	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
039	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	178	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	235	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
040	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	179	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	236	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
041	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	180	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	237	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
042	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	181	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	238	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
043	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	182	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	239	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
044	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	183	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	240	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
045	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	184	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	241	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
046	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	185	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	242	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
047	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	186	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	243	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
048	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	187	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	244	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
049	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	188	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	245	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
050	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	189	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	246	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
051	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	190	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	247	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
052	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	191	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	248	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
053	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	192	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	249	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
054	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	193	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	250	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
055	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	194	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	251	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
056	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	195	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	252	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
057	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	196	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	253	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
058	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	197	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	254	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
059	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	198	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	255	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
060	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	199	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	256	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
061	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	200	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	257	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
062	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	201	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	258	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
063	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	202	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	259	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
064	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	203	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	260	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
065	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	204	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	261	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
066	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	205	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	262	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
067	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	206	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	263	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
068	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	207	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	264	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	逢	
069	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	208																					

1st to 3rd digit										4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code										1st to 3rd digit										4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code													
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9				
267	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	267	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	267	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	267	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
268	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	268	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	268	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	268	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
269	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	269	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	269	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	269	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
270	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	270	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	270	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	270	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
271	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	271	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	271	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	271	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
272	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	272	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	272	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	272	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
273	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	273	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	273	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	273	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
274	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	274	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	274	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	274	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
275	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	275	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	275	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	275	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
276	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	276	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	276	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	276	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
277	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	277	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	277	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	277	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
278	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	278	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	278	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	278	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
279	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	279	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	279	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	279	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
280	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	280	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	280	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	280	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
281	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	281	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	281	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	281	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
282	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	282	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	282	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	282	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
283	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	283	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	283	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	283	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
284	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	284	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	284	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	284	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
285	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	285	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	285	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	285	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
286	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	286	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	286	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	286	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
287	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	287	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	287	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	287	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
288	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	288	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	288	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	288	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
289	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	289	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	289	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	289	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
290	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	290	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	290	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	290	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
291	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	291	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	291	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	291	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
292	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	292	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	292	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	292	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
293	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	293	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	293	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	293	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
294	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	294	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	294	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	294	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
295	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	295	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	295	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	295	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
296	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	296	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	296	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	296	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
297	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	297	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	297	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	297	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
298	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	298	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	298	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	298	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
299	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	299	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	299	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	299	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
300	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	300	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	300	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	300	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
301	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	301	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	301	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	301	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
302	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	302	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	302	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	302	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
303	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	303	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	303	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	303	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
304	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	304	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	304	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	304	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
305	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	305	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	305	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	305	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
306	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	306	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	306	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	306	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
307	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	307	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	307	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	307	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
308	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	308	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	308	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	308	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
309	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	309	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	309	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	309	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
310	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	310	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	310	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7													

KUTEN code input list

[illegible]

Combination of operations during Multiaccess

The following table shows whether or not a process that is generated or to be performed can be operated when any other operation is in progress:

○: Another communication is available.

△: Another communication is available depending on conditions.

×: Another communication is unavailable.

Processes that occur or are performed	Voice call		Videophone call		PushTalk		i-mode*1	Full Browser	i-mode Mail	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Connect	Connect	Send	Receive
During a voice call	△*1	△*1, 2	×	△*3	×	×	○	○	○	○*5
During a videophone call	×	△*3	×	△*3	×	×	×	×	×	×
During a PushTalk call	×	△*6	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During i-mode	○	○	○*7	△*8	○*7	△*9	×	○*7	○	○
Connecting to Full Browser	○	○	○*10	△*8	○*10	△*9	×	×	○*10	○
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	○	○	○*7	△*8	○*7	△*9	○	○*11	○*12	○*12
During SMS reception/transmission	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*12	○*12
During i-appli operation	○*13	○*13	○*13	○*13	○*14	△*15	×	×	○	○*5
miniSD memory card in operation (other than copy or format processing)	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○
During packet communication connecting to PC	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	△*2, 16	×	△*3	×	×	×	×	×	×
During connecting to the Data Center	○*17	○	○*18	△*8	○*18	△*9	×	×	×	×

Processes that occur or are performed	SMS		Packet communication		64K data communication		Data transmission (infrared communication)	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive
During a voice call	○	○*5	○	○	×	△*3	×	×
During a videophone call	×	○*5	×	×	×	△*3	×	×
During a PushTalk call	×	○*5	×	×	×	×	×	×
During i-mode	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
Connecting to Full Browser	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	○*12	○*12	×	×	×	×	×	×
During SMS reception/transmission	○*12	○*12	○	○	○*19	○	×	×
During i-appli operation	○	○*5	○	○	○	○	○	×
miniSD memory card in operation (other than copy or format processing)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
During packet communication connecting to PC	○*20	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	○*5	×	×	×	△*3	×	×
During connecting to the Data Center	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×

- During the data copy or format processing for the miniSD memory card, infrared communication, data transmission via USB connection or miniSD mode, any communication is unavailable.
 - In case a videophone call is made connecting with the external device, it is the operation during 64K data communication.
 - During i-mode (i-mode connection) includes i-channel communication (except receiving information).
 - Receiving i-mode mail includes receiving Message R/F and receiving the information of i-channel.
- *1 In case Call Waiting Service is active, you can make a call to another party or receive from another party during a call.
 - *2 Subscribers to Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service can also use these services.
 - *3 In case Call Waiting Service or Call Forwarding Service is active, the call is recorded as missed call in the received call history. In addition, when **Set arrival act** is activated, the call is recorded as missed call in the received call history even if Call Waiting Service or Call Forwarding Service is deactivated.
 - *4 The call is recorded as missed call in the received call history.
 - *5 The ring alert does not sound.
 - *6 Depends on the setting of PushTalk Arrival Act.
 - *7 i-mode communication is disconnected if active.
 - *8 Depends on the setting of Data Session Arrival Act.
 - *9 Depends on the setting of i-mode Arrival Act: PT.
 - *10 In case of connecting to Full Browser, Full Browser connection is disconnected.
 - *11 Connecting is available after finishing sending/receiving i-mode Mail.
 - *12 Sending while sending or receiving while receiving cannot be performed. Sending and receiving may not be allowed at the same time.
 - *13 Melody of i-appli is stopped. When i-appli is using i-mode communication, i-mode communication is disconnected.
 - *14 When i-appli is using i-mode communication, i-mode communication is disconnected.
 - *15 Depends on the setting of i-mode Arrival Act: PT when i-appli is using i-mode communication.
 - *16 In case Call Waiting Service is active, you can select answering a call after finishing the current communication or rejecting the incoming call.
 - *17 In case of connecting to the Data Center, dialing via the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) is not available.
 - *18 Communication to the Data Center is disconnected if active.
 - *19 Sending may not be available during sending SMS.
 - *20 You can compose and send SMS from the phonebook.

Combination of functions during Multitask

Whether or not selections made in the **New Task** menu can be combined with the currently run or set function is described in the following table:

○ : can be selected × : cannot be selected

New Task menu item Function in progress	Dial	1 Mail										2 i-mode							
		1 Inbox	2 Compose message	3 Chat Mail	4 Unsent messages	5 Outbox	6 Check new message			7 SMS		8 Read templates	1 Menu	2 Bookmark	3 Go to location			4 Screen Memo	
							1 i-mode message	2 SMS	3 Receive option	1 Compose SMS	3 Sent SMS				2 URL history	3 Last visited URL			
Phone call	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Dial input	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Videophone call	×	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
PushTalk	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
64K data comm.	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○
PPP data comm.	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Outbox/Inbox/Unsent messages	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○
Compose i-mode Mail/SMS	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Chat mail	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○
Read mail templates	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received/Sent SMS (UIM)	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○
Message R/F list screen	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Message R/F view screen	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
Check i-mode Message	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Check SMS	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
iMenu	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
Full Browser	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
Enter URL/URL history/Bookmark/Last Visited URL	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
Screen Memo list screen	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
Screen Memo display screen	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
i-Channel	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
i-appli/Software list	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
i-appli download	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×
i-motion (Play video/music)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Melody	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Image (My Picture)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Chara-den	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
My Document	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Camera	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Movie Camera/Sound Recorder	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Bar Code Reader	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
ToruCa	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Music Player	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Phonebook/PushTalk phonebook	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
PushTalkPlus	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Notepad	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Scheduler	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Calculator	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Dictionaries	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received Calls/Redial	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Own Number	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Receiving i-mode Mail	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Receiving SMS	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Answer Machine/Voice Memo	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Alarm clock/Schedule alarm	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Timer	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
miniSD memory card	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×
Videophone call by external device	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	×
Connecting to the Data Center	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Display communication log in Phonebook	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

○ : can be selected × : cannot be selected

Function in progress	New Task menu item	2 i-mode										3	4 Phonebook & Logs									
		5 Message retrieval	6 Message R/F		7 i-Channel list	8 Full Browser					i-appli	1 Phonebook	2 PushTalk phonebook	3 Received calls	4 Redial	5 Ans. machine/V. memo			6 Own number			
			1 Message R	2 Message F		1 Home	2 Bookmark	3 Enter URL	4 URL history	5 Last visited URL						1 Recorded messages	2 Record voice memo	3 Voice memos				
Phone call		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○		
Dial input		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Videophone call		×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	○	×	×	○		
PushTalk		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	○		
64K data comm.		×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	○	○		
PPP data comm.		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Outbox/Inbox/Unsent messages		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Compose i-mode Mail/SMS		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Chat mail		×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Read mail templates		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Received/Sent SMS (UIM)		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Message R/F list screen		○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Message R/F view screen		○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Check i-mode Message		×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Check SMS		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
iMenu		○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Full Browser		○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Enter URL/URL history/Bookmark/Last Visited URL		○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Screen Memo list screen		○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Screen Memo display screen		○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
i-Channel		○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
i-appli/Software list		○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
i-appli download		○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
i-motion (Play video/music)		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Melody		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Image (My Picture)		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Chara-den		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
My Document		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Camera		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Movie Camera/Sound Recorder		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○		
Bar Code Reader		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
ToruCa		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Music Player		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○		
Phonebook/PushTalk phonebook		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○		
PushTalkPlus		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○		
Notepad		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Scheduler		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Calculator		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Dictionaries		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Received Calls/Redial		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○		
Own Number		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×		
Receiving i-mode Mail		×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Receiving SMS		×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Answer Machine/Voice Memo		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○		
Alarm clock/Schedule alarm		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Timer		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
miniSD memory card		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○		
Videophone call by external device		×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○		
Connecting to the Data Center		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×		
Display communication log in Phonebook		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		

○ : can be selected × : cannot be selected

Function in progress	New Task menu item	5 Data Box					6 LifeKit				7 Stationery			8 Adjust volume			9	#
		1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	1	2	3	Music player	
		Image	i-motion	Melody	Chara-den	My Documents	Bar code reader	ToruCa	Camera	Movie Camera	Sound recorder	Scheduler	Notepad	Calculator	Dictionaries	Call alert volume	i-a-ppleited sound	
Phone call		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	○	×
Dial input		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Videophone call		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	×
PushTalk		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
64K data comm.		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	○	×
PPP data comm.		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Outbox/Inbox/Unsent messages		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Compose i-mode Mail/SMS		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Chat mail		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Read mail templates		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Received/Sent SMS (UIM)		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Message R/F list screen		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Message R/F view screen		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Check i-mode Message		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Check SMS		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
iMenu		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Full Browser		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Enter URL/URL history/Bookmark/Last Visited URL		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Screen Memo list screen		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Screen Memo display screen		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-Channel		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-αppli/Software list		×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
i-αppli download		×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
i-motion (Play video/music)		○	×	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Melody		○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Image (My Picture)		×	○	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Chara-den		×	×	○	×	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
My Document		○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Camera		×	×	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Movie Camera/Sound Recorder		×	×	○	×	○	×	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Bar Code Reader		×	×	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
ToruCa		○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Music Player		○	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Phonebook/PushTalk phonebook		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
PushTalkPlus		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Notepad		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○
Scheduler		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○
Calculator		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○
Dictionaries		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○
Received Calls/Redial		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○
Own Number		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Receiving i-mode Mail		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Receiving SMS		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Answer Machine/Voice Memo		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Alarm clock/Schedule alarm		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Timer		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
miniSD memory card		×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Videophone call by external device		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	○	×
Connecting to the Data Center		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Display communication log in Phonebook		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

* Some functions which can be selected may be unavailable depending on the status of activating or lock settings, etc.

Services available for FOMA terminal

Service	Phone number
Collect call (calls charged to receiver)	106 (no area code)
Directory assistance for general subscriber phones and for DoCoMo's mobile phones (charges apply) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104 (no area code)
Telegrams (charges apply) 8 a.m. to 10 p.m.	115 (no area code)
Time (charges apply)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charges apply)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charges apply)	171 (no area code)

INFORMATION

- If you use the collect call service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen with tax included) per call. (as of May 2006)
- If you use the directory assistance service (104), a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen with tax included) is billed together with the call charge. Note that this service is available free from charge for those who are under special conditions. For further information, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a general subscriber phone. (as of May 2006)
- Note that calls to 110, 119 or 118 from FOMA terminal cannot be located. Since the police or fire department authorities may call you to confirm, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number and detailed information of your whereabouts. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, stay in one place when you make the call and do not turn off the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.
- Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or general subscriber phone if you cannot get in touch with the local authorities.
- A general subscriber phone, when it is set for "Call Forwarding", can forward an incoming call to a mobile phone. In this case, even when the receiver's side is busy, is outside the service area, or is turned off, the caller may still hear ringing alert. It is due to some optional setting applied to the caller's or receiver's side.
- You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q², Message Dial and make credit card calls. However, credit card calls can be made from a general subscriber phone/pay phone to FOMA terminal.

Options and related devices

Combining FOMA terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety of uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the region. For details, contact DoCoMo Shops.

For details about the optional accessories, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- Battery pack D06
- Rear cover D11
- Desktop holder D09
- FOMA AC adapter 01
- FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01
- FOMA DC adapter 01
- FOMA battery adapter 01
- Flat type earphone/microphone set with switch P01/P02
- Flat type stereo earphone set P01
- Earphone jack converter adapter P001
- Earphone/microphone set with switch P001*1/P002*1
- Stereo earphone set P001*1
- Earphone terminal P001*1
- FOMA USB cable
- Data communication adapter D01
- FOMA indoor auxiliary antenna
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01*2
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- In-car holder 01
- Carrying case L 01

*1 The earphone jack converter adapter P001 is required.

*2 FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required to connect to FOMA D902iS.

About the data link software

The FOMA D Series Data Link Software can be used to transfer data such as Bookmark between your FOMA terminal and a connected PC. You can install the FOMA D Series Data Link Software from the attached CD-ROM or download it from the following websites:

<http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d902is/>

- For details on the installation of data link software, see "README_DL" file (text format) of "DataLink" folder in the attached CD-ROM.
- For details on how to download, transferable data, operating procedure and operation environment, access the website above or refer to the data link software Help menu.

- The FOMA USB cable (optional) is required for connecting to PC.
- Copyright laws forbid transfer of downloaded information from FOMA terminal to external sources even in its use of the data link software. Also, you cannot forward the data if it is prohibited from being output from FOMA terminal.

Supported OS

Windows 98SE, Me, 2000, XP

- A PC/AT compatible machine for the above OS is required.

When using the data link software

- Copyright laws
Although this software is distributed as freeware, note that the copyright belongs to Mitsubishi Electric Corporation.
- Liability
Mitsubishi Electric Corporation assumes no legal responsibility for defect liability, including software issues and false operations and other responsibility. Additionally, Mitsubishi Electric Corporation makes no guarantees whatsoever as to the merchantability of the software and conformance to specific purposes of customers.

Contact information for technical matters concerning the data link software

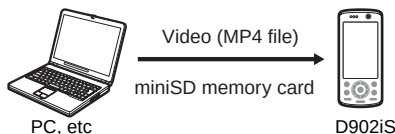
Mitsubishi Electric Data Link Support Center:
03-5319-5720

Business hours: weekdays 9:00 to 12:00/13:00 to 17:00 (closed on Saturdays, Sundays, national holidays, new year's holidays and company holidays)

- To avoid mistakes, please double-check the number before dialing.

Playing video data downloaded from the external devices on FOMA terminal

You can play video files created with external devices such as a PC on FOMA terminals by converting into the playable format and storing in the miniSD memory cards.



Converting the file format via Motion Smoothy 2

You can convert video files on PC to the playable format on FOMA terminal by using Motion Smoothy 2 contained in the attached CD-ROM, which is the software for converting the video on PC.

The compatible video file format is as follows:

Item	Compatible video file format
Before converting*1	AVI, MOV, WMV, MPEG1, MPEG2
After converting	MP4 (Image size: 320 x 240 dots)

*1 Some files cannot be converted depending on the PC environment.

- For the operation method of Motion Smoothy 2, please refer to "FOMA D902iS Motion Smoothy 2 簡易操作ガイド" (Simple User's Manual for Motion Smoothy 2 of FOMA D902iS) and HELP of Motion Smoothy 2.
- To play the converted video files on FOMA terminal, it is required to transfer video files saved in PC to the miniSD memory card. The miniSD memory card inserted to FOMA terminal can be used on PC by using the FOMA USB cable (optional). ➡P342
- How to play video files saved in the miniSD memory card ➡P338

Operating environment of Motion Smoothy 2

Item	Operating environment
PC	PC/AT compatible computer equipped with the processor with Intel Pentium III 800MHz or more
OS	Windows 2000 (DirectX8.1 or later), XP
Memory	256 MB or more
Hard disk	256 MB or more free disk space

Item	Operating environment
Required software	Windows Media Player 7.1 or later (Requisite) Quick Time Player 6.1 or later (Recommended)*1 Playing software for MPEG2 such as DVD player (Recommended)*2
Display	Resolution is 1024 x 768 dots or more and having ability to display in True color or full color.
Other	Sound card is equipped and sound can be played.

*1 Required when converting the file of MOV format.
*2 Required when converting the file of MPEG2 format.

■ Installing Motion Smoothy 2

When setting up the attached CD-ROM in PC, the setup screen for the software appears. Click *Motion Smoothy 2*. Follow the procedures according to the instructions of the screen.

- The serial number to enter when installing is indicated on the seal attached on the CD-ROM.

■ Contact information for Motion Smoothy 2

Mitsubishi Electric Data Link Support Center
03-5319-5720
Office hours: weekdays 9:00 to 12:00 /13:00 to 17:00 (closed on Saturdays, Sundays, national holidays, new year's holidays and company holidays)
• To avoid mistakes, please double-check the number before dialing.

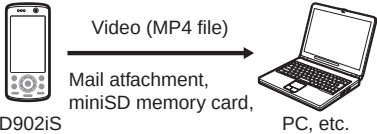
INFORMATION

- In case video files saved in the miniSD memory card are not played, update the information of the miniSD memory card. ➡P341

- The detailed information of operating environment, installation and the usage of Motion Smoothy 2 are described in "README_MS2" file (text format) within "MotionSmoothy" folder in the attached CD-ROM. Please confirm it before using Motion Smoothy 2.

Playing video data recorded with FOMA terminal on a PC

You can play videos (MP4 files) recorded with FOMA terminals on PCs by storing in the miniSD memory cards, sending by attaching to mail, etc.



- Video files supported by FOMA terminals ➡P174

About Video playing software

Playing videos (MP4 file) on a PC requires QuickTime Player (free of charge) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP), which is provided by Apple Computer Inc.
QuickTime Player can be downloaded from the website below:
<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>

- Downloading the software requires a PC with Internet access. Communication charges are separately required for downloading.
- For details including the operating environment, downloading procedure and operation instructions, visit the website shown above.

Troubleshooting

Check if updating software is required first and perform Software Update if necessary. ➡P457

Power supply and charging

- **FOMA terminal cannot be turned on (the terminal cannot be used).**
 - Is the battery pack connected properly? ➡P41
 - Is the battery depleted? ➡P45
 - When the mova terminal is on when using Dual Network Service, the FOMA terminal service is not available. Check whether or not FOMA terminal is on. For details, see "Network Services User's Guide".

- **The icon on the top of the display flashes and a rapid beep alarm is heard.**

The battery is almost discharged. Charge the battery.
➡P42
- **FOMA terminal cannot be charged.**
 - Is the battery pack connected properly? ➡P41
 - Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean the terminal with dry cotton swab, etc.
 - Is the AC adapter (optional) connector securely inserted to the FOMA terminal's jack or the desktop holder (optional) connection terminal? ➡P43
 - Is FOMA terminal correctly mounted on the desktop holder (optional)? ➡P44

- **The Enter key flashes in red during charging.**
End any calls or communications immediately.
Disconnect the optional AC adapter (Desktop holder) or DC adapter from FOMA terminal. Then connect all the devices correctly and start over. ●P42, P43
If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" listed on the back of this manual.

Phone

- **"Please wait for a while" is displayed and does not go out.**



- The voice line/Packet communication equipment is damaged or the voice line network/Packet communication network is so congested. Please retry later. The message can be deleted by pressing a dial key.
- You can call the number 110,119 and 118. However the call may not be connected depending on the status.
- **Calls cannot be made using the dial keys.**
 - Have you set All Lock? ●P158
 - Have you set Keypad Dial Lock? ●P161
 - Have you set Self Mode? ●P160
 - Have you set Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)? ●P159
- **圏外 (outside service area) is indicated on the display and you hear busy signals.**
Are you outside the service area or in an area with poor signal strength? ●P45
- **After dialing a number, you hear busy signals and cannot establish your call.**
 - Have you dialed the area code? ●P50
 - Did you hear the dial tone before entering a phone number?
 - Is 圏外 indicated? ●P45

- **The ring alert does not sound.**
 - Is the ring alert volume set to **silent**? ●P68
 - Is the following function set?
 - Reject/Accept Call ●P165
 - Anonymous Caller ●P166
 - Mute Ring Time Setting ●P167
 - Reject non-Reg. Caller ●P168
 - Have you set Silent Mode? ●P135
 - Have you set Public mode (Driving mode)? ●P73
 - Have you set All Lock? ●P158
 - Have you set Self Mode? ●P160
 - Is the ringing time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service set to **0 sec**? ●P392, P394

- **An incoming voice call cannot be responded with the Any Key Answer function.**
Is Any Key Answer set to **OFF**? ●P65

- **During a voice call, the other party's voice is hard to listen or too loud.**
Has the earpiece volume setting been changed? Adjust it appropriately. ●P68

- **The redial data/received call history is erased unexpectedly.**

- Is Keypad Dial Lock set on? ●P161
- Is PIM Lock set on? ●P160

- **When there is an incoming call, a name recorded in the phonebook is not displayed or the ring alert registered in the phonebook is not generated.**

- Is the phone number notified by the other party? ●P63
- Does the phone number of the other party match the phone number registered in the phonebook?
- Is more than one phone number registered in the same FOMA terminal phonebook or is the same phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook? ●P107
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ●P162

- **When there is an incoming call, a ring alert not set sounds.**

- The ring alert set in multiple functions sounds depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Incoming settings of Multi Number
 - ② Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ④ Sound Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ●P162

- **When there is an incoming call, an image not set appears.**

- When video/i-motion containing sound and image is set as ring alert for Call Alert, the set video/i-motion is used as the image.
- When call images are set in multiple functions, the image appears depending on the priority levels given below. For details ●P143
 - ① Incoming settings of Multi Number
 - ② The setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ④ Mail/Call Image (Call Alert/Videophone Alert) or Sound Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ●P162

- **When there is an incoming call, the Enter key lights/flashes in a lighting pattern and lighting color not set.**

- If a lighting pattern or lighting color is set for multiple functions, the Enter key lights/flashes depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Light Alert Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ●P162

Settings and operations

- **Key icon is displayed instead of menu icon and icon cannot be selected.**

In case some functions cannot be activated because of various lock functions or the UIM not inserted, their icons change to  and cannot be selected.

● The keypad sound is not generated.

- Is Keypad Sound set to **OFF**? ➡P130
- Have you activated Silent Mode? ➡P135

● A message **Insert UIM** is displayed when FOMA terminal is powered on.

The UIM may not be properly attached or may be damaged. Check to see if the UIM is properly attached.
➡P38

● All locked. appears on the display.

All Lock is set. Cancel All Lock. ➡P158

● Omakase Lock active. is displayed and cannot operate the terminal.

Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is set. ➡P159

● Nothing is indicated on the display.

- Is **Normal use of Display light time** in Display Light Setting set to other than **Always**? Screen display disappears after about 90 seconds have elapsed without any operation. ➡P144
Display reappears by any key operation.
- Have you set Key Lock? Display on the screen disappears while Key Lock is on. ➡P164

● Pressing keys has no effect.

The keys cannot be used because Key Lock is set. Cancel Key Lock. ➡P164

● The day of the week appears in Japanese.

- Is Select Language set to 日本語 (Japanese)? ➡P46
- Is the day for Clock Display Format set to **Japanese**? ➡P151

● The display is dim.

Is **Brightness** in Display Light Setting set to **Low**? ➡P144

● The lighting for the display and dial keys does not go on.

Is **Normal use of Display light time** in Display Light Setting set to **0 sec**? ➡P144

● When Auto Power ON is set, FOMA terminal cannot be turned on at the specified time.

If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), this function is not activated.

● Even if Alarm Clock or the schedule is set, the alarm does not operate at the specified date and time when the power is turned off.

- If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), this function is not activated.
- Set Alarm Auto Power ON to **ON**. ➡P369

● Call cost has not been charged.

The total cost for the UIM may exceed the limit (approx.16,770,000 yen).
You can reset to 0 yen. ➡P382

Mail and data

● Still images and video taken with the camera are blurred.

- When shooting an object nearby, use macro mode and switch to normal mode when shooting an object at a distance. ➡P186
- Shoot with the shake reduction set to **Auto** ➡P189

● Downloaded data, file attached to mail, or Message R/F cannot be displayed or played.

Because of the UIM operation restriction function, these functions are not available when the UIM is replaced or no UIM is inserted. ➡P39

● Names are not displayed or ring alert does not sound at the time of mail reception even though they have been registered in the phonebook.

- Does the mail address or number of the other party match that registered in the phonebook?
Register correct phone numbers and mail address in the phonebook. ➡P107
- Is more than one mail addresses or phone number registered in the same FOMA terminal phonebook, or is the same mail address or the phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook? ➡P107
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P162

● Mail reception is announced by other ring alert than that set for incoming mail.

- When the mail ring alert is set for multiple functions, the ring alert sounds depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Sound Setting
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the mail ring alert sounds depending on the conditions set for the last mail received.
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P162

● When mail is received, the Enter key lights/ flashes in other lighting pattern and lighting color than those set for incoming mail.

- When the incoming mail lighting pattern and color are set for multiple functions, the Enter key lights/flashes depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Light Alert Setting
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the Enter key lights or flashes in the incoming mail lighting pattern and color corresponding to the last mail received.
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P162

- The image and video is displayed as  and .

If the data has been destroyed, it cannot be correctly displayed and  or  appears.

- The screen reacts slowly when a key is pressed.

While transferring large-size data between FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card, reactions on the FOMA terminal screen may have a delay.

Other

- Function of IC card is disabled.

- Have you IC Card Lock set to **ON**? Or is IC Card Lock set to **ON** automatically by Timed Lock? ●P300, P301
- If the battery pack is not connected properly or removed, the function of IC card is disabled because IC Card Lock is set. Check if the battery pack is connected properly and turn power off and then back on. ●P41

Example of Error messages

Error Message

Main error messages displayed on FOMA terminal are shown in the alphabetical order as follows:

- The "(number)" or "XXX" in error messages is a code used to distinguish the error sent from the i-mode Center.

- Address is not valid. (451)

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS messages. Make sure if the address is correct.

- Authentication interrupted.

Displayed when you stop authentication on the screen.

- Authentication type is not supported. (401)

The authentication type is not supported and connection to the specified i-mode or internet web site is disabled.

- Cannot execute because of other tasks.

- Stop all other functions running before executing.
- Cannot be executed because the pattern definition is being updated. Execute after completing updating.

- Can not open any more window.

Cannot open a new window because the number of windows or frames is too many. It may be displayed when closing the open windows.

- Cannot save to a miniSD card. Saving to phone memory.

The still image/video with recorded Chara-den downloaded for which Rec. File Restriction has already been set to **File restricted** cannot be saved to a miniSD memory card. The **Rec. File Restriction** setting cannot be changed.

- Certificate is rejected.(tampered)

The site certificate is altered. Connection is suspended.

- Chat mail data damaged. Restore default settings?

The data of chat mail contains error. Select **Yes** to return to the default setting. Select **No** to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

- Check address.

Failed to transmit SMS. Make sure if the address is correct.

- Check address.

The mail address in the mail group contains error or no mail address is entered. Check the mail address.

- Check SMS center setting.

SMS setting at **SMSC** is incorrect. Check the setting. ●P266

- Connection failed.

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

- Connection failed. (403)

Failed to connect due to some cause such as connection to the specified i-mode or Internet web site was rejected.

- Connection failed. (503)

Failed to connect because of the maintenance of the server or congestion of the line. Please retry after a while.

- Connection failed. (562)

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

- Connection interrupted.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

- Contains bad data.

i-α ppli cannot be started from invalid data read with Bar Code Reader.

- Continue using i-α ppli and transmit data?

The number of transmission is extremely large within the specified duration when using i-α ppli and i-α ppli tried to transmit again after the message **Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?** was displayed. Select **Yes** to use i-α ppli successively, **Terminate i-α ppli** to quit i-α ppli.

- Data damaged. Restore default settings?

The data of the mail or ToruCa contains error. Select **Yes** to return to the default setting. Mail or ToruCa cannot be started without restoring the default setting.

- Data error. Unable to download.

The data of ToruCa (details) is invalid.

● Data in IC card is full. Unable to download. Delete some software?

New Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-α ppli cannot be downloaded if Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-α ppli registered already is deleted because the data in IC card is full. Select **Yes** and the i-α ppli list to be deleted appears. Delete i-α ppli software registered already until free disk space required for IC card is secured.

- In case the message **IC card software full. Delete software.** appears on the list, select i-α ppli to be deleted. When highlighting i-α ppli, in case **Start** is shown in the upper right part of the guide row, select after activating i-α ppli by pressing **(M)** and delete the data in IC card.
- In case the message **xxxx byte need to delete.** appears on the list, the data size used in IC card is shown for i-α ppli respectively. Highlight i-α ppli to be deleted and press **(M)** to activate i-α ppli and delete the data in IC card. After that, select i-α ppli and delete it.

● Data or miniSD card damaged.

The miniSD memory card cannot be accessed because it has a problem. Initialize the miniSD memory card or insert a new miniSD memory card.
 ➡P341, P335

● Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?

Displayed in case the number of transmission is extremely large within the specified duration when using i-α ppli. Select **Yes** to use i-α ppli successively, **No** to continue i-α ppli after terminating i-α ppli transmission or **Terminate i-α ppli** to quit i-α ppli.

● Date and time not set. Unable to start.

Activating i-α ppliDX, Alarm Clock or Scheduler requires Date and Time Setting. Set the date and time correctly before start. ➡P47

● Delete software and IC card data?

Among the i-α ppli to delete selected items or all items, there is Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-α ppli of which the data within IC card are also deleted by deleting the i-α ppli. Select **Yes** to delete the i-α ppli and the data in IC card.

● Dial callout restricted.

This prohibited operation is unavailable with Keypad Dial Lock on.

● Download failed.

Communication was interrupted during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

● Error in IC card data. Unable to delete software.

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-α ppli containing errors within IC card data cannot be deleted.

● Error in image.

Does not work correctly.

Flash movie cannot be displayed because of the error in the image data.

● Error in memory. Unable to read/write PushTalk phone book. Quit.

Unable to read or write the PushTalk phonebook because the memory space for the FOMA terminal phonebook and PushTalk phonebook contains error. Activate the FOMA terminal phonebook. Activating the FOMA terminal phonebook restores the memory space.

● Error in ToruCa data. Unable to download.

The data of ToruCa is incorrect.

● Error occurred. Unable to save.

Cannot be saved because an error occurred during saving attachment.

● Exceeded number of maximum characters. Failed to quote partly.

SMS message exceeded 70 characters (160 characters for the font type of English) for reply, so some characters cannot be quoted.

● Exceeds maximum number member.

PushTalk calls were made for above 4 members. Select members up to 4 persons.

● Failed to clear call cost information.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ➡P38

● Failed to connect

Failed to connect to the server. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

● Failed to copy.

- When copying selected items or all items of Data Box, all data cannot be copied.
- An attempt has been made to copy PIM data in an uncopyable format.
- PDF data cannot be copied because the memory space is insufficient. Retry after returning to the standby display.

● Failed to move.

When moving selected items or all items of the data, all data cannot be moved.

● Failed to read call cost information.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ➡P38

● Failed to refer to ToruCa.

Failed to display ToruCa. Retry the operation. In case the same error occurs again, displaying may be unavailable due to the damaged data.

● Failed to retrieve i-Channel information.

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

● Failed to save ToruCa.

ToruCa could not be saved because ToruCa exceeds the size that can be saved or the data is incorrect.

● Failed to save./Unable to save.

- Cannot be saved due to an error.
- Failed to save because PDF data is too large, etc.

● Failed to view message data.

- When deleting or searching mail, the object mail data cannot be referenced because it is used for another processing. Retry later.
- Mail data cannot be referenced in chat mail. Retry later.

● Folder is full.

Unable to receive Message R/F because the memory space is insufficient. Please read unread Message R/F, release protection of Message R/F or delete unnecessary Message R/F.

● **Frame number of this page is not supported.**

Cannot display because the number of frames is too many.
In the multi-windows mode, it may be displayed when closing the open windows.

● **i-appli stand-by display canceled due to security error.**

i-appli standby display has exited due to unpermitted operation.

● **i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later. (555)**

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

● **Inbox full. Unable to retrieve new messages.**

Unable to receive all SMS messages because there is insufficient storage space in the Inbox of FOMA terminal or the UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete unnecessary mail and execute Check SMS again.

● **Inbox is full.**

Unable to receive i-mode Mail because there is insufficient storage space in the Inbox. Please read unread i-mode Mail, release i-mode Mail protection or delete unnecessary i-mode Mail.

● **Incoming message data damaged. Restore default settings?**

The received data of chat mail contains error. Select **Yes** to return to the default setting. Select **No** to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

● **Infrared Connection interrupted.**

An error occurred during infrared communication. During infrared communications, do not move FOMA terminal pointed at the other terminal's infrared data port before data sending and receiving is complete. ●P347

● **Infrared Failed to connect via authentication.**

Sending all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct. Enter the same authentication password between sender and receiver. ●P348, P349

● **Infrared No response. Retry data exchange?**

After entering into the infrared communication state, 5 or more seconds have elapsed with no other terminals for communications found. Point FOMA terminal at the other terminal's infrared data port with a distance of 20 cm or less and select **Yes**. ●P347

● **Infrared No UIM. Unable to start requested software.**

Because no UIM is inserted, the specified i-appli cannot be started even when i-appli To is set in the data received by infrared communications.

● **Input error (205)**

Input data for i-mode or Internet web site contains error. Check the input data for errors.

● **Insufficient memory / Memory shortage Return to Main Menu.**

Operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory.

● **Insufficient memory. Quitting application.**

The running function is terminated due to insufficient memory.

● **Insufficient memory. Unable to edit signature. Delete signature.**

When editing the signature is started, memory shortage occurs. Delete the data of signature.

● **Insufficient memory. Unable to open window.**

Windows cannot be opened because the memory is insufficient. Executing may be available by closing the windows opened already or terminating other running functions.

● **Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay. Change now?**

You tried to download a streaming type i-motion file with the i-motion type setting **Normal type**. Select **Yes** to change the i-motion type setting. Select **No** if you don't change the setting. ●P221

● **Invalid content. Download failed.**

Cannot download because the object contents to be charged are invalid.

● **Invalid data.**

The downloaded data contains an error.

● **Invalid data. (XXX)**

- Dose not support the specified i-mode or Internet web site.
- The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Unable to display because there is an error in the received data.
- Within service area, sending auto send mail was unsuccessful.

● **Invalid data. Connection cannot be established. (400)**

- Cannot be connected because of the error in i-mode or Internet web site. The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Within service area, sending auto send mail was unsuccessful.

● **Invalid data. Failed to save.**

Attached melodies or video/i-motion files cannot be played because of the incorrect data.

● **Invalid data. Unable to save.**

Data received through infrared communications cannot be saved because it is in a format incompatible with FOMA terminal.

● **Invalid data. Unable to save.**

The downloaded Chara-den cannot be saved because the Chara-den is invalid.

● **Invalid UIM or phone type. Unable to use.**

Video/i-motion cannot be played because the different UIM from that used when saved is inserted or the model is different.

● **Invalid UIM, requested service not available.**

You tried to use data downloaded from i-mode or Internet web site or saved from attachments of mail or Message R/F with a UIM different from the one you used when the data was saved. Insert the same UIM as used when those data were downloaded to use it.

● **Invalid UIM, requested software failed to start.**

The i-appli to be used together with the UIM used when downloading it from a site, etc. cannot be started. Insert the same UIM as used when the software was downloaded to use it.

● **Invalid URL.**

The entered URL contains error. Check the URL.

● **Mail address not recorded.**

The mail address is not saved in the selected mail group. Save the mail address in the mail group. ◀P257

● **Mails could not be sent to following address. (561)**

Sending i-mode Mail is failed for some receivers. Pressing  displays the receiver that the transmission failed. Check to see if the address of the receiver is correct and retry transmission at another location with good radio wave condition.

● **Memory full. Delete unwanted data.**

Unable to register/delete in the PushTalk phonebook and add/edit/delete members in PushTalk group because the memory space for the FOMA terminal phonebook is insufficient,. Delete the unnecessary data in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

● **Memory in My Picture/Other Images/Movie/Melody folder full./My Documents folder full./Number of saved movies in Other Movie folder reached limit./Number of saved cards in ToruCa folder reached limit./Number of saved data reached limit in PIM folder.**

Copying/moving selected items, copying/moving all items, back up and Sync Data Info is unavailable because the number of saved items in folders of the miniSD memory card is full. Delete unnecessary data. ◀P338, P340

● **Memory is full. Unable to save.**

FOMA terminal does not have enough memory space and SMS cannot be saved. Move SMS to UIM or delete i-mode Mail or SMS.

● **Message kept in center.**

SMS messages have already been sent.

● **Message rejected by recipient.**

SMS is rejected by the SMS Center.

● **Message rejected by recipient.**

Transmitting SMS is rejected.

● **miniSD card damaged. Saving to phone memory.**

When **miniSD** has been specified as the destination for saving still images or videos recorded with the camera or Chara-den but the miniSD memory card cannot be accessed, the destination automatically switched to **Phone**.

● **miniSD card full. Saving to phone memory.**

When the miniSD memory card becomes full with **miniSD** set as the destination in Still Image Setting or Recording Setting for the camera, the destination is automatically switched to **Phone**.

● **miniSD card memory full.**

Copying/moving selected items, copying/moving all items, back-up of data and update of information is not allowed because the storage space in the miniSD memory card is not enough. Delete unnecessary data. ◀P338, P340

● **Name too long. Saved with incomplete name.**

When registering an item selected from the display of a site, etc. to the phonebook, the number of characters has exceeded the specified value. Pressing  causes the phonebook registration screen to be displayed, with characters exceeding the limit deleted for each item.

● **New pattern definitions for scanning function available. Please update.**

Auto-update of the pattern definition was unsuccessful. Update the pattern definition manually. ◀P462

● **No content is available. (204)**

Could not find data at the specified site.

● **No data in ordinary phonebook.**

The entered phone number is not saved in the phonebook. Add the number to the phonebook.

● **No miniSD card found.**

Data cannot be saved or operated because a miniSD memory card is not inserted to FOMA terminal. Insert the miniSD memory card before operating. ◀P335

● **No miniSD card, or no music data. Use included software and put music data on miniSD card.**

The miniSD memory card is not inserted or there is no folder for Music Player in the miniSD memory card or no data in the folder. Insert the miniSD memory card or save the music data. ◀P335, P359

● **No Requested File. (492)**

The specified file could not be found during download of a still image above 10,000 bytes which could not be obtained when having received the mail.

● **No requested software.**

The i-appli specified by the mail and external equipment is not stored in your FOMA terminal.

● **No response. (408)**

Communication was disconnected because there was no response from i-mode or Internet web site within the specified time. Retry later.

● **No signature set.**

Please retry to operate after registering the signature. ◀P256

● **No space to attach signature.**

- The signature cannot be inserted because of exceeding the maximum characters.
- The signature cannot be inserted in SMS because it is decorated.
- The signature cannot be inserted when **English** is set for **Font type** in SMS Setting. Change **Font type** to **Japanese**. ◀P266

● **No space to attach file.**

Exceeds the maximum number of files attachable to one mail.

● **Not enough memory. Unable to connect.**

Cannot connect because the memory is insufficient. Closing the window opened already or terminating other running functions may make connecting available.

● **No UIM, requested software failed to start.**

The i-appli to be used together with the UIM used when downloading it from a site, etc. cannot be started. Insert the same UIM as used when the software was downloaded to use it.

● **Now calling. Unable to record movie.**

When using the camera during a call, it cannot be switched to video shooting and voice recording. End the call before switching to video shooting and voice recording.

● **Number of characters exceeds limit.**

i-mode Mail message exceeded 10,000 one-byte (5,000 two-byte) characters for reply. Please send after decreasing the number of characters.

● **Omakase Lock active.**

Operations are disabled because Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is set. You can answer incoming calls.
●P159

● **Out of service area.**

Unable to execute because the terminal is in a place where radio waves do not reach or out of the service area.

● **Outgoing message data damaged. Restore default settings?**

The sent data of chat mail contains error. Select **Yes** to return to the default setting. Select **No** to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

● **Page is not found. (404)**

Unable to find i-mode site, etc. Make sure that the URL is correct.

● **Password is not correct. (401)**

The user name or password entered in the basic authentication screen of i-mode or Internet web site is incorrect. Please try again.

● **PIM lock.**

This prohibited operation is unavailable with PIM Lock on.

● **Please wait.**

The voice line/packet communication equipment is damaged or the voice line network/packet communication network is so congested. Please try again later.

● **Please wait for a while (packet)**

The packet communication equipment is damaged or the packet communication network is so congested. Please try again later.

● **PUK blocked.**

Inquire at DoCoMo Shops.

● **Receiving data/Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion**

Reception was suspended because the size exceeded 2 Mbytes when downloading streaming type i-motion data.

● **Receiving data/Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion**

Reception or replay has not been completed because the data size exceeded 500 Kbytes when downloading normal type i-motion data or when playback was performed while downloading data.

● **Receiving messages. Retry later.**

i-channel cannot be activated during receiving mail or Message R/F. Retry after receiving.

● **Receiving messages stopped. Some messages unreceived.**

Unable to receive all SMS messages because an error occurred during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and execute Check SMS again. ●P266

● **Registration is in progress. (554)**

User registration with i-mode is in process. Please try again later.

● **Remotely Controllable services denied.**

Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service has not subscribed yet. It is required to subscribe to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

● **Replay period has not yet started.**

Unable to play because of the term prior to the playback period specified for i-motion. Please try again after the playback period has started. ●P321

● **Requested software unavailable.**

The i-appli cannot be started because of an error in i-appli. Starting specified i-appli by i-appli To function from a site, mail or an external device is disabled if there is a problem in i-appli operation settings or start-up conditions.

● **Root certificate has expired. Connect?**

The term of validity of FOMA terminal certificate is premature or overdue. Select **Yes** to connect or **No** not to connect. ●P217 This message may be displayed when the date and time have not been set or are incorrect. Set the date and time correctly. ●P47

● **Root certificate is not valid.**

The certificate in FOMA terminal is invalid. To establish a connection, change the setting. ●P217

● **Run software and delete data on IC card. Then delete software.**

This i-appli cannot be deleted without deleting the data in IC card. Delete the i-appli after activating the i-appli and deleting the data in IC card.

● **Save unsaved data to phone memory or delete.**

Infrared communications cannot end because the number of items to be saved is full in INBOX for infrared communications. Save the data in Inbox into FOMA terminal or delete it. ●P350

● **Scheduled software update canceled. Retry update software.**

Reservation for updating software is canceled because the battery has not been charged for a long while, etc. Start updating software and operate for reservation again.
●P458, P460

● **Self Mode activated.**

This prohibited operation is unavailable during Self Mode.

● **Service is not registered.**

- You are not an i-mode subscriber. Apply to use the i-mode service.
- If you have subscribed to i-mode after purchasing FOMA terminal, once turn FOMA terminal power off and then turn on.

● **Service unavailable.**

SMS is not available.

● **Signature, template and sort settings data damaged.**

Restore default settings?

The data of signature, template and sort settings contain the error. Select **Yes** to return to default settings. Cannot be activated without returning to default settings.

● **Size of this page is not supported.**

- Downloading has stopped because i-mode or internet web site size was larger than the limit size. Press  to display the data already downloaded normally.
- Reception was interrupted because the data size exceeds maximum size while downloading.

● **Software ended due to security error.**

i-appli has exited due to unpermitted operation. It is recorded in Security Error History.

● **Software already updated.**

The i-appli cannot be upgraded because it has already been upgraded to the latest version.

● **SSL session cannot be established./TLS/SSL session cannot be established.**

SSL or TLS/SSL communication was interrupted due to an SSL or TLS/SSL communication error or an error on the server concerning the client authentication.

● **SSL session failed./TLS/SSL session failed.**

A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL or TLS/SSL communication. Connection is suspended.

● **SSL session was terminated./TLS/SSL session was terminated.**

Some problem is detected with the site certificate during SSL or TLS/SSL communication. The message is displayed when you select **No** in the connection confirmation screen and SSL or TLS/SSL communication is disconnected.

● **Terminal memory full.**

Cannot be executed because the number of saved items in FOMA terminal is full or the memory is not enough. Delete corresponding unnecessary data.

● **This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect?**

CN name (server name) of the site certificate does not match the actual server name. To connect, select **Yes**; to stop, select **No**. P217

● **This data cannot be saved. Download?**

This i-motion file cannot be saved. Select **Yes** to download; select **No** not to download.

● **This data may not be replayed.**

Video/i-motion file format not supported by FOMA terminal. Or the video file may be damaged.

● **This site is not certified. Connect?**

The site certificate is not supported by FOMA terminal. Select **Yes** to connect or **No** not to connect.

● **This software contains an error./This software contains an error. Unable to download.**

Unable to download because the i-appli data contains an error.

● **This software is currently unavailable for use.**

Using the i-appli is stopped by IP (Information Provider).

● **This software is not supported by this phone.**

The i-appli cannot be downloaded because it is not compatible with FOMA terminal.

● **This ToruCa can not be saved.**

The ToruCa is not supported.

● **This UIM cannot be recognized.**

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. Check if the UIM is installed correctly. P38

● **Time out**

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

● **Too much data was entered.**

Unable to transmit data because too many characters were entered in the entry field of i-mode or Internet web site. Please reduce the number of characters and retry transmission.

● **ToruCa limit reached. Unable to receive. Delete a ToruCa.**

ToruCa cannot be downloaded because the number and the memory for saving ToruCa is full. Delete unnecessary ToruCa.

● **ToruCa limit reached. Unable to download. Delete a ToruCa.**

ToruCa cannot be saved because the storage space for ToruCa is not enough. Delete unnecessary ToruCa.

● **Transmission failed.**

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry transmission.

● **Transmission failed. (552)**

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS due to the error of i-mode Center or the SMS Center. Please try to send again later.

● **UIM full.**

UIM does not have enough storage space and SMS cannot be saved. Delete SMS from the UIM (P268) or move to FOMA terminal (P268).

● **UIM not inserted. Unable to use.**

The UIM is not inserted. Please use your FOMA terminal after inserting the UIM. P38

● **UIM not recognized. Unable to use.**

Cannot be executed because UIM is not inserted. To play the video/i-motion, insert the same UIM as that used when saved.

● **Unable to call.**

A voice/videophone call or PushTalk call cannot be made during voice/videophone calls, PushTalk call or 64K data communication.

● **Unable to check new messages.**

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

● **Unable to connect during outgoing call barring active.**

Cannot connect because the outgoing call is restricted. Retry to operate later.

● **Unable to connect to server now.(502)**

The equipment of the Data Center is damaged or the Data Center is congested. Retry to operate later.

● **Unable to delete some applications on IC card. Delete others?**

Among the i-appli to delete selected items or all items, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli which cannot be deleted exists because the data within IC card cannot be deleted. Select **Yes** to delete other i-appli than that.

● **Unable to display data.**

Display failed because an error occurred in mail template.

● **Unable to display image.**

Unable to display because the image contains error. Check the image.

● **Unable to display message.**

Unable to display because there is an error in the received/sent mail.

● **Unable to display some files.**

Video/i-motion or an image above 10,000 bytes is attached to the downloaded mail. These data cannot be displayed/played from the downloaded mail.

● **Unable to display this Character.**

Character containing illegal data cannot be displayed.

● **Unable to display version info.**

The definition file version cannot be confirmed. Update the definition file again. ◀P462

● **Unable to receive ToruCa.**

The data of ToruCa is invalid.

● **Unable to download data.**

Failed to download ToruCa (details). Retry the operation. In case the same error occurs again, downloading may be unavailable due to the error in ToruCa data, etc.

● **Unable to download. Data exceeds maximum size. (452)**

Reception is disabled because i-mode or Internet web site size exceeds the maximum size.

● **Unable to enter any more.**

The number of characters exceeds the limit. Reduce the number of characters.

● **Unable to move specified page.**

When an i-motion ticker contains a link to a site (Web To), etc., in case the URL contains more than 256 characters or downloading was interrupted, the linked page cannot be displayed.

● **Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error.**

Cannot obtain because the replay restriction data is incorrect.

● **Unable to play.**

Melody or i-motion data cannot be played.

● **Unable to play.**

The music data cannot be played.

● **Unable to play this melody.**

This melody cannot be played because the data contains an error.

● **Unable to play this movie.**

No data or the format of the video/i-motion is unavailable.

● **Unable to record.**

The movie memo cannot be recorded because the communication of image/sound is disconnected.

● **Unable to retrieve the requested URL. (504)**

Failed to connect to the requested URL due to some cause. Please try again later.

● **Unable to save specified image.**

The image cannot be saved because the image in the site, screen memo or Message R/F contains error.

● **Unable to shoot serially.**

You cannot shoot continuously because memory and the number of items to be saved in **Image** is full. Continuous shoot is canceled automatically.

● **Unable to switch to data transfer mode.**

FOMA terminal is communicating. Processes cannot be performed because switching to data transfer mode is unavailable. Terminate communicating or retry again later.

● **Unable to update pattern definitions.**

Updating the definition file has failed. Stop all other functions currently running and retry the update in a place with strong radio wave signals.

● **Unable to use data type.**

Data in a file format incompatible with FOMA terminal cannot be copied or moved from a miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal or searched for.

● **Unable to view file. Access to URL is limited. (491)**

The specified access count was exceeded while downloading a still image above 10,000 bytes which could not be obtained when having received the mail.

● **Unsent message data damaged. Restore default settings?**

The unsent data of chat mail contains error. Select **Yes** to return to the default setting. Select **No** to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

● **Unsupported content.**

Operation is unavailable because the contents are not compatible with FOMA terminal.

● **Unsupported miniSD card format.**

The miniSD memory card format is unavailable on FOMA terminal.

● **URL address changed. (301)**

i-mode or Internet web site forwards URL automatically or URL is changed.

● **URL is too long to register.**

Unable to register as a bookmark or a screen memo because the URL exceeds the number of characters that can be registered.

● **Usage is currently restricted. Try again later.**

Displayed in case extremely large data communication is executed within the specified duration only when using i-mode packet fixed sum service. Connection may be unavailable for a certain period of time, so use i-mode/Full Browser a little while later.

● **Voice data damaged and unable to start. Please record voice data.**

The voice cannot be authenticated because the registered voice data is damaged. Please register the voice data again. ◀P300

● **You have no certificate. Connect?**

The user certificate has not been downloaded. To continue the connection, select **Yes**; to stop, select **No**.

● **Your certificate has expired. Connect?**

The user certificate has expired. To continue the connection, select **Yes**; to stop, select **No**. ◀P217

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- A written warranty is provided with every FOMA terminal; make sure that you receive it. Store the warranty in a safe place when you have read it and checked that it contains the "shop name/date" you purchased it. If it does not contain the necessary information, contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Data registered in the phonebook, etc. may be lost or become corrupted due to failure, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal. It is recommended that you make a note of the data in the phonebook, etc. When your FOMA terminal is repaired and so on, downloaded information via i-mode or i-appli (except some data) are not forwarded to a new FOMA terminal according to the copyright laws.
 - * In this FOMA terminal, the phonebook data, etc. can be saved in the miniSD memory card.
 - * In this FOMA terminal, i-motion files, etc. can be moved to the miniSD memory card.
 - * In this FOMA terminal, the phonebook data, etc. can be saved in Data Center by subscribing to Data Security Service (which is a pay service and requires a subscription).
 - * If you have a PC (Windows Me, 2000, XP), you can use the specified data link software and FOMA USB cable (optional) to transfer and store the data registered in the phonebook, etc. on a PC.

After-Sales Service

■ When problems occur

Before requesting service, read the section "Troubleshooting". ➡P446

If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

■ If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo. Be sure to check the opening hours of the repair office before you go. Note that you must present the warranty.

■ In the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.

- The written warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber will be charged for the repairs without presentation of the written warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse, accident or neglect, etc. even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DoCoMo-specified.

■ Repairs may not be possible in the following cases:

Repair may not be possible when corrosion due to exposure to moisture, condensation or perspiration is detected in a moisture seal reaction or test, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, will be charged.

■ After expiration of the warranty

All repairs that are requested are charged.

■ Replacement parts

Basically, FOMA terminal's replacement parts (parts required to maintain product function) will be kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. Please keep in mind that it may not be possible to repair your phone depending on the nature of the required repair because of a lack of parts, etc. Depending on the nature of the required repair, it may still be possible to repair your phone even after this period. Contact "Repairs" listed on the back of this manual.

■ Notes

- Do not modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
 - Fire, injury or damage may result.
- In order to prevent interference of radio waves or network breakdown, the FOMA terminal and UIM are manufactured according to technical standards stipulated by law. Do not use FOMA terminals or UIMs that do not meet these standards.
- If the FOMA is modified (part replacement, modification, painting, etc.) it will be repaired only after the modified parts have been restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification.
- Repair of failures or damage caused by modification are charged even during the warranty period.

- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to your FOMA terminal.
The inscription stickers certify that the FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that if stickers are removed intentionally or are reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether or not the phone conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.
- The function settings, the information of total calls duration, etc. may be cleared (reset) by failure, repair or other handling processes. Should this happen, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece and speaker of the FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.
- If your phone becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring it to a repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the phone.

■ Phonebook data or downloaded data

- Maintain a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any liability and responsibility whatsoever for changes or loss of information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may become corrupted or be lost when changing the model or repairing mobile phone. DoCoMo will not accept any responsibility for that.

Also, DoCoMo may, at its option, repair a mobile phone by replacing it. In such an event, it will not be possible to transfer the data (except some data) to the new phone. Regarding this FOMA terminal, images and incoming melodies downloaded via i-mode official sites can be transferred when repairing the mobile phone (some contents cannot be transferred and transferring may be unavailable depending on the degree of malfunctions).

Updating software

Software Update

This function checks for the necessity for updating FOMA terminal software and downloads part of the software as required through packet communication*1 to make updates of the software.

When software update is required, the information will be posted in お知らせ&ヘルプ(Notice & Help) on the DoCoMo website or iMenu.

*1 Packet communication for software update is free of charge.

- Software may be updated in the following 2 methods:
 - Immediate update :
Update on the spot as desired.
 - Advanced update :
Reserve a day and time-slot for automatic update of the software in the specified day and time.
- Software cannot be updated in the following cases:
 - During All Lock
 - While using other functions
 - When the date and time are not set
 - When the UIM is not inserted
 - When the battery is not fully charged
 - When PIN1 code is being entered
 - When PIN1 code is locked
 - When 圏外 is indicated
 - During PIM Lock
 - The power is off
 - In Self Mode on
 - While talking
 - During Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)
 - During packet communication connecting with a PC

• At the time of updating software, the unique information of your mobile phone terminal (model or serial number, etc.) will be automatically sent to the server (the server for updating software managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo will not use the sent information for any other purpose than software update.

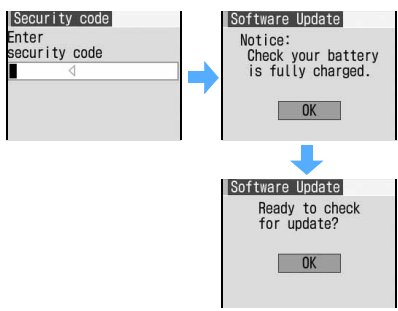
INFORMATION

- Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.
- If software update is executed when **ON** is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls or PushTalk calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.
- Other functions are not available while software is being updated. Only incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading.
- If Movie ringtone has been set as a ring alert, a melody sounds for an incoming call during download instead of Movie ringtone. If you set video/i-motion as an image, the first image is displayed.

- Any incoming videophone call cannot be answered during download. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones in the received call history.
- Even if an alarm clock or any alarm is set while software is being updated, the updating continues without activating the alarm clock or the alarm.
- For software update, SSL session is established to the server (our site). Enable SSL certificate in Certificate Setting. Configured as valid by default. ●P217
- Software update should be done with battery fully charged and enough battery power ().
- It is recommended that software update be executed when good signal quality is obtained, 3 bars of the antenna icon () are displayed and the terminal is not being moved.
 - If radio wave signals become weaker during software downloading or downloading has stopped, retry software update in a place with strong radio wave signals.
- A displayed icon for the message stored at i-mode Center disappears after software update. If Receive Option Setting is set to **ON** and mail arrives during software updating, the screen that notifies an arrival of mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after the software update being completed.
- Never remove the battery pack while updating software. Update fails.
- Software update can be done while various data, such as the phonebook/PushTalk phonebook entries registered in FOMA Terminal, camera images, downloaded data are retained; however, note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured depending on the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DoCoMo recommends backing up necessary data. (Note that some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.)
- When software update has failed, the message **Rewrite failed** appears and all the operations are unavailable. In such a case, please bring FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo.
- In case updating is not required, when checking the necessity of software update, a message is displayed indicating update is not necessary, so use as it is.
- Software update is available even if Host Selection is set to other than i-mode.

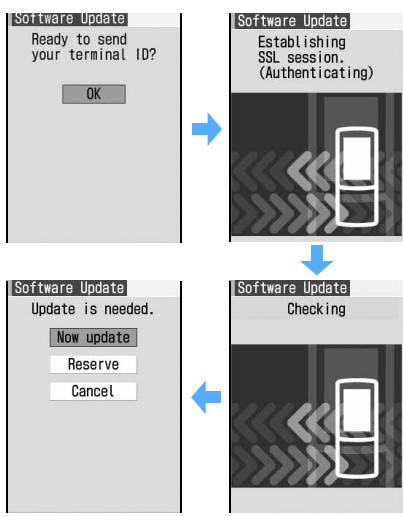
Starting software update

-
- Enter the terminal security code ▶ Check notice and



- The entered terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) is displayed as “ * ”.
- The terminal security code by default is set to “0000”.

3 ▶ Confirm whether software update is required



- Pressing on the confirmation screen for sending terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

■ When updating is not necessary:



If software updating has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the screen as shown on the left is displayed. Press to use FOMA terminal as it is.

Updating software immediately Immediate Update

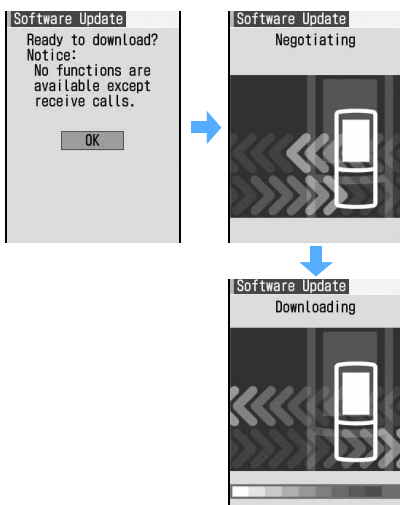
- Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure



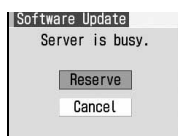
2 Select **Now update**

Downloading is started and the Enter key flashes.



- Downloading starts in about 5 seconds without pressing .
- Press to cancel downloading. If downloading is canceled halfway, the data downloaded up to then is deleted.
- After starting downloading, updating process is executed without the operation of selecting the menu.

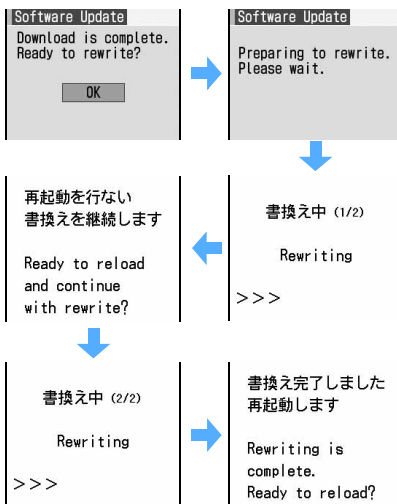
■ When the server is busy:



- Select **Reserve** and reserve a date and time for update.

3 after completion of downloading

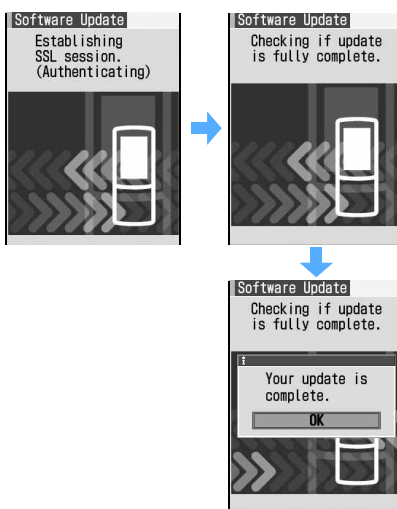
During rewriting, the Enter key flashes.



- Rewriting is started in about 5 seconds without pressing after downloading.
- All key operations are disabled while software is being rewritten. Updating operation cannot be canceled.

4 Automatically reloaded after the completion of rewriting

After reload, wait while communicating again with the server.



5 Press

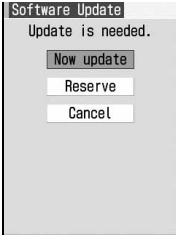
Update is completed and the standby display appears.

Updating software at pre-specified time

Reserved Update

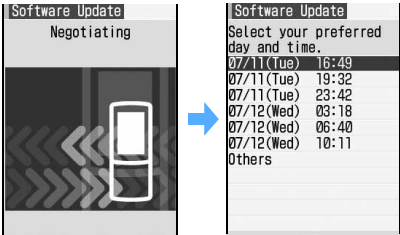
When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can choose to set the time to start software update in advance by communicating with the server.

1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure



2 Select Reserve

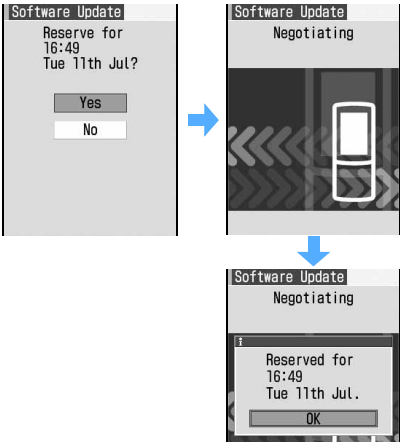
Inquire the options for preferred day and time by communicating with the server.



- Available date and time for reservation will be shown by the time of the server.

3 Select preferred day and time

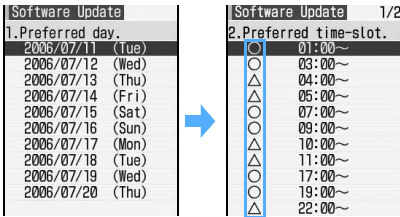
- Selecting from the options displayed:
Select preferred day and time ▶ Select Yes



- If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time, switch to the next or previous page with .

- Selecting from other than options displayed:

- ① Select Others ▶ Select preferred day and time-slot



Availability for reservation at each time-slot will be shown:
○: available
△: barely available

- ② Select preferred day and time-slot

Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.

- If there are more than one option page for preferred time-slot, switch to the next or previous page with .
- Press  to display the description of the symbol on the left of time-slot.

- ③ Select preferred day and time ▶ Select Yes

- If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time, switch to the next or previous page with .

4 Press

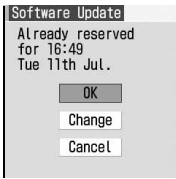
Reservation is completed and the menu is displayed.

-  is shown on the standby display when reservation is made.

Checking/changing/canceling reservation

- 1    

- 2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Check the contents



- To stop checking:
Select OK

Changing reservation:

① Select Change

A confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID is displayed.

②

The option selection screen is displayed.

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Updating software at pre-specified time".
 P460
- Pressing  on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

Canceling reservation:

① Select Cancel ▶ Select Yes

A confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID is displayed.

②

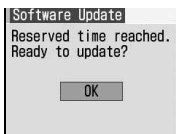
The reservation is canceled and the menu is displayed.

- Pressing  on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

When the reserved time arrives

When the reserved time arrives, the screen as shown below is displayed and updating software is started automatically. Before the reserved time, make sure that the battery is fully charged and the handset is in a location where radio waves reach and then show the standby display.

When downloading is completed, rewriting software is automatically started, followed by reload.



- To cancel the software update:  ▶ Select Yes

INFORMATION

- Note that updating software may not be activated even though the reserved time arrives in case of using the other functions. In case the reserved time arrives while talking or receiving messages, updating software starts after finishing talking or receiving messages.
- If software update is executed when **ON** is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls or PushTalk calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.

- If an alarm clock or any alarm is set for the same time, the alarm clock or the alarm takes precedence and the software update may not be started.

Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data

Virus Scan Function

Update pattern definition first to keep the pattern definition up-to-date.

For the data or program downloaded via a website or received mail, this function detects data that may cause troubles and then deletes it or inhibits activation of applications in order to protect FOMA terminal from viruses.

- Pattern definition is used for checking. Update pattern definition because it is updated whenever a new trouble is detected.
- Virus Scan Function is for preventing the data that cause some problem to mobile phone from invading when viewing websites or receiving mail. Please note that if pattern definition corresponding to specific troubles has not been downloaded to the mobile phone or such pattern definition does not exist, this function cannot prevent the trouble from happening.
- Pattern definition is different depending on the model of mobile phone. Please keep in mind that DoCoMo may stop distributing the pattern definition for the models that have been on the market for 3 years or more.
- When updating pattern definition, your private information concerning the mobile phone (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the scan function managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo does not use the sent information for purposes other than the scan function.

Setting Virus Scan Function

Scanning Setting

If this setting is set to **ON**, data or program is checked automatically when it is displayed or executed.

Default **ON**

-     
-  ▶ Select Yes



Next

- When Virus Scan Function, when set, has detected data that may cause troubles, it displays a message in one of 5 warning levels.
 ➡ P463
- To cancel: [2] ➡ Select **Yes**

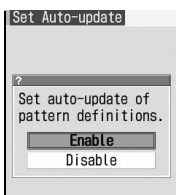
Updating pattern definition automatically

Auto-update Setting

Updating is performed automatically to maintain the latest pattern definition.

1 [Menu] [8] [3] [7] [2]

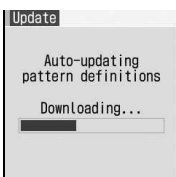
2 Select **Enable** ➡ Select **Yes** twice



- To cancel: Select **Disable** ➡ Select **Yes**

3 Press [Enter]

When a new pattern definition is distributed



- When a new pattern definition is distributed, the above screen appears and updating pattern definition is performed automatically. In case of succeeding updating, [OK] is displayed on the standby display. Select an icon and select **OK** after confirming a message.
- In case of failing updating, [X] appears on the standby display. Update a pattern definition manually after selecting an icon, confirming a message and selecting **OK**.
- To stop updating pattern definition: [Enter] ➡ Select **Yes**

Updating pattern definition Immediately

Update Definition

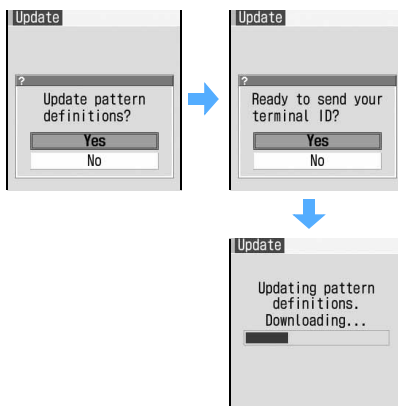
Update a pattern definition manually in case Auto-update Setting is set to **Disable** or Auto-update fails.

- Set the date of FOMA terminal correctly.

1 [Menu] [8] [3] [7] [1]

2 Select **Yes** twice

The pattern definition is updated.



3 Press [Enter]

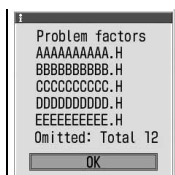
- If pattern definition update has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the message meaning that the pattern definition is up-to-date is displayed. Please use FOMA terminal as it is.

INFORMATION

- Updating pattern definition is stopped with a voice call arrived. When there is a videophone call, incoming PushTalk or data is received using an external device or the infrared communication function, updating is not interrupted.
- If the date/time set for an alarm clock or a schedule alarm is reached, the screen for notifying the date and time is displayed during updating of pattern definition and the alarm clock or the alarm sounds, but updating is continued.

Displaying the scan result

When displaying a list of detected problem elements

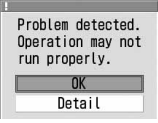
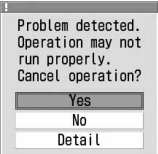
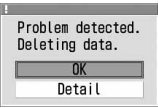


1 Select **Detail** while a warning message is being displayed

The list of the name of problem elements detected by scan is displayed.

- When 6 or more problem elements have been detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problem elements are omitted and the total count of the detected problem elements is displayed.

Display of the scan result

Warning level/ Message	Handling method
Warning Level 0 	OK : Continues processing of the started application. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 1 	Yes : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. No : Continues processing of the started application. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 2 	OK : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 3 	Yes : Deletes data that may cause troubles. No : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 4 	OK : Deletes data that may cause troubles. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.

INFORMATION

- In case some problem is detected through scan in the i-a ppli set as the i-a ppli standby display and activating i-a ppli is stopped, the i-a ppli standby display is canceled.

Checking the pattern definition version

Scan Version

1 Press     



Main specification

Item	FOMA D902iS
Size (mm)	110 (H) x 49 (W) x 19.9 (D) (when closed)
Weight (g)	Approx. 124 (with battery pack)
Continuous standby time	While standing still: Approx. 550 hours While moving: Approx. 380 hours
Continuous call time	During a voice call: Approx. 170 minutes During a videophone call: Approx. 90 minutes
Type of battery pack	Lithium ion battery
Capacity of battery	790 mAh
Charging time	Approx. 120 minutes
Camera pixels	Out-camera: Effective pixels: 2M (Max record pixels: 4M) In-camera: Effective pixels: 0.10M (Max record pixels: 0.10M)
Digital zoom	Out-camera : up to 28 times In-camera : up to twice

- Continuous call time is an estimate of call time of FOMA terminal when it can send or receive signals normally.
- Continuous standby time is an estimate of operation time of FOMA terminal when it is closed and able to receive signals normally. The call/standby time may be reduced to about half, depending on the amount of charge in the battery, the function settings, the ambient temperature and signal conditions (radio waves do not or hardly reach). Using i-mode communication reduces the call (communication)/standby time. Even if you do not make a call or use i-mode, the call

(communication)/standby time will be reduced by composing i-mode Mail, or starting downloaded i-appli software or the i-appli standby display.

- Continuous standby time (while standing still) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal when it is standing still, closed and able to receive signals normally.
- Continuous standby time (while moving) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal that is standing still, moving and outside the service area when it is closed and able to receive signals normally.
- Alternatively, if you perform data communication or Multiaccess, use Camera or play video/i-motion (including music data), the call (communication)/standby time will be reduced.
- The battery pack can be charged regardless of whether FOMA terminal is turned on or off. However, charging takes longer with the power turned on.

actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO):

<http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP: <http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC: <http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html>

TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/index_e.html

NTT DoCoMo: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/product/>
(Japanese only)

MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC:

<http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d902is/>

*1 Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

*2 The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*3 International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

SAR certification information

This model phone FOMA D902iS meets the MIC's*1 technical regulation for exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and through evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)*2 averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP*3.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.966 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC) and the test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

INDEX/Quick Reference Manual

INDEX.....	470
Quick Reference Manual	476

A

Access Setting	309
Add Address.....	229
Added Service.....	398
Adjust Volume	68
After-Sales Service	456
Alarm Auto Power ON.....	369
Alarm Clock.....	368
Alarm Clock Sound	130
Album.....	343
Alert Preference	388
All Lock.....	158
Anonymous Caller.....	166
Answer Machine.....	75
Greeting Message Setting	77
Greeting Response Time	77
Play/delete messages.....	78
Quick Record Message	76
Any Key Answer.....	65
Arrival call act.....	396
Set arrival act.....	396
AT command.....	402
Attachment	
Attaching.....	234
Auto-play.....	259
Changing/removing.....	236
Deleting.....	246
Display and save from	
Message R/F	216
Display and save ToruCa	245
Display/Save Image.....	243
Incoming Msg. Attach.	259
Play and save i-motion ...	244
Play/Save Melody	245
Auto Answer	387
Auto Power ON/OFF	367
Auto-display	215
Automatic time correction.....	47
AV Phone To (→ Phone To)	

B

Bar Code Reader	192
Battery Icon.....	147
Battery Level	45
Battery pack	41
BeatJam.....	359
Bookmark.....	205
Create/delete folders	206

Deleting.....	207
Display sites.....	205
Display sites by shortcut	206
i-mode Shortcut	206
Moving/copying.....	206
Register from mail.....	254
Register from site.....	205
Renaming	207
Sort	207

C

Cache.....	203
Calculator	383
Calendar (→ Scheduler)	
Call Alert.....	70
Change image	142
Call Cost	
Call Cost Limit.....	383
Checking.....	381
Hide Call Cost Icon.....	383
Reset Call Cost.....	382
Call Duration	
Checking.....	381
Continuous call time	42
Call Forwarding Service	394
Call Option	58
Call Ring Alert	128
Call Waiting Service.....	393
Caller ID Notification	48
Set for each call	57
Caller ID Request Service	395
Caller ID Setting	121
Camera	172
Auto focus.....	176
Auto timer	186
Brightness.....	188
Color density.....	188
Compact light.....	177
Continuous shoot.....	179
File.....	174
Flicker adjustment.....	191
Focus lock shooting	177
Four-frame shooting	180
Frame	189
Image size	190
Lens cover	173
Macro.....	186
Movie Camera	181

Number of saved still images	174
One-shot Message	191
Quality	189
Recording Setting	183
Recording time of video	175
Restore default settings	191
Scene mode/effect.....	187
Send images via mail	178
Shake reduction.....	189
Shooting screen.....	173
Size restrictions	190
Still Camera	176
Still Image Setting.....	183
Switch in-camera/out-camera	177
White balance.....	189
Zooming.....	185
Certificate Download.....	217
Certificate Host	218
Certificate operation	217
Certificate Setting	217
Chaku-moji.....	54
Message Display Setting	55
Character Encode	205
Characters entry	404
Change input modes	405
Character assignments (Slot Input Method)	427
Character assignments (5-touch Input Method) ...	427
Copying (Copy Character)	410
Cutting	410
Deleting	406
Download Dictionary.....	412
Enter face marks	407
Enter fixed phrases.....	407
Enter pictograms	408
Enter symbols.....	408
Full-screen entry.....	404
In-line entry	404
Input Method Setting	413
Input prediction function	407
Kana/Kanji Conversion ...	405
KUTEN Code Input.....	410
Line feed.....	406
Pasting.....	410

Quote data.....	408
Reset predict conversion data	407
Save Phrase.....	409
Save Word.....	410
Slot Input Method	412
5-touch Input Method	405
Chara-den.....	327
Action list	328
Deleting	346
Displaying.....	327
Downloading.....	210
Moving.....	343
Record Chara-den.....	328
Set as videophone substitute image.....	327
Settings	330
Sort.....	346
Still Image Setting/Video Setting	329
Use folder	343
Videophone call.....	85
View/Edit Detail Info	344
Charge Alert.....	134
Charging	42
Charging time	42
Chat mail	
Broadcast address	263
Chat Mail Alert.....	264
Chat Member Setting	261
Composing/sending (Chat Mail).....	261
Deleting	263
Edit chat members	263
Quitting	264
Receiving (Receive Chat Mail)	262
Sending	262
Set personal information	263
Check i-mode Message	241
Setting	257
Check My phone number.....	48
Check new message	
Check i-mode Message.....	241
Check SMS	266
Message Retrieval Setting	257
Clock Display Format.....	151
Close Setting	65
Color Scheme	146
Column Search	116
Compact light.....	27
Confirm Settings	388
Connection Speed	122

Connection Timeout Setting	212
Contact Image	143
Cookie Setting/Deleting	308
Copying.....	410
Custom Menu	376
Custom standby display.....	140
Customize Silent Mode.....	135
Cutting	410

D

Data communication	400
Communication configuration file.....	402
FOMA PC configuration software.....	402
Glossary	401
Setup work	402
Data link software	444
Data Security Service	169
Image	319
Mail.....	254
Phonebook	121, 125
Data Session Arrival Act	93
Data set by default.....	422
Data Transfer Setting.....	351
Date and Time Setting.....	47
Date To	385
Deco-mail	
Composing	230
Template	236
Delete All Data.....	389
Dictionaries	
Downloading.....	210
Using	412
Dictionaries (preinstalled)	385
Display	26
Guide row	30
Reading	29
Task bar	31
Display Address.....	250
Display Light Setting	144
i-mode	213
i-appli	275
Display Mode Setting.....	309
Display Priority.....	260
Display sites by shortcut	206
Driving mode.....	73
Dual Network Service	395

E

Earphone/microphone jack.....	27
Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch	
Connecting	27

How to use	386
Earpiece	26
Edit by Slide.....	366
Edy	280
Electronic dictionaries.....	385
Electronic money	280
English display.....	46
English Guidance Service	395
Enter characters (→ Characters entry)	
Enter key	26
Error Message	449
External connection terminals	27
External Device (for videophone).....	94

F

Face marks	
Entering	407
List.....	429
FeliCa	294
FirstPass.....	217
Fixed phrases	
Entering	407
List.....	428
Registering	409
Flash.....	199
Flash movie displays	202
Flat type earphone/microphone set (→ Eeaphone/Microphone Set with Switch)	
Focus Mode	37
FOMA card (→ UIM)	
Font Size Setting	150
Font Size (for mail)	260
Forward Mail	242
Full Browser.....	304
Setting	308

G

Group Search	114
Group Setting	111
Alert/Image by Group	112

H

Headset Key Control	387
Home URL.....	308
Host Selection	212
Certificate Host.....	218

I

IC card function	294

IC Card Lock	300	i-motion Mail	227	Use Camera	287
IC Card Lock Setting	300	Composing.....	235	Use infrared communication	287
Voiceprint authentication	300	Playing/saving.....	244		287
i-channel.....	290	Inbox	246	Use ToruCa	288
Channel List	291	In-camera	26	Vibrate Effect	275
Ticker Setting	292	In-car Handsfree	62	i-α ppli DX.....	270
Image		Incoming Call (Mail/Call Image)	142	i-α ppli Standby Display	
Adjusting	318	Incoming Message (Mail/Call Image)	144	Abnormal Exit History	284
Change brightness and tone	316	Incoming Msg.Attach.....	259	Operation	284
Change size	315	Indicator Light.....	149	Setting	139
Clipping	315	Info/Calendar Layout.....	139		
Created animation	314	Infrared communication.....	347		
Cutting	318	INBOX.....	350		
Deleting.....	346	Receive Ir Data.....	349		
Displaying	312	Remote control function			
Displaying from mail	243		351		
Editing	314	Send Ir Data.....	347		
Effects.....	316	Infrared Communication Mode			
Frames.....	317		351		
Moving/copying.....	343	Infrared data port.....	347		
Paste Text.....	317	Input Method Setting.....	413		
Reversing/rotating.....	316	Input prediction function.....	407		
Save from mail.....	243	International call	58		
Save from site.....	208	Internet connection.....	204		
Send images via mail.....	312	Int'l Dial Setting.....	59		
Set to standby display.....	313	i-shot	226		
Settings.....	318	ISP Connection Communication			
Shooting.....	176		212		
Size limitation.....	318	i-α ppli.....	270		
Slide show	313	Auto Start.....	282		
Sort	346	Auto Start Info Setting.....	282		
Stamps.....	317	Check number of items... ..	286		
View/Edit Detail Info.....	344	Create/delete folders	285		
Image Display	309	Deleting.....	285		
Image & Effect Setting	213	Detail Info.....	274		
Image (My Picture).....	312	Display Light	275		
i-melody.....	209	Download.....	271		
iMenu	196	i-α ppli To	283		
Immediate Update	459	miniSD Data.....	287		
i-mode	196	Moving	286		
i-mode Arrival Act: PT	104	Pre-installed i-α ppli	275		
i-mode FeliCa.....	294	Protecting.....	285		
i-mode Mail (→ Mail)		Quitting	273		
i-mode password.....	154	Security Error History.....	274		
Change i-mode Password		Settings.....	274		
.....	204	Software in Folder.....	286		
i-mode Setting	212	Software Info Display.....	272		
i-mode Shortcut.....	206	Software Information.....	286		
i-motion	219	Sort Software	286		
Setting.....	221	Start Failure History.....	283		
i-motion (in Data Box)	320	Starting	273		
Deleting.....	346	Trace display	274		
Sort	346	Upgrade	284		
Use album.....	343	Use Bar Code Reader	287		

K

Kana/Kanji Conversion	405
Key guidance	141
Key Lock	164
Key Lock Setting	164
Keylock switch	27
Keypad Dial Lock	161
Keypad Sound	130
KUTEN code	
Entering	410
List	435

L

Lens cover	173
Lens Cover Sound	131
Light Alert Setting.....	148
Priority of lighting	149
Light setting (→ Display Light Setting)	
Listen Volume	68
Low Battery Alert.....	45

M

Mail	224
Add Address	229
Add/delete folders.....	249
Attachment	234
Auto Receive	239
Auto-send	238
Change read/unread status	
Check i-mode Message	241
Check number of items... ..	249
Compose from phonebook	
Compose from schedule	374
Composing/sending (Compose Message)	228
Copy message text.....	253
Copying	250
Deco-mail	230

Delete Attachment.....	246	Priority of outgoing images		Motion Smoothy 2.....	445
Delete Mail	252		142	Movable Contents.....	326
Display Priority	260	Mail/Msg Ring Alert.....	128	Movie Camera (→ Camera)	
Display Type.....	259	Make calls (→ Phone)		Movie Memo	380
Display/Save Image	243	Melo-deco	233	Multiaccess	364
Editing	239	Melody	330	Combination	439
Folder list screen	247	Deleting	346	Multi-address transmission	
Font Size	260	List.....	132		229
Forward Mail.....	242	Moving.....	343	Multi Number	397
Inbox/Outbox	246	Playing.....	330	Multitask	365
Incoming Msg. Attach.....	259	Save from mail	245	Combination	441
List screen	247	Save from site	209	Music Player	359
List Setting.....	258	Send melodies via mail ...	330	Play music.....	361
Move Mail	250	Set as ring alert	331	Player Setting.....	362
Msgs. in Folder.....	249	Settings	331	Mute Ring Time Setting	167
Phone Call.....	253	Sort	346	My Document	354
Play/Save Melody.....	245	Use album	343	Deleting	346
Protect Mail	251	View/Edit Detail Info	344	Sort.....	346
Quick Mail.....	239	Member list	375	Use folder.....	343
Quick Reply Setting.....	258	Menu.....	32	My Menu.....	203
Quick Reply Template	258	Change design	147	My phone number.....	48
Receive Option.....	240	List.....	416	My Picture.....	312
Receiving.....	239	Setting.....	146	Deleting	346
Register data in phonebook		Submenu	36	Sort	346
.....	253	Message Alert.....	215	Use album	343
Register URL in Bookmark		Message i-a ppli.....	271		
.....	254	Message Retrieval (Mail/Call			
Reply to Mail.....	241	Image).....	144		
Save Mail.....	238	Message R/F	214		
Search	250	Auto-display.....	215		
Search (from phonebook)		Check new message	241		
.....	113	Delete Message	216		
Search (from schedule) ...	375	Display by Type.....	216		
Set ring alert.....	128	Display Priority	260		
Sort.....	251	Displaying (Message R/			
Sort Criteria	255	Message F)	215		
View screen.....	248	Message Alert	215		
Mail address	224	Protect Message	216		
Display Address	250	Receive Message R/F	214		
Mail Alert.....	260	Set ring alert	128		
Mail Group		Microphone	26		
Enter address	228	miniSD memory card	331		
Setting	257	Backup	337		
Mail List Setting	258	Check free space	335		
Mail Reply Format.....	258	Copying/moving.....	336		
Mail Setting (in FOMA terminal)		Display data.....	338		
.....	255	Folder structure	333		
Mail Setting (in i-mode Center)		Format.....	341		
.....	225	Inserting/removing.....	335		
Mail templates.....	236	Scan Card	342		
Mail To (from mail).....	253	Sync Data Info.....	341		
Mail To (from site).....	211	Use from PC.....	342		
Mail/Call Image	142	miniSD memory card adapter			
Priority of incoming images			332		
.....	143	miniSD memory card slot.....	27		
		Missed call	67		

S	
SAR (Specific Absortion Rate)	464
Save Phase	409
Save Word	410
Schedule Reminder	130
Scheduler	370
Calendar View Mode	370
Check No. of Items	376
Checking	373
Compose mail	374
Copying/pasting	374
Day Off Setting	370
Deleting	375
Holiday Setting	371
Member list	375
Reminder Option	373
Registration	371
Search mail	375
Secret Attribute	376
When the set time comes	373
Screen Memo	207
Deleting	208
Display site	207
Protecting	208
Renaming	208
Saving	207
Screen View Setting	310
Script Setting	309
Secrecy Search	123
Secret Attribute	
Phonebook	123
Schedule	376
Secret Code Setting	122
Secret Mode	165
Security code	154
Security scan (→ Virus Scan Function)	
Select Language	46
Self Mode	160
Send DTMF	83
Sent mail (→ Mail)	
Service Dialing Number	396
Short Message (→ SMS)	
Shortcut operations	34
Show All Names	114
Shutter key	27
Shutter Sound	131
Signature	256
Silent Mode	134
Simple menu	32
Site	196
Connect to SSL page	201
Display site	200
Display URL of site	203

Last Visited URL	202
Operating	202
Reload	203
Scrolling	203
Slide Sound	131
Slot Input Method	412
SMS	227
Check SMS	266
Compose from phonebook	113
Compose SMS	264
Deleting	252
Deleting (from UIM)	268
Delivered report	228
Display Priority	260
Folder list screen	247
Insert signature	265
List screen	247
Quick Mail	239
Receive SMS	265
Save SMS to UIM	267
Setting	266
Sort Criteria	255
View screen	248
Software Update	457
Immediate Update	459
Reserved Update	460
Sort Criteria	255
Priority	256
Sound Recorder	352
Sound Setting	128
Speaker	27
Speakerphone function	
Video phone call	81
Voice call	51
Speed Selector	26
How to use	28
Setting	28
Speed Selector Sound	130
SSL communication	198
Connecting	201
Standby display	46
Standby Display Setting	136
Clock Display Format	151
Standby time	42
Standby Voice Memo	380
Status Message	72
Still image (→ Image)	
Style Theme	152
Sub Address	60
Submenu	36
Symbols	
Entering	408
List	432

T	
Talking Voice Memo	380
TASK key	27
Template	236
Downloading	237
Read Template	236
Save Template	237
Terminal security code	154
Change Security Code	155
Timed Lock	301
Timed pause	52
Timer	367
ToruCa	295
Check information	298
Create/delete folders	298
Deleting	299
Displaying	297
Moving/copying	298
Obtaining	296
Protecting	299
Searching	298
Setting	299
Sort	299
Transmit tone signals (DTMF)	83
Troubleshooting	446
Two-key Shortcut	282

U	
UIM (FOMA card)	
Functional differences	40
Inserting/removing	38
Operation restriction function	39
Register phonebook data	110
Security codes	39
Unblock PIN lock	157
Unsent mail (→ Mail)	
Unsent messages (folder)	246
URL	
Copying	211
Display site	203
Entering	204
History	205
Last Visited URL	202
Register in phonebook	212
USB Mode Setting	342

V	
Vibrator Setting	133
i-a ppli	275
Priority of vibrator	133

Videophone	80	Switch in-camera/out-camera	89	Sort	346
Brightness/color density	87	Switch outgoing images	86	View/Edit Detail Info	344
Camera Setting	87	Switch to voice call	82	Virus Scan Function	461
Change images (Image Setting)	91	Zoom	88	Auto-update Setting	462
Chara-den	85	Videophone Alert	70	Scan Version	463
Compact light	89	Chang image	142	Scanning Setting	461
Connection Speed	122	Videophone Dialing (Mail/Call Image)	142	Update Definition	462
Display settings	90	Videophone Receiving (Mail/Call Image)	142	Voice call (→ Phone)	
External Device	94	Video/i-motion		Voice Mail Service	392
Flicker adjustment	87	Capture	323	Voice Memo	380
Frame	86	Compose i-motion Mail ...	320	Voiceprint authentication	300
Macro mode	89	Custom Edit	323		
Make calls	80	Deleting	346		
Notify Switchable Mode ...	93	Edit by Size	324		
Quality of outgoing/incoming images	86	Edit Ticker	324		
Receive calls	83	Editing	322		
Scene Mode/Effect	87	Moving/copying	343		
Send camera-off image ...	88	Play album data	344		
Send still image	88	Playing	320		
Send tone signals	83	Replay restriction	321		
Settings	90	Set bookmark	321		
Settings during a call	90	Set to standby display	322		
Substitute image setting ...	92	Settings	326		
		Shooting	181		

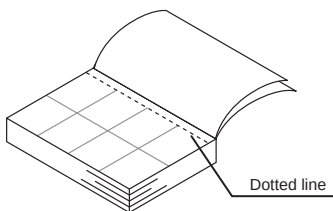
W	
Warranty	456
Web To (from mail)	253
Web To (from site)	211
WORLD CALL	58
WORLD WING	41

Other	
186/184 Call	57
3D Sound	132
5-touch Input Method	405
64K data communication ...	400

Quick Reference Manual

How to use Quick Reference Manual

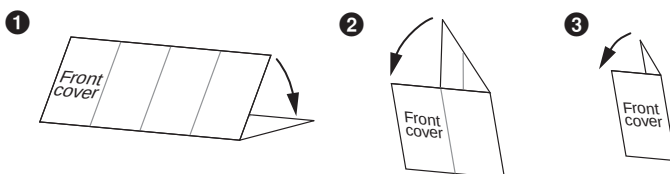
Use Quick Reference Manual included in this manual as follows.



Cut along the dotted line.

- Be careful not to hurt yourself when cutting.

Fold the sheet along the line so that the front cover is on top.



General Inquiries

<DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

☎ 0120-005-250 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

(In Japanese only)

☎ No prefix 151 (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

☎ No prefix 113 (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

• Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
• For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

Registering entries in the phonebook

■ Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook

1 ☎ [4] [2]

2 Enter a name ➡ ☎



3 Set each item ➡ ☎



■ Registering entries into the UIM phonebook

1 ☎ [4] [3]

1

2 Enter a name ➡ ☎

3 Set each item ➡ ☎

■ Registering from the redial data or received call history

1 ☎ or ☎

2 Highlight the entry to register ➡ ☎ [2]

• Adding to the registered entry: ☎ [2]

3 [2] (FOMA terminal phonebook) or [2] (UIM phonebook)

• Adding to the registered entry: Select the party to add

4 Set each item ➡ ☎

• Adding to the registered entry: Select **Overwrite** or **New entry**

Editing the phonebook entries

1 ☎

• Switching the phonebook: ☎

2 Highlight the entry to edit ➡ ☎ [3] [2]

2

■ Entering symbols, pictograms and fixed phrases

● Entering symbols or pictograms

☎ while entering ➡ Select **Pict/Symbol/Smiley** ➡ [1] or [2] ➡ Select a symbol or pictogram

● Entering fixed phrases

☎ while entering ➡ Select **Phrase/Kuten/Quote** ➡ [1] ➡ Select the type of fixed phrase ➡ Select a fixed phrase

■ Kuten Code Input

☎ while entering ➡ Select **Phrase/Kuten/Quote** ➡ [2] ➡ Enter 4-digit code

Camera

■ Shooting still image/video

● Shooting still image

1 Open the lens cover

• For the UIM phonebook: Highlight the entry to edit ➡ ☎ [3]

3 Edit ➡ ☎

4 Select **Overwrite** or **New entry**

Searching the phonebook entries

1 ☎ [4] [2]

• Switching the phonebook: ☎

2 [2] to [7]

• For the UIM phonebook, [1] to [4]

Character entry

■ Entering and converting characters (5-touch Input Method)

<Example> Entering "企業"

1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode "き" : [2] twice ➡ ☎ (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by automatic cursor function.)

3

2 Point the camera at the object and ☎ or ☎

3 ☎ or ☎

● Recording video

1 ☎ [5] [7] ➡ Open the lens cover

2 Point the camera at the object and ☎ or ☎

3 ☎ or ☎

4 ☎ or ☎

■ Displaying or playing shot still image/video

● Displaying a still image

1 ☎ [2]

2 Select **Camera** ➡ Select a still image

● Playing video

1 ☎ [2]

- 2** Select *Camera* ▶ Select video
- Operations available during video playback
- ② ▶ Adjust the volume
- ⏮ ▶ Rewind and play/play fast forward
- ⏸ ▶ Pause/play
- ⏹ ▶ Stop

Videophone

Making videophone calls

- 1** Enter the phone number
- 2** Ⓜ
- 3** Talk with the other party
- Placing call on hold: Ⓜ ▶ Ⓜ to cancel
 - Switching the speakerphone on/off: Ⓜ ▶ Ⓜ
 - Switching the image to send: Ⓜ
- 4** Ⓜ when you finish the call

8

- 3** Select a mail
- Editing sent mail: Highlight a mail ▶ Ⓜ
- 4** Edit ▶ Ⓜ

Receiving i-mode Mail

- 1** A mail is received
- The mail ring alert sounds, the Enter key lights/flashes and the reception result screen is displayed
- 2** Ⓜ or Ⓜ ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a mail

Checking for i-mode Mail

Ⓜ Ⓜ

Receiving videophone calls

- 1** A call is received
- Holding answer: Ⓜ
- 2** Ⓜ or Ⓜ
- Operation during a call is the same as Step 3 of "Making videophone calls"
- 3** Ⓜ when you finish the call

i-mode Mail

Number of characters sent/received

Item	One-byte characters	Two-byte characters
Subject	30 characters	15 characters
Address	50 characters	
Message	10,000 characters	5,000 characters

9

Menu list

Press Ⓜ and input the number of each item.
 <Example> Displaying a sent mail

Ⓜ Ⓜ Ⓜ

1 Mail	2 Compose message
3 Chat mail	4 Unsent messages
5 Outbox	
6 Check new message	2 SMS
7 i-mode message	2 Message retrieval
8 Receive option	
9 SMS	2 Compose SMS
	2 Sent SMS
	2 Read templates
	2 Mail settings
	2 Mail alert
	2 Sort criteria
	2 Reply setting
	2 Quick reply template
	2 Mail group

12

Composing and sending i-mode Mail

- 1** Ⓜ (for over a second)
- 
- Remaining number of one-byte characters that can be entered
- 2** Select the address field ▶ Select input method ▶ Enter or select address
- 3** Select the subject field ▶ Enter subject
- 4** Select the message field ▶ Enter message
- Composing Deco-mail: Ⓜ ▶ Select decoration method ▶ Enter characters
- 5** Ⓜ
- Saving mail: Ⓜ ▶ Ⓜ
 - Auto-send: Ⓜ ▶ Ⓜ

10

1 Mail	7 Mail settings
2 i-mode	7 Display settings
	1 Display priority
	2 Incoming msg attach
	3 Message list
	6 Only view
	2 i-menu
	3 Go to location
	1 Enter URL
	2 URL history
	4 Screen memo
	5 i-mode message
	6 Message R&F
	11 Message R
	2 Message settings
	3 Message retrieval
	4 Attachment auto-play
	7 i-Channel
	1 i-Channel list
	2 Ticker setting
	8 i-mode settings
	1 i-mode shortcuts
	2 Connection timeout
	3 Display light
	4 i-mode av. actPT
	5 Certificate
	1 Set certificate
	2 Certificate download
	6 Image & Effect
	7 Host selection

14

File attachments

- 1** Select the attachment field on the mail composition screen
- 2** Select attachment type
- Shooting and attaching still image: Select *Image* ▶ Select *Use still camera*
 - Recording and attaching video: Select *i-motion* ▶ Select *Use movie camera*
 - Recording and attaching sound: *Record sound*
- 3** Select *Phone memory* or *miniSD card* ▶ Select a folder
- 4** Select a file
- Removing attachment: Highlight the attachment field ▶ Ⓜ ▶ Select *Yes*
- Editing and sending unsent i-mode Mail**
 <Example> Editing unsent mail
- 1** Ⓜ ▶ Ⓜ
- Editing sent mail: Ⓜ ▶ Ⓜ
- 2** Select a folder

11

2 i-mode	9 Full Browser
	1 Home
	3 Go to location
	2 Bookmark
	1 Enter URL
	2 URL history
	3 Last visited URL
	4 Browser settings
	1 Home URL
	2 Script setting
	3 Image display
	4 Access setting
	5 Screen view setting
	7 Referer setting
3 i-jpapi	7 Software list
	2 i-jpapi settings
	1 Sort software
	3 Software info disp
	4 Vibrate effect
	5 i-jpapi shortcuts
4 Playback & Logs	
	2 Playback
	3 i-jpapi new entry
	4 Received calls
	5 Redial
	7 Ans. machine/Voice memo
	1 Answer machine
	2 Recorded messages
	3 Record voice memo
	4 Voice memos
	8 Own number

15

Cut here

6 Data Box		
1 Image	2 Motion	
3 Memory	4 Character	
5 My Documents		
6 Text ²		
1 Bar code reader		
2 Data exchange		
3 Exchange settings	4 Receive r data	
4 Send all r data	5 i-poll effect sound	
6 TONCa	7 USB mode settings	
1 TONCa list	2 TONCa settings	
4 IC card		
1 IC card content	2 Lock/unlock	
3 Trained lock	4 IC card lock setting	
5 Mirrored card	6 Camera	
7 Move camera	8 Sound recorder	
9 Data Center		
1 Access Data Center	2 Synchronization log	
3 Sync setting		
7 Settings		
1 Speed dial	2 Network	
3 Alarm clock	4 Calculator	
5 Dictionaries		
8 Settings & MW services		
1 Alerts & Sounds		
1 Call ring alert	2 MailMsg ring alert	
3 Alarm sound	4 Operation sound	
5 Change alert	6 Call session	

16

9 Settings & MW services		
6 Others	5 NW search method	
1 External input method	7 Quick start-up	
3 Software update	8 Set speed selector	
8 Edit by slide		
9 NW Services		
1 Voice Mail		
1 Forward Mail service		
3 Tone/Vibration info	4 Message notification	
2 Unlabeled message	4 Hide Voice Mail icon	
3 Unlabeled call		
2 Calling	2 Deactivate	
3 Call forwarding		
1 Activate	2 Deactivate	
3 Register The Forwarding Number		
2 Register if forwarding number busy		
3 Check setting		
4 Call history		
1 Check message		
2 Message display settings		
3 Caller ID reception	2 Check setting	
1 Caller ID request	2 Deactivate	
3 Check setting		
1 Set arrival act		
7 Activate	2 Deactivate	

28

9 Settings & MW services		
1 Alerts & Sounds		
2 Call alert volume	2 MailMsg alert vol	
1 Call alert volume	4 Alarm volume	
5 i-poll effect sound	6 TONCa receive alert	
3 Vibrate alert effect		
1 Call vibrate alert	2 MailMsg vibrate alert	
3 Alarm vibrate	4 i-poll effect	
4 Silent mode	5 Set mute ring time	
1 Display		
1 Standby display	2 Clock format	
1 Image-i-poll	4 Info/calendar layout	
3 Battery icon		
5 i-Channel ticker		
2 Menu preference		
3 Color & action image	2 Customize shortcut	
3 Receive display	4 MailCall image	
4 Display light	4 Videophone image	
1 Display light time		
3 Brightness	2 Light area	
1 Light alert		
5 Light alert	2 Call session light	
3 IC card light	4 Speed select/Chirp	
6 Indicator light		
1 Font & Language		
7 Font size	2 Select language	

17

9 Settings & MW services		
9 NW Services		
7 Set arrival act		
3 Check setting		
8 External call act		
9 Others		
1 Register USD	2 Record reply message	
3 Remote control	4 Nuisance call barring	
2 English guidance	6 Dual network	
7 Service DTMF Number	8 Multi numbers	
9 Music Player		
9 Own number		

■ Key operations for functions

Start operations on the standby display.

Function	Operation procedure
Power ON/OFF	[ON] (for over 2 seconds)
Setting/canceling Self Mode	[Self Mode] (for over a second) ▶ Select Yes
Setting/canceling Key Lock	Slide the keylock switch downward and release
Channel list	[Channel List]
Setting/canceling Public mode (Driving mode)	[Public Mode] (for over a second)

21

9 Settings & MW services		
2 Display		
3 Style theme		
3 Security & Locks		
1 Locks		
1 All lock	2 PIN lock	
3 IC card lock	3 Keypad dial lock	
2 Secret mode		
4 UIM		
5 Change security code	6 Privacy mode	
7 Scanning function		
1 Update	2 Set auto-update	
3 Set scan	4 Version	
8 Key lock setting		
4 Info. & Reset		
1 Call duration	2 Confirm	
3 Battery level		
4 Call cost		
1 Last call cost	2 Call cost limit	
3 Hide call cost item	4 Reset call cost	
5 Reset	6 Delete all data	
3 Clock		
1 Date & time	2 Auto power ON	
3 Auto power OFF	4 Clock display format	
5 Alarm auto power ON		
6 Call & answer		
1 Outgoing call	2 Call alert	
3 Anonymous caller	4 Any key answer	

18

Function	Operation procedure
i-mode menu	[i-mode menu] (for over a second)
i-poll folder list	[i-poll folder list] (for over a second)
Received Calls	[Received Calls] (for over a second)
Activating/canceling Privacy Mode¹	To activate: [Privacy Mode] (for over a second) To cancel: [Privacy Mode] (for over a second) ▶ Enter the terminal security code
Redial	[Redial] (for over a second)
Setting/canceling Silent Mode	[Silent Mode] (for over a second)
New Task menu	[New Task menu]
Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu	[Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu]
Phonebook	[Phonebook] (for over a second)
Scheduler	[Scheduler] (for over a second)
Mail menu	[Mail menu] (for over a second)
Composing i-mode Mail	[Compose] (for over a second)
Data Box menu	[Data Box menu]

22

9 Settings & MW services		
6 Call & Answer		
5 Headset		
1 Alert preference	2 Auto answer	
3 Headset key control		
6 Reject/Account call	2 Unregistered caller	
1 Specified caller		
7 Make/receive call	2 Priority comm mode	
1 Priority comm mode	4 Int'l Dial Setting	
3 Int'l Dial Setting	4 Sub address	
5 Open answer		
1 Call session		
1 Noise reduction	2 Close settings	
8 Self mode		
7 Videophone & PushTalk		
1 Videophone	2 Videophone alert	
1 Vt/phone dialing ring	4 DataSession any act	
3 Operation	6 External device	
5 Message setting		
7 Notify switchable mode		
1 PushTalk (PT)		
1 PushTalk alert	2 PushTalk ring time	
3 Notify PushTalk alert	4 PushTalk auto answer	
7 i-mode any act	6 Setting when tolled	
1 Save word/phrases		
8 Others		
1 Save word	2 Save phrase	
2 DL dictionary	3 Reset prediction	

19

Function	Operation procedure
Activate Camera (with out-camera)	[Camera] (for over a second)
Activate Camera (with in-camera)	[Camera] (for over a second)
PushTalk phonebook	[PushTalk phonebook] (for over a second)
Setting/canceling IC Card Lock	To set: [IC Card Lock] (for over a second) To cancel: [IC Card Lock] (for over a second) ▶ Select Yes To set: [IC Card Lock] (for over a second) ▶ Enter the terminal security code ²

¹ Available only when Privacy Mode Setting is made.
² When Cancel method in IC Card Lock Setting is set to Voice/SecurityCode, voiceprint authentication is required before entering the terminal security code.

23

Cut here

Network services

Voice Mail Service

Separate application (pay) is required.

● Activating the service

- 1 Select Yes

2 Enter ringing time

● Deactivating the service

- 1 Select Yes

● Playing back voice mail message

- 1 Select Yes
- 1 Follow the voice prompts

Call Waiting Service

Separate application (pay) is required.

● Activating/deactivating the service

- 1 or Select Yes

24

1 During infrared communication

Key Lock is set (in gray when Key Lock is temporarily released)

5 Speakerphone function in operation

During connecting to USB handsfree compatible equipment

6 Total call cost exceeds the maximum limit.

Accessing the phonebook on the network

7 Mail storage status in i-mode Center

Unread mail status

8 Unread Message R status

Unread Message F status

9 i-mode standby display on

i-mode standby display on

10 During SSL page display

Auto-send mail exists

11 Auto-send mail failed exists

Secret mail is set

28

● Answering another call

during a call

Switching the other parties: Select Yes

● Making another call

Enter phone number during a call Select Yes

Switching the other parties: Select Yes

● Ending a call

to end another call Select Yes

Call resumption with on-hold person: Select Yes

Call Forwarding Service

Separate application (free) is required.

● Activating the service

- 1 Select Yes

2 Enter the forwarding destination phone number

Entering the destination from the phonebook: Select Yes

3 Enter ringing time

25

1 i-mode Auto Start failed

Bottom of the display



1 Missed calls

Recorded messages

3 Voice mail messages

Unread mail

5 Unread ToruCa

General silent mode is set

7 Personalized silent mode is set

Call alert volume is set to *silent*

9 Vibrator for incoming voice call is set

Call alert volume is set to *silent* and vibrator for incoming voice call is set

10 Public mode (Driving mode) is set

29

● Deactivating the service

Select Yes

Caller ID Request Service

Separate application is not required (free).

● Activating/deactivating the service

- 1 or Select Yes

Services available from FOMA terminal

Service	Phone No.
Collect calls (calls charged to receiver)	106
Directory assistance for general subscriber phone numbers and DoCoMo mobile phone numbers (charged) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104
Telegrams (charged) 8 am to 10 pm	115
Time (charged)	117

26

9 Answer Machine is set

Recorded messages full

10 Connected to external device via the FOMA USB cable

Mode

11 Effective Speed Selector keys in Focus

minUSD memory card inserted

12 Reading the UIM

IC Card Lock is set

13 PIM Lock is set

Keypad Dial Lock is set

15 Alarm Clock is set

Schedule alarm is set

Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set at the same time

16 Software Update reserved

Auto-update of the latest pattern definition is failed

Auto-update of the latest pattern definition is succeeded

30

Service	Phone No.
Weather (charged)	Area code +177
Police (emergency calls)	110
Fire and ambulance (emergency calls)	119
Emergency calls at sea	118
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charged)	171

Reading display

Top of the display



1 Battery level

Received signal level

Self Mode is set

During data transfer

In i-mode communication (during i-mode connection)

In i-mode communication (during packet communication)

27

General Inquiries

<DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

0120-005-250 (toll free)

Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

(In Japanese only)

No prefix 151 (toll free)

Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

0120-800-000 (toll free)

Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

No prefix 113 (toll free)

Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

0120-800-000 (toll free)

Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

31

Cut here

Mobile phone etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, always be considerate of your environment and those around you.

Turn the power off in the following situations

In prohibited areas

Use of mobile phones in the following places is prohibited. You must turn off your FOMA terminal.

- Airplanes
- Hospitals

You must also turn the power off when in lobbies or waiting rooms of hospitals as there could be people in such areas who could be adversely affected by mobile phone signals.

While driving

Using your FOMA terminal while driving could cause an accident. Stop the vehicle in a safe place before using the phone or use Public mode (Driving mode/power off).

On crowded trains or in other areas where there could be a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator

Operating a mobile phone could interfere with implanted cardiac pacemakers or defibrillators.

When visiting live events, movie theaters, museums or other public places

The ringing of your phone and your telephone conversations could disturb others around you in quiet public places.

Be considerate of your location and those around you with respect to the volume of your speaking voice and your FOMA terminal's ring tone

When using a mobile phone in a restaurant, hotel lobby or other quiet places, always remember to lower your voice.

When using a mobile phone on the street, find a place that does not interfere with passing traffic.

Be considerate of privacy



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Functions convenient for public etiquette

You may select a mode to reject incoming calls, turn off all sounds generated by your FOMA terminal, etc. from many modes to keep from disturbing those around you.

● Silent Mode/Customize Silent Mode

Keypad sound, ring tones and all other sounds generated by the FOMA terminal are turned off (Silent Mode). ➡P134

The user is allowed to change Silent Mode operations (Customize Silent Mode). ➡P135

Even in Silent Mode, the shutter sound is heard while shooting.

● Public mode (Driving mode/power off)

When a call is received, an announcement informs the caller that you are driving or in an area where use of the mobile phone should be refrained or that you are in an area where the phone should be turned off, and the call is then disconnected. ➡P73, P74

● Vibrator

When a call is received, the FOMA terminal vibrates instead of ringing. ➡P133

● Answer Machine

When you cannot answer a call, the caller can leave a brief message. ➡P75

You may also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

➡P392, P394

Access DoCoMo e-site for procedures to change your address or billing plan and for request of information materials.

From i-mode

iMenu ▶ 料金&お申込(Charges & Application) ▶ ドコモeサイト(DoCoMo e-site)

Packet communication charges free

From PC

**My DoCoMo (<https://www.mydocomo.com/>) ▶ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト)
(Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))**

- You will need your "network ID" to access e-site from i-mode.
- No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site from i-mode. Accessing from overseas will incur charges.
- You will need your "My DoCoMo ID/password" to access e-site from PC.
- If you do not have or you have forgotten your "network ID" or "My DoCoMo ID/password", contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed below.
- DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
- You may not be able to access some e-site services due to system maintenance, etc.

**General Inquiries
<DoCoMo Information Center>**

(In English)

 **0120-005-250** (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

(In Japanese only)

 **(No prefix) 151** (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSSs.

 **0120-800-000** (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSSs.

• Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

 **(No prefix) 113** (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSSs.

 **0120-800-000** (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSSs.

• Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

• For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.



Do not forget your cellular phone
... or your manners!

When using your portable phone in a public place, do not forget to show common courtesies
and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION



To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.



This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.



* 8 6 0 0 2 0 7 A *

'06.5 (1.1st edition)

FOMA[®] D902iS

Manual for Data Communication

Data communication	1
Flow of setup for data communication	2
Connecting PC to FOMA terminal	3
Installation of the communication configuration file (driver)	4
Communicating using the FOMA PC configuration software	5
Communicating without using the FOMA PC configuration software	15
AT command	25

■ About Manual for Data Communication

In this manual, the important items, which are needed for data communication by FOMA D902iS and the method of installing “communication configuration file (driver) for D902iS” and “FOMA PC configuration software” are explained.

■ Operations for Windows

In this manual, the contents correspond to Windows XP Service Pack 2.

A part of the operations or screens may differ, depending on the environment.

Data communication

The data communication modes available from FOMA terminal and hints on use are explained.

- FOMA terminal does not support the Remote Wakeup.
- FOMA terminal does not support fax communication.
- When connecting FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA "sigmarion II" or "musea" for data communication, make sure to update "sigmarion II" or "musea". For details on update, visit the DoCoMo website.

Supported communication modes

FOMA terminal supports 3 communication modes: packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer.

These communications become available by installing the related software onto a PC from the attached CD-ROM, connecting FOMA terminal to the PC and making required settings.

■ Packet communication

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which make it suitable for high-speed exchange of relatively small amounts of data such as sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.

High-speed packet communication provides a maximum reception speed of 384 kbps and a maximum transmission speed of 64 kbps by using access points that support packet communication on FOMA, such as Docomo's "mopera U/mopera" Internet connection service. These are offered by Best-effort connection which allows transmission speed to vary with the environment and the rate of congestion.

Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges.

■ 64K data communication

The 64K data communications allow data transfer/reception at stabled communication rate of 64 kbps. Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which make it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents. You need to use access points that support FOMA 64K data communication such as Docomo's "mopera U/mopera" Internet connection

service or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps access points.

Note that communicating for long time will require high charges.

■ Data transfer

It is the mode of non-charged communication in which data are transferred/exchanged via FOMA USB cable (optional). Various data including the phonebook, incoming/outgoing mail and bookmarks are sent/received.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charge

When using the Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter called provider) is generally required. This charge is paid directly to the provider, and is separate from the FOMA service charge. For more information on usage charges, contact your provider.

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera.

The mopera U service requires subscription and a monthly fee. It allows you to use broadband Internet connection and international roaming services. There is also a plan that requires a monthly fee only when you use the service.

The mopera service, allows you to access the Internet without subscription and monthly fee.

You can make a connection with Internet immediately.

For details such as on charges, visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the dialup connection (provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64 kbps data communication or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps data communication.

- You cannot connect to access points of PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS or DoPa.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connections require user authentication (ID and password) before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password before connection. Your ID and password will be assigned by the provider or network administrator such as in-house LAN, etc. For more information, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication when using PC browser

To authenticate FirstPass (user certificate), you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. For details, see "FirstPassManual" in the CD-ROM.

To view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you need to download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website (Communication fee is separately required for downloading). For details, see the Adobe Systems Incorporated website.

■ Operating environment for the FirstPass PC software

Item	Requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98SE, Me, 2000 or XP
Memory requirements*1	Windows 98SE, Me, 2000: 32MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard disk capacity*1	10 MB or more free disk space
Browser	Microsoft® Internet Explorer 5.5 and later version For Windows XP, Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6.0 and later version

*1 May vary with the PC system configurations.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- The PCs which may use a FOMA USB cable (optional).
- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires an access point that supports FOMA 64 kbps or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps data communication.

However, even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy, or the signal quality is poor.

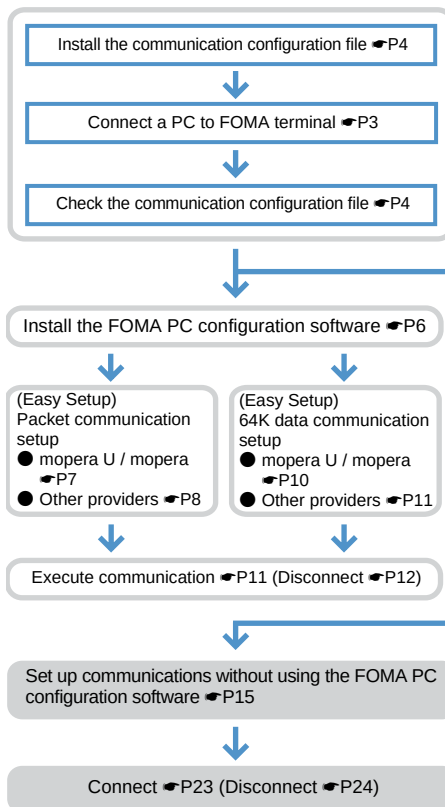
Glossary of Data communication

- Administrator privilege
A user level that provides complete access to all OS functions in Windows XP and 2000. There must be at least one user that has administrator privileges for each PC. A user that has no administrator privileges is not normally allowed to install/uninstall drivers and software.

- APN (Access Point Name)
String to identify a provider, etc. to connect by packet communication. The APN for mopera U is "mopera.net" and mopera is "mopera.ne.jp".
- cid (Context Identifier)
The registration number when writing packet communication dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal. 10 numbers from 1 to 10 are available for FOMA terminal.
By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid1, and "mopera.net" in cid3.
- W-TCP
A TCP parameter designed to fully utilize TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communications in a FOMA network. This communication setting is essential to enable full use of FOMA terminal capability.

Flow of setup for data communication

The setup work needed to connect FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication is as follows:



Communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC from the attached CD-ROM, before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication.

FOMA PC configuration software

When the FOMA PC configuration software (found on the CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for data communication via connection between FOMA terminal and PC can be made from the PC by simple operation.

Checking operating environment

Use the communication configuration file and the FOMA PC configuration software in the following operating environments:

Item	Requirements
PC*1	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98, Me, 2000 or XP
Memory requirements	Windows 98, Me: 32MB or more Windows 2000: 64MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or more free disk space

*1 USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) is required.

INFORMATION

- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed in an environment other than that described above or by upgrading. And DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for operation under such conditions.
- In this manual, Windows 98 and Windows 98SE are collectively shown as Windows 98.

Before installation/uninstallation

- Installing and uninstalling the communication configuration file or the FOMA PC configuration software under Windows XP or 2000 can only be performed by a user with administrator privileges. Attempts made by other users will result in errors. For details on PC administrator privileges, refer to the instruction manual of the PC or contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before starting operation, make sure that no other program is running. If there is any active program, save and exit the program before operation.

Connecting PC to FOMA terminal

The connection should be made with the PC and FOMA terminal both switched on.

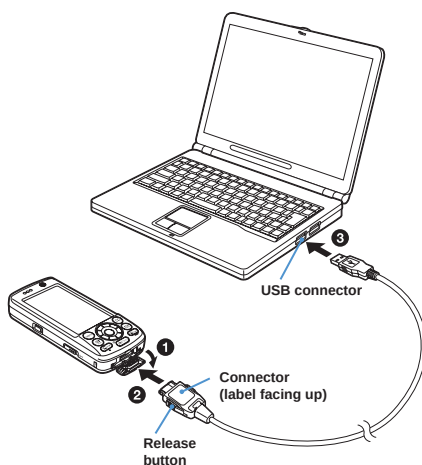
- Be sure to install the communication configuration file (driver) before connecting with a PC in communication mode. ➡P4

Connecting a PC

Connect by using the FOMA USB cable (optional).

- 1 Open the cap on the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal
- 2 Insert one end of the FOMA USB cable into the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal until it clicks
- 3 Insert the other end of the FOMA USB cable into the PC USB connector

- When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected in communication mode,  appears on the display of FOMA terminal.
- If you connect FOMA terminal to a PC in communication mode before installing the communication configuration file, Windows may automatically detect that a FOMA USB cable has been inserted, request to install a driver, and the wizard screen will be displayed. In that case, remove FOMA terminal and click キャンセル (Cancel) to exit the wizard.



■ Removing FOMA USB cable

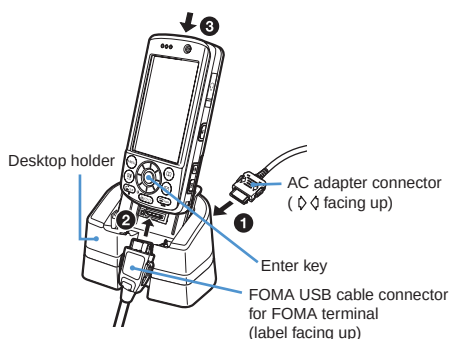
Press release buttons on both sides of the connector for FOMA terminal and pull it out. Pull the connector for PC out from the side of PC.

- Be sure to press release buttons on both sides of the connector when pulling it out for FOMA terminal. Forcing to pull it out may cause a malfunction.

Connecting while charging

FOMA terminal can be connected using a desktop holder (optional) during the charging. However, charging time becomes longer.

- 1 Connect the desktop holder to the AC adapter**
 - Plug the AC adapter into the wall outlet
- 2 Connect FOMA terminal and FOMA USB cable**
- 3 Along with the desktop holder, insert FOMA terminal at an angle as shown in the figure**
 - Pull out the FOMA USB cable in front of the desktop holder, when inserting FOMA terminal.
 - Check that the Enter key lights in red.



INFORMATION

- FOMA terminal can be connected in communication mode by using a data communication adapter D01(optional), while charging. However, charging time becomes longer.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB cable during data communication, or give shock to FOMA terminal and desktop holder. It may cause the interruption of charging or data communication, malfunction or failure of PC or FOMA terminal, or loss of data.
- Starting to charge during data communication may not complete charging. To complete charging, it is recommended that you end the data communication first, and then start charging.

Installation of the communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file onto a PC before connecting FOMA terminal to the PC to perform communication.

Installing the communication configuration file

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ●P3

- Perform Steps 1 to 3 first, and then connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

- 1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into a PC**
The ソフトウェアのセットアップ (Software setup) screen appears.
- 2 Click 通信設定ファイル (Communication configuration file)**
- 3 Click インストール開始 (Start installation)**
A screen requesting to connect FOMA D902iS to the PC appears.
- 4 Connect FOMA terminal to the PC**
A progress screen for installation appears and automatically completed.
 - Connect FOMA terminal while the power is on.
 - Go to "Checking the communication configuration file", and check the type and name of the device installed.

INFORMATION

- Installation may take a few minutes.
- When Windows rebooting is prompted on the screen, follow the instruction and reboot.
- If a PC and FOMA terminal are connected before the communication configuration file is installed, another driver may be automatically installed. When this happens, performing the operation in Step 2 displays a message saying that the installed driver must be uninstalled. In this case, uninstall the driver following instruction shown on the display and install the communication configuration file.

Checking the communication configuration file

When the PC does not detect FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.

Example For Windows XP

1 Click スタート (Start), コントロールパネル (Control Panel), the パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance) icon and the システム (System) icon

The システムのプロパティ (System properties) screen appears.

■ For Windows 2000, Me, 98:

① Click スタート, 設定 (Setting) and コントロールパネル

② Double-click the システム icon

2 Click the ハードウェア (Hardware) tab ▶ デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)

The デバイスマネージャ screen appears.

■ For Windows Me, 98: Click the デバイスマネージャ tab

3 Double-click a type of each device ▶ Check the name of the installed device

Check that all the names of installed devices are shown.

Device type	Device name
USB (Universal Serial Bus) Controller	• FOMA D902iS • FOMA D902iS Command*1 • FOMA D902iS Modem*1 • FOMA D902iS OBEX*1
Port (COM and LPT) or (COM/LPT)	• FOMA D902iS Command Port (COMx)*2 • FOMA D902iS OBEX Port (COMx)*2
Modem	FOMA D902iS

*1 Displayed only under Windows Me and 98.

*2 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.

Uninstalling the communication configuration file

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ●P3

Before uninstalling, make sure that FOMA terminal is removed from the PC.

Example For Windows XP

1 Click スタート, コントロールパネル and the プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/delete Programs) icon

The プログラムの追加と削除 screen appears.

■ For Windows 2000, Me, 98:

① Click スタート, 設定 and コントロールパネル

② Double-click the アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/delete applications) icon

2 Select FOMA D902iS USB ▶ Click 変更と削除 (Update/delete)

• For Windows Me or 98, click 追加と削除 (Add/delete).

3 Check the name of program and click はい (Yes)

The uninstall process of the configuration software starts.

4 Click OK

INFORMATION

- When the installation fails or **FOMA D902iS USB** is not displayed on the screen of Step 1, insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC, click 通信設定ファイル on the ソフトウェアのセットアップ screen and uninstall the communication configuration file.
- When the communication configuration file is uninstalled and immediately reinstalled under Windows Me or 98, data communication may not be successful depending on the PC environment. In this case, the FOMA USB cable (optional) should be removed and reinserted before re-attempting data communication.

Communicating using the FOMA PC configuration software

A number of settings are required when FOMA terminal is connected to a PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication. The FOMA PC configuration software allows you to easily perform the following settings:

■ Easy setup

Creating a dialup connection for FOMA data communication and W-TCP setup can be performed automatically by following the instructions in the guide.

■ W-TCP setup

This function optimizes the settings in the PC required for FOMA packet communication. Optimization of the communication settings using W-TCP setup is required to enable communication capability to maximum extent.

■ Dialup connection (APN) setup

This function performs the dialup connection (APN) setup required for packet communication. Unlike 64K data communication, phone numbers cannot be used as a dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. Set a dialup connection name called APN in FOMA terminal for each dialup connection in advance, and enter the registration number (cid) in the phone number field of dialup connection. By default, "mopera.ne.jp" (APN) is registered in cid 1 to connect to mopera, and "mopera.net" (APN) for cid 3 to connect to mopera U, but the APN for connections to other providers and in-house LAN must be set.

Installing the FOMA PC configuration software

- Uninstall an old version of the FOMA PC configuration software (version 1.00 or 2.00), if already installed, before installing the FOMA PC configuration software (version 2.0.1) from the attached CD-ROM. You can display the version from **メニュー (Menu) → バージョン情報 (Version information)** of the FOMA PC configuration software.
- If the following software (provided with the FOMA model released before this time's) are installed, uninstall them in advance:
 - W-TCP environment configuration software (hereinafter called "old W-TCP configuration software")
 - FOMA data communication configuration software (hereinafter called "old FOMA data communication configuration software")
- Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ●P3

Example For Windows XP

- 1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC**
The **ソフトウェアのセットアップ (Software setup)** screen appears.
- 2 Click **PC設定ソフト (PC configuration software)****
- 3 Click **次へ (Next)****
The FOMA PC configuration software license agreement appears.
- 4 Read the content of the screen and click **はい** if you agree to the agreement**

- 5 Check that **タスクトレイに常駐する (Reside in task tray)** is selected and click **次へ****

W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setup) resides in the task tray after the setup.

- This is recommended for setting and cancellation of W-TCP communication. (●P13)
- You can change the setting of resident software after the installation.



- 6 Check the installation path and click **次へ****
- 7 Check the name of the program folder and click **次へ****



- 8 Click **完了 (Done)****
FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software) is started up.
 - Settings can be started from this screen.

INFORMATION

- If the FOMA PC configuration software, old W-TCP configuration software, or old FOMA data communication configuration software is already installed, the screen to cancel the installation appears. Click **OK** to uninstall this software and then install the FOMA PC configuration software.
- When **キャンセル** or **いいえ (No)** is clicked during installation, the confirmation screen to cancel the installation appears. To continue the installation, click **はい**. To cancel, click **はい** and **完了**.

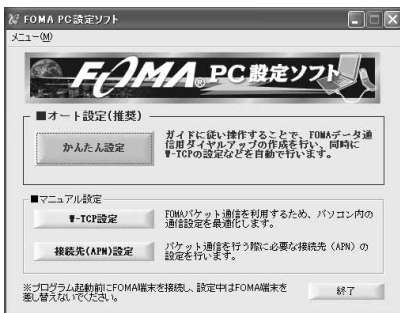
Setting packet communication by easy setup

Before setup, make sure that FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ●P3

Example For Windows XP

1 Click スタート, すべてのプログラム (All programs) (プログラム (Programs) for other than Windows XP), FOMA PC設定ソフト and FOMA PC設定ソフト

The FOMA PC configuration software is started up.



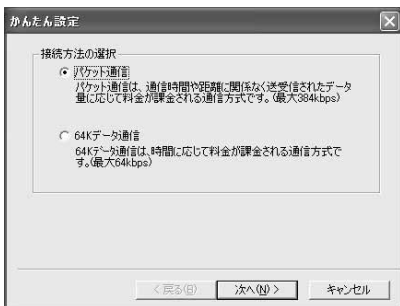
Using mopera U / mopera

- Using other providers ●P8

Example For Windows XP

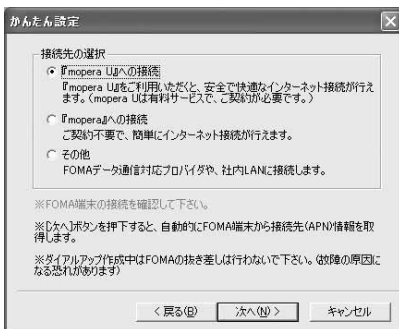
1 Start the FOMA PC configuration software ▶ Click かんたん設定 (Easy setup)

2 Select パケット通信 (Packet communication) ▶ Click 次へ



3 Select 『mopera U』への接続 (mopera U connection) or 『mopera』への接続 (mopera connection) ▶ Click 次へ

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera. The mopera U service requires subscription and a monthly fee. The mopera service requires no subscription and a monthly fee.
- When mopera U is selected, a confirmation message to agreement appears. If the subscription is completed, click はい.

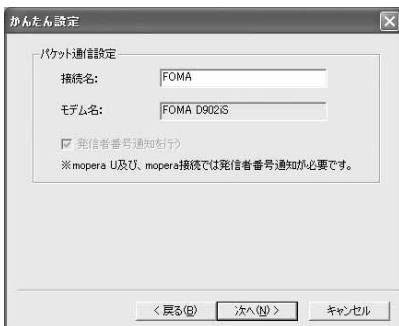


4 Click OK on the FOMA 端末設定取得 (Get FOMA terminal settings) screen

接続先 (APN) 情報 (Dialup connection (APN) information) is obtained from FOMA terminal. Please wait.

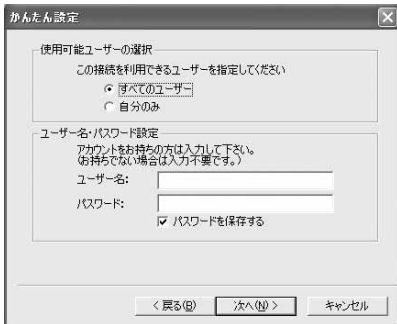
5 Enter any connection name ▶ Click 次へ

- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | ”



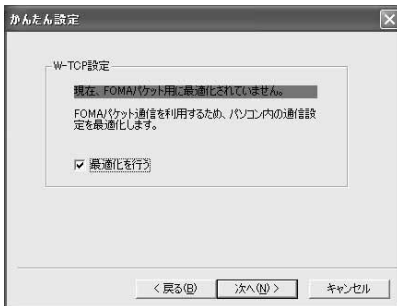
6 Click 次へ

- The entry for ユーザー名 (User name) or パスワード (Password) is not required.
- For Windows XP or 2000, select the allowable user. If you select すべてのユーザー (All users), all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, 使用可能ユーザーの選択 (Select allowable user) is not displayed.

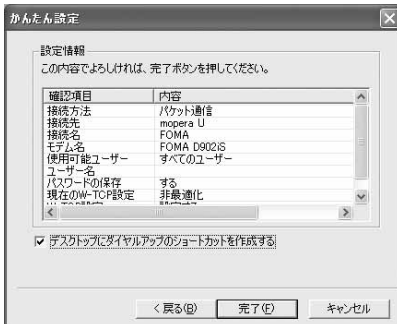


7 Check that 最適化を行う (Optimize) is selected and click 次へ

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.



8 Check the settings and click 完了



9 Click OK

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click はい when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

- If optimization of W-TCP setting has already been performed, rebooting is not required.
- Performing communication ◀P11

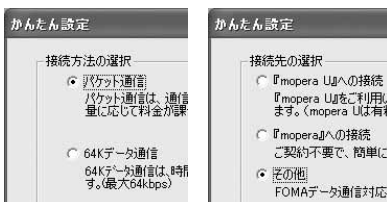
Using other providers

- Using mopera U / mopera ◀P7

Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 4 of “Using mopera U / mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P7

- Select その他 (Others) in Step 3 for the dialup connection.



2 Enter any connection name ▶ Click 接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set dialup connection (APN))

- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:

¥ / : * ? ! < > | ”



■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):

Click 詳細情報の設定 (Set detail info) to display the IP アドレス (IP address) and ネームサーバー (Name server) setting screens. When dialup information is required, register such as addresses, based on the information assigned by the provider, etc.

3 Set the dialup connection (APN)

By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid1, and "mopera.net" in cid3. Register a dialup connection (APN) for cid 2 or 4 to 10.

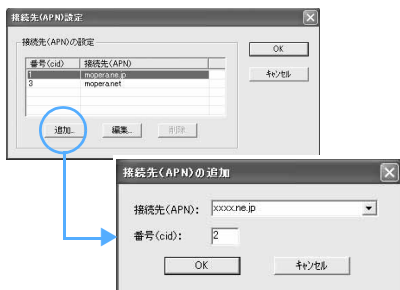
① Click 追加 (Add)

The 接続先 (APN) の追加 (Add dialup connection (APN)) screen appears.

② In 接続先 (APN), correctly enter a dialup connection name (APN) of your provider, etc., which supports the FOMA packet communication ▶ Click OK

The display returns to the 接続先 (APN) 設定 screen.

- Only one-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-) and periods (.) can be entered for 接続先 (APN).



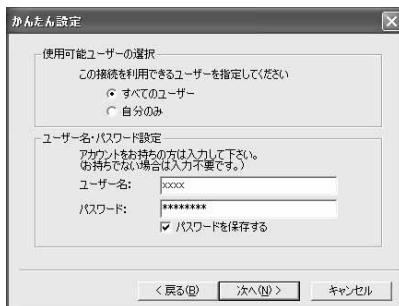
4 Click OK

The display returns to the screen in Step 2. 接続先 (APN) set in Step 3 appears in 接続先 (APN) の選択 (Select dialup connection (APN)).

5 Check the dialup connection name (APN) of 接続先 (APN) の選択 and click 次へ

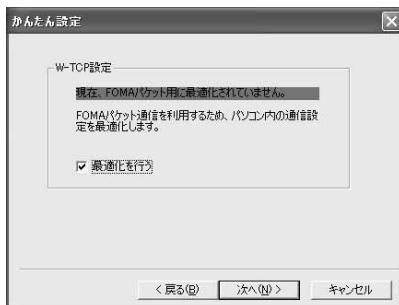
6 Enter the user name in ユーザー名 and the password in パスワード ▶ Click 次へ

- Enter the user name and password assigned by the provider, etc. correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- For Windows XP or 2000, select the allowable user. If you select すべてのユーザー, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, 使用可能ユーザーの選択 is not displayed.

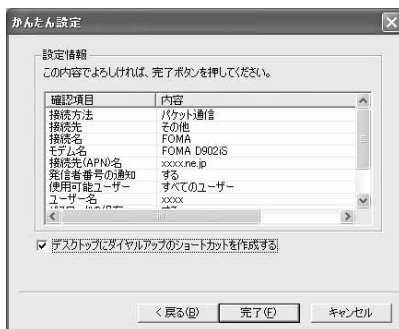


7 Check that 最適化を行う is selected and click 次へ

- This screen does not appear if optimization has already been performed.



8 Check the settings and click 完了



9 Click OK

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click はい when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

- If optimization of W-TCP setting has already been performed, rebooting is not required.
- Performing communication ▶ P11

Setting 64K data communication by easy setup

Before setup, make sure that FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ◀P3

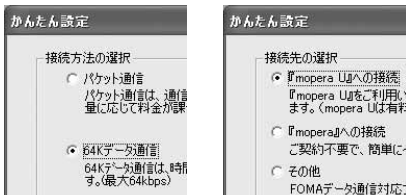
Using mopera U / mopera

- Using other providers ◀P11

Example For Windows XP

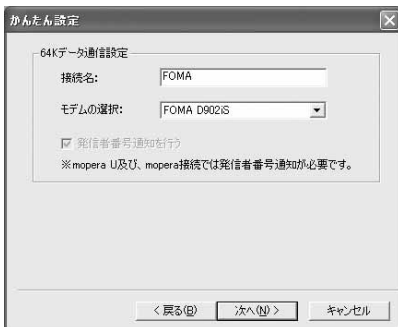
1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Using mopera U / mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P7

- Select **64K データ通信** (64K data communication) in Step 2 for the communication procedure.



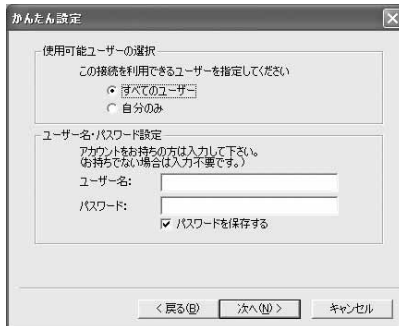
2 Enter any connection name and select the modem ▶ Click 次へ

- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | ”
- Check that **FOMA D902iS** is set for **モデムの選択** (Modem selection).

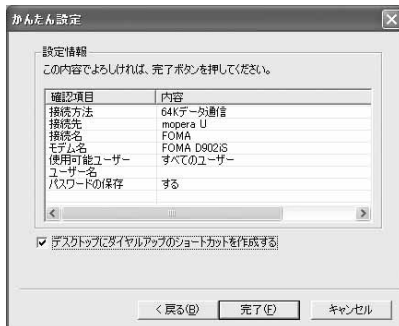


3 Click 次へ

- The entry for **ユーザー名** or **パスワード** is not required.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the allowable user. If you select **すべてのユーザー**, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, **使用可能ユーザーの選択** is not displayed.



4 Check the settings and click 完了



5 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P11

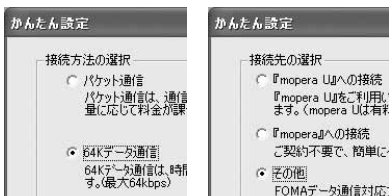
Using other providers

- Using mopera U / mopera ◀P10

Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Using mopera U / mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P7

- Select **64K データ通信** in Step 2 for the communication procedure, and **その他** in Step 3 for the dialup connection.



2 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- Register the following items:

- 接続名 : Optional
- モデムの選択 : FOMA D902iS
- 電話番号 (Phone number) :

Enter based on information given by provider, etc.

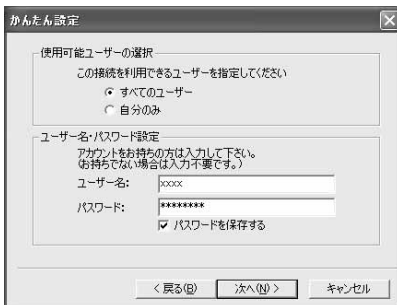


■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):

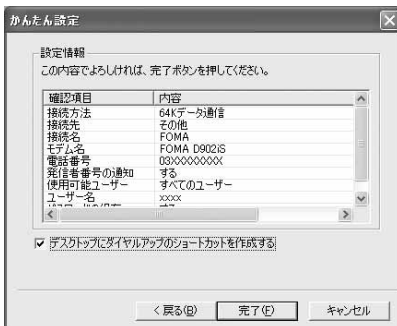
Click **詳細情報の設定** to display the **IP アドレス** and **ネームサーバー** setting screens. When dialup information is required, register such as addresses based on the information assigned by the provider, etc.

3 Enter the user name in ユーザー名 and the password in パスワード ▶ Click 次へ

- Enter the user name or password assigned by the provider, etc. correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- For Windows XP or 2000, select the allowable user. If you select **すべてのユーザー**, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, **使用可能ユーザーの選択** is not displayed.



4 Check the settings and click 完了



5 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P11

Performing communication

Starting communication set with the FOMA PC configuration software and disconnection are explained here.

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC ◀P3

2 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



- The icon varies depending on the OS.

- When there is no connection icon made on desktop, start from the スタート menu.

■ Starting from the スタート menu of Windows XP:

① Click スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセサリー (Accessories), 通信 (Communication), and ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)

② Double-click the connection icon

■ Starting from the スタート menu of Windows 2000, Me or 98:

① Click スタート, プログラム, アクセサリー, 通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections) (ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dialup network) for Windows Me/98)

② Double-click the connection icon

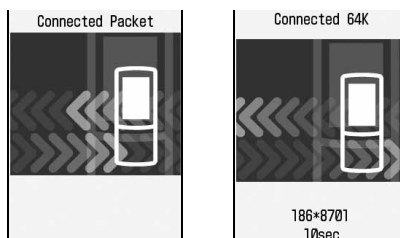
3 Check each item and click ダイアル (Dial)

- When mopera U / mopera is selected, the entry for ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required.
- If required by the instructions of a subscribed provider, enter the user name and the password, and then click ダイアル (接続) (Connect) for Windows Me/98 according to the input instruction information.
- The connection established screen may be displayed depending on the OS. Click OK.



■ FOMA terminal screen while communicating

FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established:



INFORMATION

- The transmission speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.
- Data transmission is available only with FOMA terminal that was connected when the icon was created.
- When connecting FOMA terminal other than D902iS, installation of the communication configuration file for your FOMA terminal is needed.

Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

1 Click in the task tray

- Double-click for Windows Me and 98.

2 Click 切断 (Disconnect)



Optimizing packet communication setup

The method of optimizing the PC packet communication setup for FOMA network by means of W-TCP setup and canceling optimization is explained here.

The W-TCP setup is a TCP parameter tuning tool for optimizing TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communication in the FOMA network. To enable communication capability of FOMA terminal to maximum extent, this communication setup is required.

For Windows XP

System optimization can be performed for each dialup connection.

1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト(☛P7) ▶ Click W-TCP 設定

- Starting from the task tray: Click 

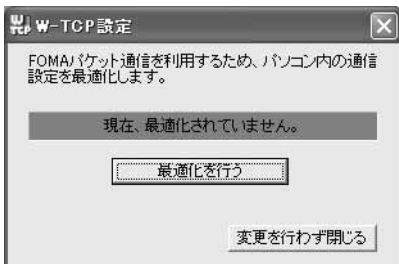
2 Perform the following:

- When the system has not been optimized:

① Click 最適化を行う on the W-TCP setting screen

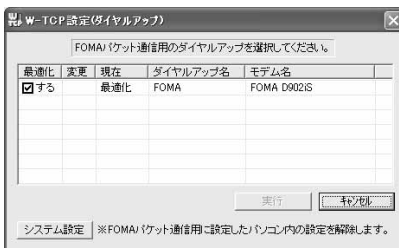
② Select the dialup connection to be optimized ▶ Click 実行(Execute)

Optimization of the system settings and dialup settings are performed respectively.



- When the system has been optimized:

The following screen appears. Make the required settings if changes are to be made.



■ Deactivating optimization:

① Click システム設定 (System setting) in the W-TCP 設定 (ダイヤルアップ) (Set W-TCP (dialup)) screen

The W-TCP setting screen appears.

② Click 最適化を解除する (Deactivate optimization)

3 Reboot the PC, following the instruction shown on the screen

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Under Windows 2000, Me or 98

1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト(☛P7) ▶ Click W-TCP 設定

- Starting from the task tray: Click 

2 Perform the following:

- When the system setting has not been optimized: Click 最適化を行う

- When canceling optimization of the system setting: Click 最適化を解除する

3 Reboot the PC, following the instruction shown on the screen

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Setting dialup connections (APNs)

Set the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

Up to 10 dialup connections (APNs) can be set, which are to be registered under registration numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for management.

By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3.

- Before setup, make sure that FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ☛P3
- For dialup connections (APNs) other than mopera U / mopera, inquire your provider or network administrator.

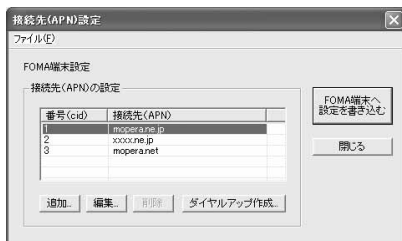
1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト(☛P7) ▶ Click 接続先 (APN) 設定

The FOMA 端末設定取得 screen appears.

2 Click OK

FOMA terminal is accessed for reading the registered dialup connection (APN) information.

3 Make the dialup connection (APN) settings



■ **Adding dialup connections (APNs):** Click **追加**

■ **Editing or correcting registered dialup connections (APNs):** Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click **編集** (Edit)

■ **Deleting the registered dialup connection (APN):** Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click **削除** (Delete)

- The dialup connection registered in cid1 and cid3 cannot be deleted. (Selecting cid3 and clicking **削除** do not actually delete, but return to "mopera.net".)

■ **Saving settings as file:** Click **ファイル** (File) and **名前を付けて保存** (Save as...) or **上書き保存** (Overwrite)

- Save the settings as a file to back up the dialup connection (APN) settings registered in FOMA terminal or save the dialup connection (APN) settings during editing.

■ **Importing settings from file:** Click **ファイル** and **開く** (Open)

- Import settings from a file to edit dialup connections (APNs) saved on the PC or write to FOMA terminal.

■ **Importing the dialup connection (APN) information from FOMA terminal:** Click **ファイル** and **FOMA 端末から設定を取得** (Import settings from FOMA terminal)

Access manually to FOMA terminal to import the registered dialup connection (APN) settings.

■ **Writing the dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal:** Click **FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む** (Write settings to FOMA terminal)

The displayed dialup connection (APN) settings are written to FOMA terminal.

■ Creating dialup connections:

① **Select an added or edited dialup connection (APN)** ▶ Click **ダイヤルアップ作成** (Create dialup connection)
The **FOMA 端末設定書き込み** (Write setting to FOMA terminal) screen appears.

② **Click はい** ▶ **Click OK**
When the dialup connection (APN) information have been written to FOMA terminal, the **パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成** (Create dialup connection for packet communication) screen appears.

③ **Enter any connection name** ▶ **Click アカウント・パスワードの設定** (Set account and password)

④ **Enter the user name in ユーザー名** and **the password in パスワード** ▶ **Click OK**

- Not required for mopera U / mopera.
- For Windows XP or 2000, select the allowable user. If you select **すべてのユーザー**, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.
- Some providers, etc. may request you to enter IP and DNS information settings. Should this be the case, click **詳細情報の設定** in the **パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成** screen, register the required information and click **OK**.

⑤ **Click OK** ▶ **Click OK**

⑥ **Click FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む**
A confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite.

⑦ **Click はい** ▶ **Click OK**

INFORMATION

- Since the dialup connection (APN) setting is information saved in FOMA terminal, re-register the APN when connecting another FOMA terminal (terminal replaced by repair, etc.).
- To continue to use the dialup connection (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same APN to FOMA terminal.
- When FOMA terminal is detected as number other than COM1 to 9 by checking the communication configuration file, APN information may not be obtained or written during an APN setting. In that case, set the information using "HyperTerminal" that comes with Windows. ●P15

Uninstalling the FOMA PC configuration software

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ◀P3

Uninstall preparations

Right-click  in the task tray, and click 常駐させない (Do not reside) to cancel the resident of W-TCP setup.

Uninstalling

Example For Windows XP

1 Click スタート, コントロールパネル and the プログラムの追加と削除 icon

■ For Windows 2000, Me, 98:

- ① Click スタート, 設定 and コントロールパネル
- ② Double-click the アプリケーションの追加と削除 icon

2 Select NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC configuration software) ▶ Click 変更と削除

• For Windows Me or 98, click 追加と削除.

3 Check that you have selected the correct program to delete and click はい

The uninstallation of the FOMA PC configuration software starts.

■ Canceling W-TCP optimization:

A confirmation screen appears when W-TCP has been optimized.

- Usually, click はい and deactivate the optimization.
- Select whether to reboot immediately and click 完了 when Windows prompts you to reboot the PC.
- Canceling of W-TCP optimization is performed after the PC is rebooted.

4 Click OK

Communicating without using the FOMA PC configuration software

The method of dialup network setup for packet communication/64K data communication without using the FOMA PC configuration software is explained.

Setting operation procedures

Install the communication configuration file ◀P4
Connect a PC to FOMA terminal ◀P3



Set the dialup connection (APN)
(This setting is not required for 64K data communication, and for packet communication via mopera U / mopera.)



Set to show/hide caller ID ◀P17 (Set as required.)



Other settings (AT commands) ◀P25
(Set as required.)



Dialup network setup

OS	Settings	
	Dialup connection	TCP/IP
Windows XP	P17	P18
Windows 2000	P19	P21
Windows Me	P22	P22
Windows 98	P23	P23

• For details on settings, inquire your provider or network administrator.



Connect ◀P23 (Disconnect ◀P24)

Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication

Communication software to input AT commands is required for making settings. The method of setting using "HyperTerminal" that comes with Windows is explained here.

Default cid1 : mopera.ne.jp
cid3 : mopera.net
cid2, 4 to 10 : not recorded

Example For Windows XP

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC ◀P3

2 Click スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセサリ and 通信 ▶ Click ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal). (And double-click the Hypertrm icon under Windows 98.)

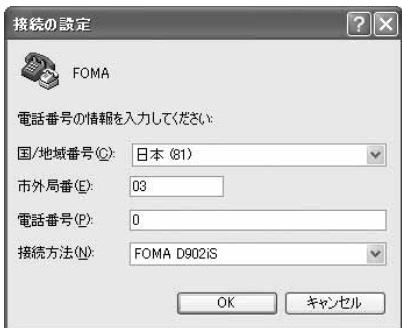
- For other than Windows XP, プログラム is displayed for すべてのプログラム.

3 Enter any connection name in 名前▶ Click OK



4 Enter a fictional phone number (such as 0) for 電話番号, select FOMA D902IS from 接続 方法 (Connection procedure)▶ Click OK

- Since 市外局番 (Area code) does not effect the dialup connection (APN) setting, it is not necessary to change.



5 Click キャンセル when the connection screen appears

6 Enter the dialup connection (APN)▶ Press

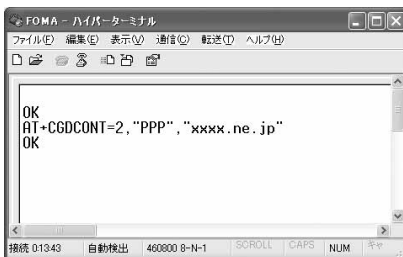


- Enter in the format "AT+CGDCONT=<cid>,"PPP","xxx.ne.jp".

<cid> : Enter any number between 2, 4 to 10.

"PPP" : Enter "PPP".

"APN" : Enter the dialup connection (APN) in quotation marks.



If OK appears, the dialup connection (APN) has now been set.

■ Resetting the dialup connection (APN) settings:

AT + CGDCONT= [Enter]

Reset all cids.

- The settings are restored to the default settings for <cid> = 1 and 3, and the settings for <cid> = 2, 4 to 10 are cleared.

AT + CGDCONT=<cid> [Enter]

Reset the specified cid

■ Checking the dialup connection (APN) settings:

AT + CGDCONT? [Enter]

- For details ▶P30

■ When nothing is displayed even if AT command is entered: ATE1 [Enter]

- For details ▶P28

7 Check that OK is displayed and click ファイル and ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End HyperTerminal)

- After 現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか? (Connecting now. Disconnect?) appears, click はい
- "XXX"と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? (Save the connection named "XXX"?) appears. Click いいえ.

Dialup connection (APN) and registration number (cid)

The dialup connection (APN) for packet communication can be set for registration numbers between cid1 to 10 in FOMA terminal. By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3. For connecting to other providers or corporate LANs, register the dialup connection (APN) for cid2, 4 to 10.

- For the dialup connection (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.
- The dialup connection settings can be considered as phonebook registration for packet communication. The comparison between dialup connection settings and the FOMA terminal phonebook entries is as follows:

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
Registration number (cid)	Registration number (Phonebook No.)
APN	Party's phone number

- The registered cid become the connection numbers of dialup connection setting.

Setting to show/hide caller ID

Take care when disclosing your caller ID since it is important information.

- Settings must be "show" for using mopera U / mopera.

Default not set

Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 5 of “Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication” ➡P15

2 Set to show (186)/hide (184) caller ID during packet communication

Enter in the format “AT * DGPIR=<n>”.

AT * DGPIR=1

When packet communication connection is being established, “184” is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

AT * DGPIR=2

When packet communication connection is being established, “186” is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

■ **When nothing is displayed even if AT command is entered: ATE1**

- For details ➡P28

3 Check that OK is displayed and click ファイル and ハイパーターミナルの終了

- After 現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか? appears, click はい
- “XXX”と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? appears. Click いいえ.

■ **Setting to show/hide caller ID by dialup network settings**

The dialup network settings can also be used to append “186 (show)” or “184 (hide)” to the dialup connection number.

If “186” (show) or “184” (hide) is set by both the AT * DGPIR command and dialup network settings, the show/hide caller ID setting is as follows:

Setting made by AT * DGPIR command Dialup network setting (<cid>=3)	Not set	Hide	Show
* 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is sent.	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
184 * 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is not sent.		
186 * 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is sent.		

- To reset the show/hide setting made by the AT * DGPIR command to the default (not set), enter “AT * DGPIR=0”.

Setting for Windows XP

Setting the dialup connection

1 Click スタート、すべてのプログラム、アクセサリ、通信 and ネットワーク接続

The ネットワーク接続 screen appears.

2 Click 新しい接続を作成する (Create new connection) in ネットワークタスク (Network task)

The 新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard) screen appears.

3 Click 次へ

A screen for selecting the type of network connection appears.

4 Select インターネットに接続する (Connect to Internet) ▶ Click 次へ

The setup screen appears.

5 Select 接続を手動でセットアップする (Set up connection manually) ▶ Click 次へ

The Internet connection screen appears.

6 Select ダイアルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Use dialup modem to connect) ▶ Click 次へ

The device selection screen appears.

- If there is only one modem installed, the device selection screen is not displayed. Go to Step 8.

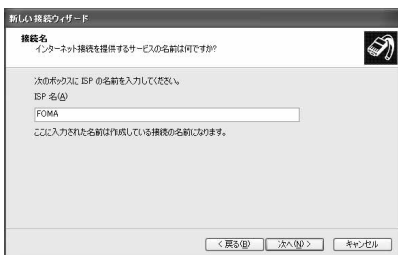
7 Select モデム—FOMA D902iS (COMx)*1 (Modem: FOMA D902iS (COMx)) ▶ Click 次へ

- Check that only モデム—FOMA D902iS (COMx)*1 is selected.

*1 “x” of COMx varies by PC to be used.



8 Enter any connection name in ISP 名 (ISP name) ▶ Click 次へ



9 Enter the number of the dialup connection (one-byte) in 電話番号 ▶ Click 次へ

■ For packet communication:

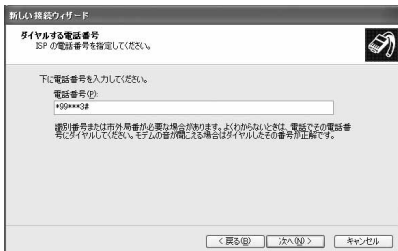
Enter “ * 99 * * * <cid>#”.

- For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in “Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication” ●P15. “*99* * * 3#” for moper U and “*99* * * 1#” for moper A.

■ For 64K data communication:

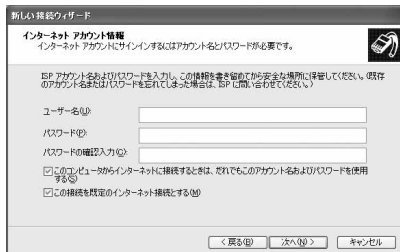
Enter the dialup connection phone number.

- “*8701” for moper U and “ *9601” for moper A.



10 Enter the user name in ユーザー名, the password in パスワード and パスワードの確認入力 (Check and enter password) ▶ Set each items as shown below ▶ Click 次へ

- When the access point is moper U / moper A, the entry for ユーザー名, パスワード and パスワードの確認入力 is not required. Set each items as shown and click 次へ.



11 Click 完了

12 Check the settings and click キャンセル

- Check the settings without connecting to the Internet immediately.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection ▶ Click ファイル and プロパティ (Properties)



2 Check the setting of each item in the 全般 (General) tab

- When multiple modems are installed to the PC, select モデム - FOMA D902iS (COMx)*1 in 接続方法.
- Check that only モデム - FOMA D902iS (COMx)*1 is selected.
*1 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.
- Uncheck (☐) ダイアル情報を使う (Use dial information).



3 Click the ネットワーク (Network) tab ▶ Check the setting of each item

- Set PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet as 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dialup server to call).
- Select only インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP) (Internet protocol (TCP/IP)) in この接続は次の項目を使用します (Use these items for this connection). Since QoS パケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler) settings can not be changed, leave it as it is.



4 Click 設定

5 Uncheck (☐) all items and click OK

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.



6 Click OK

Setting for Windows 2000

Setting the dialup connection

1 Click スタート, プログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続

The ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 screen appears.

2 Double-click the 新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection) icon

The 所在地情報 (Location information) screen appears.

- This screen appears for the first time you double-click the 新しい接続の作成 icon. From the second time, go to Step 5.

3 Enter the number in 市外局番 (Area code) ▶ Click OK

The 電話とモデムのオプション (Phone and modem options) screen appears.

4 Click OK

The ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard) screen appears.

5 Click 次へ

A screen for selecting the type of network connection appears.

6 Select インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Use dialup connection to Internet) ▶ Click 次へ

The start screen of インターネット接続ウィザード (Internet connection wizard) appears.

- 7 Select インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Set the Internet connection manually or connect using local area network (LAN)) ▶ Click 次へ**

The Internet connection setting selection screen appears.

- 8 Select 電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to Internet using phone line and modem) ▶ Click 次へ**

The modem selection screen appears.

- This screen is not displayed if multiple modems are not installed. Go to Step 10.

- 9 Check that インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する (Select modem to use for connection to Internet) is set to FOMA D902iS and click 次へ**

The Internet account connection information screen appears.

- If FOMA D902iS is not set, set FOMA D902iS.

- 10 Enter the number of dialup connection (one-byte) in 電話番号 ▶ Click 詳細設定 (Detailed settings)**

- Uncheck (☐) 市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial information).

■ For packet communication:

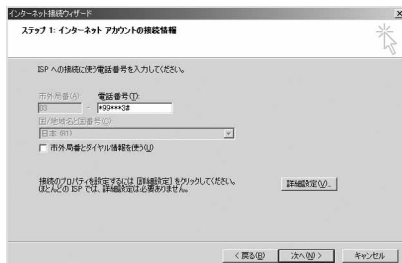
Enter “*99* *<cid>#”.

- For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in “Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication” ◀P15. “* 99 * * 3#” for mopera U and “* 99 * * 1#” for mopera.

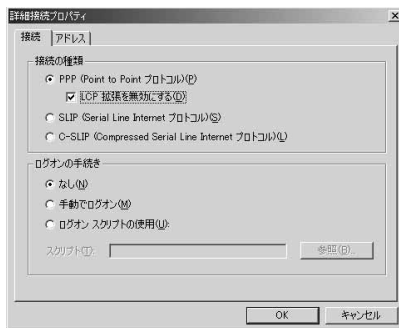
■ For 64K data communication:

Enter the dialup connection phone number.

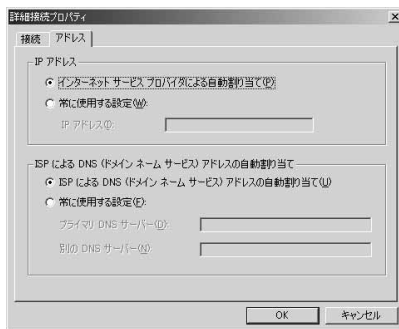
- “* 8701” for mopera U and “* 9601” for mopera.



- 11 Set each item in the 接続 tab as shown below**



- 12 Click the アドレス (Address) tab ▶ Set each item as shown below**



- 13 Click OK**

The Internet account connection information screen reappears.

- 14 Click 次へ**

The Internet account logon information screen appears.

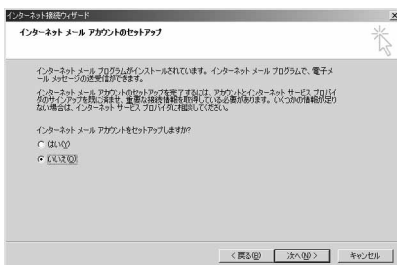
- 15 Enter the user name in ユーザー名 and the password in パスワード ▶ Click 次へ**

- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry for ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required. When a confirmation screen for no entry appears, click はい.

16 Enter any connection name in 接続名 Click 次へ



17 Select いいえ Click 次へ



18 Click 完了

The ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 screen reappears.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection icon Click ファイル and プロパティ



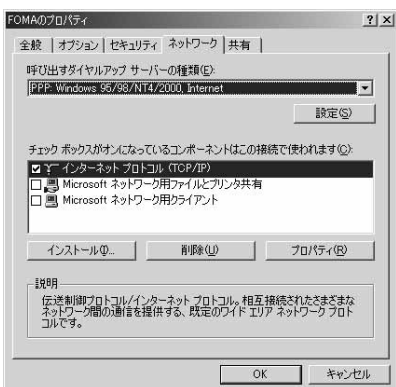
2 Check the setting of each item in the 全般 tab

- If multiple modems are installed in the PC, select モデム - FOMA D902iS (COMx)*1 in 接続の方法 (C) (Connection procedure). When the modem is changed, all items in 電話番号 (E) (Phone Number) is initialized. Re-enter the dialup connection phone number in that case.
- Check that only モデム - FOMA D902iS (COMx)*1 is selected.
- *1 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.
- Uncheck () ダイヤル情報を使う (U) (Use dialing information).



3 Click the ネットワーク tab Check the setting of each item

- Set PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet as 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (C) (Dial-up server type).
- Select only インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP) (Internet Protocol) for component.



4 Click 設定

5 Uncheck all items (☐) and click OK

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.



6 Click OK

Setting for Windows Me

Setting the dialup connection

- The setting procedures are the same as for Windows 98.

1 Click スタート, プログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ダイアルアップネットワーク

The ダイアルアップネットワークへようこそ (Welcome to dialup network) screen appears.

- This screen appears when ダイアルアップ ネットワーク is selected for the first time. From the second time, go to Step 3.

2 Click 次へ

The ダイアルアップネットワーク screen appears.

3 Double-click the 新しい接続 (New connection) icon

4 Enter any connection name in 接続名 Click 次へ

- Check that **FOMA D902iS** is set for モデムの選択. If it is not set, set **FOMA D902iS**.



5 Enter the dialup connection number (one-byte) Click 次へ

■ For packet communication:

Enter "*99***<cid>#".

- For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication" ● P15. "* 99 *** 3#" for mopera U and "* 99 *** 1#" for mopera.

■ For 64K data communication:

Enter the dialup connection phone number.

- "* 8701" for mopera U and "* 9601" for mopera.
- 市外局番 does not need to be entered.



6 Check the name of the dialup connection

Click 完了

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection icon

Click ファイル and プロパティ



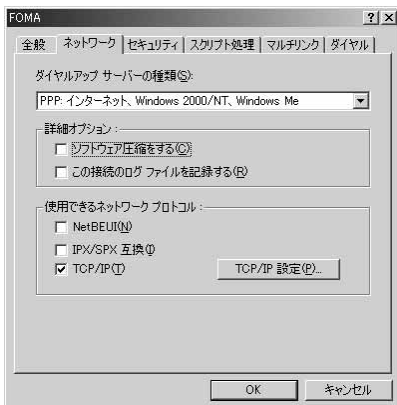
2 Check the setting of each item in the 全般 tab

- Uncheck (☐) 市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う (Use area code and dial properties).
- Check that **FOMA D902iS** is set for 接続方法. If it is not set, set **FOMA D902iS**.



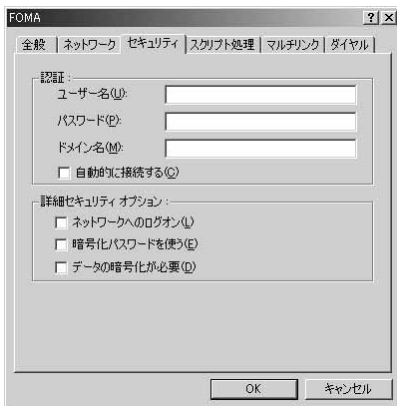
3 Click the ネットワーク tab ► Check the setting of each item

- Set ダイアルアップサーバーの種類 (Dialup server type) to **PPP: インターネット**、**Windows 2000/NT**、**Windows Me** (PPP: Internet, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me).
- Uncheck (☐) all 詳細オプション (Detailed options).
- Select only **TCP/IP** for 使用できるネットワーク プロトコル (Available protocol).



4 Click the セキュリティ (Security) tab ► Enter the user name in ユーザー名, the password in パスワード and click OK

- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry for ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required.



Setting for Windows 98

Setting the dialup connection

The setting procedures are the same as for Windows Me. ◀P22

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Perform steps 1 to 2 of “Setting TCP/IP protocol” of “Setting for Windows Me” ◀P22

2 Click the サーバーの種類 (Server type) tab ► Check the setting of each item

- Set ダイアルアップサーバーの種類 to **PPP: インターネット**、**Windows NT Server**、**Windows 98** (PPP: Internet, Windows NT Server, Windows 98).
- Uncheck (☐) all 詳細オプション.
- Select only **TCP/IP** for 使用できるネットワーク プロトコル.



3 Click OK

Connecting through dial-up

The method of dialup connection for packet communication/64K data communication is explained.

Example For Windows XP

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC ◀P3

2 Click スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセスリ, 通信 and ネットワーク接続

The ネットワーク接続 screen appears.

- Under the Windows 2000, Me or 98, click スタート, プログラム, アクセスリ, 通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (ダイヤルアップ ネットワーク for Windows Me/98).

3 Double-click the dialup connection icon

4 Check each item and click **ダイヤル**

- Under the Windows Me and 98, check each item and click **接続**.
- The number of dialup connection set for the dialup network is shown in **ダイヤル** or **電話番号**.
- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry for **ユーザー名** or **パスワード** is not required.



Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

1 Click in the task tray

- Double-click for Windows Me and 98.

2 Click **切断**



AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC. FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

About the AT command

■ AT command input format

"AT" must be entered before each AT command. Commands must be entered in one-byte alphanumeric characters. An input example is as follows:

ATD * 99 * * * 3# 

Command Parameter Press Enter key.

AT commands and their parameters (numbers or symbols) must be entered on a single line. Enter all the characters from the first character to the character just before  in a single line. Up to 160 characters (including "AT") can be entered in each line.

■ AT command input mode

To operate FOMA terminal using AT commands, the PC must be in the terminal mode. Terminal mode is a mode that lets the PC operate as a single communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

- Offline mode
FOMA terminal in standby status. Usually, FOMA terminal must be in this status to use AT commands to control it.
- Online data mode
FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. If you enter AT commands when FOMA terminal is performing communication, the received characters are sent directly to the communication receiver and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands while FOMA terminal is performing communication.
- Online command mode
AT commands allow you to operate FOMA terminal even when FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. These operations make it possible to execute AT commands without interfering with the connection to the communication receiver, and normal communication can be continued after the commands have finished executing.

Switching between the online data mode and online command mode

To switch FOMA terminal from the online data mode to online command mode, you can use either of the following procedures:

- Enter the "+++" command or the code set in the "S2" register.
- Turn the RS-232C*1 ER signal off when set in "AT&D1".

To switch from the online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO ".

*1 The USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line, so RS-232C signal control using communication applications is possible.

AT command list

- When AT commands are input, entering “\” may cause “\” to appear depending on the font settings for the PC or communication software in use.
- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, the setting values may not be recorded.
- AT commands that can be used via the FOMA D902iS Modem Port are described in this list.

*1 : Returns the setting to default with the AT & F command.

*2 : Stores the command setting into FOMA terminal with the AT&W command and restores it with the ATZ command.

None : Indicates the AT command does not include any display command or test command.

[] : Indicates the parameter can be omitted.

Command	Description & Parameter					
AT%V	Shows the version of your FOMA terminal in the format of “Verx.xx”.					
ex.	Enter	AT%V	Display	None	Test	None
AT&C [n]	Selects the operational conditions of the circuit CD signal outgoing to DTE. n=0: The circuit CD signal is always on. (when parameter omitted) n=1: The circuit CD signal varies depending on the other modem. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&C1	Display	None	Test
AT&D [n]	Determines an action to be taken when the circuit ER signal coming from DTE changes from on to off in the online data mode. n=0: Ignores the ER signal condition (always on). (when parameter omitted) n=1: Switches the mode to the online command mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. n=2: Disconnects the circuit and switches the mode to the offline mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&D1	Display	None	Test
AT&E [n]	Selects type of speed display used when connection is made. This command is effective only when the ATX command is other than “n=0”. n=0: Displays communication speed of wireless zone. n=1: Displays communication speed between PC and FOMA terminal. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&E1	Display	None	Test
AT&F [0]	Resets all FOMA terminal state to the default. When executed while receiving a call, it resets FOMA terminal state to the default without affecting the call. When executed during communication, the terminal state returns to default after it disconnects (display “NO CARRIER”) the communication.					
ex.	Enter	AT&F0	Display	None	Test	None
AT&S [n]	Determines the control of the DR signal FOMA terminal outputs. n=0: Always on. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: The DR signal turns on when the circuit is connected.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&S0	Display	None	Test
AT&W [0]	Writes the current settings into FOMA terminal.					
ex.	Enter	AT&W0	Display	None	Test	None
AT * DANTE	Shows the signal strength (reception level) in the format of “ * DANTE:m”. m=0: Outside the service area m=1 to 3: Number of antennas displayed on FOMA terminal (m=1 : 0 or 1)					
ex.	Enter	AT * DANTE	Display	AT * DANTE?	Test	AT * DANTE=?
AT * DGANSM=n	Specifies whether to reject or accept an incoming packet call. n=0: Sets both the incoming call rejection and the incoming call acceptance off. (default) n=1: Sets the incoming call rejection on. n=2: Sets the incoming call acceptance on.					
ex.	Enter	AT * DGANSM=0	Display	AT * DGANSM?	Test	AT * DGANSM=?
AT * DGAPL=n [cid]	Specifies dialup connections (APNs) to accept incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with “+CGDCONT”. n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call acceptance list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call acceptance list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.					
ex.	Enter	AT * DGAPL=0,1	Display	AT * DGAPL?	Test	AT * DGAPL=?
AT * DGARL=n [cid]	Specifies dialup connections (APNs) to reject incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with “+CGDCONT”. n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call rejection list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call rejection list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.					
ex.	Enter	AT * DGARL=0,1	Display	AT * DGARL?	Test	AT * DGARL=?

Command		Description & Parameter					
AT * DGPIR=n		Specifies whether to notify the caller ID for packet communication. This specification is effective both for outgoing and incoming calls. n=0: The APN is used as it is when a packet communication is established. (default) n=1: Adds "184" to the APN when a packet communication is established. n=2: Adds "186" to the APN when a packet communication is established.					
	ex.	Enter	AT * DGPIR=0	Display	AT * DGPIR?	Test	AT * DGPIR=?
AT * DRPW		Shows the level of power reception in the format of " * DRPW:m", where the value of m ranges from 0 to 75.					
	ex.	Enter	AT * DRPW	Display	None	Test	AT * DRPW=?
+++		Changes FOMA terminal mode from the online data to the online command. The duration of escape guard is fixed to 1 sec.					
	ex.	Enter	+++	Display	None	Test	None
AT+CEER		Shows a disconnection reason of the previous communication. ◀P30					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CEER	Display	None	Test	AT+CEER=?
AT+CGDCONT		Specifies the APN for packet communication. ◀P30					
AT+CGEQMIN		Specifies the criteria for judging whether to approve the QoS (Quality of Service) level provisioned by the network when the packet communication is established. ◀P30					
AT+CGEQREQ		Specifies the QoS level requested to the network when transmission is performed during packet communication. ◀P31					
AT+CGMR		Shows the version of your FOMA terminal with a 16-digit number.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CGMR	Display	None	Test	AT+CGMR=?
AT+CGREG= [n]		Determines whether to notify the network registration state. Either "inside the service area" or "outside the service area" is notified. n=0: Not notified. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Notified in the format of "+CGREG:n,stat". stat=0: Outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: Inside the service area. (visitor)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CGREG=1	Display	AT+CGREG?	Test	AT+CGREG=?
AT+CGSN		Shows the manufacturer's serial number of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CGSN	Display	None	Test	AT+CGSN=?
AT+CLIP= [n]		Shows the caller ID of an incoming 64K data communication on the PC's screen. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information. If you enter "AT+CLIP?", it shows "+CLIP:n,m". m=0: The network setting that does not show caller ID to the other party when originating a call. m=1: The network setting that shows caller ID to the other party when originating a call. m=2: Unknown					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CLIP=0	Display	AT+CLIP?	Test	AT+CLIP=?
AT+CLIR= [n]		Specifies whether to show your caller ID to the other party when you originate a 64K data communication. n=0: In accordance with the service agreement. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Not notified. n=2: Notifies the caller ID. (default) If you enter "AT+CLIR?", it shows "+CLIR:n,m". m=0: CLIR is not activated. (caller ID always notified) m=1: CLIR is activated. (caller ID always not notified) m=2: Unknown m=3: CLIR temporary mode (default for "not notified") m=4: CLIR temporary mode. (default for "notified")					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CLIR=0	Display	AT+CLIR?	Test	AT+CLIR=?
AT+CMEE= [n]		Specifies the error report format of FOMA terminal. ◀P30 n=0: Shows "ERROR". (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows in the format of "+CME ERROR:xxxx". (xxxx=numbers) n=2: Shows in the format of "+CME ERROR:xxxx". (xxxx=characters)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CMEE=0	Display	AT+CMEE?	Test	AT+CMEE=?
AT+CNUM		Shows the Own Number data of FOMA terminal in the format of "+CNUM:,"number",type". number: Phone number type=129: Does not show "+81". type=145: Shows "+81".					
	ex.	Enter	AT+CNUM	Display	None	Test	AT+CNUM=?
AT+CR= [n]		Specifies whether to display the communication type (packet communication or 64K data communication) before CONNECT is displayed, during line connection. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information in the format of "+CR:serv". serv=SYNC: 64K data communication serv=GPRS: Packet communication					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CR=0	Display	AT+CR?	Test	AT+CR=?

Command		Description & Parameter					
AT+CRIC= [n]		Specifies whether to use result codes of "+CRING:type" for incoming calls. n=0: Does not use the result code of "+CRING:type". (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the result code of "CRING:type". The example of codes are as follows: Packet communication ... +CRING:GPRS "PPP"... "mopera.net" 64K data communication... +CRING:SYNC					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CRIC=0	Display	AT+CRIC?	Test	AT+CRIC=?
AT+CREG= [n]		Specifies whether to show the "inside/outside the service area" information. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information. If you enter "AT+CREG?", it shows the information in the format of "+CREG:n,stat". stat=0: Outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: Inside the service area (visitor)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CREG=0	Display	AT+CREG?	Test	AT+CREG=?
AT+GMI		Shows the manufacturer's name of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMI	Display	None	Test	AT+GMI=?
AT+GMM		Shows FOMA terminal name.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMM	Display	None	Test	AT+GMM=?
AT+GMR		Shows the version of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMR	Display	None	Test	AT+GMR=?
AT+IFC= [n,[m]]		Specifies the local flow control between the PC and FOMA terminal. n is for setting the DCE-by-DTE control. n=0: Does not use the flow control. n=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. n=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default) m is for setting the DTE-by-DCE control. If you omit this parameter, the same value as DCE-by-DTE is assumed. m=0: Does not use the flow control. m=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. m=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default) If you omit both parameters, "AT+IFC=2, 2" is assumed.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+IFC=2,2	Display	AT+IFC?	Test	AT+IFC=?
AT+WS46= [22]		Specifies the radio network FOMA terminal uses to originate a call.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+WS46=22	Display	AT+WS46?	Test	AT+WS46=?
ATA		Specifies how to handle incoming packet or 64K data communications. For incoming packet communications, you can specify the following: ATA184: Receives an incoming call without the caller ID displayed ATA186: Receives an incoming call with the caller ID displayed					
	ex.	Enter	ATA	Display	None	Test	None
A/		Reexecutes the previous command.					
	ex.	Enter	A/	Display	None	Test	None
ATD		Originates a packet or 64K data communication. * Packet communication: Enter in the format of "ATD * 99 * * * cid#". If you omit cid parameter, "cid=1" is assumed. When you enter it in the format starting with "ATD184 * 99", 184 (hide caller ID) is attached to the call outgoing to the APN specified with cid parameter (186 (show caller ID) is treated in the same manner). * 64K data communication: Enter it in the format of "ATD phone-number". * Redialing: Enter in the format of "ATDL" or "ATDN".					
	ex.	Enter	ATD phone-number	Display	None	Test	None
ATE [n]		Echoes back the characters sent from the PC. n=0: Gives no echo back. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Gives echo back. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATE0	Display	None	Test	None
ATH		Disconnects communication.					
	ex.	Enter	ATH	Display	None	Test	None
ATI [n]		Shows the identification code. n=0: Shows "NTT DoCoMo". (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows model name of FOMA terminal. n=2: Shows the version of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	ATI0	Display	None	Test	None
ATO		Switched the mode from the online command to the online data.					
	ex.	Enter	ATO	Display	None	Test	None
ATQ [n]		Specifies whether to show the result code on the PC. n=0: Shows the result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Does not show the result code.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATQ0	Display	None	Test	None

Command		Description & Parameter				
ATV [n]		Specifies the displaying procedure. n=0: Shows the result with numeric codes. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the result with text messages. (default)				
	ex. *1, *2	Enter	ATV1	Display	None	Test None
ATX [n]		Specifies whether to detect busy tone and dial tone, and whether to display the communication speed. n=0: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed not displayed. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=2: Busy tone not detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. n=3: Busy tone detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=4: Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. (default)				
	ex. *1, *2	Enter	ATX1	Display	None	Test None
ATZ		Resets FOMA terminal settings to those stored in the non-volatile memory with the AT&W command. If you enter this command during receiving a packet or 64K data communication, the settings are reset without affecting the call reception. If you enter it during communication, it disconnects the communication first and resets the settings.				
	ex.	Enter	ATZ	Display	None	Test None
ATS0= [n]		Specifies the number of ringing signals (RING) which triggers automatic call acceptance on FOMA terminal. n=0: Does not accept calls automatically. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1 to 255				
	ex. *1, *2	Enter	ATS0=0	Display	ATS0?	Test None
ATS2= [n]		Specifies an escape character. n=0 to 127 (43: Default 0: When parameter omitted 127: To disable the escape processing)				
	ex. *1	Enter	ATS2=43	Display	ATS2?	Test None
ATS3= [13]		Specifies a carriage return (CR) character that indicates the end of AT command's character string (the setting is not changeable). It is attached to the end of the echoed back command string and the result code.				
	ex. *1	Enter	ATS3=13	Display	ATS3?	Test None
ATS4= [10]		Specifies the Line Feed (LF) character (the setting is not changeable). It follows the CR character when the result code is displayed with text.				
	ex. *1	Enter	ATS4=10	Display	ATS4?	Test None
ATS5= [8]		Specifies a backspace (BS) character that deletes the last character in the input buffer while you are entering an AT command (the setting is not changeable).				
	ex. *1	Enter	ATS5=8	Display	ATS5?	Test None
ATS6= [n]		Specifies the pause period before dialing. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=2 to 10: 2 to 10 seconds. (5: Default and when parameter omitted)				
	ex. *1	Enter	ATS6=5	Display	ATS6?	Test None
ATS8= [n]		Specifies the comma dialing function (pause time). This command sets the register but the pause time is fixed to 3 seconds. n=0 to 255: 0 to 255 seconds. (3: default 0: When parameter is omitted)				
	ex. *1	Enter	ATS8=3	Display	ATS8?	Test None
ATS10= [n]		Specifies the permissible delay time before automatic disconnection. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=1 to 255: in 1/10 seconds. (1: default and when parameter omitted)				
	ex. *1, *2	Enter	ATS10=1	Display	ATS10?	Test None
ATS30= [n]		Specifies the time elapsed after the last data transmission to activate automatic disconnection. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=1 to 255: 1 to 255 minutes. n=0: Does not disconnect. (default and when parameter omitted)				
	ex. *1	Enter	ATS30=0	Display	ATS30?	Test None
ATS103= [n]		Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a destination sub-address if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: * (when parameter omitted) n=1: / (default) n=2: ¥				
	ex. *1	Enter	ATS103=0	Display	ATS103?	Test None
ATS104= [n]		Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a caller sub-address if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: # (when parameter omitted) n=1: % (default) n=2: &				
	ex. *1	Enter	ATS104=0	Display	ATS104?	Test None
AT ¥ S		Shows the contents of command settings and the S register.				
	ex.	Enter	AT ¥ S	Display	None	Test None
AT ¥ V [n]		Selects whether to use the extended result code for connection. This command takes effect when the ATX command parameter is "n=1 to 4". n=0: Does not use the extended result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the extended result code.				
	ex. *1, *2	Enter	AT ¥ V0	Display	None	Test None

Disconnection reason list

■ Packet communication

Value	Reason
27	APN is not present or is incorrect.
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal does not subscribe to packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection.

■ 64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Normal disconnection.
17	Communication is impossible because remote device is busy.
18	You made a call but did not receive a response within the specified time.
19	A call was made to the other party, but no response.
21	The remote device rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	You made a call to a terminal or received a call from a terminal with different terminal properties.

Error messages list

No.	Text display	Reason
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM (FOMA card) is set.
15	SIM wrong	Other than UIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

Supplement to AT command

■ Command name: AT+CGDCONT= [parameter]

Sets the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

Format

AT+CGDCONT=[<cid>[, "PPP" [, "<APN>"]]]

Parameter description

<cid>: 1 to 10

"mopera.ne.jp" (APN) is registered in cid 1, and "mopera.net" in cid 3.

<APN>: Optional

Example of execution

The command used to register an APN named "abc" (when <cid>=2).

AT+CGDCONT=2, "PPP", "abc"

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGDCONT=

Clears all <cid> settings. However, entry for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT=<cid>

Clears the specified <cid> settings. However, entry for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT= ?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGDCONT ?

Displays the current setting values.

■ Command name: AT+CGEQMIN= [parameter]

Registers the criteria for judging whether to approve QoS provisioned by the network when PPP packet communication is established.

Format

AT+CGEQMIN= [<cid>[,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

Parameter description

<cid> : 1 to 10

"mopera.ne.jp" (APN) is registered in cid 1 and "mopera.net" in cid 3.

<Maximum bitrate UL>: None or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL>: None or 384

For "Maximum bitrate UL" and "Maximum bitrate DL", the minimum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between FOMA terminal and the base station. If the parameter is set to "None (default)", all speeds are permissible. However, if "64" and "384" are set, any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted, and chances are that packet communication will not be connected.

Example of execution

- (1) Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
- (2) Command used to permit only 64kbps upload and 384 kbps download (when <cid>=4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64,384
- (3) Command used to permit 64 kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=5)
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64
- (4) Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 384 kbps download (when <cid>=6)
AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,384

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQMIN=

Clears all <cid> settings.

AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQMIN= ?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQMIN ?

Displays the current settings.

■ Command name: AT+CGEQRREQ=[parameter]

Sets QoS requested to the network when transmission is performed during PPP packet communication.

Format

AT+CGEQRREQ=[<cid>]

Parameter description

Only commands that require connection at 64 kbps upload/384 kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each cid.

<cid>: 1 to 10

By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid 1, and "mopera.net" in cid 3.

Example of execution

(when <cid>=2)

AT+CGEQRREQ=2

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQRREQ=

Returns all <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQRREQ=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQRREQ= ?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQRREQ ?

Displays the current settings.

Result codes

- When the ATV [n] command (P29) is set to "n=1", the result code is displayed in the text display (default). When the command is set to "n=0", the result code is displayed in the numeric display.

■ Result codes

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to remote device
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Completion of connection timed out
100	RESTRICTION	The communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted

■ Extended result code

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal - PC
5	CONNECT 1200	1,200 bps
10	CONNECT 2400	2,400 bps
11	CONNECT 4800	4,800 bps
13	CONNECT 7200	7,200 bps
12	CONNECT 9600	9,600 bps
15	CONNECT 14400	14,400 bps
16	CONNECT 19200	19,200 bps
17	CONNECT 38400	38,400 bps
18	CONNECT 57600	57,600 bps
19	CONNECT 115200	115,200 bps
20	CONNECT 230400	230,400 bps
21	CONNECT 460800	460,800 bps

INFORMATION

- To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C on PC, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because FOMA terminal is connected to the PC with a FOMA USB cable (optional).

■ Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPOverUD	Connected via 64K data communication
2	AV32K	AV (videophone) connected via [32K]
3	AV64K	AV (videophone) connected via [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected with packet communication

■ Display example of result codes

When “ATX 0” is set

Regardless of the settings of the AT¥V command (P29), only CONNECT is displayed upon completion of connection.

Text display example:

ATD * 99 * * * 3#

CONNECT (“1” in numeric display)

When “ATX 1” is set

- When “ATX1”, “AT¥V0” is set (default)

Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the following format: CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal - PC>

Text display example:

ATD * 99 * * * 3#

CONNECT 460800 (“1 21” in numeric display)

- When “ATX1”, “AT¥V1” is set*1

The code is displayed upon completion of connection as follows:

Text display example:

ATD * 99 * * * 3#

CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.net/64/384 (“1 21 5” in numeric display)

Indicates that speed between FOMA terminal and PC is 460,800 bps and the terminal is connected to mopera.net providing a maximum upload speed of 64 kbps and a maximum download speed of 384 kbps.

*1 When “ATX1” and “AT¥V1” are set at the same time, it is likely that dialup connection will fail.

It is recommended that this function be usually set to “ATX1” or “AT¥V0”.